

3 1761 02002016 b



VICTORIA UNIVERSITY LIBRARY



This book is purchased from
The Schofield Fund
given in memory of
William Henry Schofield
Victoria College, B.A. 1889
Harvard University, Ph. D. 1895
Professor of Comparative Literature
Harvard University, 1906-20.
Harvard Exchange Professor at
University of Berlin, 1907
Lecturer at the Sorbonne and
University of Copenhagen, 1910.
Harvard Exchange Professor at
Western Colleges, 1918.

13722



Melusine.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series, LXVIII.

1895.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.

NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.

PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.



Comment guion et ses gens
desconfient les galees des
savrazans sur mer Et com

Melusine.

COMPILED (1382-1394 A.D.) BY

JEAN D'ARRAS

ENGLISHT ABOUT 1500.



EDITED FROM A UNIQUE MANUSCRIPT
IN
THE LIBRARY OF THE BRITISH MUSEUM
BY
A. K. DONALD.

PART I.
TEXT, NOTES, AND GLOSSARY.

LONDON:
PUBLISHT FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO.,
PATERNOSTER HOUSE, CHARING-CROSS ROAD.

1895.

PR.
1119
E5
no.68
pt.1

61057
25-1-37

Extra Series, LXVIII.

R. CLAY & SONS, LIMITED, LONDON & BUNGAY.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PAGE
PROEM	1
Cap. I. How Melusyne & her two sustirs shewid them to Raymondyn at the fontayne of Soyf or thurst / ...	2
Cap. II. How the Erle of Poytiers prayde the Erle of For- ests for to comm to the Feste that he made of hys sone /	18
Cap. III. How a forester came to denounce to the Erle Emery how there was within the Forest of Coulombyers the moost meruayllous wildbore that euer was sen byfore /	19
Cap. IV. How the Erle went to the chace and Raymondyn <i>with hym</i>	21
Cap. V. How Raymondyn slew the Erle of Poyters, his vnkle 	25
Cap. VI. How Raymondyn came to the Fontayne of soyf, wher he founde Melusyne, and two other ladyes with her	28
Cap. VII. How Raymondin, by the counseyl of the lady, went to Poytiers 	34
Cap. VIII. How the Erle Emery was brought vnto Poytiers deed within a Lyttere 	35
Cap. IX. How Raymondyn retourned toward hys lady, and sawe a Chapell whiche neuer he had seen before / ...	37
Cap. X. How Raymondyn, after that the barons had doon theire homage vnto the yong Erle / demanded of the Erle a yefte, the whiche he graunted to hym / ...	40
Cap. XI. How Raymondyn founde a man that bare the skynne or hyde of a hert / and how he bought it / ...	42
Cap. XII. How they that were ordonned came and delyuered to Raymondyn his yefte / 	44
Cap. XIII. How Raymondyn toke his leue of the Erle of Poitiers & retourned toward his lady / 	46
Cap. XIV. How the Erle of Poytiers camme to the weddyng of Raymondyn, acompayned of alle the Barons in hys land	51

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Cap. XV. How Raymondyn and Melusyne were wedded togider /	52
Cap. XVI. How they were worshipfully serued at dyner /	54
Cap. XVII. How after dyner the Knights & Squyers Jousted	54
Cap. XVIII. How the bysshop halowed the bed wheron Raymondyn and Melusyne laye	56
Cap. XIX. How the Erle of Poytiers and the Erle of Forests / the barons and ladyes, toke theyre leue of Raymondyn and of Melusyne /	58
Cap. XX. How Vryan & Guyon toke leue of bothe theyre fader & moder, and of the help that they had of þem ...	107
Cap. XXI. How Uryan & Guyon tooke leue of their moder Melusyne and entred their ship / ...	114
Cap. XXII. How the Sawdan was slayn byfore Famagoce	143
Cap. XXIII. How Vryan & Guyon came byfore the kinge, he beyng in his bed syke	151
Cap. XXIV. How Vryan espoused Ermynne, doughter vnto the kinge of Cypre	157
Cap. XXV. How Anthony & Regnald dyscomfyted the kynge of Anssay tofore lucembourgh / and how he was take	201
Cap. XXVI. How the kyng of Anssay was lede byfore the pucelle Crystyne	204
Cap. XXVII. How the kinge of Anssay called to hym al the barons of Lucembourgh to Counseylle ...	211
Cap. XXVIII. How Anthony espoused Crystyne, Duchesse of Lucembourgh /	214
Cap. XXIX. How the kyng of behayne sent a messenger toward the king of Anssay his brother / ...	215
Cap. XXX. How the duc Anthony toke hys leue of the Duchesse Crystyne, and went toward prague with hys oost	218
Cap. XXXI. How the kinge of Craco dide do take the body of kynge Federyke that he had slain and commanded it to be brent	227
Cap. XXXII. How the king of Craco was slain in bataylle	232
Cap. XXXIII. How the kyng Zelodius & the other sara-cyns were brent and bruyled	233
Cap. XXXIV. How the two brethern were at buryeng and obsequye of kynge Federyk of behayne ...	235

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Cap. XXXV. How Regnauld espoused Eglantyne, daughter to the kyngē of Behayne /	240
Cap. XXXVI. How the knightes & esquyers jousted after dyner	241
Cap. XXXVII. Here aftir foloweth how Raymondin by the admonesting of hys brother beheld Melusyne hys wyf within the bathe, wherfor he toke hys brother the Erle of Forest in grete indignacion	296
Cap. XXXVIII. How geffray slough Guedon, the geaunt, in garande	302
Cap. XXXIX. How Froymond, brother to Geffray, was professed monke at Mayllezes, by consentement of hys fader & moder	304
Cap. XL. How the two messangers of Raymondin cam in garande toward geffray	307
Cap. XLI. How Geffray with the grete tooth fyred thabbey of Mayllezes, & brent bothe thabbot & al the monkes there	309
Cap. XLII. How Melusyne felle in a swoune, for this that Raymondyn, her lord, wyted her	314
Cap. XLIII. It is shewed herafter, how Melusyne came to her self ayen, and spake to Raymondyn	315
Cap. XLIV. How Raymondyn & Melusyne felle bothe in a swoune	317
Cap. XLV. How Melusyne made her testament / ...	317
Cap. XLVI. How Melusyne in fourme of a Serpent flough out at a wyndowe	319
Cap. XLVII. How Raymondyn dide do brenne his sone called Horryble	321
Cap. XLVIII. How Melusyne came euery nyght to vysyte her two children	322
Cap. XLIX. How geffray with the grete teeth rane ayenst the geaunt & ouerthrew hym with hys spere / ...	324
Cap. L. How the geaunt fled & Geffray folowed hym ...	326
Cap. LI. How Geffray went & entred into the hol̄ for to fyght with the geaunt /	327
Cap. LII. How Geffray fonde the sepulture of the king of Albany, his granfader Helynas, within the mountayn ...	327
Cap. LIII. How geffray delyuered the prysionners that the geaunt kept in prysyon	330
Cap. LIV. How the prysionners led the geaunt deed vpon a Charyott	330

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Cap. LV. How Geffray was the deth of the Erle of Forestz hys vncle	331
Cap. LVI. How Geffray went to Lusynen toward hys fader and prayed hym of mercy	332
Cap. LVII. How Raymondyn came toward the pope of Romme and confessed hys synnes to hym	334
Cap. LVIII. How Geffray went to Romme & confessed hys synnes tofore the Pope	340
Cap. LIX. How Geffray reedyffyed the monastery of Mayl- leses	346
Cap. LX. How the king of Armanye watched the sperhawk	364
Cap. LXI. How the kyng wold haue rauysshed by force the lady, but she vanysshed away	366
Cap. LXII. How the king was bete & ouerthrawen and knew not of whom	367
NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS	373
LIST OF PROVERBS IN THE ROMANCE OF MELUSINE ...	387
GLOSSARY	389
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES (PERSONS)	401
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES (PLACES)	407



Melusine.

[A Chronicle of Melusine in olde Englishe.
compyled by Ihon of Arras, and dedicated
to the Duke of Berry and Auuergne, and
4 translated (as yt shoulde seeme) out of
· Frenche into Englishe.^{1]}]

IN the begynnynge of all werkes / men oughten first
of alle to calle the name of the creatour of all May the Creator
8 Creatures, whiche is very & trew maister of alle
thinges made & to be made, that oughten somwhat to
entende to perfection of wele. Therfore att the begyn-
nyng of this present historye / though that I ne be not
12 worthy for to requyre hym / beseche ryght devoutly
his right highe & worthy mageste / that this present help me to bring
this book to a
good end!
history he wyl helpe me to bring vnto a good ende / &
to fuldoo it att hys glorye & praysyng!. And to the
16 plaisir of my right high, mighti, and doubtid lord
Iohan, sone to the kyng of Fraunce, Duc of Berry & of
Auuergne. The whiche hystory I haue bygonne after
the veray & true Cronykles, whiche I haue had of hym
20 and of the Erle of Salesbury in England, & many other
bokes that I haue sought & ouertredde for to accom-
pliesshe hit. And bycause that his noble sustir Marye,
doughtir to the kyng^t Iohanne of Fraunce, duchesse of
24 Bar, had requy²red my said lord for to haue the said
historye / the whiche in fauour of her hath doon as
moche to his power as he might, to serche the very

This History was
compiled (in
French)

for the Duchess
of Bar,
2 fol. 1b.

¹ This title is added in xviith cent. handwriting.

at the command
of her brother
John, Duke of
Berry and Au-
vergne,

and was com-
menced on St.
Clement's Day,
Nov. 23, 1387.

trouth & true historye / and hath commanded me
for to do drawe alle alonge thystory whiche heraftir
foloweth /. And I as of herte dyligent / of my pouere
witt & connyng, [do] as nygh as I can the pure trouth 4
of hys gracyous commandement. Wherfore I humbly
& deuoutly beseche & pray to my Creatour, that my
said lord wil take it in gree / and also all them that
schall rede or here it / that they wil pardon me yf I 8
haue said eny thinges that ben not to theire good gree.
Whiche this present hystorye I byganne the Wens-
day, saynt Clementis day in Wynter, the yere of our
lord Ml. ccc. lxxx. vij. beseeching alle them that shal 12
rede, or here it redde, that they wil pardon me
my fawte, yf their be eny. ffor certaynly I haue com-
posed it the moost justly that I coude or haue mowe,
aftir the Cronykles whiche I suppose certaynly to 16
be trew.

* * * * *

Cap. I. How Melusyne & her two sustirs shewid them to Raymondyn at the fontayne of Soyf or thurst /.

20

¹ fol. 2.

David said that
the judgments
of God are un-
fathomable.

It is foolish,
therefore, not
to believe that
marvellous
things are true,

for the Creature
cannot compre-
hend the designs
of God.

DAUD ¹the prophete saith, that the Iuggements and
the punysshings of god ben as abysmes without
bottom & without ryuage. And he is not wyse that
suche thinges supposeth to comprehend in his wit / & 24
weneth that the meruaylls that ben thrugh the vni-
uersal world, may nat be true, as it is said of the thinges
that men calle ffayrees / and as it is of many other
thinges wheroft we may not haue the knowleche of alle 28
them. Now thenne the Creature ought nat therfore for
to traueil, by outrageous presumyng to knowe & to
comprehende in his wit & vnderstanding the Iugements
of god / but men oughten / thinkynge / to be meruaylled 32
of hym / and meruaylling / to considere / how they may

worthily & deuoutly prayse and glorify hym that Iugith so, and ordeynith suche thinges after hys plaisir & wille without eny gaynseyng.¹

Men should rather think how worthily to praise him.

4 **T**he creature of god that is raisonable, oughte moche besily to vnderstande aftir the sayeng of Aristote, that the þynges which he hath made & creatid here bynethe, by the presence þat they haue in themself, 8 certyfyen to be suche as they are / As saynet paule seyth in thepistle that he made to the Rommains / sayeng in this manere / that the thinges that he hath doon, shalbe knownen & seen by the Creatures of the 12 world / that is to wete, by the men that can rede & adiousten feyth to þactoures whiche haue ben byfore vs / as to wete & knowe the landes, the prouinces & the straunge Countrees. and to haue ouerseen & vysyted 16 the dyuerse Royaumes / haue founde so many of dyuerse meruaylles aftir common exstimation, that thumayn vnderstanding is constrainyd of god / that soo as he is without ryuage & without bottom / soo are the thinges 20 meruayllous & wounderfull in many dyuerse landes. aftir their dyuerse nature / that saaf theire Iuggement. I suppose that neuer no man / but only Adam. hadd parfytt knowlege of the thinges Inuysible or that may 24 not be seen. Wherfore I me bethink fro day to day to prouytte in science, & to here & see many thinges / which men suposen not to be true. the which, yf they be trew / I putte them fourth into this termes byfore 28 you / to thende that the grette meruaylles that ben conteyned in this present hystory may be byleued. Wherfore I ¹think to treate to the playsure of god / and after the commandement of my said right mighty 32 and noble lord./

Reasonable creatures

should believe what is seen,

and should give credence to travellers

who see many marvels.

Adam alone had perfect knowledge;

but the author daily learns more and more,

and tells what he has seen, that his history may be believed.

¹ fol. 25.

LAte vs now leve the Auctoures with peas / and retourne we to that we haue herde say and telle of our auncyent and old tyme / and that this day we 36 haue herd sey what in the land of Poitow was seen in

Leaving the Authors, let us turn to what has been seen in Poitou.

dede / for to couloure¹ our hystory to be trew / as we hold hit soo / and for to shew & publysshe it thrugh the true Cronykles / as we suppose to doo /.

In ancient times
fairies and gob-
lins often ap-
peared in Poitou,

and played many
pranks.

Gervaise tells of
other fairies,

which performed
menial duties.

He also says
that the fairies
sometimes took
the form of beau-
tiful women,

whom men have
married on cer-
tain conditions;

We haue thenne herd say and telle of our auncyents, 4
that in many partes of the sayd lande of Poytow haue
ben shewed vnto many oon right famylerly many ma-
nyeres of thinges / the whiche somme called Gobelyns /
the other ffayrees, and the other ‘bonnes dames’ or good 8,
ladyes / and they goo by nyght tyme and entre within
the houses without opnyng or brekyng of ony doore /
and take & bere somtyme with them the children out of
theire cradelles. and somtyme they tourne them out of 12
theyre wit / and somtyme they brenne & roste them
before þe fyre / and whan they departe fro them, they
leue hem as hoole as they were byfore / and somme gyue
grette happe & ffortune in this world. And yet haue 16
I herd say of oon Geruayse, a man worshipfull & of cre-
dence, that somme other fauntasyes appyeren by nyght
tyme vnto many oon in dyuerse places, in lyknes of
wymen with old face, of low and lytil stature or body / 20
whiche dide scoure pannes & potts, and dide suche
thinges as a mayde or seruaunt oughte to doo / lyberaly
& without dooyng of ony harme. And also he saith
for certayn, that in his tyme he had a frend that was 24
auncyent & old, whiche recounted for trouth / that in
hys dayes he had seen many tymes suche thinges.
and saith yet the said Geruayse, that the sayd fayrees
toke somtyme the fourme & the fygure of fayre & 28
yonge wymen / of whiche many men haue had som
doughtirs, and haue take to theire wyues by meanes of
som couenauntes or promysses that they made them to
swere vnto them / the som / that they shuld neuer see 32
eche other / on the satirday / and that by no maner
wyse they shuld nat enquyre where they were by-
comme / the other / that yf they had eny children /

¹ Fr. *coulourer*.

that their husbands shuld neuer see them in theyr
 child^t bedd^t / And as long^t as they kept theyre cove-
 nauntes they had good fortune and were euer in pros-
 4 peryte / but assoone as they faylled of theyr promysses
 or couenauntes they fell doun fro¹ theyr good happ &
 fortune / and aftir these thinges so happed to haue
 broken theyr couenauntes / the other were conuerted &
 8 tourned into serpentes. And yet more sayth the ²said
 Geruayse, that he byleueth this to be permittid & doon
 for som mysdedes that were doon ayenst the playsure
 of god / wherfore he punysshed them so secretly & so
 12 wondrely wherof none hath parfytt knowlege / but
 alone he / and they may be therefore called the
 secrets of god, abysses without ryuage and without
 bottom / For none knoweth nothing perfytly to the
 16 regarde of hym / how be it that sometyme of his pro-
 uision ben many thinges knownen / not only of oon /
 but of many other. It is seen often whan a man
 hath yssued out of hys countree / and hath seen many
 20 awounder & meruayllous thynges whiche he neuer wold
 haue byleued hit by here sayeng, without he had hadd
 the sight of hit / but as for me that haue nat walked
 ferre, I haue seen somme thinges that many oon shuld
 24 nat byleue without they sawe it. With this seyth
 the said Geruayse, & setteth fourth an ensaumple of a
 knyght, named Sir Robert du Chastel Roussel of the
 prouince of Asy / the whiche knight by aventure on an
 28 euen founde oon of the fayree in a medowe / and wold
 haue had her to his wyf / and in dede she assentid to
 hit / by suche couenaunce that neuer he shuld see her
 naked / and were longe togider / and the knight grew
 32 & waxed prosperous fro day to day. It happed long
 tyme after that / that he wold haue seen the said
 Nymphe naked / as he dede / in so moche that the
 said nymphe putte her heed in to a watre and was

and so long as
 the conditions
 were kept, they
 were prosperous
 and happy ;
 but when they
 were broken,
 they became
 poor, and their
 wives were
 turned into ser-
 pentes.

² fol. 3.

Gervaise thinks
 this is because of
 some misdeeds,
 for which God
 has punished
 them.

Travellers often
 see marvellous
 things;

but even I, who
 have not been
 far, have seen
 some marvels.

Sir Robert du
 Chastel Roussel
 found a fairy in
 a meadow,

and was married
 to her on condi-
 tion that he
 should never see
 her naked.

For a long time
 he was prosper-
 ous;

but one day
 he broke his
 promise,

¹ MS. has 'for.'

and his wife was changed into a serpent, whilst he himself grew poor.

I have to tell how the Castle of Lusignen was built by a fairy,

and how from the same woman a noble race descended, which shall reign for ever.

First I will tell you whence she came.

¹ fol. 3b.

The children of Melusine and Raymondin were

Uryan, King of Cyprus; Guyon, King of Armenia; Raynold, King of Bohemia; Anthony, Duke of Luxembourg; Raymond, Earl of Forest;

Geoffrey, of Lusignen; Theodoric, of Partenay;

Fromont, of Maillières.

Once upon a time, in Albany, lived a brave King

tourned in to a serpent, whiche was neuer seen after that / And the knyght fro day to day waxed pouere and declyned from his prosperyte. As for prouerbes & exemples I wil none bryng more vnto you / and 4 that / that I haue doon / it was bycause þat I suppose to treate how the noble ffortresse or Castell of Lusygnen was bylded & made of a woman of the fayree, and the manyere how / after the juste & true cronykle / 8 without to applye ne adiouste to it noneth / but that it be approued Iuste & trew, and of the propre or owne matere / And ye shall here me spek & say of the noble lynce whiche yssued of the said woman / that shall 12 regne for euer vnto thend of the world / aftir that it appiereth that it hath euer regned vnto this tyme present. But bycause that I byganne first to treate of the fayree / I shall telle you how & of whens cam 16 the said woman whiche bilded the noble ¹ffortress of Lusygnen, beforsayd,/

Herafter folowen the names of the estates of the children whiche yssued of Melusyne, and were 20 bygotten of Raymondyn in wedlok. And first yssued kyng Uryan, whiche regned in Cypre. Aftir hym cam King Guyon, which regned myghtily in Armenye. Item, King¹ Regnald, whiche regned right mightily 24 in Behaygne. Item, Anthony that was duc of Lucembourgh. Item, Raymond that was Erle of fforest. Item, Geffray with the grette toth, that was lord of Lusygnen. Item, there yssued also theodoryk, which 28 was lord of Partenay. Item, ffroymonde, that was monke into thabbey of Mailleses,² the whiche Geffray with the grette toth brent the said Abbey, & thabbot also with an hundred religyous or monkes./ 32

It is true that there was somtyme in Albany³ a kynge that was moche worthy & valyaunt / And as sayth thy story / he had of hys wyf many children /

² Fr. *Maillières*.

³ Fr. *Albanie*.

& that Mathas whiche was fader to ffloymond was
hys first sone / and this kinge had to name Elynas,
and was right worthy & mighty knight of his land./
named Elynas.

4 And it happed that after the decess of his first wyf / as
he chaced in a fforest nigne to the see, in the which
forest was a moche fayre fontaynne / that sodaynly he
had so grett athurst / that as constreyned¹ he tourned

After his first
wife's death he
was hunting,

8 & yede toward the said fontaynne. And whan he ap-
proched to the said fontayne / he herde a voyce that
soug' so melodyously & so swetly / that he suposed none
other / but it had the voyce of an Angel / but soone aftir

and being thirsty,
went towards a
fountain.

When he ap-
proached, he
heard beautiful
singing, which
he thought must
be of some angel;

12 he knewe that hit was the voyce of a woman. Thenne
descendid he & alyghted fro hys hors to thende he
shulde not make gret affray / and walked fayre & softly
toward the fontayn in the most couered wyse that he

16 coude. And whan he camme nygh to the fontayne /
he sawe there the fayrest lady that euer he the dayes
of hys lyf had seen to his aduys or semynge. Thenne
he stode styl al abasshed of the grett beaulte that he

but, walking
towards the
fountain, he sees
a beautiful lady
(Pressyne).

20 perceyued in the same ladye, which euer songe so
melodyously and so swetly. And thus he stood styl /
asmuche for the bewte of the lady / as for to here her
swette & playsaunt voyce / and hyd hym in the best

24 wyse that he conde vnder the leavis of the trees / to
thende that the said lady shuld not perceyue hym / &
forgate all the chasse and grett thurst that he had afore.

* fol. 4.

And byganne to think on the songe & on the beaulte
28 of the lady. In so moche that he was as rauysshed
& knew nat yf it was daylight or nyght, ne yf he slept
or wakked./

He hides himself
to listen to her,

and to look upon
her beauty : by
both he is en-
tranced.

32 **T**hus as ye shall now here was kynge helynas so
abused / aswel of the right swete songe / as of
the bewte of the said lady that he ne wyst whether he
slept or waked, For euer styl she songe so melodyously
that it was a swete & melodyous thing to here / Thenne

As he stands
there,

¹ 'honstreyned' in MS.

he remembers
nothing;

but two hounds
at last disturb
him.

He goes to
the fountain to
drink,

and humbly
salutes the lady,

who returns his
salutation.

He asks her who
she is.

He knows all the
lords and ladies
of the neighbour-
hood,

and is surprised
that she is with-
out retinue.

He asks her
pardon for his
rudeness in
questioning her.

the kynge Elynas was so rauysshed & abused¹ that he remembred of nothinge worldly / but aloneyn that he herd & sawe the said lady, and abode there long tyme. Thanne camme rannynge toward him two of hys houndis 4 whiche made to hym grett feste,² and he lept & mevyd hym as a man wakyng from slep / and thenne he remembred of the chasse, and had of new so grett athurst / that without hauyng aduys ne mesure he yede 8 fourth vpon the ryuage of the fountaynne, and toke the basyn which heng therby & drank of the watre. And thenne he beheld the said lady whiche had lefte her songe & salued³ her right humbly / beryng vnto her 12 the gretest honour & reuerence that he might. Thanne she that coude & wyst moche of wele & of honour, rendred to hym his salutacion right gracyously, ‘Lady,’ said Elynas, the kinge / ‘of your curtoysye be 16 nat you dyspleased yf I requyre of you to knowe of your estate / of your beyng & what ye are / For the cause that moueth me therto is suche / as now I shall reherse to you. Right dere lady vouche ye saaf to 20 wete & knowe that I can & know⁴ so moche of the beyng of this countree, that there nys within this foure or fyue myle neyther Castel ne ffortres, but þat I knowe / except that same fro whens I departed this 24 day by the mornynge, whiche is two myle hens or therabout. Nor there nys neyther lord ne lady within this Countrey but that I knowe them wel, and therfore gretly I meruaylle & wonderly am abasshed, fro whens 28 may be suche a fayr and so gent a lady as ye be / so exempt & vnpurveyed of felawship. and for godis loue pardonne me / For grette outrage is to me to demande of you therof / but the grette desire & good wylle that 32 my herte bereth toward your gracyous personne, hath caused hardynes within me for to doo it.’ /

¹ Fr. *abusé*.

² Fr. *feste*.

³ Fr. *salua*.

⁴ Fr. *sçay et congnois*.

Sire Knight,' said the lady / 'there is none outrage /
 but it commeth to you of grette curtoysye &
 honour. And knowe you, sire knight, that I shall nat
 be longe alone whan it shal playse me / but from me
 I haue sent my seruaunts, while þat I dysported me,
 Thenne cam fourth to² that word oon of her seruaunts,
 wel arayed, whiche rode on a fayre Courcer, and att his
 right hand ledde a palfroy so richely enharnashed³ that
 the kyng Elynas was moche abasshed of⁴ the grette
 richesse & noble aray that was about the said palfray.
 Thanne said the seruaunt to his lady: 'Madame, it is
 tyme whan it shall playse you to comme.' And she
 fourthwith said to the kinge: 'Sire knight, god be
 with you, and gramercy of your curtoisye.' thenne she
 went toward the palfray / and the kinge hyed hym,
 & helped to sette her on horsbak moche prately.⁵
 And she thanked hym moche of hit, and departid /.
 And the kyng yede to his hors, and lept on his bake.
 thanne camme hys meney, whiche sought hym, and
 sayd that they had taken the herte. And the king
 said to them / 'that playseth me.' Thenne he byganne
 to thinke on the beaulte of the said lady, and so moche
 he was surprysed of her loue, that he ne wyst what
 contenaunce or manyere he shuld hold / and said to
 his meyne / 'goo you alle before / and I shall folow
 you soone.' They yede at hys commandement theire
 way / and wel they perceyued & knew that he hadde
 found som thinge / And the king hastily tourned his
 hors, & toke the way that the said lady had ytaken / &
 folowed her.

Thystory recounteth to vs, that so long folowed the
 kinge Elynas the lady, that he found her in a
 fforest, where as were many trees high & strayt / and
 [it] was in the season that the tyme⁶ is swete &

¹ fol. 4 b.She replies
courteously.Her servants
have retired
whilst she
amused herself.A servant then
brings a palfrey,
richly capar-
isoned,and the lady,
bidding the King
farewell,mounts and rides
away.The King also
mounts, but his
attendants ar-
rive, having
killed the deer.Being enamoured
of the lady, the
King dismisses
his retinue,and rides after
her.He overtakes her
in the forest.² Fr. à. ³ Fr. *enharnacié*. ⁴ Fr. *de*.⁵ Fr. *doulcement*. ⁶ Fr. *temps*.

The lady, hearing the noise of his horse, waits for him;

but when he comes up,

King Elynas is much abashed.

^a fol. 5.

The lady asks him why he follows her,

to which he replies that he is ashamed to let her go unaccompanied through his land.

She excuses him, and begs him not to delay his return merely for that,

upon which he declares his love for her,

gracyous, & the place within the forest was moche delectable.¹ And whan the lady herde the noyse of the hors of the kynge Elynas, that rode fast, she said to her seruaunt: 'Stand we styl, and late vs abyde this knight, For I bylene that he cometh vnto vs for to telle to vs a part of his wille, wherof he was nat as tofore aduySED, For we sawe hym lepe on his hors all thoughtfuH.' 'Madame,' said the seruaunt / 8 'at your plaisir.' Thanne camme the kinge nigh vnto the lady / and as he had neuer seen her before, he salewed her, moche affrayenge, For he was so surprySED² of her loue that he coude nat holde conten-12 aunce. Thanne the lady, that knew yncouthe as it was, and that ³she shuld comme to her entrepryse / said to hym : 'Kynge Elynas, what goost thou sechyng' aftir so hastily / haue I oughte borne away of thyn 16 owne?' / And whan the kinge herde hym named, he was moche abasshed, For he knew nat what she was that spak with hym / and neuertheles he ansuerde to her : 'My dere lady, nought of myn owne ye withbere / 20 but only that ye passe & goo thrugh my land / and it is grett shame to me / sith that ye be astraunger,⁴ that I ne doo you to be conueyed worshipfully thrugh my land / whiche I wold moche gladly doo yf I were 24 in place, & had tyme & space for to doo it.' Thenne ansuerde the lady : 'Kynge Elynas, I hold you for escused, & pray you yf ye wyl of vs none other thinge / that ye leue ne lette nat your retourne for that cause.' 28 And Elynas ansuerde / 'wel other thinge I seke, lady' / 'And what is it?' said she / 'telle it to me hardyly.' 'My right dere lady, sith that it is your wille & plaisir for to knowe it / I shall telle it to you. 32 I desire moche more than eny other thinge in the world forto haue your good loue & your good grace.' 'By my feith,' said she, 'kyng Elynas, to that haue ye

¹ Fr. *delectable*.

² Fr. *surpris*.

⁴ Fr. *estrangière*.

not faylled / yf that ye think theron but wele & honour, For neuer man shal haue my loue in hys auauntyngē.' 'Ha, my dere lady, I ne think on my 4 lyf on none cas dyshoneste.' Thenne perceyued the lady þat he was esprised¹ of her loue, & said to hym / 'yf ye wil take me as your wyf by mariage, and be sworne vnto me that ye shal nat see me duryng my 8 childbed, nor to peyne your self in no manere of way for to loke on me att that tyme / And yf this ye wil doo & swere / I am she that shal obey to you as a wyf ought to obey her husband.' Thanne þe kinge anoone, 12 and with good wille, sware & promysed to hold that byfore is said. Without longe reheryng they were spoused, & ledd longe a good lyf togidre. But al the land of the kinge Elynas was moche abasshed who was 16 this lady / how be it that she gouerned her wel right wysly & valiauntly. But Nathas, that was sone to the kynge Elynas, hated her ouermuche. and [it] happed that she was at her childbed of thre doughtirs / the 20 whiche she had bornne² ryght gracyously alle her tyme, & was deliuered of them thre at ende of ix. monethis / the first borne was named Melusigne, the second Melyor, and the iij^{de} Palatyne. The kynge Elynas 24 was nat thanne present at that place, but kynge Nathas his sone was there, and beheld hys thre sustirs, that were so fayre that it was meruaylle. and thanne he went toward the kinge his fader / and thus he said to 28 hym : 'Sire / Madame, the quene Pressyne your wyf, hath made & is delyuered of thre doughtirs, the most fayre that euer were seen / comme & see them.' Thenne kinge Helynus, that remembred nat of the promysse 32 that he had made to Pressyne his wyf / sayd / 'ffayre sone / so wyl I doo.' And yede apertly³ & entred anoon within the chambre wheras Pressyne bathed her thre doughtirs. and whan he saw them / he said in

avowing the honesty of his passion.

She will marry him, if he will promise never to see her in childbed;

to which condition he assents.

They are married, and live long together;

but Nathas, the son of King Elynas, dislikes her (Pressyne); and when she is in childbed of three daughters,

² fol. 5 b.

Melusine, Melior, and Palatyne,

persuades the King to visit her.

He, forgetting his promise, enters her chamber,

¹ empris.

³ Fr. apertement.

and greets her joyfully.

She reproaches him for breaking his promise, saying he has lost her for evermore,

but that she knows Nathas is the cause of all;

whereupon she disappears with her three daughters, and is never seen again.

King Elynas is much afflicted at the loss of his wife Pressyne and his daughters,

and laments for seven years.

His people think him mad, and make Nathas their king,

whom they marry to the Lady of Yeris;

* fol. 6.
and from the two is born Florymond,

with whom the history is not concerned.

Pressyne goes with her daughters to Avalon, or the Isle Lost,

this manere: 'god blesse the moder & the doughters,' & toke of them grette Ioye. And whan pressyne herde hym, she answerde to hym, 'Fals kinge, thou hast faylled thy couenaunt, wherof grett euyl shal 4 come vnto the / and hast lost me for euermore.

And wel I wot that thy sone Nathas is cause therof, & departe I must fro the lightly.¹ but yet I shalbe auenged me on thy sone by my sustir & felow, my 8 lady of the yle lost.' And these thinges said / [she] toke her thre doughtirs & had them withher / and neuer aftir she was seen in the land /

Thystorye saith to vs, that whan the kinge had lost 12 pressyne his wyf, and his thre doughters, he was so wofull & so abasshed that he wist² not what he shuld doo or say. but he was by the space of seuen yere that he dede none other thinge, but compleyned 16 & sighed, & made grette playntes & piteous lamentacions for loue of Pressyne his wyf, whiche he louyd of lawfull² loue. and the peuple in hys land said that he was assoted.³ and in dede they gaue & betoke the 20 gouernement ouer them & of alle the lande to Nathas his sone. Which gouerned valiauntly, and held hys fader in grette charyte. And thenne the barons of Albanye gaf to hym vnto hys wyf agentyl woman, 24 whiche was lady of Ycrys. And of these⁴ two yssued florymond, whiche afterward toke moche of peyne & traueyll. Neuertheles, oure hystory is not enterprySED ne begonne for hym / and therfore we shall hold oure 28 peas of hym, and we shall retourne to oure hystorye.

Thystorye saith, that whan Pressyne departed & yede with her thre doughtirs, she went in to Aualon, that was named the yle lost, bycause that al 32 had a man ben there many tymes⁵ / yet shuld not he conne retourne thither hymself alone / but byhapp &

¹ Fr. *soudainement.* ² Fr. *leal.* ³ Fr. *assoté.*

⁵ Fr. *tant y eut esté de foys.*

grett auenture. And there she nourysshed her thre doughtirs vnto the tyme that they were xv. yere of age / and led^t them euery mornynge on a high mountaynne whiche was named, as thystory saith & recounteth, Elyneos, whiche is asmoche for to say in englissh as filorysshed hy^H.¹ For from thens she sawe ynough the land of Albany.² and often said to her thre doughtirs, waymentyng & sore wepyng : ‘ See, my fayre doughters, yonder is the land wher ye were born / and ye shuld haue had your wele & honour, ne had be the dommage of your fader, that bothe you & me hath 12 putte in grett myserye without ende vnto the day of dome, whan god shal punysshe the euyl folk / and the good he shall enhaunse in theire vertues.’

Melusyne, tholdest doughtir, demanded of her moder Pressyne : ‘ What falshed³ hath doon oure fader, wherby we must endure so longe this greef & sorow?’ Thanne the lady, theyre moder, byganne to telle & shew vnto them all the manere of the 20 faytte, so as ye haue herd^t tofore. And thenne whan Melusyne had herde her moder, and that she vnderstode all the faitte or dede, She tourned the talke of her moder,⁴ & demanded of her the commodytees of 24 the land / the name of the Cites, tounes, & Castels of Albanye / and rehercying these things they al descendid doun fro the hy^H, & retourned to the yle of Aualon. And thanne Melusyne had & drew ⁵apart her two 28 sustirs, that is to wete Melyor & Palatyne, & said to them in this manyere : ‘ My dere sustirs, now loke & byhold we the myserye wherin oure fader hath putt both oure moder & vs all, that shuld haue be so wel att 32 ease & in so grette worship in oure lyues. what think you good of your best aduys for to doo / For as for

where she brings up her daughters.

She takes them every morning to a high mountain, called Elyneos,

and shows them the land in which they were born.

Melusine asks what was their father's wrong doing,

and Pressyne tells them the whole story.

⁵ fol. 6 b.

Melusine then conspires with her sister

¹ Fr. montaigne florie. ² Fr. Ybernie.

³ Fr. faulceté.

⁴ Fr. remist sa mère en aultres parolles.

to punish King Elynas for the sorrow he has brought upon them and their mother,

by imprisoning him in a mountain of Northumberland.

This they accordingly do;

but when they tell their mother Pressyne,

she is very grieved and angry at their unfilial conduct.

⁷ fol. 7.

my parte I think to auenge me therof / and as lytel myrthe & solas that he hath Impetred¹ to oure moder by lys falshed / as lytel joye I think to purchasse vnto hym /.' Thenne her two sustirs ansuerde to her in this manere: 'Ye be our oldest sustir, we shall folowe & obey you in all that ye wil doo & shall ordonne theirof.' And Melusyne said to them / 'ye shew good loue, & to be good & lawfull² to oure moder, For by my feyth ye haue said right wel. and I haue aduysed yf it semeth you good that we shall close or shett hym on the high mountayne of Northumberland, named Brombelyoys / and in myserye he shalbe there all³ his lyf.' 'My sustir,' said either of bothe sustirs / 'lette now hye vs for to doo this / For we haue grette desyre to see that oure moder be auenged of the vnlawfulness that our fader dede shew vnto her.'¹⁶ Thanne the thre doughtirs dide so moch, that by theyre false condycion they toke theyr fader, & closed or shett hym on the said mountayne. And after that they had so doon, they retourned to theire moder, and to her they said in this manere: 'Moder, ye ne oughte to retche⁴ ne care more of the vnlawfulness⁵ & falshed of our fader / For therof he hath receyued hys payment, For⁶ neuer he shal yssue ne departe fro the mounteyne of Brombelyoys, wheron he is closed & shett by vs / and þere he shall waste hys lyf & his tyme with grett dolour and woo.' / 'Ha / ha / alas!' said theire moder Pressyne to them / 'how durst you so doo / euyl herted doughters, & without pyte / ye haue not doon wel, whan he that begat you on my body ye haue so shamfully punysshed⁷ by your proude courage. For it was he of whom I toke all the playsaunce that I had in this mortall world,

¹ Fr. *impetré*. ² Fr. *leal*. ³ MS. has 'as.' Fr. *toute*.

⁴ Fr. *challoir*. ⁵ Fr. *desleaulté*.

⁶ MS. has 'ffro.' Fr. *car*.

whichie ye haue taken fro me. therfore, knowe ye wel
 that I shall punyssh you of the meryte aftir youre
 deserte. thou, Melusyne, that art tholdest, & that
 4 oughtest to haue be the moost knowyng / all this is
comme & doon thrughe thy counsey^H, For wel I wot
 that this pryon hath be gyuen to thy fader by the /
 and therfore thou shalt be she that shalbe first
 8 punysshed therof. For notwithstandingyng the vnlaw-
 fulness of thy fader / bothe thou & thy sustirs he
 shuld haue drawen to hym, and ye shuld shortly haue
 ben out of the handes of the Nymphes¹ & of the
 12 fairees, without to retourne eny more. And fro hens
 fourthon I gyue to the / the gytfe that thou shalt be
 euery satirday tourned vnto a serpent fro the nauyll
 dounward / but yf thou fynd ony man þat wil take
 16 the to hys wyf / and that he wil promytte to the that
 neuer on the Satirday he shall see the, ne þat shall
 declare ne reherce thy faytt or dede to ne personne /
 thou shalt lyue thy cours naturell, and shall dey as a
 20 naturel & humayn woman / and out of thy body
 shall yssue a fayre lynee, whiche shalbe gret & of
 highe proesse. but yf by hap or som auenture / thou
 shuldest be seen & deceyued² of thyn husband /
 24 knowe thou for certayn that thou shuldest retourne
 to the tourment & peyne wher as thou were in afore /
 and euer thou shalt abyde therinne vnto the tyme that
 the right highe Iugge shal hold his jugement. And
 28 thou shalt appiere by thre dayes byfore the fortresse
 or Castel whiche thou shalt make, and thou shalt
 name it aftir thy name / at euery tyme whan it shall
 haue a new lord, and lykwyse also whan a man of thy
 32 lynee shal dey. And thou, Melyor, to the I gyue a
 Castel in the grette Armenye, whiche is fayre & riche,
 wher thou shalt kepe a ³Sperohak vnto the tyme that
 the grett maister shall hold his Iugement. And al

¹ For punishment
she condemns
Melusine, the
eldest and the
most in fault,

to be turned into
a serpent every
Saturday, until
she finds some
one who will
marry her, and
promise never
to see her on
that day.

If he break his
promise,

she must return
to her punish-
ment until the
Day of Judg-
ment,

appearing before
her castle for
three days, when-
ever it shall have
a new lord, or
when one of her
descendants is
about to die.

Melior is con-
demned to keep
a sparrowhawk
in a castle in
Armenia, until
the judgment
day;

¹ Fr. *japhes*.

² Fr. *decelléc*.

³ fol. 7 b.

and all knighths
who shall watch
there a certain
time without
sleep,

shall have any
gift they desire,

except herself in
marriage.

Those that per-
sist in this last
request shall be
unfortunate to
the ninth genera-
tion.

Palatyne is to
be imprisoned on
Mount Guygo,
with the treasure
of King Elynas,
until one of their
lineage shall de-
liver her,
and obtain the
treasure.

The sisters then
go their several
ways.

Be not displeased
that I tell you
these things.

I will now pro-
ceed to the
history itself,

but will first
tell you how
King Elynas
ended his days.

After living a
long time upon
the mountain,
he died,

² fol. 8.

noble and worthy knighthes descended & comme of noble lynee, that wil goo watche there the day byfore the euen, and theuen also of saint Iohan baptiste, whiche is on the xx. day of Iung,¹ without eny slep, 4 shal haue a yeft of the of suche thinges that men may haue corporell / that is to wete, of ertly pinges without to demande thy body ne thy loue by maryage nor other wyse. And al thoo that shal demande the 8 without cesse, and that wyl not forbere & absteynne them þerof / shalbe infortunate vnto the ix. lynee, and shul be putt from theire prosperytees /. And thou shalt be closed, palatyne, & shette on the mountayn of 12 Guygo, with al the tresoure of thy fader, vnto the tyme that a knight shal comme of our lynee whiche shal haue al that tresoure to help therwith for to gete & conquyre the land of promyssion / & shal delyure 16 the from thenys /. Thenne were the thre sustirs full heuy of herte & sorowfull, & departed fro theire moder. And Melusyne went & toke her way al alone thrughe the forest & thikk busshes. Melyor also 20 departed, & yede toward the Sperhaak Castel in the grette Armenye. And Palatyne also went to the mounteyne of Guygo, wher many a man hath seen her /. And I myself herd it say of the kinge of 24 Arragon and of many other of hys royaume. And be nat you displeased yf I haue recounted vnto you this auenture, For it is for to adiouste more of feyth, & for to veryfy thistory, And fro hens fourthon I 28 wil entre into the matere of the very & true hystory, but first I shall telle to you how the king Elynas fynysshed his dayes in this world / and how Pressyne his wyf buried hym within the said mountayn in a 32 moche noble tombe, as ye shal here heraftir. /

L Onge tyme was the Kyng Elynas on the said moun-

¹ Fr. *juing*.

personne to an ende toke hym. Thanne camme ther Pressyne his wyf and buryed hym there / and on hym made to be sette oon so noble & so riche a tombe, þat 4 neuer byfore ne syn that tyme was seen none suche ne so riche. For on the tombe were riches without comparacion as of precyous stones and other Jewellis / and about it were grett & highe Candelstykes of fyn gold, 8 and lampes & torches whiche brennen both day & nyght continually. And on the said tombe stood vp right a Statue or ymage of Alabaster, kerued & made aftir the lengthe, lyknes, & fourme of Kinge Elynas / 12 and the said ymage held in her handes a table¹ of gold, whereon was writon the forsayd auenture. And there the lady Pressyne stablysshed a stronge geaunt to the sauergarde of the tresoure byfore said / the whiche 16 Geaunt was wounder fyers & horrable, and al the Countre therabout he held vnder his subgection. And also aftir hym many other geaunts kept it vnto the tyme & commyng of Geffray with the grett toth / of 20 the whiche ye shall more here herafter. Now haue ye herde of the King⁴ Elynas and of Pressyne his wyf. And from hens fourthon I wil bigynne & shew the trouth of thystory of the meruaylles of the noble Castel 24 of Lusignen in Poitow. And why & by what manere hit was bilded & made./

and Pressyne
buries him, and
erects a rich
tomb to his
memory,

bearing a statue
of the King.

She places a
giant to guard
the tomb and
the treasure,

who was suc-
ceeded by many
others, until
Geoffrey with
the Great Tooth
came.

Now I will tell
you of the mar-
vellous Castle
of Lusignen.

Thystory recounteth to vs that there was somtyme in the Brut Brytayne² a noble man whiche fell at 28 debate with the nevew of the king⁴ of Bretons. and in dede he durst therfore nomore dwelle within the land / but toke with hym al his fynaunce & goodes, and went out of the land by the high mountaynes. And as 32 telleth thistorye he founde on a day nighe by a fountayne a fayr lady to whom he told al his Fortune & aduenture / so that fynally they enamoured³ eche other,

A noble man
of Brut Britain,
falling out with
the nephew of
the King,

leaves the land;

and meeting a
beautiful lady
near a fountain,

¹ Fr. tablier.

² Fr. la brute bretaigne.

³ Fr. s'amouerent.

he marries her,
and in her
land builds
many towns
and castles;

¹ fol. 8 b.
and the country
is called Forests.

The knight,
quarrelling with
the lady,

she suddenly
disappears.

He afterwards
marries the
sister of the Earl
of Poitiers,

and has many
children by her,
of whom the
third born was
named Raymondin.

and the lady shewed to hym grett loue, & dide vnto
hym moch comforst. and he began within her land,
that was wast & deserte for to byld & make fayre
tounes & strong Castels. and was the land within 4
¹ short tyme peupled raisonably / And they dede calle
the land forestz, bycause that they founde it full of
grett wodes & thikk bushes, And yet at this day it is
called Forestz. It haped that this knight & this lady 8
fel at debate togidre. I ne wot not goodly how ne
wherfore / but that right sodaynly departed the lady
fro the knight, wherfore he was woful & heuy. and
notwithstandinge he grew & encreased euer in worship 12
and in prosperite. The noble men thanne of this land /
seeyng that they were without a lady purveyed hym of
oon to hys wyf, a moche gentil & fayre woman, sustir
to the Erle of Poitiers, which regned at that tyme, & 16
he begate on her many children males. emonge the
whiche was oon / that is to wete the iijde borne,
whiche was named Raymondyn, and was fayre, goodly
& gracyous, moche subtyl & wyty in all thinges. And 20
that same tyme² the said Raymondin might be xiiij
yere of age./

Cap. II. How the Erle of Poytiers prayde the Erle of Forests for to comme to the Feste 24 that he made of³ hys sone./

⁴ fol. 9.
The Earl of
Poitiers holds
a great feast

in honour of his
son Bertrand,

⁴ **T**he Erle of Poyters held a grett feste of a sone
that he had, and wold haue made hym to be
dowbed a knight. And no more children he had, but 28
only a fayre mayde that was called Blanche / and the
sone had to name Bertrand. [Thanne the Erle Emery]⁵
manded & desyred a moch fayre company for loue of
the knighthode of his sone / and amonges other he bode 32

² Fr. icelluy temps.

³ Fr. pour. ⁵ omitted by the translator.

& prayed the Erle of Forests to come to the feste,
& that he shuld bring with him thre of his sones, the
oldest, For he wold see them. Thanne the Erle of
4 Forestz went at his mandement in the moost honour-
able wyse that he coude, and with hym he led thre of
his sones. The feste was grette, and there were made
and dowbed many a knight for loue of Bertrand, sone
8 to the Erle of Poyters, that was þat day proffered to
thounourable & worshipfull ordere of knighthod. And
also was ther made and dowbed to a knight, theldest
sone of the Erle of Forestz, for he jousted moche wel
12 & fayre. And was the fest contynued and holden the
space of viij dayes. And the Erle of Poyters made &
gaf many & moche fayre & grett yestes. ¹And at the
departyng of the feste the Erle of Poyters demanded
16 of the Erle of Forestz, & prayed hym to leue with hym
Raymondin his nevew, and that he shuld neuer care
for hym For he wold purney for him wel. And the
erle of Forestz graunted it / and thus dwelled the said
20 Raymondyn with the Erle of Poyters his vncle, that
loued hym wel. And after toke the feste an ende
moche honourably & frendly. And as now cesseth
thistory to spek of the Erle of Forests, whiche re-
24 tourned with his two sones & al his fellowship vnto
his Countre. And begynneth oure hystory to pro-
cede fourth / and to spek of the Erle Emery, and of
Raymondyn./

28 Cap. III. How a forester camme to denounce
to the Erle Emery how there was within the
Forest of Coulombyers the moost meruayl-
lous wildbore that euer was sen byfore./

32 **T**hystorye certiffyeth to vs and also the veray
Cronykles that this Erle Emery was grauntfader

to which the
Earl of Forests
and his sons are
invited.

At the feast
many are
knighted.

When it is over,
the Earl of
Poitiers asks
the Earl of
Forests to leave
Raymondin in
his charge,

which is done.

The grandfather
of Earl Emery
was St. William.

¹ In French version Cap. III. begins from this point.

to saynt William that was Erle, and left al worldly pocessyons for to serue oure Creatour, and toke on hym the ordre & Religion of the whit mauntelles, an ordre or Religion so called. And therof I wil not 4 make grett locucion or talking¹; But I will procede fourth on our matere, and to spek of the Erle Emery.

The Earl was
worthy, and
learned in
astronomy,

Thistory thanne telleth to vs that this Erle was moche worthy & valyaunt a knight / and that loued euer 8 noblesse, And was the most wyse in the science of Astronomye that was in hys dayes, ne byfore syn that Aristotles regned. That tyme that the Erle Emery regned / thistory sheweth to vs that [he] coude many a 12 science,¹ & specially he was parfytte in the science of Astromy, as I haue said tofore. And knowe ye that

and devoted to
his nephew
Raymondin.

² fol. 10.

He had hounds
and hawks,

and one day
went to hunt a
wild boar in the
Forest of Coulombiers.

no more. and so dide the child his vncle, and peyned 16 hym moche to playse & to serue hym at gree, and to doo hym playsir in all maners. It is wel trouth ²that this Erle had many houndes and many haakes of al maneres. and [it] befell as thystory recounteth that 20 oon of the Foresters camme vnto the Erlis Court, & demanded³ or told that in the Forest of Coulombiers was the moost meruayllous wildbore that had be seen of longe tyme byfore, and that at hym shuld be the best 24 & fayrest dysport that eny gentylman shuld euer haue.

'By my feyth,' said the Erle, 'these tydynges plaise me wel. late the hunters & houndes be redy to morow by tymes. & we shall goo to the chasse.' 'My lord,' 28 said the Forester, 'at your playsire.' And al thus he departed fro the Erle / and made redy al that aparteyned to the chasse for to hunte at thoure that he had apoynted./

32

¹ Fr. que de moult de sciences estoit plain.

³ Fr. denoncier.

Cap. IV. How the Erle went to the chace
and Raymondyn with hym.

ND whan the day was comme that Erle Emery
A with grette foysen of barons and knightes departed
 out of the Cite of Poyters / and Raymondyn rode euer
 byside hym on a gret Courser the swerde girded about
 hym and the shelde¹ hehge ouer hys sholder. And whan
 they were comme to the Forest they byganne fourthwith
 to hunte, And the wildbore was founde that was fel &
 proude, & deuoured & kyld many houndes and toke
 his cours thrugh the Forest, For he was strongly
 chaffed, and they byganne for to folowe hym waloping
 a good paas, but the wildbore doubted nothinge / but
 meuyd & wered hym in suche a manere that there ne
 was so hardy a dogge ne hound that durst abyd hym,
 ne so hardy a hunter that durst hold the spere styl
 anenst hym for to hit & broche hym. And thanne
 camme bothe knightes and esquyers / but neuer oon was
 there so hardy that he durst sette foot on the grounde
 for to withstande & haue launched at hym. Thenne
 camme the Erle that cryed with a highe voyce. sayeng.
 'shal this swyne² abasshe us all.' And whan Ray-
 mondyn herde thus spek hys vncle, he was in hymself
 vergoynouse³ and shamed / and alighted from his
 courser and sette feet on grounde / and holding the
 swerde naked, yede courageously toward the said bore,
 and gaf to hym a strok with grette anger / And the
 bore dressed toward hym and made hym to fal on hys
 knees, but soone he stood up, And as preu⁴ hardy and
 valyaunt wold haue broched and threst hys swyrde
 within the booris heest / but the bore fledd, and so
 fast he ranne that there was neyther man ne hound
 but that he lost the sight of hym, but alone Ray-
 mondyn that was on horsbak, and so fast he folowed

Earl Emery,
his nephew
Raymondyn, and
many knights

¹ fol. 10 b.
go to the forest.

They come upon
the boar,

but the dogs
and the knights
are afraid of him.

Earl Emery
cries, 'Shall this
swine abasshe
us all?'

Raymondyn,
ashamed,
dismounts,

and attacks the
boar,

which runs away;

Raymondyn
follows on
horseback,

² Fr. *filz de truye.*³ Fr. *vergongne.*⁴ Fr. *preus.*

leaving all the
hunters behind.

His uncle, afraid,
gallops to him,
and bids him
give up the
chase,

but Raymondin
heeds not;

* fol. 11.
and the hunt
continues.

The horses fag,
leaving Earl
Emery and his
nephew alone on
the track.

They rest under
a tree,

from which the
Earl studies the
sky,

and praises God,

the bore that he outrannte al thoo that were at the chace, & lefte them behinde and founde hym self alone. Wherof the Erle, his vncle, was aferd / les that the bore shuld distroye hym. Wherfore the Erle waloped 4 aftir hys nevew Raymondin and with a high voyce escryed hym. ‘Fayre nevew, leve this chasse, and cursed be he that anounced it to vs, For yf this swyne hurt you I shall neuer haue joye in my herte.’ But Ray- 8 mondyn, whiche was chaffed,¹ doubted not of hys lyf, ne toke heede to none euyl Fortune that might befall 2 to hym therof / but euer withoute cesse folowed the said bore, For he was well horsed. And the erle folowed 12 euer hys nevew. What shuld auayll yf herof I shuld make a longe tale. Alle theire horses byganne to be chaffed and wery, & abode fer behinde, saaf only the Erle and Raymondyn, whiche chaced the bore so longe 16 that the nyght fel on them./ Thanne the Erle & his nevew stode styl and rested þem vnder a grette tree. And the Erle gan to sey to Raymondin, ‘Fayre nevew here shall we abyde tyl it be mone shyn.’ And Ray- 20 mondyn said to hym, ‘Sire, aftir your wille shall I doo.’ And soone aftir roos the moone fayre and bright./ Thenne the Erle that knew moche of the science of Astronomy dide loke & behelde the skye and 24 sawe the sterres full bright & clere, and the moone that was moche fayre without tache or spot, ne none obscure or darknes was seen about it /. he ganne sore to wepe. And aftir grette & deep sighynges said in this 28 manere. ‘Ha / ha / right mighty and veray god, how grette ben the meruaylles that thou haste lefte here bynethe / as to knowe parfytly bothe the vertues & the nature of many wounder and dyuerse condycions 32 of thinges, and of theire significacions or betoknynges. This might not be perfightly knownen, yf thou shadd nat vpon the men somewhat of thy full & deuyne grace,

¹ Fr. *eschauffé*.

And specyally of this meruayllous aduenture, the
 whiche I now see by the sterres whiche thou hast cre-
 ated & sitte by ordre on the firmament or skye / and
 4 that I knowe by the high science of astronomye / of
 the whiche by thy grace þou hast lente to me oon
 braunche of knowlege wherof I oughte to preyse /
 to thanke and to regracye¹. the hertily in thy highe
 8 mageste, wher to none may be compared. O veray &
 highe sire, how might this be raisonably as to know-
 lege humayne without it were by thy terrible jugement,
 For no man shuld not mowe haue & receyue wel for
 12 to do euer euyl. And notwithstanding I see & per-
 ceyue wel by ²the highe science of Astronomy / of
 whiche somme vnderstandyng I haue / to me leued³
 of thy pure grace what hit segnyfyeth or betokneth,
 16 wherof moche meruailled I am.' These wordes said /
 the Erle byganne to wepe and to sighe more strongly
 than he dide byfore. Thanne Raymondin whiche hadd
 kyndled the fyre with hys fyreyron and that had herde
 20 the moost part of all that the Erle Emery had sayd /
 said to hym in this manere / ' My lord, the fyre is wel
 kyndled, comme and warme you. and I byleue that within
 a while we shall haue somme tydynge of your meyne,
 24 For as my thought ryght now I herd barking of dogges.'
 'By my feith,' said the Erle. 'of the chace I gyue
 nomore force / but of that I see' / And thanne he be-
 helde vpward vnto the sky and wept ful sore / And
 28 Raymondyn þat so moche loued hym, said to hym /
 ' Ha / ha / my lord, for godis loue lette that thing⁴ be.
 For it apparteyneth not to so highe a prince as ye be,
 For to putte or sette hys herte therto / ne for to en-
 32 quyre of suche artes, ne of suche thynges. but wel it
 behouyth to you, and that shalbe wel doon to regracye,
 and to thanke god of that he hath purueyed you and
 promoted vnto so highe and so noble a lordship as

¹ Fr. *gracier*.³ Fr. *presté*.² fol. 11 b.

and weeps.

Raymondin kindles a fire,

and asks the Earl to warm himself,

and says he hears the dogs barking.

The Earl being still in tears,

Raymondin tries to divert his attention,

but he says he
sees wonderful
adventures in
the sky.

Raymondin asks
what they are.

The Earl says,
that if a subject
¹ fol. 12.
were to slay his
lord, then

that subject
would found
a noble line.

Raymondin
answers, that he
cannot believe it,

because it is
against right
and reason.

While they speak
they hear a great
affray;

they stop and
listen;

youre is. And as me semeth it is grette symplenes to take ony sorowe or heuynes of suche thinges that may not helpe / hyndre ne lette' / 'Ha / ha / fole,' said the Erle, 'yf thou wyst and knew the grette meruaylles & 4 wunderfull auentures that I see, thou shuldest be al abasshed.' Thanne Raymondyn, that thought none euyl, answeryd in this manere. 'My right dere & doubted lord, I pray you to telle it to me / yf it is thinge that I 8 may knowe.' 'By god,' said the Erle, 'thou shalt knowe it / and I wold that neyther god ne the world shuld demande of the nothinge of it / and that thad- uenture shuld befall to the, on myn owne self / For 12 from hens fourth I am old and haue frendes ynough for to hold my lordshipes. but yet I loue the so moche that I would that so grett a worship were haped to thee / And the auenture is suche / that yf at the same 16 ooure a subget dide ¹slee hys lord he shuld becomme the moost mighty and moost worshiped that euer camme out of hys lynage or kynrede, And of hym shuld procede and yssue so subtle a lynee / that of it shuld be 20 menciooun and remembraunce made vnto thende of the world. And know thou for certayn that this is trouth which I telle to the.' Thanne ansuerde Raymondyn that neuer he shuld mowe byleue that it were trouth / 24 and that it were ayenst al right and reason / that a man shuld haue wele for to doo euyl, and for to doo suche a mortal treson. 'Now byleue thou it surely,' said the Erle to Raymondyn, 'For it is as I tel to the.' 28 'By my feith,' said Raymondin / 'yet shall I nat byleue it.' And as the Erle Emerye and Raymondin spak of the said auenture togidre, they herd al alonge the wod a grette affray / and Raymondyn toke thanne 32 hys swerd that lay on the erthe. and lyke wyse dede the erle, And abode longe thus thinkinge for to knowe what it was, and stode byfore the fyre / on that syde as them semyd that the stryf was. And longe in suche 36

a state they abode tyl that they sawe a wounder grette
 & horrable bore moche chaffed commynge toward
 them. Thanne gan sey Raymondyn, 'My lord, clemme
 4 you vpon som tree lest that this wyld bore hurte you,
 and lette me dele with hym.' 'By my feyth,' said the
 Erle / 'god forbede that I leue the in suche auenture
 al alone.' And whan Raymondyn herde this, he went
 8 & stode byfore the bore hauyng hys swerd on his feet,¹
 and wilfu^H² for to dystroye & slee hym / and the wild
 bore tourned hym and went toward the Erle. Thenne
 byganne the dolour of Raymondyn / and the grette
 12 hape that therof camme aftirward to hym, As the very
 & trew history recounteth to vs.

soon the boar
approaches
them.

Raymondin goes
to slay him.

Cap. V. How Raymondyn slew the Erle of Poyters, his vnkle.

16 ³ IN this part recounteth thystory, that whan Ray-
 mondyn cam ayenst the said bore for to kepe
 hym that he shuld not hurte his lord / the bore anoone
 hurted to hym, & ranne fast toward the Erle, whiche
 20 seeyng the wyld bore comme / lefste his swerd, and toke
 a short spere, and strayght held it downward before
 hym. And the Erle, that knew & wyst moche of the
 chasse, broched the bore thrughe the brest / but the
 24 Erle fe^Ht down on his knees. And thanne Raymondyn,
 holdyng hys swerde in his hand, camme toward the bore,
 and wold haue smytte hym betwene the four⁴ legges,
 For he leye vpsodounne the bely vpward. and suche
 28 a stroke gaaf Raymondyn to the bore, that the blade of
 hys swerde brake / so that the poynte of it sprang
 ayenst the Erlis stomak, & wounded hym sore / in so
 moche that he deyed therof. And Raymondyn, which
 32 was sore chaffed / seeyng hys wepen broken, and not

³ fol. 125.

The boar comes
near the Earl,

who pierces him.

Raymondin
strikes also,
but his sword
breaks and
wounds the Earl,
so that he dies.

¹ Fr. *l'espée au poing*, mistranslation for 'in his fist.'

² Fr. *par bonne volonté de la destruire*.

⁴ Fr. *quatre*.

1 fol. 13.

Raymondin kills
the boar,and then sees
that his uncle is
dead.He weeps and
laments pite-
ously,and remembers
that such an
adventure would
make a man
famous.

2 fol. 13 b.

yet perceyuyng^t his mortal werk / toke the spere, &
 so strongly broched it thrughe the bore, that he slew
 hym. But whan he dide loke toward his vncle, and
 that he sawe hym all bloody / he went, and wold haue 4
 had hym to stand vpon his feet, but it was for nought.
 he thenne pulled out of hys brest the piece of the
 swerd^d, and knew that it was hys dede /. Moche
 meruayllously thanne byganne Raymondin to sighc & 8
 to complayne, & wept and lamented piteously, sayeng in
 this manere : ‘ Ha / ha / false fortune, how moche art
 thou peruerse & euyl, that hath doon to be slain by me
 hym that loued me so moche, and that had doon to me 12
 so moche good ? Ha / god fader almighty / wher shal
 now be the land where this harde & false synner shal
 mowe abyde / For in certayn all they that shall here
 spek of this grett mysdede shal juge me / & with good 16
 right, to dey of a shamfull deth, For a more false ne
 more euyl treson dide neuer no synner. / Ha / erthe
 cleue & open the / & deuoure thou me fourthwith, and
 lete me fall with the moost obscure & derk angel 20
 within helle, þat somtyme was the fayrest of all other
 in heuen, For wel I haue deserued it.’ In this dolour
 & woo was Raymondyn a longe space of tyme, & was
 moche þoughtfull & wroth / and bethought hym self, 24
 & said in this manere / ‘ My lord & vncle, that lyeth
 deed yonder, sayd to me / that yf suche an auenture
 shuld come to me, that I shuld be worshiped more
 than ony man of my lynage. but I now see wel al the 28
 contrary / For truly I shalbe þe moost vnhappy &
 dyshonoured man that euer was borne of woman / and
 by my feyth I haue wel deserued it / it is wel raison
 & right. But notwithstanding ²syth that now it may 32
 none oþerwyse be / I shal dystourne me out of this
 land, and shal goo som wher for to purchasse myn
 aduenture, suche as god wil send^d to me in to somme
 good place, where as I may take & do penitence for my 36

synne.' And thanne Raymondyn camme to hys lord / Raymondin
and sore wepyng, kyssed hym with so heuy & woeful
herte / that thenne he had nat mow say one only word
4 for all the gold in the world /. And soone aftir that
he had kyssed hym, he layed his foot on the sterop
and lepe vpon his hors / and departed, holding his way
thruh the myddel of the Forest, moche dyscomforted,
8 & rode apas vnknowing the way, ne whether he
went / but only by hap & att auenture, And made
suche a sorowe that there nys no personne in the world
that coude thinke ne sey the vth part of hys dolour /.

12 **W**han Raymondyn departed fro his lord, and that
he had lefte hym deed beside the fyre, and
the wild bore also / he rode so longe thrugh the
Forest, euer wepyng and complaynyng so sore that
16 it was gret pite for to see & here hym / that about
mydnyght he aprouched nygh to a fontayne of fayerye,
named þe fontayne of soyf / And many one of the
Countre þer about called hit the fontayne of fayerye,
20 bycause that many a meruaylle fel & happed there
many tymes in tyme passed. And was this fontaynne
in a wunderfull & meruayllous place / and ouer it was
a rocli of meruayllous height / and al alonge the said
24 Fontaynne was a fayre medowe, nygh to the high Forest.
And wel trouth it is that the moone dide shynne at that
tyme ryght clere & bright, And the hors ledd Ray-
mondyn whiche way that he wold, For no heede nor
28 ¹aduys he had of nothing, for cause of the gret
dysplaysaunce that he had within hym self. And
notwithstanding that he slept, hys hors ledd hym in
this state so longe that he was comme wel nygh to the
32 fontayne. And at that same tyme were there [thre]
ladyes, that played & dysported them / amongis the
whiche oon was auctorised of the other as maistresse &
lady ouer them, Of the whiche lady I wil now spek
36 aftir that thistory telleth.

Raymondin
sadly kisses his
dead lord,

leaps on his
horse, and rides
through the
forest

till he comes
nigh to the fairy
Fountain of Soif.

He falls asleep
on his horse,
1 fol. 14.

which journeys
on to the
fountain,

where three
ladies disport
themselves.

Cap. VI. How Raymondyn camme to the
Fontayne of soyf, wher he founde Melusyne,
and two other ladyes with her.

Unknown to
himself Ray-
mondin is
carried by his
horse

² fol. 14b.

past the Fairy
Fountain.

The chief lady
there feignedly
complains of
Raymondin not
greeting them,

she stops his
horse,

and reproves
him.

Raymondin does
not hear,

THystory saith, that so longe bare the hors Ray- 4
mondyn thus pensefull¹ & heuy of herte of the
myshap that was comme to hym, that he ne wyst where
he was, ne whither he went / ne in no manere he ledd
hys hors / but his hors ledd hym where that he wold, 8
For Raymondin touched ²not the brydell / and herd
ne saw nought / so sore was hys wit troubled. And
thus he passed byfore the fontaynne where the ladyes
were, without hauyng eny sight of them. but the 12
hors that sawe them, was sodaynly afraied, and fledd
thens, rannynge moche fast. And thanne she that was
the gretest lady of them thre, sayd in this manere :
'By my feyth, he that rode now & passed byfore vs, 16
semith to be a moche gentyl man / and, neuertheles,
he maketh of it no semblaunt / but he sheweth the
semblaunt of a vylayne or kerle, that hath passed
so before ladyes without to haue salewed them.' And 20
all this said she feynyngly / to thende that the other
shuld nat perceyue to what thinge she tended, For she
wyst & knew wel how it was *with hym*, as ye shal
here say in thystory herafter. And thanne she gan 24
say to the other : 'I goo to make hym spek, For he
semeth to be asleep.'³ She departed fro the other
two ladyes, and yede to Raymondyn, and toke the
hors by the brydell & made hym to stand styl, and 28
said in this manere : 'By my feyth, sire vassal, hit
commeth to you of grette pryd or of grette rudesse for
to passe byfore ony ladyes without spekyng or somme
salutacion / how be it that bothe rudesse & pryd 32
may be in you.' And the lady cessed as thenne of her
wordes / but Raymondyn herde nor vnderstod, ne

¹ Fr. *pensif*.

³ 'a sheep' in MS.

ansuerd her not. And she, as angry & wroth, sayd
 ones ayen to hym : ‘ And how, sire musarde, are ye so
 dyspytous that ye dayne nat ansuere to me ? ’ And yet
 4 he ansuered neuer a word. ‘ By my feith,’ sayd she
 within her self, ‘ I byleue nonne other / but that this
 yong man slepeth vpon his hors / or ellis he is eyther
 dombe or def / but as I trow I shal make hym wel to
 8 spek, yf he euer spak byfore.’ And thenne she toke
 and pulled strongly hys hand, sayeng in this manere :
 ‘ Sire vassal, ye sleep.’ Thanne Raymondyn was
 astonyed ¹ and affrayed, as one is whan another awaketh
 12 hym fro slepe / and toke hys swerd, wenying to hym
 that it had be hys vnelis meyne, that wold haue take
 and slayn hym. And the lady thanne perceyued wel
 that he yet had not seen her, and, al lawghing, bygan
 16 to say to hym, ‘ Sire vassal, with whom wyl you
 bigynne the bataille ? / your enemys ben not here,
 And knowe you, fayre sire, that I am of your party or
 syde ? ’ And whan Raymondyn herd her spek, he be-
 20 held her, and perceyued the gret beaulte that was in
 her, and toke of hit grett meruayl, For it semed to
 hym that neuer byfore he had not seen none so fayre.
 And thenne Raymondyn descendid from hys hors, and
 24 bowed hys knees, and made reuerence vnto her, and
 said : ‘ My dere lady, pardonne to me myn Ignoraunce
 & vlylonny that I haue doo toward you, For certaynly
 I haue mystaken ouermuche anenst your noble per-
 28 sonne. And neuertheles, I ne sawe ne herd neuer
 what ye haue said tyl that ye toke me by the hand.
 and knowe ye, that I thoughte moche at that tyme on
 a thinge that sore lyeth nygh to my herte / and vnto
 32 god I pray deuoutly that amendes I may make vnto
 you / and that of hys grace I may at myn honour be
 out of this peyne, whiche hurteth myn herte sore.’
 ‘ By my feyth,’ sayd the lady / ‘ it is wel said, For as
 36 for to bygynne eny thinge, the name of god most first

which enrages
her;

she sees he
sleeps,

and wakes him
suddenly,

¹ fol. 15.

whereat he is
affrighted,

but the lady
soothes him.

He admires her
beauty,

for he had seen
none so fair
before.

He asks pardon
for his neglig-
ence.

The lady asks
Raymondin
where he travels
to;

¹ fol. 15 b.

he says he has
lost his way,

but she calls him
by his name,
and tells him
not to deceive
her.

This abashes
Raymondin.

The lady
recounts to him
his adventure,

which abashes
him yet more.

He asks how she
knows of it.

be called to mans help / and I byleue you wel / that ye herd not what I haue said / but, fayre sire, whither goo you att this tyme of nyght / telle hit hardyly to me / yf goodly ye may dyscouere it. And yf you 4 knowe not the way / wel I shal dresse you to it / For there nys neyther way ne path but that I knowe it wel, and therof ye may trust on me hardyly.' 'By my feith,' said Raymondyn, ¹'gramercy, lady, of 8 your curtoysye. And ye shal knowe it, my dere lady, sith that youre desyre is for to know it, I haue lost the high way syn almost yestirday none vnto now / and I ne wot where I am.' Thanne perceyued she that 12 he² kept hys faytte secret fro her / and said to hym : 'By god, fayre frend Raymondyn, ye shuld not lyde nothinge fro me, For I wot wel how it standeth with you.' And thenne whan Raymondyn herd that she 16 named hym by hys owne name, he was so abasshed that he wzyst not what he shuld ansuere. And she þat sawe wel that he was shamfuþ of that she had named hym, and that she wzyst so moche of hys secret & 20 CounseyH, sayd to hym in this manere : 'Forsouthe, Raymondyn, I am she after god that may best counseylle the / and that may furthre and enhaunse the in this mortal lyf. and all thin aduersytees & mysdedes 24 most be tourned in to wele / nougħt auaylleth to the for to hyde them from me. For wel I wot that thou hast slayn thy lord / as moche by myshap / as wylfully / how be it that at that ouure thou supposest not 28 to haue doon it. and I wot wel all the wordes that he told vnto þe of the arte of Astronomye, wherin duryng hys lyf he was right expert.' Whan Raymondyn herde this he was more abasshed than he was tofore / 32 and said to the lady : 'Right dere lady, ye telle to me the trouth of alle things that ye say ; but moche I meruaylle me how ye may so certaynly knowe it / and

² 'she' in MS.

who told it so soone to you?' And she ansuerd to hym in this manere: 'Be not thou abasshed therof, For I knowe the full trouth of thy faytte. And wene
 4 nor suppose thou nat that it be fautesye or dyuels werk of me and of my wordes, For I certfyfe the,
 Raymondyn,¹ that I am of god, and my byleue is / as
 a Catholique byleue oughte for to be. and I lete the
 8 to wete that without me and my counseyll / thou
 mayst not comne to thende of thy faytte. but yf thou
 wilt byleue stedfastly all that thyn vnkle Emerye said
 vnto the, hit shalbe profytable to the, with the help of
 12 god and of me. And I say so moche that I shal make
 the for to be the gretest lord that euer was of thy
 lynage, and the gretest and best lyuelod² man of them
 al.' Whan Raymondyn vnderstod^d the promysse of
 16 the lady / he remembred the wordes that hys lord
 told vnto hym. And consyderyng within hym self the
 grete parels³ wherin he was as exilled and banysshed
 out of hys Countre & fro his frendes, said [to hym-
 20 self]⁴ that he shuld take thauenture for to byleue the
 lady of all that she shuld doo or say to hym, For but
 ones as he said he shuld passe the cruell paas of the
 deth. And to the lady he ansuerde full humbly in
 24 this manere: 'My right dere lady, I thanke you moche
 of the promysse that ye do and proffre to me. For ye
 shall see & knowe that this shal not abyde or tarye by
 me for no traueyll that ye can aduyse / but that I
 28 shall euer doo your playsire, yf it be possible to be
 doo / and that a cristen man may, or ought to doo,
 with honour.' 'By my feyth, Raymondin,' said the
 lady / 'that is said of free herte, For I shall not say
 32 nor counseille you nothing / but that good & wele shal
 comme therof. but first of alle,' said she / 'ye most
 promyse to me that ye shall take me to your wyf.
 and make you no doubte of me / but that I am of

'Not by witchcraft,' she replies,

¹ fol. 16.

and advises him to believe what Earl Emery foretold,

and promises to make him a great lord.

He thanks her,

and undertakes to do her pleasure.

She asks him to marry her;

² Fr. *terrien*.

³ Fr. *pérlz*.

⁴ Fr. *s'advisa*.

god.¹ And thanne Raymondyn yede & ganne say, & sware in this manere, ‘Lady dere / by my feith / sith that ye ensure me that it is soo / I shal doo aftir² my power all that ye wyl commaunde me for to doo / And 4 indide I lawfully³ promytte you that so shal I doo.’ ‘Yet Raymondyn,’ sayd she, ‘ye most swere another thinge.’ ‘What it is, my lady,’ said Raymondyn, ‘I am redy / yf it be thinge that goodly I may doo.’ 8. ‘ye,’ said she / ‘and it may not tourne to you to no dommage⁴ / but to all wele. Ye muste promytte to me, Raymondyn, vpon all the sacraments & othes that a man very catholique & of good feith may doo and 12. swere, that neuer while I shalbe in your company, ye shal not peyne ne force your self for to see me on the Saturday / nor by no manere ye shal not enquyre that day of me, ne the place wher I shalbe.’ And whan 16 she had thus said to Raymondyn, he yet ageyn said to her in this manere: ‘On the parel of my sowle I swere to you / that neuer on þat day I ne shal doo nothing that may hyndre ne adommage⁵ you in no manere of 20 wyse’ / ‘and I,’ said she, ‘ne shal doo nor thinke to none other thinge but in what manere I shall mowe best encresse in worship and honour, both you and your lynee.’ And Raymondyn yede & gan sey to her 24. in this manere, ‘Soo shall I doo it to the playsire of god.’/

THanne,’ said the lady / ‘I shal now telle how ye most doo / doubte you not of nothing. but goo 28 fourthwith vnto Poyters, And whan ye shal comme there / many one ye shal fynd commyng fro the chasse that shall axe to you tydynge of the Erle, your vnkle. and to them ye shall ansuere in this manere / “how / 32 is he not yet comme ayen?” And they shal sey “nay.” and thanne ye shal say, “I neuer sawe hym syn that

The lady bids
Raymondin go to
Poitiers,

where the
citizens will ask
tidings of his
uncle.

He is to say he
has not seen
him,

¹ Fr. *de par Dieu.* ³ Fr. *leaulment.*

² Fr. *prejudice.* ⁵ Fr. *soit en vostre prejudice.*

² fol. 16 b.

he promises.

She asks him
never to try to
see her on
Saturdays;

this he also
promises.

the chasse was at the strengest, and whan ye lost hym" / and semblaunt ye most mak to be abasshed more than eny other. And soone after shul comme the

and to feign surprise at his absence.

4 hunters and other of hys meyne, and 1shal brynge with them the corps deed within a litere / & his woundes shal seme to euery man aduys to be made by the wildbores teth. and they shal say alle, that the wildbore

¹ fol. 17.

When Emery's body is found they will think the boar killed him,

8 hath slayn hym, And yet they shall say that the Erle kyled the sayd bore / and many one shal hold it for a hardy & valiaunt dede. thus the dolour & woo shal bygynne to be moche grete. The Erle Bertrand, his

and will mourn,

12 sone, & hys doughtir Blanche, & allo oþer of hys meyne, bothe lesse & grete togidre, shal make grete sorowe / and so shall ye doo with them. and ye shall putte on you the blak gowne as they shall. And aftir

which Raymondin must do too.

16 this nobly doon, and the terme assigned & take whan the barons shall comme for to doo theire obeysaunce & homage vnto the yong^t Erle, ye shal retourne hither to me the day byfore the lordes & barons make theire

After doing homage to the new earl

20 homage / and that tyme att this same place ye shal fynde me.' Thanne as Raymondyn wold haue departed from Melusyne to haue take hys leve of her / she said to hym in this manere: ' Hold, my redoubted frend /

he is to return to the Fountain.

24 for to bygynne & assemble our loue, I gyue you these two rynges, of whiche the stones ben of grette vertue. For the one hath suche approprieté, that he to whomme hit shal be gyuen by paramours² or loue, shal not dey

Before Raymondin leaves Melusine she gives him two rings;

28 by no stroke of no manere of wepen, ne by none armes / as longe as he shal bere it on hym / And the other is of suche vertue, that he that bereth it on hym shal haue victory of all his euyl willers or enemyes / al

one has power to keep him safe from hurt,

32 be it pleyng in Courtes, or fyghtyng³ in feldes, or ellis whersoever it be: and thus, my frend, ye may goo surely.' Thanne toke Raymondin leue of the lady, and embrased & kyssed her swetly & moch^h frendly

the other will insure victory to the wearer.

Then Raymondin leaves his lady

² Fr. *par amours.*

³ Fr. *en plaidoirie ou meslée.*

fol. 17 b.

¹as she on whom all hys hoop was leyd. For he was
as thenne² so moche esprised³ of her loue / that al that
she sayd / doubtles he held it for trouth. and raison
it was,⁴ as ye shall here herafter in thystorye./

4

Cap. VII. How Raymondin, by the counseyl
of the lady, went to Poytiers.

and rides fast to
Poitiers.

RAymondyn leptē vpon his hors, and the lady
dressed and putte hym in to the high way of 8
Poytiers, and [he] departed fro the lady. And at
departyng Raymondyn was ful sory, For he loued
alredy so moche her felawship, that wel he wold euer
haue be with her. Thenne thinkynge, he byganne 12
fast to ryde toward the Cite of Poyters. And the
said lady retourned toward the said Fontaynne, where
the two other ladyes were, & abode her there / of
which ladyes thystory leueth here to speke/. 16

⁵ fol. 18.When he arrives
they ask for his
lord;he answers that
he has not seen
him since the
great chase be-
gan.

Others arrive,

Now saith thystorye, that Raymondyn rode so fast
that soone he was comme into Poytiers, where
he ⁵founde many one that were retourned fro the
chasse, which demanded of hym, ‘where is my lord?’ 20
‘how,’⁶ said thanne Raymondyn / ‘is he not comme?’ /
and they ansuerd ‘nay.’ And he said to them, ‘I
sawe hym neuer syn that the grete chasse bygan, and
that the bore scaped fro the houndes.’ And while that 24
they spak of this matere amongt them alle / the hunters
& other folk arryued there fro the chasse, som now
and thenne, the whiche all said as Raymondyn had
sayd. And som said that neuer they had seen suche 28
& so meruayllous a chasse, ne so horrifyble a bore. And
many one said that the bore was comme fro somme other
land, For none so grete / nor that ranne so fast sawe
they neuer. Thanne was euery man meruaylled / how 32

² Fr. *desjà*.³ Fr. *surprins*.⁴ Fr. *il avoit raison*.⁶ Fr. *comment*.

the Erle taryed so longe. and they went to the yate
for to see if he camme, & abode hym þer a longe space.
and euer camme folk that said as the other had sayd /
4 and that they lay all that nyght in the sayd Forest, For
they had lost theyre way. Thanne was all the people
of Poyters wooufull & heuy for loue of theyr lord, that
taryed so longe / and speyally the Countesse, the said
8 Erlis wyf. but more wooufull & heuyer they were
within a lytel while after/. but still no Earl Emery,
whereat the people mourn.

Cap. VIII. How the Erle Emery was brought vnto Poitiers deed within a Lyttere.

12 **T**Hystorye ¹telleth vnto vs, that so longe they abode
at the gate with Raymondyn, that they sawe
commynge toward the Cite a grete multitude of people.
and as they dide approuch & camme nygh, they herd
16 and vnderstod the piteous voyces of them, wherof they
were all meruaylled / and bygan many one to doubt
lest that they shuld haue hadd som trouble or somme
empeschement.² And so longe they abod, that they
20 whiche bare the corps of theire lord camme vnto them,
sore lamentyng & piteously waylyng, sayeng to them
in this manere: ‘wepe ye, and wepe ayen, & clothe
you al in blak, For the bore hath slain our good lord,
24 the Erle Emerye.’ And after the corps camme two
hunters, that bare the grette bore. and thus they
entred into the Cite, makyng grete sorowe. And alle
the people of the Cite, seeyng theyre lord deed, by-
28 ganne pyteously to crye / sayeng in this manere: ‘Ha /
ha, cursed be he of god that first anounced this chasse.’
The sorow & dolour was there so grete that no man sawe
²neuer no greter. And making suche sorowe camme
32 vnto the Palleys / and there was the Corps leyed. And
bycause one ought not to kepe ne mayntenne longe
A crowd is seen approaching the city gate;
their piteous voices make the townsmen marvel.
They arrive, bearing their lord's body;
two hunters follow, bearing the boar.
The citizens, weeping,

² Fr. *empeschement*.

and all the people sorrow.

sorowe, I passe it ouer lyghtly. The Countesse & her children made ouergrete sorow / and so dide the Barons and al the Comynaltee of the land. And knowe ye also / that so dide Raymondyn, as it foloweth. / 4

Raymondin sorrows more than any other.

Raymondyn made grete sorowe and greter than eny other, and sore repented hym of hys mysdede, And so moche / that yf it had not be the hoop & comfort of his lady, he had not mowe withhold hym self, 8 but þat he had sayd vnto them al hys aventure, for cause of the grete contricion that he had of the deth of hys vnkle and lord. But I wil not spek long of this matere. Soone thobsequye was doon moche nobly & 12 richely within the Chirche of our lady of Poytiers, after the custome that was at that tyme, And ye muste knowe that the good folk of the land that had lost þeir lord were full of heuynes and of sorow / and they 16 fourthwith toke the said bore, and byfore the said Chirch of our lady they brent it / And as it is wel trouth that there nys so grete a sorowe, but that within

The Earl's obsequy is done in the Church,

foure dayes¹ it is somewhat peased / the barons of the 20 land thaune yede and swetly comforted the Countesse and her two children aftir theire power / and so moche they dide that her grete sorowe was somewhat peased. But þe sorowe of Raymondyn grew & waxed more and 24 more, as wel bycause of his grete mysdede / as for the grete loue of whiche he loued hys vnkle. It was thanne ordeyned & concluded by the CounseyH that alle the Barons of the land shuld be sente fore, & boden to 28 comme at a certayn day for to doo theire homage to theyre gracyous lord, the sone of the said late Erle.

afterwards the boar is burnt.

But þe sorowe of Raymondyn knew of it, he toke hys hors and alone yssued out of Poytiers and entred within the 32 Forest, for to goo & hold hys couenaunt vnto his lady./

Soon after the Barons are sent for, to do homage to their new lord,

² fol. 19 b.
on knowledge of
which Raymondin returns
to his land.

¹ Fr. *trois jours*.

Cap. IX. How Raymondyn retourned toward
hys lady, and sawe a Chapell whiche neuer
he had seen before./

4 **T**Hystory telleth to vs that so longe rode Ray-
mondyn that he camme into the Forest of Cou-
lombiers, & passed thrugh the lytel toun, & went vpon
the mountayne and yede so longe that he perceyued
8 the medowes whiche were vnder the roche, that was
aboue the Fontayne of Soyf, and sawe a hous made of
stone in a manere of a ChapeH. And knowe ye that Ray-
mondyn had be there many [a] tyme, but neuer tofore
12 he had seen it / and went neuer to hit ; And before the
place he perceyued many ladyes, knyghtes, & Squyers
whiche made to hym grete feste and praysed hym
gretly. Wherfor he meruaylled gretly, For one of them
16 said to hymme : ¹‘ Sire, alight & come toward my lady
that abydeth astir you within her pauyllon or tente.’
‘ By my feyth,’ sayd Raymondyn / ‘ hit plaiseth me wel
so for to doo.’ Soone he descendid from hys hors &
20 yede with them, which conueyed hym toward the lady
muche honourably. And thanne the lady camme to
mete hym, & toke hym by the hand and ledd hym
into her tente, And satte both vpon a bed² of parement
24 moche ryche / and all the other abode without. Thanne
byganne the lady for to raisonne³ with Raymondyn, &
said to hym in this manere : ‘ My dere frende, wel I
wote that wel ye haue hold⁴ alle that I introduysed, or
28 taught you of, And therfore fro hens fourthon I shall
trust you the more.’ ‘ Lady dere,’ sayd Raymondyn /
‘ I haue founde so good a bygynnyng¹ in your wordes,
that nothing ye shall commande to me that humayn
32 body may or oughte to comprehende or vndertake /
but that I wyl & shal doo it after your playsire.’
‘ Raymondyn,’ said she / ‘ for me ye shall vndertake and he in her.

Raymondin rides
to Coulombiers,

where he sees a
new chapel,

and knights and
ladies.

¹ fol. 20.

He is asked to
dismount,

and is led by his
lady to a tent.

His lady ex-
presses confi-
dence in him,

² Fr. couche.

³ Fr. à arésonner.

⁴ Fr. tenu.

A knight announces dinner;

Raymondin marvels at the great company,

¹ fol. 20 b.

and asks his lady whence they come.

She tells him they are at his service.

After dinner his lady leads Raymondin beside the bed;

where she tells of the homage that is to be done to Earl Bertrand.

Raymondin is to go to Poitiers, but to let every one do homage before he does,

no thing^t, but that of it ye shal comme to your worship /.' Thenne camme there a knyght whiche kneled before her / and after his reuerence made / dressed hys wordes toward her, & said : ' My lady, al thing^t is 4 redy / ye shal comme whan it playse you.' And the lady ansuerde & said / ' Couere your heed, fayre sire.' Thanne the lady & Raymondyn wesshe theire handes & sette them at a moche ryche table. and within the 8 sayd pauyllon were many other tables dressed, where dide sette many knightes and ladyes / and whan Raymondyn saw this appareyll, he meruaylled moche / and demanded of hys lady fro whens so grete a felawship 12 was comme vnto her. And to hys demande the lady ansuerde nothing^t. Wherfore Raymondyn asked of her ayen, ' My lady, fro ¹whens are comme vnto you so many of gentyl men and ladyes ?' ' By my feyth, Raymondyn, 16 my frend^t, sayde the lady, ' it is no nede to you for to be meruaylled therof, For they be all at your com-mandement, & redy for to serue you / & many other also that now ye see not.' Thanne held Raymondyn 20 hys peas / and so many courses & of dyuerse metes were before them brought, that meruayll it was to see it. And whan they had dyned, they weshe theire handes / and graces said & all thinges doon / the lady 24 toke Raymondyn by the hand & ledd hym beside the beed, & euerychon voyded the pauyllon, and wheras they lyst went, or wher they oughten for to haue goo, eche one aftir theyre estate /.

28

THanne said the lady to Raymondyn : ' My frend^t, to morowe is the day that the barons shal comme for to doo theire homage vnto the yong Erle Bertrand. And know you, my frend, that there must ye be / & 32 shal doo as I shal telle you, yf it playse you so to doo / Now vnderstand & reteyne wel my wordes. Ye shal abyde þer vnto the tyme that all the Baronnes shal haue doo their homages, and thenne ye shal putte your self 36

fourth byfore the said Bertrand, and of hym ye shal demande a yefte, for the salary & remuneracioun of alle the seruyse that euer ye dide vnto his fader. And 4 telle to hym wel, how that ye ne demande of hym nothre toune, ne Castel, nor other thing of no grete value. and I wote wel that he shal acorde or graunt it to you. For the barons shalle counseylle hym for to 8 doo soo, And as soone as he shal haue graunted your requeste / demande of hym to haue on this roche & about it / as moche of ground¹ as the hyd² or skynne of a hert may comprehendeth./ and freely he shal gyue it 12 to you. In so moche that none shal now lette nor empesche you therof, by reason of ¹homage, nother by charge of rente or other ordynaunce, and whan he shall haue graunted it to you, take þerof his *lettres*, 16 vnder hys grete Seele, and vnder the seelles of the peris,² or lordes pryncipal of the land. And whan that al this ye shal haue doo / on the morow next folowing³ after that / as ye shalbe comyng homward 20 agayn / ye shal mete on your way a good man, which shal bere within a sac the skynne of a hert / and ye shall bye it / and for it ye shal pay asmoch as the said man shal aske you for it / and after ye shall make it 24 for to be cutte in the smallest and narrowest waye that is possible for to be cutte, after the manere of a thonge. And after, lette your place be delyuered vnto you / the whiche ye shal fynd all marked & kerued, and all 28 the trees pulled to the ground, there as it shal plaise me for to be / And as for to bryng⁴ the two endes of the sayd thong³ of the hyd² togidre about the said place / yf it happe that greter ground¹ may be com- 32 prysed within it ye shall doo it to be leyd downward vnto the valey / & there, at both thendes of the said thonge or leder / shal spryng out of the roche a fayre fountains, whiche in tyme to come shalbe full necessary

and at last he is
to ask from
Bertrand a gift

of the rock, and
as much land as
a hart's skin can
cover,

¹ fol. 21.

and to get a char-
ter for it, signed
and sealed.

Raymondin is to
buy a skin of a
man he will meet,

and have it cut
into a thong,
then get the land
delivered,

and lay the thong
down, when a
fountain will
spring out where
the ends meet.

² Fr. pers.

³ courroie.

and conuenable. Goo þenne fourth, my dere frend / and doo hardyly doubtles all that I haue said. For all your werkes shalbe of good expediciooun, and without eny trouble or lettyng' / and on the mornine next after that 4 your yefte shalbe graunted and your lettres delyuered to you, ye shall retourne hither to me.' Raymondyn thanne ansuerde, 'My lady, after my power I shal fulfylle al your playsire' / And thenne they embraced 8 and kyssed eche other / and toke leue one of other./ Here cesseth thystory of them / and begynneth for to spek of Raymondyn, whiche toke lyps hors, and rode toward Poitiers as ¹hastily as he myght./

Then he is to return.

Raymondin sets out for Poitiers.
¹ fol. 21 b.

12

Cap. X. How Raymondyn, after that the barons had doon theire homage vnto the yong¹ Erle / demanded of the Erle a yefte, the whiche he graunted to hym./

16

Raymondin rides to Poitiers,

where he finds many barons,

² fol. 22.

who render hom-age to the young Earl.

THystorye telleth to vs, that Raymondyn rode so longe that he camme vnto Poytiers, wheras he founde many a high baron, which were comme there for to make homage to the yong¹ Erle Bertrand / and they 20 dyde grete honour and reuerence to Raymondyn, and preyseed hym right moche. And the next morow they yede all togidre vnto Saynt Hylary of Poyters, where the deuyne seruyse was doon right worshipfully, And 24 atte that seruyse was the yonge Erle reuested lyke a Chanoyne, as theyre prymat or Abbot / and dyde hys deuoyre as it apparteyned / and that of custome was for to be doo. Thenne cam the barons ²tofore hym / 28 and there one after another, and eche one after hys degré rendred to hym hys homage. And thenne, after alle these thinges were doon / Raymondin putte hymself fourth before the barons / and with meke & 32 humble contenaunce or manere, said to them: 'Emong'

you, my lordes, nobles, Barons of the Countre¹ or Erle-
dom of Poytwo, vouchesaf ye to here & knowe the
requeste whiche I wyl putte & make vnto my lord
4 the Erle. and yf it seme you² to be lawfull & raison-
nable / I beseche that it playse you for to pray hym to
graunt it to me.' And the Barons ansuerd with right
a good wiH, 'we shall doo it.' Thanne they altogidre
8 went before the Erle, to whom Raymondyn spake
first moche humbly, sayeng in this manere: 'Right
dere sire, humbly I beseche and requere you, that in
remuneracion, or reward, of alle the seruyses that ever
12 I dide vnto my lord, your fader / on whos sowle god
haue mercy, ye vouchesaf of your benigne & noble
graco for to gyve to me a yefte, the whiche shall cost
you but lityl. For knowe you, Sire, that I ne demande
16 of you neyther tounne, Castel, nor fortresse, ne nothinge
of grette valew.' Thanne ansuerde the Erle, 'yf it
playseth to my barons / ful wel it playseth to me.'
And the Barons said to hym in this manere: 'Sire,
20 syn it is thyng^t of so lytyl valewe, as he speketh of,
ye oughte not to refuse it to hym / For he is wel
worthy therof, and wel he hath deserued it.' And the
Erle said to them, 'Syn it pleseth to you for to coun-
24 seyll me soo / I graunt it' / 'demande now,' said the
Erles to Raymondyn, 'what ye wyl.' 'Sire,' said he,
'gramercy.³ Other yefte I ne axe of you, but þat ye
wyl gyue to me, about the fontaynne of soif that is
28 nygh to the roches & wodes / as moche of grounde as the
hyde or leder of a hert shall mow comprehendre or ⁴goo
aboute, bothe of lengthe & brede.' 'Forsouthe,' said
þenne the Erle / 'this I ought not to refuse to you.
32 I gyue it to you,' said the Erle, 'freely, without rede-
uaunce nor homage to be doon to me, nor to my
successours for euermore.' Thenne Raymondyn kneled

Raymondin tells
the barons he
intends to make
a request to the
Earl.

He says he asks
nothing of great
value,

only as much
land as a hart's
skin can com-
pass.

* fol. 225.

The Earl grants
the request,

¹ Fr. *mесьneurs, nobles barons de la conté.*

² Fr. *se il vous semble.*

³ Fr. *grans mercis.*

and gives letters
of gift,

sealed by the
Earl and Barons.

They hold a feast

until they go to
rest.

At mass Ray-
mondin prays for
a good end to his
enterprise.

& thanked hym ryght humbly / and requyred of hym
lettres of hys gyfte, the which were graunted & made
in the best and moost surest wyse that could be
denysed / and were Seelled of the grette Seal of the 4
Erle, by thassent and relacion of alle the Barons of
the land / whiche also dide putte theire Seelles thereto.
Thanne they departed fro the chirche of Saynt Hylary
of Poytiers, and yede fourth vnto the halle, where the 8
feste was grete and joyous, and swete melody was there
herd of almaner Instruments of Musyque. and of many
& dyuerse meets they were serued at the table. And
after dynner the Erle gaaf grette yeftes / And wel trouth 12
it is, that it was sayd þerof many one, that among alle
the other Raymondyn was the moost curtoys / moost
gracyous, and of fayrest contenaunce. And thus
passed the day tyl the nyght camme that euerychon 16
went to take hys reste. And on the mornne next they
roos and yede for to here masse vnto the Abbey of
Montiers / and there Raymondyn prayed god deuoutly
that he wold help hym att his nede, and to bryng hys 20
enterpryse to a good ende, and to the saluacion of his
sowle & proufft of hys body. And he abode within
the chirche, makyng hys prayers vnto thoure of
Pryme./

24

Cap. XI. How Raymondyn founde a man
that bare the skynne or hyde of a hert /
and how he bought it /

¹ fol. 23.

Now telleth thystorye to vs, that whan Ray- 28
mondyn had herd hys masse, and that he had
ended his prayere / he went out of the chirche / and
at thyssue of thabbey byond the Castel he found a
man whiche bare within a sac vpon hys bak the hyde 32
of an hert, which man camme toward Raymondyn, and
said to hym in this manere. ‘Sire, wyl ye bye this

Raymondin finds
a man with a
hart's skin to
sell,

hertis skynne that I haue within my sack, for to make good huntyng cordes for your hunters.' 'By my feyth,' said Raymondyn / 'ye / yf thou wilt selle it ;
 4 and at one word¹ what shall I paye for hit ?' 'By my feyth, sire,' said the man, 'ye shall paye to me for it ten shelynges, or ellis ye shall not haue it.' 'Frend,' said thanne Raymondyn to the said man / 'bryng it
 8 home with me and I shall pay the there.' And he answerd, 'With a good wille.' Thanne he folowed Raymondyn vnto his hous, and there he delyuered hys hyde / and Raymondyn payed hym for it. And anone
 12 after, Raymondyn sent for a Sadelmaker,² to whom he said : 'My frend, yf it plese ³you, ye muste cutte this hyde in fourme of a thonge, in the narowest & smalles
 16 wyse that is possible to be doo.' The Sadler dide cutte it, and after they leyd it agayn within the sac thus cutte. What shuld I nowe prolonge the matere.⁴
 It is trouth that they whiche were commyted for to delyuere to Ramondyn his yefte, rode, and Ray-
 20 mondyn with them, toward the fontayne of soyf, so longt that they cam vnto the roche that standeth ouer the said fontayne, where as grett tranchis or keruyng
 was made within the harde roche / and they fond al
 24 about it grete trees throwen doun to the ground, wheroft they were gretly meruaylled, For it was out of mans mynde that euer trees were cutte there aboue.
 Raymondyn, that thanne wel knewe that his lady had
 28 wrought there, held hys peas. And whan they were within the medowe they toke the thonge out of the sac /.

which he buys
for ten shillings,

³ fol. 23 b.

and has it made
into a thong by a
saddlemaker.

Raymondin and
the Earl's men
ride to the foun-
tain,

where they mar-
vel to find trees
cut and rocks
hewed.

¹ Fr. en ung mot. ² Fr. sellier.

⁴ Que feroye ores plus long prolongation.

Cap. XII. How they that were ordonned camme
and delyuerner to Raymondyn his yefte ./

¹ fol. 24.

The Earl's men
are abashed at
the length of the
thong.

Two men appear
to help them;

they set stakes
to hold the
thong;

it compasses the
rock and part of
the valley.

At the end of
the thong a
fountain springs
forth.

The men are
abashed at the
fountain and the
great compass of
the thong.

² fol. 24 b.

WHAN they that shuld delyuer the yefte saw the hyde cutte so smalle, they were of it alle 4 abasshed / and said to Raymondyn þat they wanst not what to doo / And there incontynent camme to them two men clothed with cours cloth / the whiche said in this manere. ‘We are comme hither for to helpe you.’ Thanne 8 they toke out of the sack the hyde and bare it vnto the bottomme of the valley, as nigh the roche as they coude / and therre they dide sette a stake in the erthe, and to this stake they fasted the one ende of the hyde / 12 and as they went they sette stakes for to hold with the said thonge rounde aboute the roche / and whan they were comme ayen to the first stake, there was yet agrete remenant of the thong¹ / and for to sette and founysshe 16 it they drew it downward to the valey / and so fer they went with it, that they camme to the ende of it. And ye must knowe that after that, it is said in the Countre, and as the very and true history witnesseth / 20 there sprange at [the] ende of the said thong¹ a fayr fontayn, the whiche rendred so moche of watre that a ryuere waxed or grew therof. Wherof many a mylle dyde grynde corne / and yet now grynden. Thanne 24 they that were there sent for to delyuere to Raymondyn the place, were moche abasshed / aswel of the fontayne that they see spryng¹ sodaynly before them, as of the grete compace of the ledder, whiche conteyned wel the 28 space of two mylles of grounde./

THistorye to vs recounteth that they whiche were ordonned for to delyuere the said yefte, as byfore is said, were moche abasshed whan they sawe the 32 watre spryng¹ sodaynly & ranne al along² fourth by the valey. And also they were meruaylled of the grete grounde that the thonge compassed. but neuertheles

they delyuered to Raymondyn the groundt that was gyuen to hym after the texte or tenour of hys *lettres*. They deliver the land to Raymondin.

And as soone as they had delyuered it, they wyst neu^r
4 where the said two men that were comme there for to helpe hem becamme, ne whither they were goon.

Thanne they departed alle togidre, for to haue returned vnto Poyters, where as whan they were
8 comme, they dide telle and recounte vnto the Erle and to his moder this meruayllous auenture. And thanne the lady said to her sonne in this manere : ‘Byleue thou neu^r of no thinge me / of that I shall say¹ / but yf
12 Raymondyn hath founde somme auenture in the Forest of Coulombyers, For the same Forest is somtyme full of moche meruayllous auentures.’ And the Erle ansuerd : ‘by my feyth my lady / I byleue well that

16 ye say trouth / and long^r syn I haue herd say that aboue the fontayne that is vnder the same roche, men hath seen fa^{ll} & happ many a wounder and meruayllous aduentures. but as to hym, I pray to god
20 that he may enjoye it to hys honour and prouffyt.’

‘Amen,’ said the ladie. As they spake thus togidre, Raymondin arryued / whiche kneeled soone byfore the Erle and thanked hym of the worship & curtoysy that
24 he had doon to hym. ‘By my feyth, Raymondyn,’ said the Erle, ‘ye thanke me of a lytil thing, but betre I shall doo to you, with godis grace, in tyme to come.’ ‘Now, my frend Raymondyn,’ said the Erle,
28 ‘it is told to me of a grete and meruayllous auenture whiche is happed as of present in the place that I haue doon to be delyuered to you by my yefte. Wherfore I pray you that ye wil telle to me the pure & very

32 trouth of hit.’ ‘My feyth,’ sayd Raymondyn. ‘My right dere lord / yf they that at ²your commandement haue delyuered the place to me haue not told you of more than they haue seen / they haue doo wel.

The Earl's men return to Poitiers,

and recount to him the adventure.

The Earl and his mother speak of the marvels that have happened in the forest.

Raymondin arrives and thanks the Earl for his gift;

the Earl promises him more favours.

¹ Fr. *Ne me crois jamais de chose que je die.*

Raymondin tells
of the marvellous
spring, and the
compass of the
thong,

Neuertheless it is trouth that the space of grounde
compassed aboute with the hyde conteyneth two mylles.
And as for the two men whiche camme there clothed
with cours cloth, and haue holped for to compasse & to 4
mesure the place / and also of the ryuere whiche
sourdred¹ sodaynly / of alle this, my lord, it is pure
trouth.' 'By my feith, Raymondyn,' sayd the Erle,
'ye telle to vs a grete meruaylle /. In good feyth, 8
Raymondyn, lyke as it semeth to vs and supposen, ye
most nedes haue founde som aduenture, and I pray
you that ye wyl declare it vnto vs, for to haue vs out
of the melencolye of it.' 'My lord,' said Raymondyn, 12
'yet haue I not founde but wel & honour / but my
ryght dere lord, I loue my self for to be & there to
dwelle more than in eny other place, bycause that it is
commonly renommed² auenturous and welhappy coun- 16
tre / and so I hope that god shall send to me some good
auenture whiche by hys plaisir shall be to me worship-
full & prouffytable bothe to my sowle and to my body.
And, my ryght dere lord, enquyre ye me nomore therof / 20
For certaynly, as of present, I can telle you nomore of
it /. Thanne the Erle, that moche loued hym, held
therof hys peas, bycause that he wold not angre hym.
And this doon, Raymondyn toke hys leue of the Erle 24
and of his moder. And for as now I shall say no
more of them, And shall say how Raymondyn re-
tourned toward his lady, where as he wyst that he had
lefte her /. 28

then bids adieu
to the Earl,

and returns to
his lady.

Cap. XIII. How Raymondyn toke his leue
of the Erle of Poitiers & retourned toward
his lady./

³ fol. 25 b. **I**N this partye, to vs telleth thistorye that Ray- 32
mondyn, whiche was moche enamoured of his

¹ Fr. est sours.

² Fr. renommé.

lady, departed at this ouure fro Poitiers hastly al alone,
and rode tyl he camme vnto the high Forest of Coulom-
biers, and descended fro þe hylle doun in to the valey
4 and camme to the fontayne where [he founde]¹ his lady,
that moche joyously receyued hym, and said to hym
in this manere : ‘ My frend, yo begynne wel for to kepe
and hyde oure secrete : and yf ye perseuero thus, grete
8 wele shall therof comme to you / and soone ye shall see
and perceyue of it.’ Thanne spake Raymondyn and
sayd in this manere : ‘ Dere lady, I am & shalbe euer
redy for to doo aftir my power all your playsires.’

His lady joyously receives him;

12 ‘ In dede, Raymondyn,’ said the lady / ‘ tyl ye haue
wedded me / ye ne may no ferther see ne know of my
secretes.’ ‘ Lady dere,’ said Raymondyn, ‘ I am alredy
thereto.’ ‘ not yet,’ said the lady / ‘ For first ye must goo

but tells him, that he can know no more of her secrets until he marries her, which he promises to do at once.

16 vnto Poitiers for to pray the Erle and his moder and alle
your other parentes and frendes,² that they wil comme
and honoure you with their personnes at youre wed-
dyng, in this place, on monday next commyng⁴. to
20 thende that they see the noblesses that I think and
purpose for to doo for to enhaunce you in honour &
worship / and that they take no suspencion but that ye
be maryed after your estate and degree. And wel ye

* fol. 26.

His lady tells him to go to Poitiers and invite the Earl and his friends to the wedding,

24 may teH to them that ye shall wedd the doughter of a
kinge / but no ferther ye shall not dyscouere of it. and
therfro kepe you as dere as ye haue the lone of me.’
‘ Lady dere,’ sayd Raymondyn, ‘ doubte you not therof.’

and to tell them that he is to marry a king's daughter.

28 ‘ Frend,’ sayd the lady, ‘ haue ye noo care that for what
folke that ye can bryng⁴ / but that they all shalbe
wel and honourably receyued & wel lodged and wel
festyed / bothe of delycyous meetes and drynkes, and
32 of allmaner athing⁴ acordyng / as wel to them as to
theire horses. Therfore, my frend, goo surely and be
not doubtous of nothing.’ They thenne kyssed eche
other / & Raymondyn departed fro the lady / of whiche

¹ omitted in MS. Fr. où il trouva.

Raymondin goes to Poitiers, history sylenceth / and bygynneth to spek of Raymondyn which goth toward Poytiers./

where he finds the Earl with many of his barons.

Raymondin invites the Earl to his wedding at the Fountain of Soyf;

The Earl is abashed at not being taken into confidence before.

But Raymondin says that love has done what it liked with him.

They ask his lady's lineage,

which he cannot tell.

Now telleth to vs thistorye that so longe rode Raymondyn after that he was departed fro his lady that he camme to Poiters, wher he fonde the Erle and his moder & grete foysone of Barons with them, whiche were right wel glad of his commyng / and demanded of hym fro whens he camme. And he ansuerde to them that he camme fro his dysporte. And after that they had spoken longe tyme of one thing and of other, Raymondyn yede byfore the Erle & kneled & sayd to hym thus: ‘Right dere lord, I moche humbly besech you, on alle the seryses that euer I shall mow doo to you, þat ye vouchesaaf for to doo to me so moche of honour as to comme on monday next to my weddyng, to the fontayn of Soyf. and that it playse you to bryng thither with ¹you my lady your moder, and alle your barons also.’ And whan the Erle vnderstode hym he was moche abasshed. ‘How,’ said the Erle, ‘fayre Cousyn Raymondyn, are ye as now so straunged of vs that ye marye you without that we know therof tyl the day of weddyng? For certayn we gyue vs thereof grette meruaylle, For we wende yf your wylle had be to take a wyf / to haue be they of whom ye shuld first haue taken counseyll.’ Thanne ansuerde Raymondin, ‘My right dere lord, dysplayse you nat therfore, For loue is of so grete puyssance that she maketh thinges to be graunted and doon as it playseth to her / and so ferfourth I haue goo in this matere that I may not flee it; but neuertheles all were it sooo that I myght doo sooo / yet by myn assent I shuld not be fro it.’ ‘Now thanne,’ said the Erle, ‘telle vs what she is and of what lynee.’ ‘By my feyth,’ said Raymondyn, ‘ye demande of me a thing / to the whiche I can not gyue none ansuere, for neuer in my lyf I ne dide enquyre me therof.’ ‘Forsouthe,’ sayd the Erle, ‘it is

¹ fol. 26b.

grett meruaylle. · Raymondyn taketh a wyf that he knoweth not, ne also the lynage that she commeth of.' This abashes the Earl.

'My lord,' said Raymondyn, 'sith it suffyseth me as 4 therof, ye oughte wel to be playsed, For I take no wyf that shall brawle or stryue with you / but only with me / and I alone shall bere eyther joye or sorowe for it, after that it shall please to god.' 'By my feyth,'

8 sayd the Erle to Raymondin, 'ye say right wel / and as for me I ne wil kepe you therfro / but sith it is soo, I pray to god deuoutly that he wil send you feas & good auenture togidre / and right gladly we shall goo

12 to your weddyng, and with vs shall comme thither my lady and many other ladyes and damoyselles of our baronye.' And Raymondyn ansuered, 'My lord, right gretly I thanke you, & as I byleue, whan ye

16 shalbe there and shal see the lady / ye ¹shalbe pleased of her.' And thenne they lefte to speke of this mater, and spake of one thing and of other so long, that tyme of souper camme. And notwithstanding, the Erle 20 thought euer on Raymondyn and his lady, and said in hym self that somme Fortune he had fonde at the fontayne of soyf./

The Earl wishes Raymondin good luck,

and promises to attend the wed-

¹ fol. 27.

but ever won-
ders about Ray-
mondin and his
lady, and their
fortune.

IN this manere thoughte longe the Erle, so moche 24 **I** that the styward² cam and said to hym: 'My lord, all is redy, yf it plese you for to comme.' 'For south,' said he, 'it plaiseth me well.' Thanne they weshe theyre handes, sette at the table / and wel they 28 were serued. And aftir souper they spak of many materes, & after they went to bed. On the morowe erly, the Erle aroos & herd his masse and made the barons to be manded & boden for to goo with hym to 32 the weddynge of Raymondin / and they camme incontinent. And the said Erle sent hys message for the Erle of Forestz, whiche was brother to Raymondyn. In this meane while³ made the said lady alle redy in

After mass the
Earl bids his
barons to the
wedding,

and sends word
to the Earl of
Forests.

² Fr. maistre d'hostel.

³ Fr. demandiers.

Melusine makes ready in a meadow a noble feast.

The Earl and his company set out to the wedding;

¹ fol. 27 b.
he inquires about Raymondin's wife, but can find out nothing.

At last they come to the fountain,

and then to the meadow,

at which they marvel,

because of the many tents, knights,

ladies, cooks,

and the fair chapel.

the medowe vnder the Fontayne of Soyf, and suche appareill was there made, so grete & so noble, that for to say trouth / nothing¹ acordyng for suche a Feste fawted ne waunted there, but honourably might a 4 kinge with alle his estate haue be receyued therat. The sonday camme that alle made them self redy for to goo to the fontayne of Soyf, at the weddyng of Raymondyn. The night passed & the day camme. And 8 thanne the Erle with hys moder / her ladyes & damoy-selles / and with alle the barons, ladyes, & damoyselles of the lande / toke hys way toward the fontayne. And as they rode thither the Erle enquyred of Raymondyn 12 the estate of hys wyf, but nothinge he would telle ¹to hym therof. Wheroft the Erle was sorowfull, And so longe they yede talking togidre that they camme vpon the hille, where they sawe the grete trenchis or keruyng 16 in the harde roche that sodaynly were made / and the fontayne also whiche sourdred² & sprang⁴ ther haboundantly. Thenne meruaylled therof euerychone, how so sodaynly that might haue be doo. And they yede 20 fourth and biheld dounne toward the medowe and sawe grete plente of fayre & riche pauillons or tentes, righ[t] high³ / so grete, so noble, and so meruaylously facyoned that euery man awondred therof. and 24 namely,⁴ whan they dide see & perceyued so grete company of noble folke, as of knightes & squyers, that went vp & doun in the medowe and without, for to goo fetche suche things as neded to the feste. And 28 also might they see there right grete foyson of ladyes & damoyselles richely apparayled & arayed, many horses, palfreys, & coursers were there. There might they see kychons & Cookes within, dressing meetes of 32 dyuerse maneres. And ouer the fontayne they sawe a fayre chappel of our lady & ymages within right connyngly kerued & entaylled, and of almener of

² Fr. sourdit. ³ Fr. si treshaultz. ⁴ Fr. par especial.

ornamentes so richeley ordeyned, that neuer so grete
richesse they had seen before that tyme in no churche,
wherof they meruaylled moche, and said oon to other.

4 'I ne wot what it shall befall of the remenaunt, but hero
is a fayre bygynnyng¹ grete, & shewyng¹ grete noblesse
& worship.' /

Cap. XIV. How the Erle of Poytiers camme
8 to the weddyng of Raymondyn, accompayned
of alle the Barons in hys land.

¹ **N**O[w] telleth to vs thystorye, that whan the
Erle & hys folk were descended doun fro the
montayne / an auncyent knyght, nobly &
richely clothed and arayed, whiche rode on a fayre
palfray, and had in hys felawship xxiiij¹ men of wor-
ship richely & nobly aourned² & wel horsed / camme

16 gladly & with mery contenaunce toward the Erle.
First he mete with the Erle of Forest & with Ray-
mondyn & theyre felawship, for they rode before.

And whan he perceyued Raymondyn, whiche wel he
20 knew among¹ other / he yede tofore hym & made to
hym honour & reuerence, and his brother Erle of
Forest he salued moche honourably, & theyre felawship
also. And shortly to spek, this auncyent knight

24 receyued them worshipfully, sayeng¹ to Raymondin in
this manere : ' My lord, I pray you that I may be ledde
before the Erle of Poitiers yf it playse you, ³for I
desyre to spek with hym.' And so Raymondyn made

28 hym to be ledde vnto the said Erle. And whan
thauncyent knight camme before the Erle, he salewed
hym swetly, sayeng¹, ' my lord, ye be welcomme.' And
the Erle ansuerd¹ / ' and ye are wel mete with me. nowe
32 telle ye to me why ye dide axe aftir me.' Thanne said
the knight thus to the Erle : ' Sire, My lady Melusyne

¹ fol. 28.

An ancient
knight comes to
meet the com-
pany,

and salutes
them.

He asks Ray-
mondin to lead
him before the
Earl of Poitiers,
³ fol. 28 b.

which Ray-
mondin does.

² Fr. *aourné*.

The ancient knight, on behalf of Melusine, thanks the Earl of Poitiers for his presence.

of Albany recommendeth her to you as moche as she may / and thanketh you of the gret & high honour that ye doo vnto Raymondyn your Cousin & also vnto her whan ye vouchesauf of your grace to comme hither 4 for to bere vnto them felawship att their wedding.' 'By my feyth,' said the Erle, 'In this cas / as ye may telle to your lady / is no thankes to be had, for I am holden for to do vnto my Cousyn all worship & honour 8 possible to me to be doo.' 'Sire,' said thauncient knight, 'ye say full curtoisly / but my lady is sage for to knowe what she ought for to doo / and toward you she hath sent both me and my felawship also.' 'Sire 12 knight,' said the Erle, 'this playseth me wel. but knowe ye that I wende nat to haue found lodged so nygh to me so noble a lady as your is, ne that had so many of noble folk *with* her as she hath.' 'Ha, sire!' sayd the 16 knight, 'whan my lady wil she may haue of knightes & squyers more than she hath now *with* her / for she ne dare doo / but to commande.' And thus talking one to other, they camme vnto the pauyllon. And the 20 Erle was lodged there within the moost riche lodgys that euer he had seen before. After every man was lodged honourably after his estate / & they¹ said that within theire owne places at hom they were not so 24 wel lodged. Theire horses were lodged within the grett tentes / so at large & at theire ease / that no palfrener was there but that he was full wel playsed. And alle they meruailled fro whens so moch of goode 28 and suche plente of richesses might comme there so haboundantly. /

Cap. XV. How Raymondyn and Melusyne were wedded togider. /

32

The Earl of Poitiers' mother and other ladies arrive,

After them camme the Contesse moder vnto the said Erle, and blanche, her doughtir, and with them many ladyes & damoiselles. And

thanne Melusyne, sage & wyse, sent toward her
 þauncyent knight, that had hold companye to the
 Erle, and also with hym she sent many ladyes ¹ and
 4 damoyselles of high and noble Estate that moch
 honourably salued and honoured the Countesse and
 her daughter / and ledde them to be lodged in a fayr
 pauillon made of riche cloth of gold, richely set with
 8 perlys & with precyous stones. And, shortly to spek,
 they were alle so wel & so rychely lodged that moche
 they meruaylled of the grete riches that they see
 within the pauyllon. And there was the Countesse
 12 receyued with moch grete and melodyous sowne of
 almaner instruments and alle they in her companye
 were honourably lodged. And whan the Countesse
 had rested a lytil while, and that she was arayed with
 16 her ryche rayments / also her doughtir Blanche.
 Knyghtes & Squyers / ladyes and damoyselles of her
 companye went into the chambre of the spouse, the
 whiche Chambre was fayrer and passed of ryches alle
 20 the other chambres, but whan they sawe Melusyne, &
 perceyued her ryche tyres / her riche gowne, alle set
 with precious stones & perlys / the coler that she had
 about her nek, hir gerde^H & her other rayments, that
 24 she had on her, they all meruaylled gretly / and
 specially the Countesse, that said / consideryng that
 grete estate / Neuer had I wende ne supposed that no
 queene ne Emperesse had be in alle the world, that
 28 might haue founde suche jewellis so riche & so grete in
 value. What shuld I make long plee / the Erle of
 poitiers and one of the moost hygh barons, that is to
 wete, the Erle of Forest, addressed and ledde the
 32 spouse vnto the said Chapelle of our lady, which was
 so rychely aourned, & arayed so nobly that wonder it
 was to see / as of parements & ornaments of cloth ² of
 gold, purfeld and sett with perlys and precyous stones,
 36 so wel wrought and so connyngly browded, that

¹ fol. 29 b.and are wel-
comed by the
ancient knight,and so richly
lodged that they
marvel much.The Countess
and her daughter
are richly
dressed,and go to Melu-
sine's chamber,where they mar-
vel much at her
rich array.The Earls of
Poitiers and
Forest lead
Melusine² fol. 30.to the richly
adorned chapel,

where the wedding takes place.

meruaylle it was to loke on. fayre ymages straungely kerued / as of Crucifixe & figure of our lady, all of pure and fyn gold / and bokes were there, so wel writon and so riche that in alle the world rycher bokes 4 might nat haue be. And there was a bysshop that wedded them & songe masse before them.

Cap. XVI. How they were worshipfully serued at dyner./

8

After divine service

the company dine.

¹ fol. 30 b.

They are served by squires,

and eat off gold and silver plate

divers meats.

Aftir that the deuyne seruyse was doon they rested them, and soone after the dyner was redy within a moche riche and grete pauyllon in the myddes of the medowe. Eche one satte there 12 astir hys degree, and serued they were of dyuerse & good meetes, and of many and dyuerse wynes, and haboundaunce of ypocras ¹ was there. There serued the squyers richely clothed one lyke another, whiche 16 were grete in nombre. They were serued alle in plat of pure gold & syluer, wherof alle the compayne was meruaylled. And assoone as one messe was taken fro the table, the othe[r] messe was redy. And so of 20 dyuers meetes they were serued many a cours moche honourably./

Cap. XVII. How after dyner the Knights & Squyters Jousted.

24

After dinner

the knights and squires arm and leap on horseback,
the ladies go to the scaffold.

Jousting begins,

² fol. 31.

And after that they had dyned, and the tables were take vp & graces said, and that they were serued with ypocras & spycses, the Knyghtes and Squyters went & armed them and lept on horsback. 28 And thenne the spouse & many other ladyes were sett vpon the scaffold or stalage. Thanne byganne the Joustyng / the Erle of Poytiers jousted moche wel and so dide the Erle of Forest and alle their knightes 32 and ²squyers. but the Knyghtes of the spouse dide

meruaiH, For they ouerthrew bothe knightes and horses vnto the grounde. Thanne camme there Raymondyn that satte on a fayre & strong courser, alle in whyte, 4 & at hys first cours he ouerthrew the Erle of Forestz, his brother / and so valyauntly he demened hym self that there ne was knight on both partyes but that he redoubted hym. And thann the Erle of Poitiers 8 seeyng his appertyse of armes meruaylled what he was / and dressed hys shield, & holding the speere alowe ranne ayenst hym / but Raymondyn that knew hym wel distourned hys hors and adressed his cours 12 toward a knight of Poitou and suche a strok he gaaf hym, that both man & hors ouerthrew to the erth. And shortly to spek Raymondin dide that day so wel that euery man said that the knight with the white 16 armes had jousted right strongly. The night camme and the justyng ended. Wherfore eche of them went agayn in to theire pauyllons where they toke alil resto / but soone after was the souper redy. And 20 thanne they yede in to the grete tente / and after they had wasshen they set them at table & wel and richely they were serued / and after souper were the tables take vp / and they wesshed theyre handes. & graces 24 were said. This doon the ladyes wente asyde pruely and toke other gownes on them & camme agayn for to daunse. The feste was fayre / and the worship was there grete / so that the Erle and alle they that were 28 commē with hym meruaylled gretly ¹of the grette ryches & honour that they sawe there. And whan it was tyme they ledd the spouse to bed / moch honourably within a wonder meruayllous & riche pauyllon. 32 And there the Erles of Potiers and of Forests betoke her vnto the ladyes handes. And thanne the Countesse of Poitiers and other grete ladyes had the spouse to bed, and dide endoctryne her in suche thinges that 36 she oughte for to doo / how be it that she was ynough

Melusine's men
being victorious.

Raymondin over-
throws the Earl
of Forest,
and demeans
himself so that
all are afraid of
him.

The Earl of Po-
itiers runs against
him,

but Raymondin
turns aside and
falls a knight of
Poitou.

Every man
praises the
prowess of Ray-
mondin.

They have sup-
per in the great
tent,

then they have a
dance.

¹ fol. 31 b.

They lead the
spouse to bed,

the Countess
tells her what to
do,

but finds she
knows every-
thing.

The ladies wait
for Raymondin,

who is speaking
with the Earls.

A knight sent by
the ladies

³ fol. 32.

comes for Ray-
mondin, and tells
him that all is
ready, whereat
the company
laugh.

purveyed therof. but notwithstandingyng she thanked them moch humbly therfore. And whan she was abed the ladyes abode there vnto tyme that Raymondin camme, whiche was yet talkyng of oon thing and of 4 other with the Erle of Poitiers & with his brother, whiche thanked Raymondyn of þat he first dide joust with hym. ‘By my feyth,’ said the Erle of Poytiers, ‘fayre Cousyn of Forests, ye haue longe syn herd say / 8 how somtyme the loue of ladyes causeth peyne & traueyll to the amerous louers, and deth to horses.’ ‘My lord,’ ansuerde the Erle of Forestz, ‘my brother shewed it wel this day to me.’ And Raymondyn, that 12 was somewhat ashamed / said in this manere : ‘Fayre lordes, stryk of the flatte¹ / and gyue not to me so moche praysing. For I am not he which I mene² that dide soo / For I am not he that bare the whyte armes / 16 but fayne I wold that god had sent to me the gracie to doo so wel.’ And at thoo wordes camme there a knight, whiche by the ladyes was sent thither / and said to them : ‘Faire lordes, Jape not ouermuche, For knowe 20 you wel ³that as now on other thing he most think.’ ‘By my feyth,’ said the Erle of Poytiers, ‘ye say trew as I byleue.’ And yet agayn said the knight : ‘my lordes, comme & bryngé with you Raymondyn, For the ladyes 24 axen after hym / for his partye is al redy.’ And þerof byganne they to lawghe / and said that he muste haue witnes therof / and that they byleued it wel.

Cap. XVIII. How the bysshop halowed the 28
bed wheron Raymondyn and Melusyne
laye.

AT thoo wordes they went and ledde Raymondyn in the pauyllon and soone he was brought to 32 bed. And thanne camme there þe Bysshop that had

¹ Fr. *frappez du plat.* ² Fr. *je ne suys mie celluy que.*

spoused them and dide halowe theire bed. and after
that euerychon toke his leue / and the courteyns were
drawen abouthe the bed. And of this matere recounteth
4 no ferther thystorye, but speketh of the other, of
which som went to bed,¹ and som went agayn to the
daunse and ellis wher them lyste for to goo. And
after thystory I shal speke of Raymondyn and of the
8 lady, how the[y] gouerned them bothe togidre. and
what wordes they had amongt them two as the[y] laye
togidre.

then the bishop
hallows the bed,
the curtains are
drawn,

¹ fol. 32 b.

and the company
retires.

THYstorye telleth to vs in this partye that whan
12 they euerychon departed and goon out of the
Pauyllou and the stakes of hit joyned & shette, Mel-
lusyne spak and said to Raymondyn in this manere:
'My right dere lord and frend, I thanke you of the
16 grete honour that hath be doo to me at this day of
your parents & frendes / and of that also / that ye kepe
so secretly that which ye promysed me at oure first
couenaunte,² and ye moste know for certayn that yf
20 ye kepe it euer thus wel, ye shalbe the moost mighty &
moost honoured that euer was of your lynage. And ye
doo the contrary, bothe you & your heyres shall falle
litil & litil in decaye & fro your estate. Ne of the
24 land that ye shall holde & possesse, that tyme ye hold
not your promysse / yf it be so that ye doo it, whiche
god forbede, hit shal never be aftir possessed ne holden
alle ho^H by you ne by your heyr.^s' And thanne to her
28 ansuerd Raymondyn: 'My right dere lady, doubtē
you not of hit, For yf it playseth to god / that shall
never befa^H by me.' And the lady ansuerd to hym in
this maner: 'My right dere frend / sith it is soo that
32 so ferfourth I haue putte my self I most abyde the
wylle of god, trustyng euer of your promesse. Kepe
you thanne wel, my fayre frend & felawe that yo^s
fawte not your Couenaunt. For ye shuld be he,

After the tent is
closed

Melusine thanks
her lord for his
friends' presence
at the wedding,

and for him keep-
ing his promise,

and foretells hon-
our to him and
his if he remains
faithful, but woe
if he be false;

² Fr. *covenant*.

upon which Raymondin pledges himself again to keep the covenant.

after me, that moost shuld lese by it.' 'Ha / Ha, lady dere,' said Raymondin, 'therof ye oughte not to be in doubte / For that day, faylle to me god, whan I fawte of Couenant.'¹ 'Now my dere frend,' said the lady, 4
 'lete vs leue our talkyng therof. For certaynly as for my part there shal be no fawte. but that ye shal be the moost fortunat & happy that ever was of your lynee, and more puyssaunt thanne any of them shalbe / 8 without it be for fawte of your self.' And thus lefte they theyre talkyng. And as thystorye reherceth, was that nyght engendred or begoten of them both the valyaunt Uryan. whiche aftirward² was kynge of 12 Chipre, as ye shall here herafter.

They beget that night Uryan, afterwards king of Cyprus.

Cap. XIX. How the Erle of Poytiers and the Erle of Forests / the barons and ladyes, toke theyre leue of Raymondyn and of 16 Melusyne. /

² fol. 33 b.

When the sun is high the lovers rise.

Raymondin dresses and goes with the Earls to mass,

after which the feasting and revelling begins again.

The ladies dress Melusine and go with her to mass.

³ fol. 34.

THystorye telleth to vs in this partie that so longe abode these two louers, beyng abed, that the sonne was hye. Thanne aroos Raymondyn and made 20 hym redy, and yssued out of the Pauillon. And as thenne were alle redy, both therles of Poyters and of Forests waytyng aftir Raymondyn, whiche they ledd to the Chapell and there they herde their masse deuoutly / 24 and after they retourned vnto the medowe, where the feste & reue³ bygan of new, moche grete. but therof we leue to speke. and shall say of the Countesse & other ladyes, which aourned & made redy Melusyne. 28 And after they yede and ledd melusine moche honourably vnto the Chapel ³forsaid. And there they herd masse. thoffertory of whiche was grete and riche. And after that the deuyne seruyse was doon, they 32 retourned vnto the Pauyllon. What shuld I make

¹ Fr. *covenant*.

long tale herof; the feste was grete and noble, and lasted XV dayes complete & hole. And Melusyne gaaf many grete yeftes and jewels both to the ladyes
 4 & damoyselles, also to knightes & squyers. And after the feste the Erle, and the Countesse his moder, and alle the barons, ladyes, and damoiselles of their felawship, toke leue of Melusyne, whiche conueyed the said
 8 Countesse and her daughter vnto & byonde the litil tounne of Coulombiers. And at departyng Melusyne gaf to the Countesse a fayre & moche riche owche of gold, in value vnestymable. and to blanche her
 12 daughter, a gerland all set with perlys with saphirs rubyes and with many other precyous stones in grete nombre. And alle they that sawe the said owche and gerland, meruaylled gretly of the beaulte goodnes &
 16 value of it. And ye moste knowe, that so moche gaf Melusyne bothe to more & lesse, that none there was at the feste / but that he preyed gretly Melusyne of her yeftes. and alle abasshed & meruaylled they were
 20 of her grete ryches. and they alle sayd that Raymondyn was gretly mightily and valiauntly marryed. And after that all these thinges were doon and perfourmed, Melusyne toke leue of ¹the Erle and of the Countesse
 24 moche honourably, and of alle the Baronye. and with a fayre and noble compayny retourned to her pauillon. And Raymondin conueyed euer the Erle. And as they rode on their way, the Erle of Poytiers said to
 28 him in this manere: 'Fayr Cousyn telle me, yf ye goodly may, of what lynee or kynred is your wyf / how be it that thauncyent knight dide thanke us of thonour & worship that we bare to you by hys lady
 32 Melusyne of Albanye. but yet I demande it of you / bycause that we gladly wold knowe the certaynte of it. For of asmoche that we may perceyue by her estate & behauyng, nedes it muste be, that she be yssued &
 36 comme fro moch noble ryche and mighty lynee. And

Melusine gives great gifts to the company,

and conveys the Countess and her daughter beyond Coulombiers,

and gives them rich Jewels.

All the company are abashed at the richness of Melusine's gifts, and say that Raymondin has married well.

¹ fol. 34 b.

As Raymondin accompanies the Earl of Poitiers,

the Earl asks the lineage of his wife,

because he is
afraid he has not
paid her due
honour.

Raymondin is
wroth at the
question,

but answers
fairly

¹ fol. 35.

that he did not
ask her, and so

only knows
that she is a
king's daughter;

which can easily
be seen from her
behaviour.

He requests that
they will not ask
him again about
her lineage,

the cause whiche moeueth vs for to desyre and be
willing to knowe it / is bycause that we doubte to haue
mesprysed anenst thonour that apparteyneth to be doo
vnto her noble & goodly personne' / 'But my feyth,' ⁴
said the Erle of Forest, 'al thus was my wylle to have
said soo.'

Thistorye saith that thanne Raymondin was
gretly wroth, whan he herd the requeste ⁸
that the Erle of Poytiers, his lord, made
vnto him / and also likewyse the erle of
Forest hys brother. For he loued / doubted and
preyed so moche his lady / that he hated alle thinges ¹²
whiche he demed desagreable to her. Not withstand-
ing he ansuerd to them full softe & fayr: 'By my feyth,
my lord / and you my brother, ¹playse it to you to
knowe / that by rayson naturel fro whosoever I hyd ¹⁶
my secrete / fro you I ought not to hyde it / yf it were
suche thinge that I knew of, or might say. and ther-
fore I shall answere to you, to that ye haue demanded
of me / after that I knowe of it. Ye thanne muste ²⁰
knowe, that neuer I ne demanded ne dyde enquere me
so fer of it / as now redyly ye haue demanded &
enquyred of me, / but so moche I knowe, and may wel
say of her, that she is a kyngis daughter, mighty & ²⁴
high terryen, And by the state, behauyng, & gourne-
ment that ye haue seen in her, ye may perceyue
ynough, that she nys ne haue be norysshed in mendy-
cite or pouerte / but in superfluyte of honour & largesse, ²⁸
and among plente of goodes. And I requyre you as to
my lordes and frendes, that ye ne enquyre nomore
therof. For none other thinge ye ne may knowe
therof by me. and suche as she is, she playseth me ³²
wel, and am right wel content of her. And wel I
knowe that she is the rote of alle myn erthly goodes
present & to comme.' Thenne ansuerd the Erle of
Poytiers: 'By my feyth, fayr Cousin, as for my part I ³⁶

think not to enquere of you nomore therof, For as ye haue putte vnto vs wysely the high honours, riches, maneres, and behauyng of my Cousin, your wyf, we 4 oughte to conceyue of ourself, that she is of noble birth & extraction, and of right high and mighty lynee.' 'By my feyth, my lord,' said the Erle of Forest, 'ye say southe. and of my part I thinke nat to enquyre, ne 8 demande of hym eny¹ thing more therof / how be it that he is my broþer. For certaynly I hold hym right wel ensuered þerof aftir myn aduys.' But, helas! he aftirward faylled Couenaunt. wherfore Raymondyn lost 12 his lady, and also the Erle of Forest toke deth therfore by Geffray with the grete tothe, Whereof it shal be spoken herafter more playnly. Raymondyn thenne toke leue of the Erle, & of his brother, and of the 16 barons, and retourned to the fontayne of Soyf. And also the Erle of Forest toke leue of the erle of Poytiers, of hys moder, and of hys sustir, and of all the barons right honourably, and þanked them alle of thonour 20 that they had doon to him at hys brothers weddyng. And thanne therle of Potyers, his moder, and hys Suster, with alle theiro felawship & meyne retourned to poitiers, and euery one of the Barons retourned to 24 their Countrees. but there ne was none of them / but that he merueylled & gretly wondred of the grete riches that they had seen at the wedding of Raymondyn. And here resteth thy storye to spek of them / and shal 28 spek of Raymondyn & of his lady, how they were after the departyng¹ of theire parents and frendes. /

Thy storye recounteth to vs that whan Raymondin 32 feste greter than it was before / and also greter plente of noble folk than neuer was there before. Alle whiche folke yede, & said to hym with a high voyce: 'My lord ye be welcomme as he to whom we are seruaunts, 36 & whom we wyl obey.' And þis said the ladyes as

which they promise;

¹ fol. 35 b.

but, alas, they do not keep it, so Raymondin loses his lady, and the Earl of Forest his life.

The company break up,

and return to their countries,

and they marvel at the great richness of the wedding.

Raymondin returns to his lady,

and finds the feast still going on, and many noble folk at it,

who greet him,

¹ fol. 36.
which Ray-
mondin thanks
them for.

Melusine takes
him apart,

and thanks him
for his demean-
our to his brother
and the Earl,

and promises to
make all goods
to abound.

She next day
sends away many
of her people.

When the feast
was over

Melusine got a
great many
workmen,

who felled the
trees and cleaned
the rock,

on which they
prepared a
foundation,

where they build-
ed so quickly
that every one
wondered;

² fol. 36 b.
but no one knew
whence the work-
men came.

The fortress was
strongly built
with two double
walls and wards

wel the lordes. And thanne Raymondin ansuerd to them, ‘gramercy of the ¹honour that ye proffre to me.’ And there thanne camme Melusyne, who moche honourably sayd to hym : ‘welcomme be ye’ / and had ⁴ hym apart, & reherced to hym word by word alle the talking that was betwix the Erle and hym. and also what his brother, Erle of Forest, had said, And yet said the lady to hym : ‘Dere frende Raymondin / as ⁸ longe as ye shal contynue soo / alle goodes shall habounde to you. Fayre frende, I shall to morowe gyue leue to the moost partye of our folk that ben here comme to our feste. For other thinges we must ¹² ordeyne.’ Raymondyn ansuered : ‘ladye, so as it shall playse you.’ And whan the morowe camme Melusyne departed her folke / grete quantyte went theire way / and suche as she wold abode there. And now resteth ¹⁶ thystory of the thinges byfore said. and begynne to treate how the lady bygan to bylde the noble fortresse of Lusignen. /

IN this partye telleth thenne thystory that whan the ²⁰ feste was ended and that suche as she wold were goon / she anoone aftir made to comme grete foysone of werkmen / as massons, Carpenters, and suche that can dygge & delue. Whyche at her commandement fylled ²⁴ dounne the grete trees, and made the roche fayre and clene. There Melusyne sett euery man to werk. eche one dide his Crafte. they encysed the roche & made a depe & brode foundement. and in few dayes they ²⁸ brought the werk so ferfourth / that euery man wondred of suche a fayre and stronge bylding so soone doon. And euery Satirday Melusyne payed truly her werkmen / and meet & drynk they had ²in haboundaunce. ³² but trouth it is / that no body knew from whens these werkmen were. and wete it that soone was the Fortres made up / not only with one warde / but two strong wardes, with double walles were there, or oon coude ³⁶

have come to the stronge donjon of it. Round about the walles were gret tours mache colyd, & strong posternes / and also barreeres or wayes gooyng out fourth
 4 encyced and kerued within the hard roche. The Erle of Poytiers / the barons and alle the peple meruaylled moche of the said werke that so soone was doon, so grete, so stronge, & so fayre. Then the lady Melusyne
 8 and her husband Raymondyn lodged them within it.

protecting the
donjon.

and anoone after Raymondin made to calle to a feste there, alle the noble men therabout. There camme the erle of Poytiers, both hys moder and hys suster / the
 12 Erle of Forestz, the Barons & noble men of their landes, also of other countres and nacions. And also

Every one mar-
velled at its
beauty and
strength.

there was so many laydes & damoyselles, that they wel might suffyse att that day. There was jousting,
 16 dauncyng, and grete joye made with frendly and curtoys deeling. And whan Melusyne sawe tyme and place conuenable, she presented herself before the two

Raymond gives
a feast,

Erles / barons and noble men, and humbly said to
 20 them in this manere : ' My fayre and good lordes, we

at which was
jousting and
dancing;

thanke you moche of the high honoure that ye haue doon to us now at this feste—and the cause why we haue prayed you to come I shal declare it to you.' /

24 ' **L**ordes,' said the lady, ' here I haue assembled your noble personnes, for to haue your Counseil ^{it is to name the fortress.}
 1 how this fortresse shall be called. for that it be in mynd how that it hath be happily bylded & made.'

and at a conve-
nient time Melu-
sine declares why
the feast is
given:

28 ' By my feyth, fayre Cousyn,' said the Erle of Poitiers, ' we as in general sayen to you, as oure wylle is / that ye your ownself shall / as right is / gyue name to it. For emong we alle is not so moch wyt as in you alone

¹ fol. 37.

32 that haue bylded up & achyeuyd so strong and fayre a place as thesame is / and wete it, that none of us shall entremete hym to doo that ye spek of.' Thanne said Melusyne : ' Dere Sire, Wylfully and for the nones

The Earl of Po-
itiers says she
should name it,
because of her
wisdom;

36 ye haue kept þis ansuere for to jape with me, but what

she answers that
they mock her,

therof is, I requyre and pray you that therof ye telle to me your entencion.' 'Certaynly, dere Cosyn,' sayd the Erle of Poytiers, 'none of us alle shal medle with al. byfore you. For by reason / sethen ye haue so moche 4 doon as to haue achyeued & made the moste strong and fayre place that ever man sawe in this Countree / ye owe to gyue name to it your owne self after your playsire.' 'Ha / ha, my lord,' said Melusyne, 'sith it ne 8 may none otherwise be, / and that I see your playsire is that I gyue name to it, hit shalbe called after myn owne name, Lusygnen.' 'But my feyth,' said the Erle, 'the name setteth full wel to it for two causes, First 12 bycause ye are called Melusyne of Albanye, whiche name in grck language is as moch for to say / as thing meruayllous or commyng fro grete merueylle, and also this place is bylded and made meruayllously. For I 16 byleue not other wyse / but that as longe as the world shal laste ¹shall there be founde & seen somme Wonder & meruayllous thinge.' Thanne they alle ansuerd in this manere : 'My lord, no man in the world might gyue 20 betre name, that bettre shuld sette to it than she hath doo after manere of the place / also aftir the interpretyng made by you of her owne name.' and on this oppynyon & worde were alle of one acorde. Whiche name 24 within few dayes was so publyed, that it was knownen thrugh alle the land. and yet at this day it is called soo. They soone aftir toke leue, and Melusyne and Raymondin also gaaf hem dyuers & riche yeftes at 28 theire departyng. And herafter sheweth thystory how Raymondin and Melusyne / right wysly, mightily and honorably lyued togidre. /

After the feste was ended, Melusyne, that was grete 32 with child, bare her fruyte unto þe tyme that alle wymen Owen to be delyured of their birthe. and thanne she was delyuered of a man child, whiche was moche fayre, and wel proporyoned or shapen in alle 36

but the Earl replies, that as she has built the best castle in the land, she must name it.

Melusine then names it Lusignan.

Which the Earl says is a good one, because it means 'marvellous' in Greek.

¹ fol. 37 b.

All the company think it a good name.

And it was published abroad, and even unto this day the castle is so called.

The company breaks up, taking with them many rich gifts.

Melusine has a son,

hys membres / except his vysage that was short and large / one ey he had rede, and the other blew. he was baptysed, & named was Uryan, and wete it that
 4 he had the gretest eerys that euer were seen on eny child of hys age / and whan they were ouergrown, they were as grete as the handlyng of a fan. Melusyne penne called to hym Raymondin, and to hym she said
 8 in this manere : ' My ryght swete felawe & frend, I wold not see thyn owne herytage to be lost / which by raison thou oughtest to haue by vertue of ¹patrymonye,
 for Guerrende Penycence and all the marches aboue
 12 apparteynen to the & to þy brother / goo thanne thither, and make the king of Bretons to be sommed that he wyl receyue you in your ryght & enherytance / shewyng to hym how your fader slew his nevew in
 16 deffense & warde of hys owne body. For which encheson doubting the sayd kyng / lefte the Countrey, and neuer durst retourne / and yf he wyl not receyue you to ryght, be not therof abasshed. For afterward
 20 he shal be glad, & fayne whan he shal mow doo it.'
 Thenne ansuerd Raymondyn, ' there nys nothing that ye commande me, but that I shall doo after my power.
 For wel I considere & see that all your werkes ne
 24 tenden but to wele & worship.' ' Frende,' sayd the lady, ' it is wel rayson, sith that all your trust ye putte on me that I hold to you trouth. It is trouth that your fader, by hys predecessors, oweth to haue many grete
 28 thinges in bretayne, the whiche shulle be declared unto you whan ye be there. It muste thanne be by you understand, that Henry of Leon, your fader, that tyme he was in Bretayn for hys worthynes, grete policye &
 32 valiauntnes, and as he that drad no man that owed hym euyl wyȝ, he was moche loued with the kinge there / in so moche that the said kynge made hym hys Seneschall & Captayn general ouer alle his men of
 36 werre. This king of Bretons had a nevew / but no

fair of body, but of short visage, and one eye red, and the other blue.
 He is named Urian,

and he had ears as large as a fan handle.

Melusine tells Raymondin of his patrimony,

¹ fol. 38.

and bids him go to the king of Britain, to enter into his inheritance.

He promises to go.

Henry of Leon, Raymondin's father,

was Seneschal and Captain-General to the king of Britain,

who had a nephew as his heir.

¹ fol. 38 b.
This heir was made jealous of Henry,

by mischief-makers telling him that Henry was to take his place;

and by Josselin Dupont,

who told him that letters of grant had been made secretly in favour of Henry.

² fol. 39.

child begotten of his body he had. Whyche nevew, by the introduction of som, had grete enuye on Henry, your fader. For to¹ hym they said in this manere : “Ha ! Ha ! right-full heyre of Breytayne. Woo is us to see your grete domage / that is / you to be putte doun fro the noble enherytaunce of Bretayne. yf by fawte & lak of courage ye suffre it, what shal men say ? þey poyntyng you with the fynger shal sey, Loo, 8 yonder is the fole that for his feynted herte hath be putte out of so noble enherytaunce as is the royme of Bretayne.” And whan he understande the said enjurous wordes, he said : “Who is he that dare vsurpe & take 12 fro me my right, I knowe none / but that god wyl haue me to be punysshed. and wel I wot, þat the kinge, my lord & oncle, wyl not take ony other to be hys heyer than my self.” Thenne sayd one of them to 16 hym : “By my feyth, ye are [not] enfourmed in this matere, For the kinge, your oncle, hath made & ordeyned hys heyre, Henry of Leon, and as now letters of graunt ben therof made.” Whan the yong man 20 herd these wordes, he as wood wroth ansuerd to them, “wete it for certeyn / that if I knew these wordes to be trew, I shuld putte hastily remedy thereto / in so moche that neuer he shold hold land ne no possession.” 24 And thenne ansuerde to hym a knight named Josselyn Dupont : “certaynly it is soo / and for we wold haue none other to be kynge in brytaynne but you, after the decees of þe kinge, we warne you therof. For this 28 hath the kyng your oncle doon secretly, for ye shuld not knowe of it. and wete it that alle we that now are here, were present whan that couenant was made. aske my felawes yf I say trouth ² or not.” he demanded 32 of them yf it was so, And they ansuerd “ye.”

The yongman thanne said, “Fayre lordes, I thanke you of your good wylle whiche ye shewe to me, goo youre way. For wel I shall kepe Henry therfro.” 36

They toke theyre leue, For they rought not for no thing that might fall therof, so that they might see your faders deth. For enuyous and wroth they were
 4 that the kinge louyd hym so wel, and for nought sette they were by hym. knowe ye muste, that on the sonday next, in the morning, the kingis nevew armed hym self / yede in to the wod of Leon Castel, and
 8 there wayted tyl your fader passed by, whiche he perceyued gooyng alone to hys dysport about hys Castel of Leon / thinkynge on none euyl ne harme / and sodaynly cryed on hym, "Now shalt thou dey, false
 12 traytour, that fro me woldest haue and vsurpe myn herytage" / and foynyng at hym with hys swerd, wold haue ouerthrawen youre fader. but he glanched asyde / and so the kyngis nevew / for he recountrid ayenst
 16 nothing, fell doun to the grounde, and the swerd seaped fro hys hand that then your fader toke up, the sayd neuw that sawe hys wepen lost, toke a lytil knyf that he had and ranne ayenst hym / but your fader,
 20 with the pomel of the swerd, gaaf to hym suche a stroke on the heed / that notwithstanding hys yron hat, he broke hys heed so that he fel doun deed, but
¹whan he knew that it was he / he was sory and woo /
 24 retourned home / toke all hys hauoys and goodes meuable, and came in to the Shyre that men now call Forests, and grette help & comfort he founde in a lady, of whyche as now I kepe me styl to spek ony ferther.
 28 And after the departyng of her fro hym, he toke by maryage the sustir of hym that thoo dayes gouerned the erledome of Poytiers, on whyche he gate many children of the whyche ye are one. /
 32 'Frend,' said Melusyne, 'now haue I deuysed and reherced to you how your fader departed fro Bretayn, and leste hys landes and possessyons voyde, without lord, whiche owen to be yours. You thenne
 36 shal goo toward an vncle of yours whiche is called

The Sunday after
hearing this,
the king's
nephew laid in
wait for Henry,

surprised and
attacked him,

but was killed
by your father,
Henry of Leon,

¹ fol. 39 b.

who was sorry,
and left the
country for the
Shire of Forests,
where he
married.

Melusine tells
Raymondin to
go to his uncle,

Alain of Quingant,
and to tell him
the tale,

and get one of
his sons to call
Josselin before
his king,
and there accuse
him of his deed.

Oliver Duport
is to fight Ray-
mondin,
but he is to lose,
and he and his
father are to be
strangled,

¹ fol. 40.

and Raymondin
is to get posse-
sion of his land.

Raymondin with
many men goes
to Brut Britain,

where they pay
their way.

The king sends
to learn

Alayn of Quyngant / and ye shal make you to be knownen of hym / and he shal byleue you ynough of al that ye shall sey. he hath two wrorthy knightes to hys sones, the whiche are grete men *with* the kinge, 4 and loueth hem wel. by one of them, your Cousyns, ye shall make Josselyn Dupont, that as yet is alyue, to be called byfore the kyng, and there ye shalle accuse hym of the treson by hym & other machyned / thruh 8 whiche the kyngis nevew, willing to haue destroyed your fader, was hym self slain. And ye muste knowe that on this quarell his sone, called Olyuer Dupont, shall fyght ayenst you therfore. but ye shall haue the 12 vyctory ouer hym / and bothe fader and sone shal be condampned to hang and to be strangled. For the fader shal^l vttre and knowe alle the treson / and all your grounde and enherytaunce shalbe adiuged to you. 16 And thus shall ye be putte in pacyfyque or peesable possessyon of it by the Peerys or lordes pryncipal of the land. Now my ryght swete frend & felawe, douteles goo surely. For certaynly god shal helpe you 20 in all your juste & true dedes.'

Thanne ansuerd Raymondyn: 'Madame, I shall endeuooyre me to achyeue & fulfi^{ll} your com-
mandement.' Raymondyn toke leue of Melusyne / 24 and accompanied *with* grete nombre of knightes and squyers, rode fourth so long on hys way, tyl they came in Brut Brytayne, wher the people was abasshed & moche wondred what suche grete nombre of 28 straungers wold haue. But for they payed wel & largely for that they toke, they were ensured that they wold & sought but good. For thauncyent knight of the meyne of Melusyne rewled and gyded them alle 32 in al honour & goodnes. And for they were not so vnpurueyed / but that *with* them they had armures, with them yf nede were to arme them *with* / the kinge that knew of it, sent to them to wete what they 36

sought, whiche message demanded of Raymondyn yf hee
 owed euyl wy^H to the kyng & to hys royme. In this
 messagery or embassade were sent two wyse knightes,
 4 whiche wysly enquired of Raymondyn as byfore is
 sayd what ho sought and what he wold. to whome
 Raymondin full curtoysly ansuered thus. ‘Fayre
 lordes, ye shall te^H to my liege that I come but¹ for
 8 good and wele, and for to haue the lawful right in
 hys Court of suche things as belogen to me, For the
 whiche I shall presente myn owne personne byfore hys
 mageste, the same requyryng of socour and help.’ ‘For-
 12 south,’ ansuerd the two knyghtes, ‘ye shalbe welcome
 whan it shal playse you to do soo. and wete it wel that
 the kynge, our liege, is rightwyse & juste / and nothing
 as fer as right requyreth shal not be by hym denyed
 16 by ony wyse. but telle vs yf it lyke you whither ye
 are now bounde.’ ‘Certaynlly,’ said Raymondyn, ‘I
 wold I were at Quyngant.’ Thanne answerd one of
 them, ‘ye are wel on the way toward it, and wete that
 20 ye shall fynd there Aleyn of Leon, whiche shalbe make
 you good chere. and also ye shalbe fynd there two
 knightes, men of wele and honour, and hold strayte
 this way and ye shal not mys of it, and with your leue
 24 we retourne on our way toward oure liege.’

if Raymondin
intends evil to
him.

¹ fol. 40 b.

Raymondin tells
the messengers
that he comes to
obtain his rights,

on which he is
welcomed.

He tells them
he is going to
Quingant.

The messengers
leave.

Whanne these two knightes were fer fro Ray-
 mondyn and hys felawship an halfmyle, they
 byganne to say one to other: ‘By my feyth, yonder
 28 are gentyl and curtoys folkes, worshipfull & honour-
 able. For certayn they come not into this land with-
 out it is for some grete matere.’ and yet sayd, ‘lete
 vs go thrugh Quyngan; and to aleyn we shalbe anounce
 32 theyre commyng.’ they toke the way toward it, and
 rode so fast that soone they came there where they
 found Alayn, to whome they said & announced the
 commyng of Raymondyn ²and of his men. Whiche
 36 Alayn wondred moch of it. And thanne the trew

and on their way
home praise Ray-
mondin and his
men,

and pass by
Quingant,
where they an-
nounce to Alain
the coming of
Raymondin's
party.

² fol. 41.

Alain sends his sons to meet and attend to them.

The ancient knight gets a stock of food,

and pitches the tents,

and pays well for everything.

The brethren meet Raymondin,

and invite him to the castle of Quingant.

¹ fol. 41 b.

The invitation is accepted,

and they ride on to the town, where the ancient knight comes to them;

man dide calle to hym hys two sones, of whiche one was called Alayn & was eldest, and that other yongest had to name Henry, and he sayd to them in this manere : ‘ My good children, lepe on horsbak and ryde 4 on your way to mete yonde straungers / receyue ye them worshipfully, and see that they be wel and honestly lodged. For it is told to me, that they be six houndred horses or theraboute.’ but for nougnt he 8 spak. For thauncyent knyght of Melusyne was come before that / and seeying the toune was to lityl for to haue herberowed so moche peple in it / had made to be dressed tentes & pauyllons, and sent abounte in the 12 Countrie for suche things that necessary were to them, which he payed or mayd to be payd largely, in so moche that more vytay^H was there brought than þey neded of. And thanne Alayn was a^H abasshed whan he herd of 16 that grete hanoyr & apparey^H that they made there, and wyst not what theroft he shuld thinke or say.

Now sayth thy story, that so long rode the two brethren with theyre felawship togidre, that 20 they mete with Raymondin, & full curtoysly welcommed hym, and prayed hym by byddyng of Alayn, theyre fader, that he vouchesauf to comme and be lodged within the Fort or Castel of Qyngant with 24 theyre fader, that shuld make hym good chere. ‘ Fayre lordes,’ said Raymondyn, ‘ gramercy to your fader, and thanked be you of your curtoysy that ye thus proffre to me,¹ But at your requeste I shall goo toward your 28 fader for to rendre to hym reuerence. For glad & fayn I were to see hym, for the wele & honour that I have herde say by hym.’ Contynuyng suche wordes & oþer they rode tyl they came nygh the toun. And 32 thann came there thauncyent knight to Raymondyn, and sayd : ‘ Sire, I have made your pauyllon to be dressed vp, and tentes ynoughe for to lodge you & al your men, and thanked be god we are wel purveyed.’ 36

'Ye haue doo wel,' sayd Raymondin / 'goo and make ye mery and chere my men, and loke not for me this nyght, For I goo to the Fortresse with this two gentylmen.' And thenne departed he fro thauncyent knight / toke with hym a few of hys moost famyler men, and yede to the Fortresse wher the lord of the place aborde for hym sty^H at the gate. Whan Raymondyn thanne 8 sawe hym as to hys lord and vncle he made reuerence & salewed hym mekely. Wherto shulde I vse prolix or longe wordes of theyre acoyntaunce. but of the faitt or matere whiche I owe to uttre and say, Lete vs 12 penne say. Whan they had souped / wesshen & graces said / the lord of the place toke Raymondyn by the hand / had hym apart upon a bench / there to deuyse both togidre, whyle that the other souped / the whiche 16 þe two bretheren chered & honestly seruyd. The lord Alayn thanne wyse and subtyl, and that knewe moche of wel and honour, bygan to raisonne with Raymondin in this manere : 'Sir knight, grete joye I haue of your 20 commyng hither, For certaynly ye are full lyke to a brother of myn whiche was valyaunt, fu^H wyse and worthy. he departed ¹fro this land xl. yere goon, for a stryf that befel betwix the nevew of the kinge that 24 reygnd at that tyme and hym, and wete it that this is the iiijth kynge that haue reyned syn that tyme vnto now. And bycause that, to me seemeth ye resemble my brother, I am the more glad & fayn to see you.'

28 'Sire,' said Raymondyn, 'therof I mercy & thank^e you / and or I departe from you I shall make you certayn wherfore and by what inconuenience the stryf that ye spek of happed betwixt the nevew of the kyng and 32 youre brother. For wete it, that for none other cause I come hither. but for to shewe publiquely the pure trouth & certeynee thereof.'

36 **W**han Alayn herd these wordes he was moche abashed, and loked on Raymondyn moche

and Raymondin tells him that he will stay at the Castle.

He rides to the Castle, and makes reverence to his uncle.

After supping his uncle takes him aside,

and tells how glad he is to see him,

¹ fol. 42.

because of his likeness to his lost brother.

Raymondin tells his uncle he comes about the strife between his uncle's brother and the late king's nephew, which abashes Alain;

who asks how he
knows about the
strife.

*Raymondin asks
if any counsellor
of the late king
yet lives,*

and is told of one

¹ fol. 42 b.

*whose son was
lately dubbed a
knight;*

*whereupon Ray-
mondin tells
their names to
be Josselin
Dupont the
father, and
Oliver the son,*

*and promises to
tell Alain more
if he will go to
court.*

*Alain grants
Raymondin's
request*

ententyfly, and after sayd, ‘and how shal that mowe be ?
ye haue not yet the age of xxx yere / by you may not
be recounted the faytte, the trouth of whiche none
might neuer knowe. For whan the stroke of the 4
mysdede happed. my brother sodaynly departed / so
that I ne none other herd neuer syn whither he was
become.’ ‘Sire, yf ye vouchesaf / telle mee yf there
is as now yet lyuyng eny man that had on that tyme 8
auctorite or rewle abouthe the kinge that regned whan
the stryf befel.’ ‘By my feyth,’ said Alayn, ‘one and
no more I knowe, that had gouernaunce in Court that
same tyme, and he hym self vsurpeth & holdeth my 12
brothers landes as his owne enherytaunce. For the
kyng gaaf it to hym, for hys first begoten sone to
enjoye it for euermore, the which ¹hys sone is now of
late dowbed & made knight.’ ‘For southe,’ sayd thenne 16
Raymondyn, ‘wel I wote hys name.’ ‘And how know
ye hyt?’ said Alayn. ‘By my feyth,’ sayd Raymondin,
‘he is called Josselin Dupont / and hys sone hys named
Olyuyer.’ ‘Sire knight,’ sayd Alayn, ‘ye say trouth. 20
But telle me how ye this may knowe.’ ‘Sire,’ sayd
Raymondyn, ‘no ferther ye shaſt as now know therof.
but ye vouchesaf to come & your two sones with me,
unto the kinges Court / wete it that I shall declare 24
vnto you the quarrell & stryf so clerly that, yf ye
euer loued your brother, Henry of Leon, ye shal be
thereof fayn & glad.’ And thanne Alayn heryng the
name of hys brother called, he was more abasshed than 28
before. For he wend none other but that hys brother
had be long deed. And thenne he thoughte longe in
hymself or he ansuerd ony word.

Thus, as I haue sayd to you / moche long thought 32
Alayne, and aftir he ansuerd : ‘Sire knight, I
graunt & acorde me to your requeste / sethen that here
I ne may knowe your wyſt. For therat I lang moche.
I gladly shall hold you company vnto the kynges 36

Court.' 'gramerey,' sayd Raymondyn, 'and wel I shal kepe you fro dommage.' Wherto shuld I make long proces, Alayn manded or sent for a grete foysyn of hys 4 frendes, & made hym redy in grete estate for to goo to the court. The kynge that knew theire commyng departed fro Storyon, where he laye, & came to Nantes. For the two knighthes whiche the kinge sente 8 Raymondyn were retourned, & had recounted to the kinge the ansuere of Raymondyn, and the maner of his estate. And therfore the kinge was come to Nantes and manded a part of hys baronye, For he wold not 12 that Raymondyn shuld fynd hym vnpurueyd of men. And amonge other he sent for Josselin Dupont for ¹to haue his Counsey^H on the demande that Raymondyn wold make. For he was moche sage. What shuld I 16 saye more? thauncyent knight came before & made to be dressed bothe pauillons & tentes & purueyed for all thinges necessary. Wherfore the folke of the toonne were moche abasshed of the grete appareyl that 20 he caused to be made / Thenne came Raymondyn, Alayn, and bothe his sones, and descended into the chief Pauillon, where they made them redy and arayed them ful richely, for to goo toward the kinge / and 24 after they departed fro the tentes, acompanyed with xl knighthes wel horsed and honestly arayed that wonder was to see / and had his barons with hym. And whan they come to the kings place they descended 28 fro theirre horses / and Raymondyn / Alayn and his two sones entred within the halle, there the kynge was acompanyed with his barons / made to the kinge reuerence / after siewyng, salewed the barons & lordes, 32 the kinge welcommned & receyued hem joyously / called to hym Alayn, and said to hym in this manere:

' **I**t gyueth me grete wonder,' said the kinge to Alayn, ' of this gracyous straunge knight, with whome 36 ye are so acoynted / What he seketh in this land.' 'Ha /

Alain sends for his friends;

the king comes from Nantes and sends for some of his barony,

¹ fol. 43.
and for Josselin.

The ancient knight prepares tents for Raymondin,

in which Alain and his sons dress themselves to go before the king.

They set out with forty barons;

arriving, are welcomed by the king,

who asks Alain about his friend, the strange gracious knight.

Alain tells the king that he marvels at the knight's sayings,

but believes that all will be made plain soon.

Raymondin learns that Josselyn is present,

¹ fol. 43 b.

with his son Oliver.

Raymondin addresses the king, and praises his justice;

the king asks why?

ha, sire,' ansuerd Alayn. 'I am an houndred tymes more meruaylled of the wordes that he yestirday shewed vnto me / than ye are of his commyng, but soone shal be declared al that we lang astir & desire 4 to knowe.' Thenne Raymondyn, dressyng hys wordes to thedest sone of Alayn, sayd softly in this manere, 'Sire knight, say me of your Curtoysye, yf one called Josselyn Dupont be now in this company or nat.' 8 Thanne sayd Alayn, 'ye—and wold to god so that the kyng shuld not be dyspleased that I had slayn hym. For he enjoyeth ¹therytage that apparteyneth to one our oncle which we shuld haue.' And after these wordes 12 Alayn sayd to Raymondin / 'it is yond auncient knight that sitteth by the kinge. And wete it for certayn that he is replenysshed with all falshed & malyce / and yonder is his son Olyuyer that weyeth not an 16 ounce lasse in al wykkednes & euyll.' 'By my feyth, Sire knight,' sayd Raymondin / 'ye soone shal be auenged of hym yf god wyl.' And leuyng theire talkyng, Raymondin hadd hymself fourth before the 20 kinge, to whom he said in this manere: 'ha, high sire & mighty kinge, It is wel trouth that common renoumee ranneth thrughe alle landes. that your Court is so noble & so raysonnable that it may be called fountayne 24 of Justice & raison / and that none ne commeth to your Court but that ye shew & gyue to hym good Justice and raisonnable after the good right that he hath.' 'By my feyth, sire knight,' said the kinge / 28 'it is trouth. but wherfore say you so, fayn I wold wete it.' 'Forsonthe, sire,' said Raymondin, 'for to vttre & shew it vnto you / I am come hither / & for none other cause. but, Sire, yf it plaise you / or I telle it you / 32 ye shal promyse me that ye shal susteyne me ayenst alle personnes after right & raison. For that / that I shal say is in a part your wele proufft & honour. For no kinge accompanied of a traytour is not wel 36

lodged ne sure of his personne.' 'By my feyth,' said the king, 'ye say trouth / say on hardily. For I swere to you by al that I hold of god, that I shal doo to you alle Justice & rayson after the good right that ye shal haue / and that shal I doo doubleles / yf it were ayenst my brother.' 'Sire,' said Raymondin, 'an houndred thousand thankes & mercyes / ye say as a valyaunt kynge & ¹trew man. For first were kynges stablysshed for to rendre or yeld to euerbody juste jugement in alle things.'

¹² **N**oble mighty kinge,' said Raymondin / 'it is wel trouth that one, your predecessor kynge, reyned somtyme moche mightily & valyauntly that was in the tyme of Josselin Dupont and of Alayn, whiche bothe are here now present before your majeste / this

¹⁶ kyng whiche I spek of, had a moche fayre & noble yong man to his nevew. that tyme was in this Countre a baron whiche was called Henry of Leon, the whiche was brother to Alayn here present.' 'By my feyth, sire,'

²⁰ said thanne Josselyn, 'he saith trouth. and ouermore the same Henry of Leon slew the nevew of your predecessor by treson / fledd out of this land, and neuer syn came hither ayen. And then the kinge seased

²⁴ his landes and possessyons, and anoone after gaf them to me.' The kinge thanne ansuered, 'we haue herd ynough of this matere / but suffre this knight fynyshe his raison which he hath bygoun.'

²⁸ **T**O this ansuerd Raymondyn, 'Siro kinge, he hath wel raison to speke of hit, For ferthermore he shal be constrainyd to say / how be it that as now he

³² hath said amys & not trouth of that he saith that Henry of leon slew the kinges nevew in treson, For he knew wel why & wherfore it was, and there nys no

man luyng that can say the trouth of it but he alone, For they that were of his acorde and conspiracion ben

³⁶ al deed. Therfore sire kyng, youchesaf to command

and promises
to do justice to
Raymondin,

for which Ray-
mondin thanks
him.

¹ fol. 44.

Raymondin
speaks to the
king of Josselin,
Alain,

and of Henry of
Leon;

whereupon Jos-
selin says that
Henry slew the
nephew of the
king's prede-
cessor, and fled
the land;

but the king
orders him to
let Raymondin
finish his story.

Raymondin
denies what Jos-
selin said,

but asserts that
Josselin alone
knows the truth
of the matter,

and asks the
king to bid Jos-
selin tell all.

¹ fol. 44 b.

This abashes
Josselin, who
asks if Ray-
mondin has come
to dishonour
him.

Raymondin tells
the king of the
treachery of Jos-
selin toward his
father, Henry of
Leon.

How Josselin
told the king's
nephew that he
was disinherited

because of
Henry,

² fol. 45.

hym telle trouth al on hye, that eueryone here may
¹ here it.' And whan Josselin vnderstode that word,
he waxed sore abasshed; neuertheles, he ansuered in
this manere: 'Sire knight, are you come into this 4
land forto vndertake eny thinge in dyshonour of me?'
And Raymondin ansuerd appertly: 'Fals traytour, he
fourueyeth nat that saith the playn trouth.' Thanne
he said agayn to the kynge: 'Sire, it is wel trouth that 8
Henry of Leon was a moche valiant & hardy knight,
curteys and wel condicyoned, & moche was beloved
bothe of the kinge and of his nevew / and vsed the
kynge moche of his counsel, For he was he on whom 12
he trusted most. It haped that dyuerse traytours beyng
that time about the kinge, of which Josselin here
present was one, as chef causer of the mysdede that
tyme perpetred or doon / came to said kingis nevew, 16
& to hym they said in this manere: "Gentyl Squyer,
alle we that are here byfore your presence ben sory &
woo of your grete dommage and shamfull losse whan
ye shall be dysheryted of so noble a land as is the 20
royame of Brytayne" / and he ansuered to them / "how
shuld that mowe be doo? the kynge hath none heyre
but my self." "On my god," said thanne yond Josselin
to hym, "Wete it þat he hath made & stablished his 24
heyre, Henry of Leon, and I byleue that this Henry
hath enchaunted hym and the barons of the land also,
For therof ben lettres passed & sealed with theire
sealles annexed to the kingis grete seall / and al this 28
they al togider affermed on theire feyth for trouth."
"By my feith," said the squyer thanne / "here is grete
inconuenyence yf that be trew that ye telle me." ² And
thanne Josselin with his complices alle with an acorde 32
sware yet ayen to hym that it was trouth. Wherfore
the said yonge squyer was sory and woo. Josselin
thenne seeyng that he byleued theire falsed to be
certayn, said yet agayn to the squyer in this manere: 36

"Yf in you lyeth so moch hardynes that ye dare vnder-take to auenge the wrong doon to you by Henry of Leon, We alle shal helpe you therto." And the squyer
 4 ansuerd, "my courage and wylle ben agreed to do
 soo." Thenne said Josselin, "goo thanne & arme you
 in a manner vnknownen, and we shal abyd you with
 out the toune, and shal ledd you in to suche a place
 8 where ye shal auenge you at your ease." O noble &
 mighty kinge, sethen I fynde now myself in Court of
 right & iustice / and that I may see myn enemye, I
 wyl no more be hyd, but lete euery man knowe that
 12 I am the sone of Henry of Leon.' Thenne they were
 alle abasshed of that word, but they held them styl /
 and Raymondyn spake fourth in this manere./

Sire kinge, it is trouth that my fader had take leue
 16 of the kinge, and was goon in to hys Countrey /
 and was wonnt euery mornyng for to goo in a wode
 nygh by his fortesse to dysporte hym, sayeng hys
 matyns alone. And this fals traytour Josselin, with his
 20 complices, ledd the said kingis nevew and embusshed
 them there. My fader, that thoughte no harme, came
 that same ouure / and whan Josselin perceyued hym
 commyng he said to the squyer / "now it is tyme to
 24 auenge you, For he is without eny armure or wopen /
 he may not escape you / and yf we see that ye nede of
 help¹ we shall helpe you." The squyer, thanne esprysed
 with euyl desire, departed fro them and ranne toward
 28 my fader and escryed hym to deth / and as he wold
 haue thrested the swerd thrugh my faders body. my
 fader glanced asyde / and as god wold he that fyersly
 ranne feſt to the ground. My fader þenne toke the
 32 swerde that scaped fro the squyers hand, and with the
 pomel of it smote hym under the eere by suche
 strengthe that the squyer feſt doun ded. And thenne
 whan my fader saw hym lyeng on the ground deed he
 36 dyscouered his face, and anone he knew hym, wherfore

and urged him
to avenge him-
self,

and promised to
aid him,

Raymondin
declares that he
is the son of
Henry, which
abashes them all.

He continues the
story of Josselin's
treachery:

how an ambush
was laid,

¹ fol. 45 b.

and how the
king's nephew
tried to slay his
father,

but was slain
himself.

How Henry fled
from the land on
recognizing his
enemy, fearing
the king's ire;

which pleased
Josselin,

who thought he
would then be
able to rule the
king.

Raymondin
challenges Jos-
selin,

¹ fol. 46.

his son Oliver,
and one of his
friends;

but no one ac-
cepts the
challenge.

Alain, under-
standing now
who Raymondin
is,

embraces him.

he made grete sorow and was sory and woo / and after
the dede & euylhap, doubtyng the furour & yre of the
king, yede there hys hauoir was / toke it and fledd
with al from þis land. And thanne Josselin the fals ⁴
traytour sayd to hys complices and felawes: "Now are
we come to our entencion & wylle. For the kinges
nevew is deed, and yf Henry be take he may not scape
fro deth. Now shal we gouerne and doo with the king ⁸
that we lyst after our guyse / lete vs not meve us tyl
he be ferre from vs / and after we shal take the corps
& putte it in a byere that we shal make with braunches
& leues, and so we shal bere it toward the king, to ¹²
whom we shal say that Henry of Leon slew hym in
treson." Ha / ha, noble king, al euen so as I say, dide
that yonder fals traytour / and yf he say nay / here I
presente & cast my gage of bataill agenst hym. And ¹⁶
bycause, sire kinge, that I wil lete euery man knowe
that I doo vndertake þis not for auarice / but for to
kepe my right and enherytaunce / and for to declare,
manyfeste, and ¹shewe the vlylonny and euyl treson ²⁰
that this fals traytour Josselin and hys complices dyde
to Henry of Leon, my fader, for to hause hym out of
conceytle, and to be putte fro the kingis Court, I
besech your highnes that he may take hys sone Olyuer ²⁴
and another yet of his frendes / and I shal fight ayenst
them thre without fawte, prouyded always the noble
and juste jugement of your Court / one after another' /
and sayeng these wordes he kyst his gage. but there ²⁸
was none that spake or ansuerd ony word. And whan
Alayn and his two sones vnderstode alle that Raymon-
dyn had said' / what for joye to see theire faders nevew
and Cousyn to them / and what for pyte to hero telle ³²
the trayson so machyned ayenst theyre faders brother
& vncle to them / ranne to kysse and embrased
Raymondyn.

Whan the king of the Bretons sawe that no body
ansuerd to these wordes so proferid in hys
presence / sayd al on high that euery one there might
4 here hym, ‘ how now, Josselin, are ye deef? / I now per-
ceyue wel & see that the prouerbe that is said commonly
is trew / that is / “that olde synne reneweth shame,”
For this knight straunger bringeth you tylynges,
8 moche straunge and a wonder medecyne fro ferre land /
aduyse you of that ye shal ansuere.’ Thanne ansuerd
Josselyn to the kyng: ‘ Sire kinge, I am not he þat
from hens fourth oweth to ansuere such thinges. And
12 also wel I byleue that he saith it but in jape & sport.’

Thanne ansuerd Raymondin, ‘ the mocke fals¹ traytour
shal tourne on the. I now requyre you, noble king,
that this matere may be discuted / lete him haue as
16 raison requyreh for his treson / and I to be punysshed
yf in eny poynt forsayd [I] haue myssaid or mesprysed.’
Thenne said the kinge, ‘ doubt not of it, For so shal
I doo. Josselyn,’ said the kinge, ‘ ye muste ansuere to
20 this quarell & acusacion.’ Whan thenne his sone
Olyuyer herd what the kyng said to his fader / he
ansuerd to his wordes: ‘ Sire, that knight is so sore
adrad that he trembleth for fere / he weneth as mo-
24 semeth to take the cranes flighing, by my feith he
shall wel fayll & inysse of that he hath said, For my
fader is a true man in al his dedes / and I vouchesauf
& graunt the bataill as he hath ordonned / and there
28 is my gage / he shal be wel happy yf he dyscomfyte
me and another of my lynage suche as I shall chese.’ /

Whan the king herd that word he was moche
32 nat happe in my Court as long as I shall lyue þat one
knight alone shal fyght ayenst two for oo maner
quarell / and grete shame is to you / only to haue
thought it in your herte / and wete it / that by
36 semblaunt ye shew nat your fader to haue good quarell.

The king orders
Josselin to de-
fend himself,

who says that
he believes that
Raymondin is
joking.

¹ fol. 46 b.

Raymondin
denies it,
and asks the
king to bring
the matter to
an issue.

In answer to
the king, Josse-
lin's son Oliver
agrees to fight
Raymondin,
helped by
another of his
lineage.

The king is
wroth at the
proposal to pair
two knights
against one,

and gives Raymondin choice
of a day of battle;
Raymondin
desires to fight
now,

¹ fol. 47.
and is en-
couraged by
Alain and his
sons.

And fro this ouure fourthon I gyue you journey of batay^H at the requeste of the knight straunger on such day that he sha^H assigne.' 'By my feyth,' said thenne Raymondin, 'I am euen now redy therto, for myn 4 armures are not ferre. and thanked be your highnesse an hondred tymes of your lawfu^H graunt.' There had ye herd grete rumoure made on al^H sydes, for al^H said, 'yonder is the moste valyaunt knight that euer we sawe 8 requyryng his ryght.' but what so euer was wooffull therof, Alayn of Quyngant & his two sones were fayn & glad that so shuld be doo / & said to Raymondin, 'Fayre Cousin, be not ¹abasshed of nothing in the 12 world. take boldly the batai^H for you, and for us both ayenst that same fals traytour / For yf god wil we sha^H soone haue worship therof.' 'Fayre lordes,' said Raymondin, 'take who wil batai^H for hymself. 16 For the same I shal haue for my part, and doubte you not but that I shal bring it to a good & worshipful ende god before with the good right that I haue therto.'

20

The king, know-
ing the might of
the parties,

makes arrange-
ments to prevent
disorder,

and declares the
quarrel to be one
of life and death
on both sides.

Whilles the rumour was among the folk, the kinge, moche wyse & subtyl / for that the parties were of grete & high parentage & lynee / doubtyng of some grete inconuenience that might happe 24 emong them / commanded sodaynly the gates to be shette that none might entre ne yssue / & ordonned men armed to kepe euery man therfro. and aftir callid his Conseil^H apart / shewed to them and reherced al^H the quarell. and they counseilled hym of that was nedeful^H to be doo. Thanne retourned the kinge vnto the halle, where he made to be commanded by hym, that none there, on peyne of deth, should be so hardy 32 to spek ony word but þat he were commanded. The kinge thenne spak & said, 'now, fayre lordes, ye muste vnderstand how this quarell is now not litel, for it is for lyf or grete dyshonour for euermore to the one 36

partye. and wete it for certayn that I ne owe ne also
wyl not refuse ryght to be doo in my Court. Olyuier,
said the king, 'wil you deffende your fader of this
4 treson?' 'Sire,' said he / 'ye certaynly,' / . and thenne
the king ansuerd / 'the lystes ben alredy dressed, and
therfore I ordeyne the bataill to be to morow exploited.
And wete it / that yf ye be dyscomfited & ouercome,
8 bothe your fader and ye shul be hanged. and not lesse
shal haue your partye aduerse, yf the ¹ cas myshappeth
to hym. Make you thanne redy toward / and gyue in
oure hand hostages & pledges / and first your fader
12 shall abyde.' and thenne the king made Josselin to be
ledde in to pryon in a stronge toure. and thanne said
the king to Raymondin, 'Sire knight, whome shul yo
gyue vs for hostage?' Alayn and his two sones came
16 thanne fourth & said, 'sire, we pledge hym.' 'By my
feyth,' said the king, 'it suffyseth vs wel. and therfore
ye shall not hold pryon. For wel I wote that the
knight had not emprySED the bataill without he wold
20 perfourme it.' And thus departed bothe parties fro the
presence of the kinge. and Raymondyn with hys folk,
acompnyed of hys vncle & Cousins, yede toward his
pauillons, and aboute euen tyme he went in to the
24 chirch Cathedraill, and there he watched, making hys
prayers to god with grete deuocyon / And Olyuer also
came to hys hous with grete foyson of them of hys
lynee, and made his hors & harneys redy. On the
28 morowe they herd masse, and after armed them / and
the king and the Barons of the land were sette on the
seafoldes rounde aboute the listes / and gardes to the
champ or feld were ordeyned, and the Chayers sette.
32 And about the ooure of pryme came Raymondin with
fayre felawship, armed moche goodly & richely / the
spere on the rest, and on hym hys cote of armes,
browded with syluer & azure / and entred the lystes
36 vpon a grete destrier wel harneySED vnto the nayle of

Oliver under-takes to fight.

The king ap-points next day for the battle,

and tells that the loser shall be hanged.

¹ fol. 47 b.

Pledges are taken from the combatants,

and both parties leave the king.

The combatants pray and hear mass.

On the morrow the lists are guarded,

and at noon Raymondin appears richly armed and well mounted, with his companions, and enters the lists;

and makes reverence to the king and barons;

¹ fol. 48.

dismounts and waits for his adversary,

who at last appears nobly armed with his father.

Raymondin
swears the
justice of his
cause on the
Gospels,

and likewise Josselin and Oliver, but very timorously.

A herald proclaims that no signs are to be made:

the lists clear.

A herald shouts
'Do your duty'
to the combatants.

² Fol. 48 b.

the foot / as for gage of bataille / and there he made reuerence & salewed the king & the Barons. 'By my feith,' said eueryone / 'it is long syn we sawe so fayre man of armes ne of so fayr contenaunce / he hath not 4 beste werke that hath such¹ a man in hand to joust or fyght with hym.' Thenne descended Raymondin fro the destrer as appertly as he had be vnarmed, and sette hym in the chayer abydyng after his aduersary. 8 It is trouth that long after that came Olyuer, right wel & nobly armed, and sett on a moche ryche destrier / and wel he semed man of grete fayttes / and so was he / & before hym came Josselin, his fader, on 12 a palfray, and made reuerence to the kinge & hys barons. Moche semed Josselin abasshed as thanne / For that euery man said he had euyl cause. What shuld I make long tale / the holy Euangiles were there 16 brought, wheron Raymondin swore that Josselyn had euyl cause, and that he had doon the treson as he had byfore declared / and after he kneled & kyssed the book, and sette hym self ayen on the chayere. And 20 after Josselin sware, but he stakered, and so timerous he was that he coude not touche the boke / and also Olyuer, which knew wel the trouth of al, swore ful feyntly / and that doon he sette hym self agayn in his 24 chayere. and fourthwith a herault cryded with an high voyce on the kingis byhalfe / that none, on peyne of deth, shuld be so hardy to speke ony worde ne to make eny signe or tokon that eny of the Champyons might 28 vnderstand or perceyue. And thenne eueryman voyded the place, saaf only they that were stabblished to the garde of the champ & Josselin. And anoone Raymondyn lept on horsbak moch appertly and toke hys spere, and on the other syde Olyuer had hys destrier redy, and lept on lightly, and toke hys spere with sharp yron / and thenne cryded a herault thryes. 'lete ranne your horses & ² doo your deuoyre.'

Here saith the veray hystory, that whan the cry
was made Raymondin had leyed the ende of
hys spere to the grounde alonge the hors nek, and
4 thryes he made the signe of the crosse. and while he
dede so hys enemy ranne at hym, and with hys spere
hytte Raymondin on the brest or he was ware of hit
moche rudely, For dooynge so he putte to it alle his
8 strengthe & myght, but Raymondin bowed neuer
therfore / and the spere of Olyuer brak in to pieces,
and with that strok the speere of Raymondyn fell to
the ground. ‘Ha, traytour,’ said then Raymondyn /
12 ‘thou folowest wel the right euyl lynee of whiche thou
yssued. but that may not auaylle the.’ and toke the
sterope that hynge at sadelbowe, that had thre poyntes
wel assured, eche of them seuen ench long. and at
16 retourne that Olyuer supposed to haue doo, Raymon-
dyn smote hym on the helmet with the sterop that oo
poynte of it entred & perced the helmet so that the
nayl of the vmbrel brake, and the vysere hing at oo
20 syde / and the visage of Olyuer abode all dyscouered,
wherfore he was moche agast and abasshed. Neuerthe-
les he drew out hys swerde & wel shewed contenaunce
of a knight that lytil redoubteth hys enemye. and so
24 they faught long space togidre and gaaf eche other
grete strokes / and there might men see grete appertyse
of armes. At last Raymondin alighted on foot and
toke vp hys spere that laye at ground & came with
28 grete paas toward his foo morta^H, whiche the best wyse
that he coude dystourned fro Raymondin that he made
to goo after hym alonge the Champ. For he dide with
hys hors what he wold,¹ and by that manere dooynge
32 he supposed to haue made Raymondyn very that nedes
he muste reste hym, and so the day shuld be soone
passed. But Raymondin whiche that perceyued, yede &
appertly to[ke]² hys hors that he ledde with one hand, &

Raymondin, his
spear couched,

making the sign
of the cross, is
struck fiercely on
the breast by
Oliver's spear;

but he does not
bow;
Oliver's spear
shivers, and
Raymondin's
falls.

Upon which
Raymondin
breaks Oliver's
helmet with his
stirrup;

his visor falling
discovers his
face.

They continue
to fight fiercely
with swords

until Raymondin
alights from his
horse and takes
his spear, and
goes to attack his
foe,
who runs away
from him.

¹ fol. 49.

Raymondin then,
leading his horse

² Fr. *prinst.*

and carrying his
spear,
approaches
Oliver,

who suddenly
spurs his horse
against Ray-
mondin,

but has it
stunned by a
blow from the
stirrup,

and is dis-
mounted by a
spear stroke,
and wounded and
beaten;

and held by the
throat, Raymon-
din kneeling on
him.

After a time
Raymondin asks
him to yield, or
die.

* fol. 49 b.

He replies he
would prefer to
die by Raymon-
din's hand;

who pitied him,
and asks if he
knew of his
father's treason.

He says he did
not;

toke the spere at other hand / and softly one pas after another came towarde hys enemye. And whan Olyuyer sawe hym come, perceyuying his manere he wist not how ne in what manere Raymondyn wold assay^H 4 hym / and sodaynly spored his horse, wenying to haue come & hurted Raymondyn as he had doon byfore. but Raymondin kyst at hym yet ayen the sterop by grete anger, and hitte Olyuyer hors at foreheed with 8 such strength that the chaunfreyn entred deep within the hors heed, so that it bowed the legges behind to therthe. Olyuyer thanne sporid his destrier, but as the hors redressed hym, Raymondyn with hys spere 12 smote Olyuyer at right syde of hym, so that he ouer-threw hym to therthe, and so wonderly a strok he gaf hym betwix the may^H panser & the Corset that the spere heed entred deep in hys body / and ar he might 16 be delyuered Raymondyn cast on hym so many strokes that he might no more meve hym self, and by force plucked the helmet fro the heed of hym, and putte hys knee on his naue^H, and the hand senester at hys nek, 20 and held hym in suche destresse that by no manere waye he might not meue hym.

Thy story telleth in this partie that Raymondin 24 held Olyuyer as aboue is said long espace of 24 tyme, and whan he sawe that he had the best ouer hym he drew a knife¹ that heng² at his right side and said to hym, 'False traytour, yeld thyself vaynquyssed, or ellis thou art but deed.' 'By my feith,' said Olyuyer, 28 'I have leuer dye by the hand of suche a valyaunt knight as ye be than of another.' Raymondyn thanne toke grete pite on hym and demanded of hym, vpon parel of the sowle of hym / yf he nothing knew of 32 the treson that Josselin his fader had doon / and he ansuerd nay, and he was not yet borne þat tyme that this treson happed. and how be it that it plaised to

¹ Knight in MS. Fr. version *coustel*.

god that Fortune were as thenne contrary to hym,
nowithstanding yet he held his fader for a trew man /
lawful and not gilty of that same dede. And thanne
4 whan Raymondyn, that wel wyst the contrary, herd
hym, he was sorowful & woo, and bete hym so moche
on the temples with hys fust armed with his gantlet
that he made hym so astonyed that he ne saw ne herd
8 ne wyst what he dide to hym / And thanne stode
vp Raymondin and toke hym by the feet and drew
hym vnto the lystes, And syn he putte hym without
fourth / and retourned & came before the scafold of
12 the kinge, the visere lyfte on hye, & said : 'Sire, haue
I doo my deuoire, For yf I haue eny thing more to doo
I am redy to it to the regarde of your Court &
ordynaunce?' 'By my feyth,' said the king, 'sire knight,
16 ye haue quytted your self full wel.' And the king
þenne commanded that Josselin and his sone shuld be
bothe hanged, and they to whom the king comanded
this execucion to be doo wente soone, & without delay
20 they seasid Josselin, who anoone cryed to the king
piteously for mercy. And þen the king yede and said
to hym that he shulde ¹telle the trouthe of the quarell,
and peradventure he night haue grace.

24 **T**henne said Josselin, 'Sire, to hyd the trouthe it
auaylleth not / haue pite on me yf it plaise you,
For certaynly it was doon in the manere & fourme as
the knight hat purposed & said / and wete it þat my
28 sone Olyuyer was not yet borne.' 'By my feith, Josselin,
said the kinge, 'here is grete falshed, and yf it ne had
be goddis playsire that ye shuld be therof punysshed,
he had not lefte you lyue so long in this world. and
32 as to my part, ye shall not faylf of the punycyon.'
Thanne he said all on high to them that were ordeyned,
that anoone bothe fader & sone shuld be hanged. And
thenne came fourth Raymondin & said to the king :
36 'Sire, I thanke you as I may of the good justice that ye

but Raymondin,
knowing he lied,
beats him on the
temples.

Then Raymondin
asked the king if
he had done his
duty;

who said he had
well,

and commanded
Josselin and his
son to be put to
death.

¹ fol. 50.

Josselin
confesses his
treachery.

Raymondin
pleads for Oly-
ver's life, as he
is brave and
valiant,

and free from
the guilt of the
treason;

and for Josselin's,
because he is so
old, desiring only
that he should
make restitution
of the estate,

the money to be
used to found a
priory.

¹ fol. 50 b.

But the king
orders them to
be hanged,
and restores
Raymondin his
estates, and gives
him all Josselin's
land,
for which Ray-
mondin does
homage.

Raymondin is
feasted by the
king of Brut
Britain,

haue doon to me / but, sire, I moued with pite requyre
you of your mysericorde to be shewed on Olyuyer. For
seeyng his valyauntyse & worthynes, also consideryng
that he is not gilty of the treson it were grete dommage 4
of hys deth. For yet shall he mow doo wel. And as to
the fader, for this that I see hym olde & feble / of my
part, sire king, yf ye vouchesauf to graunt hym grace
therof I shuld be fayn & glad, soo that I haue myn 8
herytage to my behouf, and that the prouffytes &
fruytes that he hath leuyed & receyued of it, syn he
had therytage in hys handes, be by extimacion reualued
in money. that sanie payment to be by you, sire king, 12
ordeyned to edefye or bigge a pryorye, & monkes
therin to be rented with reuenues & possessyons after
the quantyte of the said money to þe regarde of you
and of your Counseill. the said monkes to pray for the 16
sowle of the kinges nevew perpetuelly.' The kinge
thanne said to his barons, 'Fayr¹ Sires, here ye may
see the free courage of a knight that prayeth to me to
respyte hys enemys fro deth. but by the feyth that I 20
owe to god Josselin nor his sone shal neuer doo treson
ne cause no man to goo out of my land as exiled.' and
fourthwith he made them to be hanged, and rendred to
Raymondin his enherytaunce and al Josselyn's land 24
with al. Wherof Raymondin thanked hym moche
humblly and made to hym his homage. After byganne
the feste to be moche grete, and held the king grete &
noble Court open to al men, & was moche glad of that 28
he had recouered & gotten so noble a knight in his
land. but for nought he made joye, For soone ynough
he shall see that Raymondyn had no grete wylle to
abyde and dwelle in Bretayne, for moch longed to hym 32
the sight of Melusyne.

Now in this parte telleth thystorye that Raymondyn
was moche wel festyed of the king of the brut
Bretayne that held grete & honourable Court for loue 36

of Raymondin, and the barons of Bretayne made grete joye for his commyng, and specyally his vncle Alayn and hys two children, & they of his lynage. And 4 thanne came Raymondin to the king and said to hym thus: ‘Sire king, I pray you & beseche that ye vouchsaf to graunte & acorde that I gyue the Baronye of Leon that was to Henry my fader, on whos sowle 8 god haue mercy, to Henry my Cousyn / and so the land shal bere the name of his ryghtful lord / and you the name of your liege man, For he is of the right lynee.’ ‘By my feyth,’ sayd þe kinge, ‘sire, sith 12 it playseth you thus wel it pleseth vs so to be.’ Thenne the kyng called Henry, For he loued hym wel and said to hym: ‘Henry, receyue the name of the baronye of Leon, which your Cousyn gyue you, and make homage 16 to me therof’ / and so he dide · and thanked moche the king & Raymondyn.¹ And this doon Raymondin called to hym Alayn his Cousyn: ‘I gyue you the land that the king hath gyuen me that late was 20 longyng to Josselin Dupont, and make your homage to the king’: / and he thanked hym moche humbly · and knelyng made hys homage to the kinge that moche joyfully receyued hym to it. But the Barons of the 24 land byganne thanne to make rumour among them and said: ‘By my feyth, this knight is not come into this lande for couetyse ne auarice. But only he hath putte his lyf in grete auenture & parel for to conquere his 28 heritage. Whan so soone he demysed hymself therof. it muste wel be that grete ryches he hath some where’ / Thanne came thauncyent knight to Raymondin, and whan Raymondin sawe hym he said to hym that he 32 shuld delyuere hym self of that his lady had com-manded hym / and he ansuerd, ‘my lord, therfore I am come toward you.’ and thanne he presented fro hys lady to the kyng a grete Coupe of gold sette 36 with many precyous stone. and after gaf to al the

and made wel-come by the barons.

Raymondin aska
the king to allow
him to give his
barony to his
cousin Henry,

which request is
granted.

The barony is
given, and Henry
does homage for
it.

¹ fol. 51.

Raymondin
gives the con-
fiscated lands
of Josselin to
Alain, who does
homage to the
king for them.

The barons of
Britaine wonder
at the riches of
Raymondin, who
gives away the
land just won.

The ancient
knight brings
gifts from Melu-
sine for the king
and the barons,

Barons in the forsaid name many ryche jewelles. Wherof al were meruaylled of whens might come such a riches / and al they said that Raymondin muste be moche riche & mighty in some other Coun- 4 tree. Wherfore the feest was greter than afore. And Alayn and his two sones demened suche joye that none shuld mow think it. but yet duryng theire joye was on other syde made grete sorow of the parents 8 & frendes of Josselin that had not forgeten þe deth of hym / as herafter ye shal here reherce. ¹ And here resteth thystorye to speke of this feste & folowyng the matere saith how Melusyne gouerned her self while 12 that Raymondyn was in his vyage.

Thy story telleth vs that whiles Raymondyn was in bretayne, Melusyne made to be byld up the toune of Lusynen, and walled it with strong walles & 16 toures one nygh another,² and deep diches dide doo make about it. A toure she dide to be made betwixt the Fortresse & the tounne walled with a wal of xx foot thikk. This toure was ouer hye / and ordeyned 20 men that shuld be styl both day & nyght, at leste one vpon the vpermost batelments of it with a trompe in his hand, that shuld blow at euery tyme he perceyued & sawe men oþre on foot or on horsbak togidre aboue 24 the nombre of xx^{ti} commyng toward the said toun or Castel / and that same toure she called the tromped toure. Now retourneth thistory to spek of the kyng & of Raymondin, and of the feest & chere that euery 28 one made to Raymondin.

IN this partye reherceth thystorye that moch was the feest grete at Nantes · and the king honourued moche Raymondin, and there jousted gentilmen one 32 ayenst other byfore the ladyes & gentyl wemen wher Raymondin bare hym ful valiauntly & goodly that euery man spak wele of hym, sayeng that he was

who rejoice
much, and keep
up the feast;

but all the time
much sorrow
prevails among
Josselin's
friends.

¹ fol. 51 b.

In Raymondin's
absence Melu-
sine builds Lu-
signan, and walls
it;

also builds a
high watch
tower, with walls
twenty feet
thick.

The feast con-
tinued at Nantes,

² + Fr. pour deffendre a couvert tous les archiers.

worthy to be lord of a grete land. And moche were they abasshed of the grete riches that they sawe euery day about Raymondin / but who someuer made feest 4 for Raymondyn, the Chastelyn of AruaH, that was neuew to Josselin Dupont, made alH the contrary. For he sodaynly sent to alle the parentes frendes and affyns of Josselin, letyng ¹them to knowe how it was 8 of theire frend Josselyn, and that they shuld be at a certayn day that he assigned to them at a certayn retrette that was within the forest of Guerrende that was of his owne. And whan they vnderstode the 12 deth of Josselin þey were sorowfuH & woo, and assembled them togider about ii C men of armes, and pruely yede & came to the said retrette, where the said Chastelyn had manded them to come. And thanne 16 the Chastelyn in the moost secrete wyse that he coude, departed fro the kinges court without leue of the king ne of the Barons / but there he lefte thre squyers of his for to loke & aspye whiche waye Raymondin shuld 20 take, and that they shuld anounce it to hym to the retrette beforesaid. So long rode the Castelleyn that he cam to the retrette where he found them of his lynage, and he reherced to þem alH the manere of 24 thaduenture / and how Josselin & his sone were hanged / and asked of them what they thought & proposed to doo / yf they shuld auenge them on Raymondin that was causer of it / and to them grete 28 blame & shame for euermore was bycause of hym imputed / or elles to lete hym goo free. Thenne ansuered for al the lynage an vnwyse & hasty knight that was sone to the Cousyn of Josselin. ‘cousyn 32 castellayne, we wol that ye wete & knowe that thus shal nat this oultraceous werk be lefte. For we alle of one accorde & wylle wil putte hym to deth that to vs hath doo suche vitupere & dyshonour.’ ‘By 36 my feith,’ said thanne the Castellayne, ‘I hold & repute

while Josselin's nephew advised his kindred of their loss,

¹ fol. 52.

and summoned them to a retreat in the forest of Guerrende.

They assemble two hundred strong,

and are informed of the mishap by Josselin's nephew,

and are asked if they intend to avenge themselves.

They declare they will put Raymondin to death;

fol. 52 b.

upon which the nephew promises to assist them,

by spying which way Raymondin leaves the country.

The feast con-tinued fifteen days longer;

then Raymondin took leave,

and accompanied with Alain rode to Leon,

where the ancient knight had already prepared for them.

¹ fol. 53.

the wele & honour wel employed that Josselin dide ¹ to you in tyme passed. And anoone I shall putte you in the way and place where we shal wel accomplisse our wylle on hym that suche shame hath doon to vs. For by what someuer side he yssueth out of Bretayne he may not scape fro vs. For therto we haue good wayters, & espyes that soone shaſt anounce his way to vs whan tyme shalbe.' And they ansuerd alle with an voys /—‘Blessed be you, and wete it that whatsomeuer faſt therof / this enterpryse shalbe brought to an end, and we shal slee that false knight that hath imposed to vs alle vylonnye & shame.’ And here spekeþ no more thistorye of them, and retourneth to spek of the king & of Raymondyn, and how he departed fro the king moch honorably.

Thystery saith that the feest dured wel xv dayes & 16 more. the king of Bretons & hys baronye made grete honour to Raymondyn in so moche that I can nat reherce it. Raymondin thanne toke leue of the king & of his Barons and humbly mercyed the king 20 of his good justice that he had doon to hym in his noble Court, and departed fro them moche honourably. And wete it that bothe the king & many his barons were sory for his departing. And thus Ray- 24 mondyn accompanied of his vncle Alayn his two sones & all theyre meyne rode toward Leon. But it is trouth that þauncyent knight was departed & goon byfore / and had doo sette vp bothe tentes & pauillons 28 and aſt other thinges necessary he ordeyned & made redy. And thanne Raymondin / hys vncle with his two ¹sones and the moost nere of his kynne to hym lodged them togidre in the Castel. and the other 32 herberowed them in the toune. Whan the peple of the Countre knew the commyng of theyre owne lordes sone they were joyfull & glad, and made to hym many fayr presentes after the vse & custome of the Countre / 36

as of wyn, of bothe flesh & fysshe, hey & ootys, and of many other thinges, and they were fayn & glad sith it playded not Raymondin to abyde & hold the land, that
 4 they were befaſt in the sayd lynee of theire lord, and that they were quytte & exempted fro the subgection & boundage of the lynee of Josselin. Raymondin thanne þanked them curtoysly of theire presentes &
 8 yeftes. commanded & prayed them that they wold be true & feythfull subgrets to Henry hys Cousin to whom he had gyue the land. and they ansuered that þey shuld doo soo. Of them resteth thistorye, and speketh
 12 of the spyes that wayted there / of whichi one went to the retrette where the Castellayne of Aruaſt · and the lynee of Josselin were all redy / and the two other spyes abode for to knowe what way Raymondyn shuld hold · /

IN this partye telleth to vs thistory that Raymondin
 16 departed fro Leon, and toke leue of al hys parents & frendes there, & went to Quyngant where the feste was grete, and there after the feeste was ended Ray-
 20 mondyn wold haue take leue of hys vnkle Alayn & of all his lynage / but they dide putte the moost remedy they coude for to hold hym there a seuene nyght more.
 Wherfore Raymondyn obtempering to them / ye /
 24 ayenst his entent & courage ¹fullfyllled theire willes.

And in the meane while came to Henry hys Cousyn, a man that told hym that as he passed fourth by the said retrette where the Castellayne of Aruaſt was with wel
 28 two houndred men in armes, that they abode for some folke to whom they owed no good wylle. but he told hym not whom they aspyed & watched for. And whan Henry understood this he toke a squyer of his
 32 and bad hym goo thither & knowe what it was. and he that was moche diligent dyde so that he knew the moost parte of theyre purpos and entent & what nombre þey were. Soone after he retourned to Henry
 36 and reherced to hym all that he had found, and that

The folk of the place bring presents to Raymondin,

and are glad to be freed of allegiance to Josselin;

and promise to be faithful to Henry, the cousin of Raymondin, their new lord.

Spies leave, and tell the kindred of Josselin of Raymondin's doings.

Leaving Leon, Raymondin goes to Quingant, where he is feasted.

¹ fol. 53 b.

A man advises Henry of Leon of the assembling of Josselin's kindred in the forest.

Henry despatches a spy,

who returns with the information

that five or six hundred men are assembled.

Henry enjoins silence on the spy,

and tells his brother what he has learnt.

¹ fol. 54.

The brothers gather four hundred men of arms,

and accompany Raymondin when he leaves Quingant,

until they approach the forest where Josselin's kindred are hid.

Josselin's nephew, the Chastellain of Arval, learns from his spies the approach of Raymondin;

they were wel fyue or six houndred fighting men. And this tydinges herd / Henry deffendid to the messanger moche expresly that to no body he shuld spek of it. And soone he called his brother Alayn 4 and some other of the moost noble of hys lynage and reherced to them alle this werk. ‘By my feyth,’ said they, ‘we ne cannot thinke what they entende to doo, but that they wold auenge them on Raymondin our 8 Cousyn or ellis to meve werre ayenst vs for the said quarelle. but alwayes it is good to be purueyed of remedye · lete vs therfore send for alle our frendes and kepe vs secretly togidre tyl we see what they haue 12 purposed to doo / to thende yf they come on vs that they fynde vs not discouered & vnpurueyed · also yf Raymondin departeth that he be not surpryzed of them / and yf they entende to doo hym euyl / it is 16 but for to take the lyf ¹fro hym.’ ‘By my feyth,’ said the other, ‘that is trouth. Now lete vs hye & delyuer vs that our mandement be doo of light & secretly.’ And so did they / in so moche that within the second 20 day after / they were gadred togidre about foure houndred in nombre men of armes what of theyre lynee and what of theire affynyte & alyed / & made them to be lodged in a wod so that few men knew of it. It 24 happed thanne that Raymondyn wold no lenger abyde / and toke leue of Alayn hys vnkle þat abode styl at Quyngant moche woofull & sory of hys departyng / and hys two sones companyed hym & conueyed with 28 grete foysone of theyre lynee. And neuer wold lete hym goo byfore, but made theyre men to be on eche side of hym, and so long they rode that they approched the Forest where the Castellayne and his felawship 32 were in his retrette which Castellayn knew by his spyes the commyng of Raymondyn & his men and told it to hys parents sayeng in this maner: ‘Now shal be seen & knownen who euer loued Josselin and Olyuer 36

hys sone. For here we may putte to deth alle the lynage of hym self þat to vs hath doon such a shame.' And they ansuered to hym that none shuld scape, but 4 alle shuld be putte to deth. But as the prouerbe saith, 'Such weneth to auenge his shame that encreassith it' /¹ and so it was of the Castellayne & hys parents. In this meane while came þaunceyent knight to Raymondin 8 and said to hym in this manere: 'Sire, ye² myster wel for to ³be armed gooyng thrugh the Forest. For the lynage of Josselin that ye haue dystroyed loueth you not, and they might bere bothe to your personne and 12 to your felawship & meyne grete dommage yf they found you vnpurueyed / and my herte gyueth me that soone we shaſt fynd hem' / and Henry & Alayn his brother and al theire lynage were armed all redy, and 16 had sent al theire meyne byfore to make embushe within half a mylle fro the retrette. Thenne whan Raymondyn / had commanded hys men to take theire armures on hem & sawe them of his lynage that were 20 alle armed, he ne wyst what say but þe two brethern his cousyns told hym how they had sent in embussh byfore wel iiiii. C. of their men for to kepe hym fro hys enemyes / and they reherced to hym al the trouthe. 24 'By my feyth,' said Raymondin, 'curtoyse oweth not to be forgeten / and for it shal not as to my parte fro hens fourthon. For yf in tyme to come ye haue nede of me / I am he that shal at al tymes be redy after my 28 power to fulfylle your wille.' And so longe they rode that they entred the Forest /.

Thystrye saith that the Castellayne was in his retrette and abode for the spye that last he 32 had sent to wete whan Raymondyn shuld entre the Forest. the whiche exploited so that he came nigh Raymondin / and thanne he lightly retourned toward

and on him telling his men, they promise to put Raymondin and his kindred to death.

³ fol. 54 b.

The ancient knight warns Raymondin of his danger,

who, seeing his cousin's men all armed,

thanks them, and promises to help them should they ever want him.

¹ Fr. *Tel cuide venger sa honte qui l'acroit.*

² Fr. *Et bien mestier.*

The Chastellain,
hearing from his
spy of Raymondin's appear-
ance,
cries on his men
to follow him.

¹ fol. 55.

They mount, and
are allowed to
pass by the men
of Henry of Leon,
who are hidden
in the forest,

until they meet
Raymondin.

They run upon
Raymondin's
men;

and when Ray-
mondin comes in
sight,

the Chastellain
and his three
cousins attack
him.

the retrette and to the Castellayn he said: 'Sire, ye may see hym come yonder.' And whan the Castellayn vnderstod hym he bygan to crye with a hye voys / 'on horsbak, & who that euer loued Josselin & his sone 4 lete hym ¹folowe me.' Thanne styed euery man on horsbak / & they were so encressyd in nombre that they were wel viii C & moo fighting men, and rode fourth in ordynaunce ayenst Raymondin, and passed 8 by the embussh that Henry and his parents had sent. whiche lete them passe fourth without they discouered themself. and soone after þey rode after them. So longe rode the Castelain & his folke that they per- 12 ceyued nygh them þe forward of Raymondin. but abasshed he was whan he sawe them armed gooyng by ordynaunce / though they were but a few seruaunts and a C. men of armes / they ²escryed them to the deth / 16 And whan they vnderstode it they yede apart & made to blowe theire trompettes and ranne vpon Raymondyns folke whiche were sore dommaged or he coude come to helpe them, the whiche rode as fast as the hors 20 might walope, and hauyng the spere on the rest launched among his enemyes / and the first that he encountred he ouerthrew hym doun to therthe & aftir drew out high [his] swerde and smote trauerising here 24 & there and in a lytel tyme he moche dominaged hys enmyes. But whan the Castellayn saw hym he was ful woo & sory / and he shewed hym to thre hys Cousyns sayeng / 'loke yonder is the knyght that 28 hath shamed al our lynage / yf we had our wylle of hym al the other shuld be soone ouercome & vayn-quysshed.' thanne þey spoored theire horses, and al fourre ranne ayenst hym / and with theire speeris 32 recountryed hym, soo that they ouer threw bothe man

² Fr. et leur escrioient: *A mort à mort, mal acointastes celluy qui nous a fait la honte et le dommaige de Josselin notre cousin.*

& hors¹ to the erthe and passed al foure fourth. But
 whan Raymondyn saw hym ouer thrawen he spooryd
 hys hors, and the hors that was swyft and strong
 4 releuyd hym on hys knees and soo fourth on his feet
 so pertly þat Raymondyn neuer lost sterop fro the
 foot ne swerd fro the hand. And thanne he tourned
 toward the Chastellayn & so mightily smote hym on
 8 the helmet with hys swerd that he so stakerid that he
 lost bothe steropes / and as Raymondyn passed by
 hym he hurtelyd hym soo with the sholder that he
 fell doune to the erthe / and the pres came there so
 12 grete that he was sore tradde with hors feet. Thenne
 begane the bataill grete & feH and sore dommaged
 were bothe partes. And thanne came there also
 thauneyent knight and Henry & Alain hys brother,
 16 and foughte strongly ayenst theyre enemys. There
 Raymondin made grete fayttes of armes and sore
 dommaged hys enemys. but the Chastelain was had
 out of the pres and hys men toke hym another hors.
 20 Thanne toke the party aduerse, herte & courage &
 stoutly fought they ayenst Raymondyn & his folke.
 and there were many one slain of both sydes. And
 wete it that Raymondyn & his folke susteyned heuy
 24 weyght. For hys aduerse party was moch strong &
 moche wel they fought & valyauntly. but the em-
 busshe of Henry came by the bake syde on them anl
 assaylled them on al sydes so that þey wanst not
 28 what they shuld doo / how they shuld defende them
 self nor where they shuld flee / Thenne was the
 Chastellayn taken & brought before Raymondin / and
 he commanded thauncient knight to kepe hym. And
 32 in conelusion al the other were soone after outhre
 take or deed. And this doon they came to the retrette
 where Raymondyn said to hys parents: ‘Now lordes
 I owe wel² to loue and thanke you of the grete
 36 socoure that ye haue doon to me this day. For

¹ fol. 55 b.Raymondin
smites the
Chastellain,

and falls him.

Assistance comes
in the persona of
Henry, Alain,
and the aualent
knight,and the ambush
of Henry;and routs the
Chastellain's
companions,
who are all taken
prisoners or
slain.² fol. 56.

Raymondin
thanks his
kindred for their
help;

who propose
to take the
Chastellain, and
all others of
Josselin's
kindred to the
king of Brut
Britain for judg-
ment.

The prisoners
who are not Joss-
elin's kindred
are hung,

and the Chas-
tellain and the
rest are taken
bound before the
king.

Alain tells the
king the treason
wrought,

and says that
Raymondin has
sent the Chastel-
lain and his
kindred to
receive punish-
ment.

¹ fol. 56 b.

The king asks
the Chastellain
why he has done
such a shameful
deed.

certaynly I wote that yf it had not be the help of god and of you this traytour had putte me to deth by treson, now haue regarde what best is for to doo.' 'Sire,' said Henry, 'as your wyl shal graunte we alle 4 assent therto.' 'I shal saye you,' said Raymondin, 'what we shal doo. lete vs take and assemble al the lynee of Josselin to-gidre / and bothe the Chastellayn and alle the other his parents we shal sende to the 8 kinge. Whiche hauyng regarde to theire grete falshed and treson shal punysshe aftir his good wylle.' Alle other thanne said / 'forsouthe, sire, ye say wel.' Thenne were chosen out al the pryonners that were not of 12 the lynage of Josselin. and att yate of the said retrette some were hanged / some at wyndowes & some at batelments of it. And the Chastellayn and alle his parents there were bounde bothe hand & feet as 16 traytours and pryonners. the whiche Alayn accompanied with thre houndred spere men lede them toard the kinge. and first Alayn presented to þe kinge the Chastelayne of Aruaþ as he that had conspired & 20 machined that treson / and al other after. and to hym reherced Alayn al how it was happed. and how Raymondyn recommanded hym to his good grace / and that he wold not be dysplaysed yf he had take venge- 24 aunce on hys mortal enmyes that wend to haue murdred hym with treson, and that he sent to hym the Chastellayn chief causer and other his complices for to knowe by them the trouth of the faytte and for to 28 punysshe them at his plaire and wylle / 'And how, Chastellayn,' said the kinge 'haue ye be so ¹hardy to doo suche treson and so shamefull dede for the raisonnable justice that late we dide in our reaume / seeing & also 32 considering the grete treson that Josselin your vncle knowleched & confessed to haue doo?' 'By god,' said the king, 'ye were therof surquydous,² & it is wel right

² Fr. *moult oultre euide.*

ye euyl is come to you therof.' 'Ha, noble kinge,' said thanne the chasteleyne, 'for your pite lete falle your mysericorde on me caytyue personne. For the 4 grete sorowe & woo that I had of the dyshonour that Raymondin had doon to our lynage hath caused me to doo so.'

The Chastellain
begs for mercy,

8 **B**y my feith,' said the king, 'it is euyl compayne of a traytour / and good it is to shette the stable before the hors be lost, wel I wyl that ye knowe that neuer ye shall haue suche purpos as to wyl slee no gentylman with treson, For neuēr I shaſt ete tyl that ye 12 be hanged with your vnele, for ye shaſt hold hym felawship, and also al them that are of your cohortacion.' The kinge made to be take al them of hys cohorture or company, and were al hanged / and the Chastelain he 16 sent to Nantes, and there he was hanged nyghe to his vncle Josselin & Olyuyer hys Cousyn. And thus kepte wel the king of Bretons Justice in his time regnyng in Breytayne.

but the king says
he will not eat
till they be hung;

which judgment
is executed.

20 **H**ere sayth thistory that whan Alayn was retourned to Raymondin unto the retrette, and that he hadd to hym and to the other reherered this þat the kyng had doon / they said that the kyng had doo right 24 wel as a valyaunt & lawfuſ justiser shuld doo. Thenne called Raymondyn to hym Henry Alayn & other of his lynee and said to them in this manere: 'Fayre cousyns & good frendes, I enjoyne & charge you that ye doo 28 edefye or bigge a priorye with viii monkes, and that ye reueste them with rentes and reuenues such that honestly & goodly they may lyue on for euerniore / they to pray there for the sowle of ¹my fader / for the 32 kingis newew sowle and for the sowles of them that are slain & ded in this quarell.' And they alle said · they shuld soo doo. And Raymondyn prayed them to recommande hym to the kingis good grace to hys 36 barons and to Alayn their fader. And thanne he toke

Raymondin
praises the king's
justice,

and asks his
cousin to build
a priory for
eight monks,

MELUSINE.

II

¹ fol. 57.

to pray for the
souls of those
killed in the
quarrel.

Raymondin parts from his cousins, who return to their father.

Henry and Alain tell their father the news,

and how they have to build a priory.

The father is glad to hear of the clearance of Josselin's friends,

and advises his sons to ask land from the king to build the priory.

¹ fol. 57 b.

They set out to the king,

and find him by a tree in the forest of Sassy mon, waiting for a hart; but hide themselves till it is captured.

leue of them / and they were sorowfull of theire departement / and also of this that he wold nat lete them goo no ferther with hym. They retourned to Quyngant. And Raymondin yede on his way and cam to guerrende · and wel he was there festyed and worshipfully cheryed of them of the toune. And here resteth thistorye of Raymondyn · and shal recounte how Henry & Alayn toke leue of theyre lynee and cam 8 ayen to theyre fader.

Thistorye saith in this paas that Henry and Alayn toke leue of theyre lynage & came to theire fader and recounted to hym al thaduenture of the 12 Chastellayn, how they were departed fro þeyr cousyn, and how he hadd commanded & charged them to fownde a pryory. ‘By my feith,’ said þeire fader. ‘Alayn, now is the land wel clene delyuerner of the lynage of 16 Josselin ; god on theyre sowles haue mercy, how be it they loued vs neuer. Now fayre sones I shaſſ saye you what ye ſhal doo. First ye ſhal goo to the kinge & requyre hym that it pleſe hym to gyue you a place 20 for to edefye the Pryorye / and telle hym the maner how ye be conimanded of your Cousyn to fownde it. and I byleue he ſhal gyue you a good anſuer.’ And they ſaid that thus ſhuld they doo. And thanne they 24 departed fro theire fader, and ſo long they rode that they camme to Vannes and founde the kinge departed & was goon to ¹Sassymon for to dysport hym at Chasse. And they mounted on horsbak and came to 28 the gate and paſſed & entred the Forest and rode ſo long tyl they came to the Castel. and founde the kyng goon to the park to the chasse / and the two bretheren yed after & founde the kyng nyghe a grete tree by a 32 staung where he abode aftir the herte that houndes chassed. Thenne the two bretheren drew them ſelf aparte bycause they wold not lette the kyng to ſee the dysport / who perceyued them wel² & coude them good thanke 36

² Fr. *leur en sceut moult bon gré.*

therfore. and not long after þe herte came that ranne
 in to the staung / and there he was take by chaas of
 dogges / and was hadd out of the watre / and the
 4 curee made & gyue to the houndes as custome is to
 doo. Thenne Henry and Alayn his brother drew them
 self byfóre the king and salewed hym moche honour-
 ably / and made wel theire message as theyre Cousin
 8 had charged them. And the king welcommmed hem &
 moche enquyred of them thestate of Raymondin and
 they told hym alle that they had seen of hit / and
 after they recounted to hym how he enjoyned & charged
 12 them to edfyne & make vp a Priorye of eyghte monkes.
 them to reueste & emposesse with landis, reuenues &
 rents, they to syng & pray therfore for the sowle of the
 kingis nevew / for Henry his faders sowle, and for the
 16 sowles of alle them that had receyued deth in this
 quarelle. Also how at hys instaunce they shuld pray
 hym for a place where they shuld edefyne the said
 pryorye. ‘By my feith,’ said the king. ‘the requeste
 20 is wel lawfull & raysonable. and euen now ¹I shall
 lede you to the place where I wyl that it be fownded
 and made vp.’ Thanne they came out of the wareyne
 and came al by the walle to thende of the clos. and
 24 thenne said the king: ‘Fair lordes, make here to be
 edfyed a Pryory & take asmoche of grounde as ye
 lyketh / and I gyue liberte & habaundonne you the
 forest for to cutte there the wode. and whan the
 28 monkes shal be stablysshed there, I enlyberte &
 habaundonne it to them for theire vse and to alle
 thider commyng & dwelling. And I graunte to them
 the fysshing in the see that is nygh to this place a
 32 quarter of a legge, and to take in the Forest birdes. &
 wild beestes for theire lyuyng & sustenaunce of theire
 houshold · and also I gyue to them all the landes erable
 that are her about half a legge’ / and of alle this he
 36 made & gaf to them good & suffisaunt patents. and of

They come out
and salute the
king,

are welcomed,

and tell him of
Raymondin and
his will about
the priory:

and ask for land
to build it on.

¹ fol. 58.

The king leads
them to a spot,

where he gives
them as much
land as they
require;

and grants to the
monks the right
of fishing, hunt-
ing, shooting,
and wood cutting
in the forest;

and gives some
arable land, all
on good patents.

The priory is built for eight white monks,

who have an azure  on their outside robe.

¹ fol. 58 b.
Raymondin reconciles two barons of Guerrend;

and leaves for Poitou, where he found many parts uninhabited,

having dismantled castles and other ruins, caused by past wars.

He arrives at the abbey of Mailleses,

and dwells there three days, gives jewels to the abbey church,

all these graunts & gestes the two brethern thanked the king moche humbly whiche made massons, carpenters, & other, to come, and in short tyme they made the chirche & the priorye. and there they stablysshed 4 whyte monkes. vnto the nombre of VIII. religious personnes, the which bere on theire vtterist habyte a crosse of Azure / and enpossessed them wel for theire sustenaunce & cotidiane lyuyng / as now yet is. And 8 now resteth thystorye to spek of the king of Bretons and of the two bretheren. and retourneth to recounte how Raymondin gouerned hym self syn after.

Now telleth thystorye that so long abode Raymondin in the land of Guerrende¹ that he peased and accorded togidre two barons of the lande that long byfore hated eche other to deth. In so moche that he made them to be good frendes togidre, and theire 16 Countrees in peas and rest. And after he toke his leue of the barons & of the peuple, which sorowed moche for his departing. and so long he rode that he came into the land of Poytou, wher he found many grete 20 forests vnhabyyted / and in some places he sawe many wyld bestes, as hertes, hynd, & roo, wyld bores, and other beestes ynough. and in other places many fayre playnes & champaynes. many fayre medowes & ryuers. 24 'By my feyth,' said thanne Raymondin, 'it is grete pyte & dommage that suche a commodyouse Countre is nat enhabyyted with peuple.' and many a fayre manoyr and places were on the ryueres there that soone might be 28 redressed as hym semed whiche had be ouerthrown in tyme of warre. And thus rydyng fourth he came to an auncyent Abbey called Maylleses, and therin were comprised thabbot and an houndred monkis, beside 32 the Convers. and there herberowed Raymondyn for the grete playsaunce that he toke of it. and þer he dwelled thre dayes and thre nightes. and gaf to the chirch there many fayre jewelles. After he departed and 36

came rydyng tyl he aprouched & came nygh Lusynen. and first he perceyued & sawe the tromped toure and the new toune, and thenne he supposed not 4 to be there as he was. For he knew not the place for cause of the said toure & toune new made of late, and moche he meruaylled whan he herd ¹ the sowne of the trompes within the toure /.

and continues his journey to Lusignan, but does not recognize it, because of the new tower and town built by Melusine.

¹ fol. 59.

8 In this part saith to vs thystorye that whan Raymondin came aboue Lusynen, & he perceyued the toune walled round aboute with strong walles and fortifyed with deep dyches & grete. ‘how,’ said he to 12 thauncyent knight, ‘What may this be; mesemid right now that I was forwayed of my way to come to lusygnen / and yet me semeth soo?’ thenne began thauncyent knight to lawhe. And Raymondin said 16 to hym: ‘How, sir knight, jape you with me / I telle you for certayn yf it were not the toure and the toune that I see I shuld haue wend to be this nyght in Lusygnen.’ ‘By my feyth,’ said thauncient knight, 20 ‘soone ye shal fynde yourself there yf god wyl with grete joye.’ Now I shaſt sey you some of Raymondyn’s seruaunts were sent before by thauncyent knight to anounce Melusyne the commyng of Raymondin. and 24 how be it she byleued them wel / she made no semblaunt þerof / but soone she caused the peuple to be ready for to goo & mete with Raymondyn. and she her self, accompanied with many ladyes & damoyselles,

He expresses his doubts to the anoint knight,

who tells him he'll soon be home.

Melusine, advised of Raymondin's arrival, makes herself and people ready to meet him.

Raymondin sees them,

and hears them cry ‘Welcome’;

28 yede to mete & welcome hym wel horsed & arayed honorably and rychely. Thenne Raymondin loked fourth byfore hym and sawe the peple commyng fro the valey vpward ayenst hym two & two togidre in 32 fayre ordynaunce, wherof he moche meruaylled. and whan they aproched they bygan to erye with a high voys, ‘ha, ha, dere lord, welecome may you be.’ And thenne Raymondin knew som of them that were comme 36 ² ayenst hym / and demanded of them, ‘Fayre lordes,

² fol. 59 b.

recognizing them, he asks how far Lusignan is.
They, seeing his mistake,

tell him of it, and how it is caused by the new buildings,

which abashes him.

Melusine greets him,

tells him she knows all, and praises his doings.

They enter Lusignan together, and hold a great feast;

afterwards Raymondin visits the Earl of Poitiers,

recounts the news,

and returns home.

Melusine bears her second son Edon, who had a very great ear;

fro whens come you?' 'My lord,' sayd they, 'we com fro lusynen.' 'thenne,' said Raymondin, 'is Lusynen ferre hens?' They thanne, seeyng that he mysknewe the place for cause of the new toune & toure / said : 4 'My lord, ye be at it, but ye mysknowe the place bycause that my lady syn your departyng hath doo made and byld this toun & that high toure. and yonder ye may see her commyng ayenst you.' Thenne 8 was Raymondin moche abasshed / and said not all that he thoughte. but when he remembred how she dyde doo make the Castel of Lusynen in so short tyme he gaf hym self no meruayll yf she had doon soo. 12 Thenne is come to hym Melusyne that honorably welcommed hym, sayeng in this manere : 'My lord, I am right fayn & glad of that ye haue so wel wrought & doon so honourably in your vyage. For al thinges 16 haue be reherced to me alredy.' And Raymondin ansuerd to her : 'Madame, it is by the grace of god and of you.' And talking togidre of this matere they entred Lusynen and alighted. Ther was the feste 20 grete that lasted eighte dayes, And was there the Erle of Forest that said to Raymondin, 'ye be welcome.' And after the feest they departed fro Lusynen and came to Poytiers toward the Erle that receyued hem 24 benygnely, and demanded of Raymondin where he had be so long. and he recorded to hym alle his auenture. And shortly to say, the Erle Bertran was therof joyful & glad. ¹ And that doon, the brethern toke leue of hym / and the one yede toward forests, and Raymondin toward his wyf & lady, which thenne was grete with child, and bare her terme / the which expired, she made a fayre child that was her second sone / he was 32 soone baptised and imposed to name Edon,² and hadd an eere greter without comparyson than that other was / but all hys other membres were replenysshed

¹ fol. 60.

² Fr. *Odon*.

he was afterward married to the daughter of the Earl of March.

with beaute, the which Edon had syn to hys wyf the Erle of Marchis doughtir. And of hym resteth thistorye / and speketh ferthermore of Melusyne & of 4 Raymondyn her lord.

Thistorye sayth & certifyeth that whan the lady had ended the terme of her childbed, and that she was releuyd / the feste was made grete / and many 8 noble men, ladyes, and damoyselles were there, the whiche, after the feest ful honourably toke their leue & departed. And that same tyme the lady Melusyne bylded bothe the Castel & toune of Melle. Also she 12 dide doo make Vouant & Mernant.¹ and after she made the bourgh & toure of saynt Maxence, and bygan the Abbey there. and moche good she dide to poure folk.

The second yere after folowyng she hadd a sone 16 that was named guyon, & [he] was a moche fayre child / but he had an ey higher than that other. And wete it that Melusyne had euer so good nouryces, and 20 had so grete care for her children that they mendid & grewe so wel that euery one that saw them meruaylled. ² And that tyme Melusyne bigged & fownd many a fayre place thrughe the lande of Poytou unto 24 the duchie of Guyenne. She bilded the Castel and þe burgh of Partenay so strong and so fayre without comparyson. after that she dide doo make þe Toures of Rochelle & the Castel also, & bygan a part of the 28 toune, and thre leghes thens was a grete toure & bigge, whiche Julius Cesar dide doo make, and men called it the Egles toure, bycause that Julius Cesar bare an Egle in hys banere as emperour. That toure made the lady 32 to be walled & fortyfyed round aboute with grete toures machecolyd, and made it to be called the Castel Eglon. And afterward she edefyed Pons in Poytou and fortyfyed Xaintes³ that was called at that tyme

Melusine gives a feast.

builds the castles and towns of Melle and Maxence, and begins the abbey there.

Melusine has her third son Guyon, who has one eye higher than the other;

her children are so well tended, that they grow so that folk marvel at them.

* fol. 60 b.

She builds much in Poitou: the castle and town of Parthenay,

and of Rochelle.

She fortifies the Eagle's Tower, said to have been built by Julius Caesar.

She builds Pons, fortifies Saintes,

¹ Fr. *Waviront et Mermant.*

³ *Saintes.*

builds Talle-mounte, and many other towns and fortresses.

Lynges / and after she made Tallemounte and Tallemondois and many other tounes & fortres. And gate & acquyred so moche Raymondin thrugh the polycye & good gouernaunce of Melusyne, what in Bretayne, 4 what in Gascoynne & in Guyenze as in Poytou, that no prynce was about hym / but he doubted to dysplaise hym.

Melusine has her fourth son Anthony, who

has a lion's claw growing from his cheek.

Her fifth son Raynald has only one eye, but so

¹ fol. 61.

bright and clear that he can see ships twenty leagues off (sixty-three miles).

Soone after Melusyne was delyuered of her fourthe 8 man child, whiche hight Anthony, none fayrer was seen before that tyme. but in his birth he brought a token along his chyk, that was the foot of a lyon, wherof they that sawe hym wondred, & moche were 12 abasshed.

Here saith thistorye, that the vijth yere after Melusyne bare the fyfte child, of whiche at thende of ix monethes she was delyuered, & was named raynald. none fayrer child might men see, but he was borne only ¹with one eye / but it was so bright & so clere that he sawe the ship thre kennynge ferre on the sea, that is, one & twenty leghes ferre / and lyke 20 wyse on erthe, whatsooner it was. That same Anthony was ful gracyous & curteys, as ye shal here in thistory herafter.

Her sixth son Geffrey had a tooth that protruded an inch and more, so he

was called Geffrey with the Great Tooth;

he was very strong,

and did many wonders in his time.

Her seventh son Froimond had a

Ferthermore saith thistory, that the eight yere 24 Melusyne childed the vi. child, that was a sone, and had to name Geffray, Whiche at his birth brought in hys mouthe a grete & long toth, that apyered without an encl long & more / and therfore men 28 added to his propre name Geffray with the grete toth. and he was moch grete & hye, and wel formed & strong, merueyllously hardy & cruel, In so moche that euery man fered & dradde hym whan he was in 32 age / he made in his tyme many wonders & merueylles, as heraftir ye shal here in thistorye.

Thystorye sayth that the ixth yere after Melusyne had a sone, that was the vijth, & hight Froy- 36

mond, that was fayre ynounghe, but he had on hys nose¹ a top of heiris, and in his tyme he was moche deuoute. and afterward, by thassent of bothe hys
4 fader & moder, he was made monke in the abbey of Maylleses, of whom ye shall here herafter thystorye.

tuft of hair on his nose,

In this part sayth to vs thistorye that Melusyne was
8 in the xjth yere she had her² xth sone, and was grete merueyllously / and he brought at hys birth thre eyen, one of the which was in the mydel of his forhed, he was so euyl & so ³cruel that at the foureth yere of
12 his age he slew two of hys nourryces.

and became a monk in the abbey of Mailleses.

THe veray hystory saith that so long norysshed
16 Melusyne her children, that Vryan, whiche was
theldest & first born, was xvij yere old. he was grete
and fayre, & wonderly strong, and made grete appertysse
in armes, so that euery man & woman had pyte of hys
dyfformytee ; for his vysage was short & large, hys one
eye was red & the other blew, and hys eerys were as
20 grete as the handlynges of a Fan. and Edon his
brother was of xvij yere of age. and Guyon had of
yeres xvij, and loued Eche other wel Vryan & Guyon /
and so pert & swyft they were, that alle thoo that sawe
24 them gaf hemself grete wonder & meruayll. they were
beloued of all the nobles of the land, & made many
faytes & appertyses of armes in Joustes, tournoyeng,
& in Lystes.

Her tenth son Horrible had three eyes, one in the middle of his forehead,

³ fol. 61 b.

and was very cruel.

28 It happed that saine tyme that two knyghtes of
Poytou came fro Jherusalem agayn / and recounted
there as they passed, how the sawdan of Damask had
besieged the king of Cypre in hys Cite of Famagoce, &
32 that he held hym therin in grete dystres. and þat
same kyng ne had to hys heyre but only a doughter,
whiche was moche fayre. and these tydinges were

Melusine's eldest-born Urian is now eighteen, and is fair and strong,

though his face is strange, and his ears large.

Edon is seventeen, Guyon is sixteen; Urian and Guyon love one another much.

Two Poitevin knights return from Jerusalem,

and tell of the Sultan of Damascus besieging the King of Cyprus; and in what distress the king is, and how his heir is a daughter.

¹ Fr. une petite tache rellue.

² Fr. huitiesme, and so in Harleian MS. 418.

Urian hearing
the tale, speaks
to Guyon,

¹ fol. 62.

and proposes to
him to do some
deeds of arms.

The knights
from Jerusalem
are sent for,

and are ques-
tioned about
where they have
been.

Urian expresses
his surprise that
they did not stay
and help the
Christian king.

They explain
that it was im-
possible to enter
the town,
as it was be-
sieged by
eighty thousand
pagans.

ferfourth brought in the land, that Vryan knew of it. and he thenne said to his brother Guyon: ‘By my feith, fayre brother, it were grete almese to socoure that kyng ayenst the Paynemys. We ben al redy eyght 4 bretherne. the land of our fader may not remayne without heyre, though we were bothe deed. Wherfore we owe the more to enterprise ¹vyages, and see where we may doo some faytes of armes, to be therwith en- 8 haunced in worship & honour.’ ‘By my feyth,’ said Guyon, ‘ye said trouth. but what cause you to say soo, seeyng that euer I am redy to doo as ye wyl doo?’ ‘Southly,’ said Vryan, ‘ye say full wel. Lete we send 12 for the two knightes that be come fro the holy vyage, to be ensured of them more playnly of the trouth.’ they sent to the two knightes that they wold come & spek with them, the which gladly dyde so. And 16 whan they were come, the two brethern welcommmed & receyued them goodly. and aftir they bygan tenquyre of them the manere of theire vyage / of the vse & maneres of the land where they had be. and 20 they said to them the playn trouth. ‘We vnderstand,’ said Vryan, ‘that ye haue passed thrugh an yle wher a king cristen regneth, which is oppressid ouermoch of the paynemys / & wonder is vs that ye abode nat in 24 the werre with that Cristen kyng, for to help & comforthe hym, ye that are so renouned, Worthy and valyaunt knightes, consyderyng as it semeth to vs that alle good cristens are hold & bound to helpe eche 28 other specyally ayenst the paynemys.’ To this ansuered the two knightes: ‘By my feith, gentil squyer & lord, wel we wyl that ye knowe that yf by eny manere we myght haue entred the toune without deth, & saf, 32 gladly we had doo so as ye say. but wel ye wote that two knyghtes may not susteyne & bere the weight ayenst wel Lxxx. or houndred thousand paynemys, that thenne had besieged the toune wherin the said 36

king was. For ye oweth to wete that ¹wel fole is he
that fighteth ayenst the wynd, wenying to make hym
be sty^H. 'By my feyth,' said Vryan, 'your excusacion
4 is good & iuste. but tell me yf men myghty to reyse
& lede with them a xxij^t or xxv^t thousand men of
armes, myght doo eny faytte there to help & socoure
the sayd kyng?' Thenne ansuerd one of the knightes:
8 'By my feyth, sire, yo / seen & considered that the
Cite is strong, and the kyng within valiaunt, hardly &
worthy fighter of his personne / and he is accompanied
with many good men of armes, & the toun wel
12 vtyaylled / and yet ther be many Fortresses where they
of Rodes come to refresshe themself, of the whiche
the kyng & they in the Cite haue grete recomforte /
and wete it that moche easely & wel they might goo
16 thider / and wold to god suche a felawship as ye spek
of wer redy, and that my felawe & I shuld take
thaduenture with them.' 'By my feyth,' said thenne
Vryan, 'my brother & I sha^H receyue you, & lede you
20 thither, god before, and that shortly.' And whan they
vnderstode hym say so, they were moche glad, sayeng
that yf they soo dyde, hit moued them of valyaunt
courage & grete noblesse of herte. Here resteth thistorye
24 of these two knightes, and yet ferther speketh of Vryan
& Guyon.

Cap. XX. How Vryan & Guyon toke leue
of bothe theyre fader & moder, and of the
28 help that they had of þem.

² In this partie sayth thistorye that Vryan and his
brother Guyon cam to Melusyne theire moder,
and to her said Vryan in this manere: 'Madame, yf
32 ye vouchesaaf, it were wel tyme that we shuld go
fourth to our vyage, for to knowe the Countrees ferre
& straunge, Wherby we may acquyre honour & good

¹ fol. 62 b.

Urian asks if a
force of twenty-
five thousand
men would be
any use to suc-
cour the town?

the knights think
so.

Urian promises
to lead them
there,

for which the
knights thank
him.

² fol. 63.

Urian and Guyon
ask Melusine to
let them go
abroad to seek
their fortunes,

renom mee in straunge marches, to thend that we lerne & vnderstand the dyuerse langages of the world. Also yf Fortune and good auenture wyl be propyce & conuenable to vs, we haue wel the wy^H & courage to 4

*because there are
eight sons, and*

*if the lands are
divided, the
estates would
not be great.*

¹ fol. 63 b.

subdue & conquere Countrees & landes; For we consider & see that alredy we be eyghte bretheren / and are lyke, yf god wyl, to be yet as many moo in tyme commyng. and to say that your landes & possessions 8 were parted in so many partes for our sustenaunce & gouernement / he that shuld enheryte the chyef lyflood shuld not be able to kepe no grete houshold, ne to be of grete estate, to the ¹Regard of the high blood & 12 grete noblesse that we come of / also consideryng as now your grete estate. Wherfore as to my brother & I my self, we quytte our parte / except alone your good grace, thrugh thayde that ye now shal doo to vs 16 for our vyage, yf god wyl gyue vs grace to accomplysshe.'

'By my feyth, children,' said thenne Melusyne, 'your requeste is caused of grete worthynes and courageous herte, and therfore it oweth not to be refused ne gayn- 20 sayd. and vpon this matere I shal entreat your faders, For without hys counsey^H I owe not to accorde your requeste.' Thanne fourthwith came Melusyne to Raymondin / and shewed hym the requeste & wy^H 24 of theire two sones; the whiche ansuerd & sayd, 'By my feyth, madame, yf it lyke you good they doo soo, I assent gladly therto.' 'Sire,' said Melusyne, 'ye say wel; and wete it that they shal do noþing in theire 28 vyago but that it shal tourne to theire grete lawde & honour, yf god wyl.' Then came ayen Melusyne to her two sones, and thus she said to them: 'Fayre children, thinke from hensfourthon to doo wel; For 32 your fader hath graunted youre requeste, & so doo I. and care you not for no þing, For within short tyme I shall ordeyne & purveye for your faytte with goddis grace & help / in such wise that ye shal konne me 36

*Melusine
promises to ask
their father's
permission,*

*who assents
gladly.*

*Melusine tells
them that their
father has
granted their
request, and so
has she;
and promises to
provide an outfit
for them.*

good gree & thanke therfore. but telle me whether & to what part of the world ye wyl & purpose to goo, to thende I purvey of suche thinges that shalbe necessary
 4 to you therfore.' Thanne ansuerd Vryan: 'Madame,
 wel it is true & certayn that we haue herd certayn
 tydynges that the kyng of Cypre is besiged ¹ by the
 Sawdan within hys Cyte of Famagoce / and thither, yf
 8 it playse god, we entende & purpose to go for to ayde
 & socoure hym ayenst the fals & mysbyleuers pay-
 nemys.' Thanne gan say Melusyne, 'herto muste be
 purveyed / As wel for the see as for the land; and
 12 with goddis grace, my dere children, I shal ordeyne
 therof in suche mancre that ye shal be remembred of
 me: and this shal I doo shortly.' The two bretheren
 thenne kneled doun byfore theyre moder / and thanked

¹ fol. 64.
They tell their
mother they
intend succour-
ing the King of
Cyprus,

16 her moche humbly of her purveyaunce & good wylle.

And the lady toke hem vp, and sore wepyng she
 kyssed them bothe, For grete sorowe she had in her
 herte / though she made withoutfourth chere of theire
 20 departyng. For she loued them with moderly loue, as
 she that had nourysshed them.

so she promises
to provide what
is necessary for
sea and land.

They thank her;

and she weeping,
kisses them both,

Thystorye sayth that Melusyne was ful curyous
 and besy to make al thinges redy þat were

24 necessary to her sones for theire vyage. She made

for she loves
them with
motherly love.

Galeyes, Carrykes, and other grete shippes to be
 vytaylled & redy to sayȝ / and þe nauye was so grete

Melusine pre-
pares galleys,
carracks, and
other ships, and
victuals them,

in nombre that it was suffysaunt for foure score thou-

enough for
eighty thousand
men of arms.

28 sand men of armes to sayȝ in. And in the meane

The Jerusalem
knights are sent
for,

while the two bretheren sent for the two forsayd
 knightes, & said to them that they shuld be redy to
 meve fourth shortly, as they had promysed to them.

32 And they ansuered: 'Lordes, we be all redy. and

and tell the
brothers they are
ready to go with
them.

many gentylmen that we knowe ben shapen & redy to
 go with you in your felawship, and we alle be desyrons

to serue you and to doo your playsir.' 'By my feyth,'

36 said Vryan, 'right grete gramerçy to you. We shall

¹ fol. 64 b.

The armament ready, Melusine appoints four barons to look after her two sons.

The men and stores are put on board the fleet; the banners are waved, trumpets sounded, and every one enjoys the scene.

The brethren bid their friends farewell,

and are accompanied to their ships by their parents.

Melusine draws them apart,

and gives them each a magic ring,

which, whilst they wear it and remain true,

they will never lose in a good quarrel,

nor be hurt by magical arts or poison.

³ fol. 65.

The brothers thank their mother,

who advises them always to hear divine service before doing any work;

'lede them wel, yf god wyl and you also.' Now thenne, shortly to saye, Melusyne dyde so moche that al was redy, and had foure Barons to whome she betoke the kepyng & gouernaunce of her two sones. and 4 had grete foyson of gentylmen knigthes & squyers, vnto the nombre of² two thousand V^c men of armes, & fyue houndred archers / and as many men with crossebowes. And thenne the vytaylles, artylery, harneys & 8 horses were charged in to the vesselles, an syn mounted the men into the same. There were seen baners & standarts / and the sowne of trompes & tambours and of many other instruments was herd, that euery one 12 enjoyed that sawe it / And the two brethern toke leue of peire bretheren and frendes, & of the peple of the land, that moche tenderly wept for theire departyng. And Raymondin & Melusyne conveyed theire children 16 vnto the see; and whan they come there Melusyne drew hem apart, and said to them: 'Dere children, vnderstand this that I wil teH you & commande.'

'Children,' sayd Melusyne, 'here be two rynges 20 C that I gyue you / of whiche the stones ben of one lyke vertue. and wete it that as long that ye shall vse of feythfulnes, without to think eny euyl, ne doo trychery or hynderaunce to other / hauyng always 24 the said rynges & stones vpon you, ye shall not be dyscomfyted ne ouercome in no faytte of armes, yf ye haue good quarell. ne also sort or enchauntment of art Magique, ne poysons of whatsooneuer manere shul 28 not lette ne greve you / but that assoone as ye shall see them they shaH lese theyre strengthe.' and she delyuered to eyther of hem one / and they thanked her moch, kneelyng to therthe. And yet said Melusyne 32 to them in this manere: 'My dere & beloued children, I wol & charge you that wher so euer ye be, ye here the deuyne seruyse or euer ye doo eny oþer werk.

² Fr. *quatre mille hommes d'armes*; no particulars given. 36

also that in al your assayres & dedes ye clayne & calle thayde & help of our Creatour, and serue hym diligently, and loue & dredde hym as your god & 4 your maker. and that allwayes ye honoure & worship with al your power holy chirch, beyng her champyons, the same to susteyne & withstand ayenst alle her eny wyllers. Help ye & counseylle the pouere wydowes, 8 norysshē or doo to be norysshē the pouere orphenyns, both faderles and moderles / and worship al ladyes / gyne ayde and confortē vnto alle good maydens that men wol haue dysheryted vnlawfully. loue the gentyl- 12 men, and hold them good compayne. / be meke, humble, swete, curtoys & humayne, both vnto grete & lesse. and yf ye see a man of armes pouere, & faſt in decaye by hap & fortune of juste werre, re- 16 fresshe hym of some of your goodes. be large vnto the good folke / and whan ye gyue eny thing, lett hym not tary long for it; but wel loke & considere how moche & why / and yf the personne is worthy to 20 have it, and yf ye gyue for playsaunce, loke & kepe wel that prodigalite or folysshē largenes surpryse you not / so that after men mocke not with you. For they that haue wel deserued to be of you rewarded 24 shuld not be wel apayed ne ¹content therof / and the straungers shuld mocke you behinde your backe. and kepe ye promyse, or behighte no thing but that ye may founysshē & hold it. and yf ye promyse eny 28 thing, tary not the delyueraunce of it, For long taryeng quenchith mochē the vertu of the yefte. kepe wel ye rauysshē no woman / ne be coueytous of other mens wyues, of whom yo wil be loued and hold for your 32 frendes. believe not the Counsey^H of none / but first ye knowe his manere, deeling & condycyonis. also beleue not the counsey^H of Flatterers, and enuyous, & auarycious / ne suche putte not in none office aboue 36 you, For they cause rather to their maister dyshonour

to call on God
for help, and to
serve and fear
Him;

to honour and
sustain holy
Church;

to help widows,
orphans, and
ladies;

to frequent the
company of
gentlemen;

to be courteous
to all;

to help the un-
fortunate;

to be thrifty;

¹ fol. 65 b.

to keep pro-
mises;

to abstain from
ill-using women;

to beware of
flatterers and
envious persons;

to pay loans;

to govern well;

to keep all their
privileges intact;never to inflict
unreasonable
taxes;¹ fol. 66.to beware of the
advice of exiles;

to be just;

& shame, than ony worship or prouffyt. kepe wel ye borow nothing but that ye may yeld it ayen / and yf for nede ye be constrainyd for to borow / as soone as ye may / make restitucion of it / And þus ye shal mowe 4 be without danger, & lede honourable lyf. And yf god graunte that Fortune be to you good & propyce in subduyng your enmyes & theire landes, gourne wel your folke and peopple after the nature & condycion 8 that they be of. and yf they be rebell, kepe wel that ye surmounte & ouercome hem without to lese eny suche ryght that longith to your lordship & seignourye / and that ye euer make good watche vnto tyme ye haue 12 vaynquysshed at your wylle. For yf ye ouertredde your self / nedes ye muste rule your self after theire wylle. but alwayes kepe wel, whether they be euyl & hard, or debounaire, that ye ne haunce & sette new 16 customes that be vnraysonnable / and of them take only your dute and ryght, without to retayñ þem ¹without and ayenst raison. For yf the peple is pouere / the lord shal be vnhappy / and yf werr came 20 he shuld not mowe be holpe of them att hys nede / wherfore he might falle into grete daunger & seruytude. For wete it wel / that a flyes of a yere is more prouffytable / than the flyes þat is shorne twyes or 24 thryes in a yere. now, my children, yet I defende & forbede you that ye byleue not the Counsell of none exilled and flemed fro his land, in this that may touche the hynderyng or dommage of them that haue exilled 28 hym / yf there nys good, right & lawfull cause / and ye to haue good reason to help hym, For that shuld mowe lette you to come to the degree of worship & honour. And aboue all things I forbede you pryde / 32 and commande you to doo & kepe justice, yeldyng right aswel to the leste as to the moost / and desyre not to be auenged at vttermost of all the wronges don to you by some other / but take suffisaunt & raysonn- 36

able amendes of hym that offreth it. Dyspreyse not your enmyes though they be litel, but make euer good watche. and kepe wel as long ye be conquyng, that
 4 atwix your felawes ye mayntene nat yourself as lord & sire / but be commyn & pruye bothe to more & lesse / and ye owe to hold them company after the qualite & vocacyon that they be of, now to one & now
 8 to other. For al this causeth the hertes of creatures to drawe vnto the loue of them that are humayn, meke & curteys in theire dignite & seignouryes. Haue an herte as a fyers Lyon ayenst your ¹enmyes / and shew
 12 to them your puyssance and valyauntyse. and yf god endoweth you with some goodes, departe som of it to your felawes after he hath deserued. And as to the
 werre, byleue the counsey^H of the valyaunt & worthy
 16 men that haue haunted & vsed it. Also I defende you that no grete treatee ye make with your enmyes, For in long treatee lyeth somtyme grete falshed. For
 alwayses wyse men goo abacke for to lepe the ferther;
 20 and whan the sage seeth þat he is not able to resyste ayenst the strengthe of his enmyes, he seketh & purchaceth alwayses a treatee, for to dyssymyle vnto tyme he seeth hymself mighty ynough for them / and
 24 thanne anoone of lyght they fynd waye & manere wherby the treatees ben of none effect ne value. Wherfore loke ye, forbere not your enmyes there, as ye may putte them vnder your subjection with honour.
 28 And thenne yf ye shew them fauour & curtoysye, that shal tourne to your grete honour / and leue ye to doo for them by treatee or appoyntement. For though no falshed or decepcion be founde in none of bothe sydes /
 32 yet shuld mow some men say or thinke that ye somewhat doubted them / how be it, I say not that men owe to reffuse good traytee, who that may haue it' / Thus, as ye here, chastysed & endoctryned Melu-
 36 syne her two sones, Vryan & Guyon, whiche thanked

to be watchful
of enemies, no
matter how
small;

to be on familiar
terms with their
men;

to have a lion-
heart towards
their enemies;

¹ fol. 66 b.

to share their
spoils with their
men;

to make no long
treaties,

for they are
liable to be am-
biguous.

The brothers
thank their
mother for her
advice.

¹ fol. 67.

Melusine tells
them she has
well stored their
ships;

and giving them
to God's care,
bids them re-
member her
advice, and act
on it.

her moche humbly. and thenne she sayd : ' Children, I haue sent gold & syluer ynough in to your ship for to hold & maynten your estate, and to pay therwith your men for foure yere. ¹ And haue no doubte or care for bred, byscuyte, Freshe watre, vynaigre, Flesh salted, fyssh ynough, & good wynes suffysaunt to long tyme, For therof ben your shippes wel fylled & purveyed. goo thanne fourth on your waye, vnder the sauergarde of god / who kepe you / lede & retourne you agayn with joye. and I pray you that ye thinke & remembre what I haue sayd to you, to fulfyH it after your power.' /

12

Cap. XXI. How Uryan & Guyon tooke leue of theire moder Melusyne and entred theire ship. /

The brothers bid
farewell to their
parents,

weigh their
anchors,

² fol. 67 b.
and after prayer

they put to sea.

Their parents
leave for Eglon
Castle.

Urian and Guion
sail

Thenne they tooke leue of theyre fader and moder ¹⁶ and entred theire vessell. This doon, the ancre were had in, & the saylles haled vp, the patrons made theire recommendacions to god as customed it is, to ²that by hys benygne grace he wyl ²⁰ graunte to them good ryuage, and accomplysshing of theyre vyage without lettyng or empeschement. The wyndes were for them propyce & good / and in short tyme they were ferre cast on the see so that they were ²⁴ out of sight / .

Thanne departed Raymondyn & Melusyne, and theyre meyne with them, and came to the Castel Eglon. And here resteth thystorye of them, and re- ²⁸ tourneth to spek of Vryan and Guyon hys brother, and of theyre felawship that sayld on the see, holding theire way toward Cypre. /

Thystory sayth that whan Uryan and Guyon were ³² departed fro Rochelle they sayld long on the

see, and passed by many yles, & refreshed them in
many places; and so long they rowed þat they sawe
many vesselles that chased two galeyes / and thenne
4 the Patron shewed them to þe two brethern / and they
ansuered, and demanded of them what was best to doo.
'By my feyth,' sayd the Patron, 'it were good we send
a galeye to wete what folke they be / and in the meane
8 while we shal make our men to take theyre armes &
harneys on them at al auauertures.' 'By my feith,'
said Vryan, 'that I vouchesaf' / and they dide soo.
And thanne the galeye departed abrode, and saylled
12 toward the straungers / and escryed þem, & deimanded
of them what they were, and they ansuerd, ' We
be two galeyes of Rodes that haue be found of the
paynemys that foloweth & chaceþ vs, and we see wel
16 ye be Cristen, and so are all ¹they that come after
you.' 'By my feyth,' sayd they of the galeye, ' we
ben as ye suppose and saye.' 'By my heed,' said one
of the patrons of Rodes galeyes / 'goo & haste your
20 felawship, For ye haue found fayre auenture. yonder
be of the sawdans folke that goo to the siege of Fama-
gosse / and who might dystroye them, he shuld doo
grete socoure to the king of Cypre / and to the sawdan
24 of Damaske grete dommage.' Whan thenne they of
the galeye herd this / they sodaynly retourned &
announced it to the two bretheren / and to their folke
whiche anon yede vp to the Castels of their shippes,
28 and clymed vp to the toppes of them, hauyng speere &
darts, stones, & wild fyre alredy / also bowes & arowes
in their handes / gonnes & pouldre to shote with.
There bygan tempes to blowe vp, & rowed mightily
32 toward the paynemys. And whan the Infideles &
paynemys perceyued so grete nombre of shippes rowyng
toward them they ne wyst not what to thinke, For
they had never supposid that so grete puissaunce &
36 strengthe of cristien men had be so nygh them / but

till they see
two galleyes being
chased.

They send to
see who are in
them.

The messengers
find the galley's
to be from
Rhodes,

¹ fol. 68.

and that the
vesselles that chase
them are the
Sultan's of Da-
maseus, who is
on his way to
Famagosse, to
fight the King
of Cyprus.

On hearing this
news, Urian and
Guion prepare
their ships to
fight,

and row towards
the paynim
Sultan.

The infideles,
surprised at the
numbers of the
Christians,

retreat, but prepare for attack.

The Christian galleys open fire,

upon which the paynims try to send a fire-ship amongst them,

¹ fol. 68 b.

but they evade it.

The Christians are victorious,

take their enemies' ships, and put the men to death.

They row to Rhodes, where they refresh themselves, and give the captured ships to the Rhodians.

The Master of Rhodes invites them to his city,

asks why they come,

and of what nation they are.

They answer, and ask the Master of Rhodes to help them to assist the King of Cyprus.

alwayses they putte hem self in aray gooynge abacke, but oure galeys aduyronned them round about on al sydes, and bygan of al partes to shutte theire gonneſ. And whan the paynims sawe this / and that they 4 myght not flee, they toke a vessel whiche they had take fro them of rodes, and had cast the folke that was in it into the ſee / and fylded it with wode, oyle, & talowe, and with ſulphre & brymſtone. and whan they 8 ſawe our folk approuched nygh them they ſette it afyre. and whan the fyre was wel kyndled ¹they lefte it behynd them to mete first with our folke / but as god wold they were warned therof & kept / themſelf 12 wel therfro / and assaylded theire enmyes at the other ſyde right vygourouſly. There was grete ſhotyng of croſbowes & gonnes / and ſoone after our folk entred byforce and ſtrengthe of armes the ſhippes of the 16 paynims / and fynally they were take & dyscomfyted, and putte to deth. and our folke gate there grete good whiche the two brethern departed, and gaf to theire felawes and to them that wer within the two galeys of 20 Rodes / and syn rowed & ſayld both ſo long that they arryued in the yle of Rodes. And there they refreſhed them, & gaf to the brethern of the religyon the fuſtes & galeys that they had taken vpon the 24 paynims, and they ſoiurned there four dayes. And the maister of Rodes prayd them that they wold come into the Cite / and they dide ſoo / and were there honourably receyued / and the ſaid maister demanded 28 them of the cauſe of their commyng. And the two brethern told hym that they were come forto ſocoure the king of Cypre / And he asked them ful humbly of what land they were, and what they were / and the 32 two brethern told to hym al the trouth. Thenne made the maister to them greter chere than tofore / and ſaid to them that he ſhuld ſend for ſom of his bretheren / & that he ſhuld goo with hem to helpe & ſocoure the 36

king of Chipre. And the two bretheren thanked hym
moche humbly therefore. /

Now sayth thystorye that so long abode, & so-
4 iourned the two brethern at Rodes tyl the
maister had assembled his folke, and vytaylled & laden
with good ¹men of armes, & archers six galeys, &
saylled with Uryan & Guyon so long that they arryued
8 nygh to the yle of Coles, & apperceyued grete lyght.
Thenne the grete maister of Rodes that was in Uryan's
galeye, said to the two bretheren: 'Sires, in good feyth
it were good & wel doon to send a Carue^H vnto yonder
12 yle, to knowe & aspye what folke is there.' 'I vouch-
saf it,' said Vryan. The Rampyn then, or Carue^H,
saylled thither, & arryued in to the said yle, & some
of þem descended & founde many grete fyres & lodgis,
16 and by thexperience that they sawe, they extimed them
þat had lodged there to the nonbre of xxx thousand
men / and that they myght wel hane dwelled þer foure
or fyue dayes. For they found without the lodgys grete
20 foysone of oxen hornes & of other bestes. And then
they came ayen in to theire Vesse^H, and retourned
toward our folke / & recounted to them the trouth of
all that they had found. 'By my feith,' said thenne
24 the maister of Rodes, 'I wene they be paynemys that
are gooynge toward the sawdan at the siege, and that
they whiche ye haue dyscomfyted were of theire felaw-
ship, & abode for them in that same yle' / and for
28 certayn they were soo / and of them they sayled &
rowed fourth tyl they sawe an abbey on the see coste,
where men sought & worshiped saynt Andrew / and
men saith that there is the potence or cros wheron the
32 good thef Dysmas was crucifyed whan our lord was
nayled to the Cros for our redempcion. 'Sire,' said
the maister, 'it were good that we should entre that
lytil hauen Vnto tyme that we had sent to Lymasson
36 for to knowe tydinges, & for to wete yf they wyl

The Master of
Rhodes arms six
galleys,

¹ fol. 69.

and sails with
the brethren to
Coles, where
they see lights.

Men are sent in
a carvell to spy,

and discover a
camp of thirty
thousand strong.

They return with
their news.

The Master of
Rhodes believes
it to be a camp
of paynims,
friends of those
just defeated in
the sea-fight.

The company
continues their
voyage till they
come to an
abbey on the
coast.

1 fol. 69 b.

receyue vs for to putte our nauye in ¹surete within theyre clos.' 'Maister,' said Uryan, 'let it be doon in the name of god after your playsire.' Thenne they arryued, and entred the port or hauen / and sent 4 wordes to thabbot ther, that they shuld not doubte, For they were theire frendes. And the maister of Rodes with other went thider. And whan thabbot & monkes knew the tydinges and the commyng of the two 8 brethern, they were joyous & glad, & sent some of their bretheren to Lymas to announce & telle þe socours that was arryued at theire porte. Thenne whan a knyght, Captayn of the place, herde these tydinges he 12 was fayn & glad, and made fourthwith a galyotte to be shipped redy, and came toward our folke, and demanded after the lord of that armee /. and he to whome he asked it lede hym where Uryan / Guyon 16 his brother / the master of Rodes, & many other barons were in a ryche pauyllon, that they had don to be dressed on the streyte of the porte / and shewed to hym Vryan that satte on a couche with hym his 20 brother, and the maister of Rodes. And whan he saw hym he was abasshed of the valeur & of the grete fyerste of hym, & neuerþeles he yede & salued hym honourably, and Vryan receyued him goodly & benyngly. 24 'Sire,' said the Knight, 'ye be welcome in to this land.' 'Fayre sirs,' said Vryan, 'moche grete thankes to you.' 'Sire,' said the knight, 'it is don me to vnderstand that ye departed fro your Countrie to 28 thentent to come ayde & help the king of Cypre.' 'By my feyth,' said Uryan, 'it is trouþ.' 'Then, sire,' said the knight, 'it is reson that al be open byfore you, where ye wyl by aft the royalme of Cypre, thrugh aft 32 tounnes, Cites, & Castels there as ye shal be please to goo, but as to the same, which is to my ryght redoubted lord the king of cypre, hit shal be soone appareyld & open to you, whan it shal lyke you, & also the porte 36

They put into the harbour,
and send a message to the
Abbot,

who is glad to
hear of their
arrival.

The Captain of
the place rows
to our folk,

sees Urian,
Guion, and the
Master of
Rhodes,

and is abashed at
Urian's appear-
ance.

Being assured
that Urian has
come to help the
King of Cyprus,
he promises to
open the country
to him, and

give his vessels
anchorage.

to putte your vessels ¹in sauete.' 'By my feyth,' said Uryan, 'ye say right wel, & gramercy to you. Sire knight, it is tyme to meve, For my brother and I haue
 4 grete langyng to approche nygh the paynemys / not for theire prouffyt, but for theire dommage, if it plaise god that we so doo.' 'Sire,' said the knight, 'it is good ye doo to be had out some of your horses as many
 8 as it lyke you / and take som of your men with you, and we shaſt goo by land.' 'By my feith,' sayd Uryan,
 'ye say right wel' / and thus it was doon / and Uryan made some of hys men to be armed, vnto the nombre
 12 of fouro hundred gentylmen of the moost hye barons, knightes & squyers. and he himself, & his brother armed them and mounted on horsbak / and the banere dysployed, rode fourth in moch fayre ordynaunce / and
 16 the maister of Rodes & the other shipped them on the see & rowed toward the porte. And Vryan and his fellowship rode with the said knight that guyded hym so long that they came & entred in to the toune, and
 20 were right well lodged. And then came the nauye, & arryued to the porte, and the horses were alſt had out of the shippes, and the folke descendid to land, and lodged them in þe feld without the toune within
 24 tentes & pauyllons / and they that had none, made theire lodgis the best wyse they coude. and was moche grete playsaunce to see thoost whan they were alle lodged. The moost hye barons lodgyd them within
 28 the toune / and the nauye was draw, & had in to the clos in sauete / and they commytted good folke to deffende & kepe it, yf Sarasyns or paynemys came there for to doo som euhl. Now shal I leue to speke
 32 of Uryan, & shal say of the Captayn of the toune that moche wel aduyised thoost and the maynten of the folke, & moche preyed it in his herte / and said wel they were folke of faytte ²and of grete enterpryse, whan
 36 so few peuple enterpryzed for to haue the vyctory ouer

¹ fol. 70.

Four hundred
of Urian's barons
go ashore, armed
and horsed,

and ride to the
town;

the ships mean-
while row to the
harbour, and the
horses and men
land.

Guards are set
to defend the
navy against the
Saracens.

² fol. 70 b.

The Captain of the town is surprised at the bravery of Urien, who thinks of conquering the mighty host of the Saracens with so few men;

but Urien's bold looks assure him, and he thanks God that Urien has been sent to help the king.

The Captain of the place indites a letter to the King of Cyprus, telling of Urien's arrival and of his forces,

the sawdan, that had with hym more than houndred thousand paynemys. And for to say trouth, Vryan had not yet comprised the men of the maister of Rodes, eyghte thousand fyghtyng men / and therfore the 4 knight mernaylled, and held it to grete audacie & hardynes of herte, and to grete valyaunce. And whan he considered the grandeur & the facion of Vryan, & the fyerste of hys vysage, and also of guyon hys 8 brother / he said to his folke / 'thoo same are worthy for to subdue & conquere al the world.' and he said to hymself, þat god had sent hem thither of his benyng grace for to socoure the kyng, and for to enhaunce the 12 cristen feyth, and that he shuld lete it to be knownen to the kynge by certayn message.

Thystrye sayth that the knight made a *lettre*, the tenour of whiche conteyned al the matere of 16 Uryan, & of his brother, of their men, & of their commyng, and how the two bretheren had to name, and of what countre they were / and syn he called one hys nevew, & said to hym in this manere, 'ye muste 20 bere this *lettre* to Famagosse, and gyue it to the kyng / and whatsoeuer it happeth that god forbede, but al good to you, nedes ye muste doo it.' 'By my feyth, sire,' said he / 'ye shal putte bothe the *lettres* & 24 myself in grete jeopardy & auenture, For if by some myschief, as it happeth ofte, wherof god preserue me I were taken of our enmyes, of my lyf is nothing / and ye wote it wel / but for the loue of you, myn vnkle & 28 of the kyng, to doo hym comfort, & to gyue hym herte & hoop to be putte & delyuered fro hys enmyes, & fro the mortal parel wherin he is now, I shall putte myself in aduenture / and I pray ¹to god deuoutly, that it 32 please hym of his benigne grace to lede me gooynge & commyng in sauete.' / 'Thus owe men to serue their lord,' said the Captayne, 'and yf god wyl ye shalbe wel rewarded therof.' and anoone he toke the *lettre*, & 36

¹ fol. 71.

delyuered it to his nevew / þat mounted on horsbacke,
& rode fourthon his way. But as for now I shaſt reste
of hym / and I shal retourne there I leſte to spek of
4 Vryan / and shal say howe he gouerned hymſelf whiles
the messenger yede toward the king! how wel he knew
nat of it. /

and despatches
his nephew on
horseback to the
King at Famagoſſe.

Thystory saith that Vryan called to hym the maister
8 of Rodes and the Captayn of the place, and de-
manded of them thus: ‘Fayre lordes, is the sawdan
somewhat yong, ne of grete enterpryse’ / and they an-
ſuerd, ‘that ye for certayn’ / ‘and how,’ said Vryan,
12 ‘was he neuer before this place to make warre than
now?’ / they anſuerd that, ‘nay’ / ‘and what thenne,’
said Vryan, ‘hath caused hym to pasſe the ſee now?
ſith he is man of enterpryſe, I merveyſt that ſo long
16 he held hym styl, ſeeing ye be his nighlī neygbours,
and also that he hath ſo grete puissaunce, as it is told
me.’ ‘By my feyth, ſire,’ ſaid the Captayne, ‘it is
veray & trouth that our kyng hath a mochī fayr dougli-
20 ter of the age of .xv. yere, the whichī the ſaudan wold
haue had by force / and our kyng wold not acorde her
to hym without he wold be baptysed. And wete it
that euer here tofore we had trewes togidre of ſo long
24 tyme that no mynde is of þe contrarye. and whan the
ſawdan hath ſeen that our king wold not graunt to
hym his dougliter, he ſent ageyn to hym the trewes
with a deffyaunce or chalengyng, and was redy on the
28 ſee with a .C. & fyfty thouſand paynemys, and came &
made ſoone his harneys to be had out on erthe, & wente
and layd ſiege tofore Famagoſſe, where he found ¹the
kyng all vnpurveyed of his baronye, that knew not of
32 his commyng / but syn there be entred moche folke
within the Cite ayenſt his euyl gree, & there is now
fayre ſcarmyſſhing where grete losſe hath be on both
partes / and syn the paynemyes have refreſhed them-
36 ſelv twyes of new folke, in ſo mochī that they ben yet

Urian asks about
the Sultan of
Damascus,

and ascertains
that he fights to
get the king's
beautiful
daughter, now
fifteen,
refused him
because he
would not be
baptised.

The Sultan
challenged the
king, and laid
ſiege to Famagoſſe, which was
unprepared;

¹ fol. 71 b.

but now rein-
forcements have
entered the
town, and there
is fair skirmish-
ing.

The Saracens are a hundred thousand strong; but they lost some vessels,

as was learnt from one of our ships, who saw them pass, chasing two Rhodian galleys,

but saw no more of them.

The Master of Rhodes tells the Captain of Urian's victory, which explains their non-appearance.

Urian, learning that love has made the Sultan fight,

says that he is the more to be feared, because love is so powerful that it makes even cowards brave,

¹ fol. 72.

and states that next day, after divine service, he will set out in quest of him.

At the third sound of the trumpets they march.

wel a .C^{ml}. / but at this last vyage they haue lost a parte of theire shippes & of theire folke, which they abode fore in the yle of Coles, For one of our galleyes of the blakke hylle that pursyewed them told it to vs, 4 & how they chaced two galleyes of the hospytal of Rodes / and wete it that þey ne wote not where they bycame syn, For they taryed after wel by the space of six dayes in the said yle / but whan they sawe that 8 they came not, they departed thens & came byfore famagoce at siege.' 'By my feyth, sire,' sayd the maister of Rodes, 'this might wel be veray trouth. but see here my lord Vryan and lysis brother, that shuld 12 wel ansuere therof, For they haue be al dyscomfyted & slayn by theire strengthe & valiauntis, and they haue gyuen to vs theire fustes & their nauye.' 'In good feyth,' sayd the knight, 'that playseth me wel, and 16 blessid be god therof.' 'My lord,' said the Captayn, 'now haue I recounted to you why the werre is meued, and wherefore the saudan of Damaske hath passed the see.' 'In the name of god,' said Vryan, 'loue hath 20 wel so moche & more of puyssaunce than of suche enterpryse to doo. And wete that syn the sawdan is enterpryzed of force of loue, the more he is to be doubted / For veray soth it is / that loue hath so moche 24 of myght that it maketh coward to be hardy and to doo right grete enterpryse / & that byfore he durst not passe. And therfore thenne it is al certayn to this, that the sawdan is hardy & enterprenaunt ¹the more 28 he doth hym to be doubted / but always be doo the wylle of god. For we shal departe hens to the playsire of god to morow by tymes after the deuyne servyce for to goo & vysyte them.' And then he made to be 32 eryed & proclaimed with the trompette that euery man shuld make redy lysis harneys. and they departed after the thirde sowne of the trompette in goodly & fayre ordynaunce, euerone vnder his banere / and bade them 36

to siew the vanward / and so they dide. here I shal
leue to spek of them / and shal retourne there as I
lefte to speke of the Captayns nevew that moche
4 strongly rode toward Famagoce / and so moche ex-
ployted his way that he came about midnyght to the
Cornere of the wode, vpon a lytil mountayn, & loked
doun into the valeye, and then he bygan to perceyue
8 & see the oost of the paynemys, where as was grete
lyght of fyres that were made by the lodgys; and he
sawe the Cite so aduyronned al about with paynemys,
that he ne wyst which way to draw for to entre the
12 toun. and there he was long tyme in grete þoughte.

The Captain's nephew, that carried the letter to the king,

It happed that about the spryng of the day foure score
basynets, straungers of dyuerse nacyons, yssued out at
a posterne of the Cyte, & commevyd al thoost by

arrived at the city of Famagoce, sees it surrounded with paynims, and does not know how to enter it.

16 manere of batay^H / and that same ouure the watche
departed, & the moost part of them was retourned to
theyre lodgis / and they entred in the oost with some
of them that had watched without they were ware of

At the spring of day, eighty basinets leave the city,

20 hem, & supposed they had be of their companye, and
came nygh to the tente of the sawdan / and thenne
they bygan to launche & smyte with speeres & with
swerdes on al the paynemys that they mete & re-

and when the paynims' watchmen are in their tents,

24 counted / and cutted cordes of pauyllons to grete
desray, & made moche horrable occysyon & slachtir
of paynemys after the quantite ¹that they were of.

the basinets fall upon the paynims, cut their tent ropes, and slay many of them.

Thenne was al the host afryd, and bygan to crye alarme

¹ fol. 72 b.

28 & to harneys / then bygan thoost to take on them their armures. And whan the cristen men sawe the force &

But on the host of the Saracens arming,

strengthe of their enemies that bygan to ryse, they retourned with a lytel paas toward the Cite, fleeyng &

they run back towards the city.

32 castyng to therthe al that they recounted on their waye. And whan the messaunger sawe so grete affraye & noyse he cam at al auenture & broched hys hors

The messenger seeing the adventure, spurs his horse, rides to the basinets,

with the spoorys, and passed without fourth the lodges

36 thrugh out all the oost of þe paynemys / and he had

and tells of the arrival of the Lusignans with eight thousand warriors,

which gladdens them,

and makes the Sultan sad and angry.

The fight continues, but the paynims are driven back, and the Sultan sounds a retreat.

The messenger delivers his letter to the king,

¹ fol. 73.

who thanks God on reading it that he has not been forgotten.

The king orders the church bells to be rung, processions to be made,

not goo long whan he found hymself atwix the Cite & them that so had commoeuyd thoost, as said is. And then he knew them soone ynough that they were of the garnyson of the Cyte, and escryed them, saying : ‘ ha, ha, fayre lordes, thinke to doo wel, For I bryng you good tydynges ; For the floure of the noble cheualrye of Crystyante cometh to socoure & helpe you / that is to wete the two damoyseaulx of Lusynen, that haue dyscomfyted alredy a grete part of the Sodanis folke vpon the see / and they bryng with them wel eyght thousand men. And thenne whan they understode hym they made hym grete chere and were ryght joyfull, 12 and entred the toun ayen without eny losse. wherof the sawdan was moch wofull & angry. And then he came & bygan the scarmoushe before the barers & many paynemys were there slain & dede / and they 16 of Cypre made theire enemyes to recule abacke with strengthe / and the saudan made the trompette to sowne & caſt the retrette whan he sawe that he myght doo none other thing. And þen came the said mes- 20 saunger byfore the kynge, & made the reuerence on hys vnclis byhalue, and presented the *lettre*. And the kyng receyued hym moche benyngly, & tok away the wax and opend the *lettre* & sawe the tenour ¹ of hit. / 24 and syn heued vp his handes joynly toward heuen, & said : ‘ ha, a veray gloryous god, Jhesu Criste, I þank regracye & mercye the ryght deuoutly & humbly of this, that thou hast not forgoten me that am thy pouere creature and thy pouere seruaunt, that haue long tyme lyued here within this Cite in grete doubte & feere, and in grete myserye of my pouere lyuyng and my folke also.’ 28 And thenne he made to be announced in al the chirches, 32 that they shuld ryng theire belles, & that processyons shuld be made with crosses & baners, and with torches brennyng, lawdyng & preysyng the creator of creatures, prayeng hym moche humbly that he of his mercyfull & 36

benynge grace wyl kepe & preserue them fro the handes
& daunger of mysbyleuers paynmys. And thanne by-
gan the ryngyng to be grete, & was the joye ryght
4 grete whau the tydynges of the socours commyng to
them was knowen of al. And whan the paynemys
vnderstode the gladnes & joye that they of the cyte
made, they were moche abasshed why they made &
8 demened so grete feeste. ‘By my feyth,’ sayd the
saudan, ‘they have herd some tydinges that we wote
not / or ellis they doo so for to gyue vs vnderstandyng
that they haue folke ynougue & vtyaylles also for to
12 deffende & withstande ayenst vs.’ And here resteth
thystorye of the soudan & bygynneth to speke of
Ermyne the kingis doughtir of Cypre, which herd
there as she was in her chambre the tydynges of the
16 socours that the children of Lusynen brought with
them. and the mayde had grete langyng & desyre to
knowe the veray trouth of al.

and God thanked
and prayed to for
help.

The paynims are
abashed at the
rejoicings of the
Christians.

The hystorye saith to vs thus / that whan tho
20 damoyselle knew of the socours & help that soone
she sent for hym that had brought the tydinges ¹ therof,
and he came to her in hir chambre & made to her
the reuerence. ‘Frend,’ said Ermyne, ‘ye be wel-
24 come to me; but now tell me of your tydinges.’ and
he recounted to her al that was of it. ‘Frede,’ said
the mayde, ‘have ye seen that folke that commeth to
socoure my fader?’ ‘By my feyth, ye,’ said the mes-
28 sanger, ‘they are the moost appert in armes, and the
fayrest men that euer entred in to this land, and the
best arayed & purueyed of al thinges.’ ‘Now tell us,’
said the damoyselle, ‘of what land they are, & who is
32 the chief Captayn & lord of them.’ ‘By my feyth, my
damoyselle, they be of Poytou, and lede them two
yong & fayre damoyseaulx brethren, that be named of
Lusynen, of whiche theldest is called Vryan, & that
36 youngest Guyon, which have not yet berde ful growen.’

The King of
Cypres's
daughter, Er-
mine,

¹ fol. 73 b.

on hearing of the
help, sends for
the messenger,
and questions
him.

The messenger
tells of the men
who have come
to succour the
king:

of the captains
of them, Urian
and Guion,

and of their looks.

'Frede,' said the damoyselle, 'be they so fayre damoyseaux as ye say?' 'By my feyth,' said the messenger / 'the eldest is moche grete & hye, strong & of fayre behauyng & maynten, but hys vysage is short & large 4 in trauerse / and hath one eye redde, & that other ey is perske & blew, and the eerys grete to merueyH. and wete it wel that of membres & of body he is the fayrest knight that euer I sawe / and the yongest is not of so 8 hye stature / but he is moche fayre & wel shapen of membres, & hath a face to deuyse, except that one of his eyen is hyer sette than the other is. and seye alle that see them, that they be worthy & noble to conquere 12 & subdue vnder them alH the world.' 'Frede,' sayd Ermyn, 'shaH ye goo agayn soone toward them.' And he ansuerd, 'my damoyselle, assoone as I may haue tyme & place conuenable & propyce for to yssue & go out of 16 the Cite, and that I see I may goodly escape fro the paynemys.' 'Frede,' said the damoyselle, 'ye shal on my behalue salue the yong brethern, and ye shaH delyuere to the eldest this ouch¹, and telle hym bere it 20 for the loue of me / and this ryng of gold with this dyamond ye shal take to þe lesse, and ye shaH salew hym moche on my byhalf.' And he ansuered, 'my damoyselle, I shall doo it righte gladly.' He thanne 24 departed fro her & came to the king that had doon writ his ansuere in a *lettre*, and made grete foysoun of men of armes to arme them redyly, and them made he to yssue couertly out of the cyte and entred in to the 28 oost / and or the oost were armed they adommaged them sore. And þen yssued paynemys out of theire tentes without eny aray, that rechaced them vnto the barrers, where they had grete scarmusshyng & fyres, 32 and many men slain & wounded of bothe partes. AlH thoost arryued where the scarmusshing was / and ther whyles was the said messenger putte out of the Cite att another gate, a bow shotte fro al the oost, so that 36

¹ fol. 74.

Ermine sends an ouch to Urian, and a ring to Guion, by the messenger, and bids him salute them on her behalf.

The king gives the messenger an answer to the letter he brought,

and to divert the attention of the enemy, orders another sortie.

Upon which the messenger goes out at another gate,

he was nat perceyued. And thenne he rode hastily toward hys vncle. For moche he langed that he myght there be arryued for to shew hym all the tydyinges.

4 And dured not long the scarmoushe, For the sawdan made it to be cessed, For he sawe wel that he shuld more lese there than wyne. Now I shal leue to speke of this forsaid matere / and shall retourne to speke of

8 Vryan & of his brother.

and rides to his uncle

The Sultan soon orders his men to retreat.

In this parte telleth thistory that Uryan dide hys trompettes to be blowen at the spring of the day, & roos & commanded euery man to apparey^H hym,

At the spring of the day, Urian commands his host to prepare to march.

12 and put saddelles on theire horses / and soone after the two brethern herd theiro masse, & semblably dyde the other prynces & barons / and after the masse Vryan made to crye, that who wold drynk ones shuld drynk,

16 and that ootis shuld be gyuen to the horses, and that at the other tyme that the trompette shuld be blowen, eueryman shuld be redy that was of the ¹Vanwarde.

¹ fol. 74 b.

And they beying in such estate, the Capteyns nevew **20** arryued there, and delyuered the *lettre* to hys vncle, that the kyng had taken to hym / and the Captayn toke & kyssed it fourthwith^h, opend^h it, and sawe by the tenour of it how the kyng commanded hym to putte

At that time the messenger returns from the king.

24 bothe the fortresse and the toune at the wy^H & commandement of the two bretheren. Also that he shuld commande to all good tounnes, Castels, Fortresses, portes, hauens, & passages that they shuld gyue them **28** entre & soiourne, and that they shuld obey to them.

The Captain reads the answer, which commands all the land to be given in charge of the brethren, Urian and Guion,

And whan the Captayn sawe & vnderstode all þe substance & matere of it, he shewed the *lettre* to Vryan, & to guyon hys brother, the whiche redde it; & whan they **32** knew the tenour of it they called to them the captayn, the maister of Rodes, & the two knightes, that had anounced to them thauenture of the siege, and redde to them the *lettre* on hye. ‘Thenne,’ said Uryan to the **36** Captayn, ‘we thanke moche the king of the worship

to whom the letter is shown.

Urian thanks
the Captain for
the king's inten-
tions,

and asks what
force the
Cyprians have
in all their
fortresses;

because he
wishes to fight
the Sultan, and
end the war.

The Captain
says that would
be hard to do,
because the
payninus have
one hundred
thousand men.

¹ fol. 75.

Urian replies
they have a good
cause,

that victory lies
not on the side
of numbers,

and that Alex-
ander fought
the world with
twenty thousand
men.

Which speech
cheered the
Captain,

who promised
a company of
eight thousand
men;

which Urian says
is enough.

that he doth to vs / but as to vs, our entencyon is not to entre in to thoos tounes ne castelles, yf we may goodly passe without fourth, For we thinke to kepe the feldes, yf god wyl, & make good werre ayenst the 4 sodan, but telle vs what nombre of men may yssue out of al your garnysons the Fortresses alwayes kept / and wete it þat force is to vs to knowe it / and yf they be men of whom we dare trust and be assured / For god 8 before we tende & purpose to gyue bataylle to the Sawdan, & to putte to termynacioun, & ende this warre. For therfore are we come hither.' 'By my faith,' said the Captayn, 'that shal be hard to doo, For þe 12 paynemys are in nombre wel C^{ML} and more.' 'Care you not, therefore,' said Vryan, 'For we haue good right in oure caas / they are come vpon vs without cause / and though we had goon on them ¹vnto theire 16 owne lande, we ought to doo soo, For they are enemyes of god / and doubtles though they be of grete nombre to the regarde of our felawship / yet one grayne of peper alone smertith more on mans tonge than doth 20 a sacke ful of whette / ne victorye also lyeth not in grette multitude of peuple / but in good rule & ordyn-aunce. And wel it is trouth that Alexander, that subdued so many & dyuerse landes, wold not haue with 24 hym aboue the nombre of xx^{ti} thousand fyghtyng men for one journey ayenst al the world. And thanne whan the Captayne herd hym speke so valyauntly, he held it to grete wele & valeur, and thoughte he was 28 wel able & worthy to conquere & subdue many landes, and said to hym in this manere : 'Sire, I shaſt enforce your oost with foure thousand fighting men, and of two thousand brygandyners & crosbowes, & other.' 'By 32 my feyth,' said Vryan, 'that is ynough / now doo that we may haue hem to half a journey nygh oure enemyes,' and he ansuerd there shuld be no fawte of it. And then came there the Captayns nevew, and 36

kneled byfore Vryan & Guyon, and said to them in this manere : ‘ Noble damoyseaulx / the moost fayre mayde / & the moost noble that I knowe salueth you
 4 bothe, and sendeth you of her jewels’ / and thenno he toke the ouche of gold that was sette with many a ryche & precyous stone / and said thus to Vryan : ‘ Sire, hold & receyue this ouche of Ermynes byhalf, doughter to
 8 my liege lord the kyng, that requyreth & besechēþ you to were it on you for her sake.’ Vryan toke it joyously, and made it to be attached & sette it on his cotte of armes, and said to hym : ‘ My frende, right
 12 grete thankes & thousand mercys to the damoyselle tha so moche honour sheweth to me / Wete ¹it that I shall kepe it moche dere for her sake / and gramercy to you messanger & brynger of it.’ And after he pre-
 16 sented and toke to Guyon the ring on the forsayd damoysellis byhalf / and that she prayed hym to bere it for the loue & sake of her / And guyon ansuerd that so shuld he doo, and putte it on his fynger / and
 20 thanked moche the damoyselle / and þe messager also / and the brethern gaf moche ryche yestis to the same messager. And soone after the trompette blew, and eueryman putte hym self fourth on hys way. and
 24 there myght men be seen in fayre & good ordynaunce.
 And the Captayn sent to all the Fortresses & tounes, and made to yssue out & assemble togidre all the men of armes / and wel were of them aboue the nombre
 28 that the Captayn had sayd to the two bretheren fyue hondred more. Vryan thenne lodged hym and hys fellowship on a lytil ryuere / and on the morne erly they departed, and went fourth tyl they came a lytil
 32 byfore mydday, in a fayre medowe, nygh to a grete ryuere / and there were foyson of trees / also there was a quarter of a leghe thens a grete bridge, where they muste passe / and fro that bridge vnto Famagoce were
 36 but seuen leghes / and there made Vryan hys folke to

MELUSINE.

The messenger presents Urian with the ouch from Ermine,

who takes it joyfully, and attaches it to his coat of arms,

¹ fol. 75 b.

and says he will keep it for her sake.

Guion is presented with the ring, and puts it on his finger.

The brethren give rich gifts to the messenger. The trumpets are sounded, and the men get under arms.

The captain assembles from the fortresses the company he promised,

and Urian marches his army within seven leagues of Fainagosse, nigh a great bridge,

where they
abide for the
night.

Some knights go
to the bridge,
and see fifteen
armed men,

and on the other
side of it four
hundred.

¹ fol. 76.

The fifteen, on
being asked,
say that they are
Christians,
and the other
company pay-
nims, who have
fought them,
and killed one
hundred of their
company.

Urian's knights
help the small
company of
Christians;

be lodged, and said he wold abyd þere the said Captayn and his men that he shuld bring with hym. There they laye that nyght, and abode tyl the morne noone. but alwayes some knightes were goon for theire dys- 4 porte vnto the said bridge, and aspyed there about xv men of armes that were descended therat / and had theire speeris in theire fystes, and the salades after the guyse that they armed them in that Countre / and of 8 anoþer syde they sawe come about foure houndred men ¹of armes, that peyned them self moche for to passe ouer for to greve them of the other side / thanne came one of our Knightes that escryed them, & de- 12 manded of them what they were / and one of them ansuerd, ‘we are Cristen / and they that ye see at the other side of the watre are paynemys, that come for fourrage about the Countre / they haue mete & faught 16 with vs, and they haue slain wel an C good men that were of our fellowship.’ ‘Now, fayre lordes,’ said oure knyght, ‘yf ye can hold you, ye shal soone haue socours & ayde.’ And thenne the knight broched hys hors, 20 and waloped toward hys felawes, and recounted to them shortly al thauenture. And whan they vnderstode this they hastily came to the oost, and mete with xx^t crosbowes men, to whom they bade they shuld hye þem toward the bridge for to help the xv men of armes that were there ayenst thenmyes. And whan they vnderstode this they walked fast, & cam nigh to the bridge, and sawe thre cristens that were 28 ouerthrownen on the bridge by strokkes of speerys. ‘Fourth,’ said then one of them, ‘we tary to longe / perceyue you not how this Dogges oppresen vylaynly these valyaunt & worthy crystens?’ / and anone they 32 bended þeir crosbowes, & shot al at ones / and ouerthrewen down on the bridge fro theire horses with that first shotte xxii^t paynemys. Whan the mysbyleuers paynemys sawe this they were sore abasshed, and 36

withdrew themself somewhat backward fro the bridge. Thenne yede the cristen men, and releuyd vp their felawes that were ouerthrownen on the bridge / and 4 thenne they made grete joye & toke good herte / and the ¹Crosbowe men shote so ofte & so strong, that there ne was so bold a paynem that durst putte his foot on the bridghe / but made to come there theire 8 archers, & thenne bygan the scarmusshing strong & grete and moche mortal. but betre had be to the paynemys that they had withdrawe them self apart, For the knightes came to the oost and reherced to 12 Uryan the tydinges therof, the whiche moch appertly armed hymself, and made hastily a thousand men of armes to take theire harneys on them, & rode forth toward the bridge / and ordeyned another thousand 16 men of armes, & C crobowe men to folowe hym, yf he nede had of them / aud commanded that all the oost shuld be in ordynaunce of batay^H, & betoke it to the kepyng & gouernance of guyon his brother, and of 20 the maister of Rodes. Uryan thanne made the standarde to passe fourth rydyng in batay^H moche ordynatly / and was Vryan before, hauyng a staf on hys fyste, & held them wel togidre, and so vnyed, that 24 one marched nothing afore that other. But or they were come to the bridge there were come eight thousand paynemys, that moche strongly oppressed our folke, and had putte them almost fro the bridge. but 28 anoone came there Vryan, whiche alighted / toke hys speere, & so dyde hys folke moche appertly / and made hys banere to be dysployed abrode / and were the crobowe men on botho sydes of hym vpon the 32 bridge / and then they marched fourth, and bygan to oppresse and rebuke sore the paynemys, and made them to withdrawe bakkwarde. And there Vryan cryed 'Lusynen' with a hye voys & lowde, and yede 36 & marched ayenst hys enimys, hys banere euer byfore

and rescue some
of their friends
on the bridge
from the pay-
nims,

¹ fol. 76 b.

who retire
to bring up their
archers.

Urian hears of
the skirmish,

and rides with a
thousand men to
the bridge,

leaving his host
in charge of
Guion.

¹ fol. 77.

hym. ¹and hys men after that assaylded the fals dogges moche asprely, Whiche of the other syde bygan to launche & to smyte. Uryan smote a paynem on þe brest with hys speere so demesurably, that hys spere ⁴ apered at back syde of hym. they medled them fyersly togidre. but at last the paynemys lost the bridge, and many of them fell doun in to the ryuere. And thenne passed the crystens the bridge lyghtly / ⁸ and there bygan the baytayH moche cruel, For many were there sore hurte & slain on both partyes. but cuer the paynemys were putte abak, & lost moche of ground. Vryan made to passe the horses, for wel he ¹² perceyued that his enemyes wold mounte on theire horses to putte them self to flyght. Thenne came the arregarde that asprely passed ouer the bridge / and whan the paynemys perceyued them they were sore ¹⁶ affrayed / and who that myght flee, feld toward theire folke that lede theyre proye, oxen, kyn & shep, swynes & othre troussage. Uryan than lept on horsback, and made hys folke to doo soo, & commanded the arrer-²⁰ garde that passed them ouer the bridge, that they shuld folowe hym in fayre ordynaunce of bataylle / and so they dyde / and Uryan & hys folke chaced the paynemys that feldd sore chaffed & aferd, For al they ²⁴ that were by Uryan, & they of hys felawship atteyned, were putte to deth / and endured the chasse with grete occysyon & slaughter þe space of fyue ooures & more. And thenne the paynemys ouertoke theyre folke, & ²⁸ made them to leue behynd them alle theyre proy, & came vpon a grete mountayne toward Famagoce / and þer the paynemys reassembled, & putte them self in ³² ²ordynaunce. but there came Vryan & his folke, theire speris on theire fystes alowe / at that recountryng were many one slain & wounded sore, of one syde & of other / the paynemys susteyned the stoure strongly, For they were a grete nombre of folke. but ³⁶

drives them over
the bridge,presses them
hard,and gets his
horses over
the bridge.His rear coming
up frightens the
paynims,who flee toward
their friends.Urian's com-
pany chase the
pagans,

kill many,

and cause them
to leave their
spoil.
The paynims
rally with their
friends upon a
mountain,² fol. 77 b.

Uryan assayled them vygourously / and so moche he
dide there of armes that all were abasshed, and had
grete wonder of it. Then came thither the arregarde
4 that was of a thousand men of armes, & C erosbowe
men which entred, & marched sodaynly vpon theyre
enemyes, & faught so strongly that the paynemys were
putte abacke, & lost ground. and so fyersly was
8 shewed there the cheualry & hardynes of Cristen folke,
that soone they had the vyctory, and putte theyre
enmrys to flight, of whiche lay dede on the place foure
thousand & more, without them that were slain at for-

but Urian and
his guard

12 sayd bridge / and the chasse endured vnto nygh the
oost & siege of the paynemys. Thenne Vryan made
lys folke to withdrawe them, and ledd with them the
proye that the paynemys had left behynd. And

again put them
to flight,
and slay another
four thousand
of them;

16 thus within a short while they eslongyd ferre one fro
other / and our folke retourned to the bridge / and the
paynemys went fourth to theire oost eryeng alarme.

after which
Urian retires
with the booty.

Wherfore euery man went to harneys, & yssued out of
20 theire tentes / and thenne one of them recounted to
the sawdan all thaduenture þat happed to them. And
whan the sawdan herd of it, he wondred moch who
might haue brought þat folke, that so grete harme &
24 dommage had born vnto hym. Thanne was there grete
affray in thoost, & grete noyse of trumpettes. Wherof

The paynims
alarm the
Sultan,
who is surprised,
and wonders who
can have so de-
feated his men;

they of the Cite merueylled what thing it might be, &
armed them self / and everyone was in his garde / and
28 there ¹came to the gate one of the knightes that were
at forsayd brydge, whiche had putte hym in auenture

he sounds his
trumpets,
which alarm the
people in Fama-
gosse, and they
arm themselves.

¹ fol. 78.

to passe thrugh all thoost, and knewe the convyne² of
one parte & of other, also the grete fayttes of armes that
32 Vryan had don / he escryed hye with a lowde voys /
'open the gate! For I bring you good tydynge.' And
thenne they demanded of hym what he was / and he
ansuerd, 'I am one of the knightes of the fortres of the

A knight of
Urian's arrives
at the town,

and tells them
that he brings
good tidings;

² Fr. *commune*.

blak mountayne.' And thanne they opend the gate,
 and he entred, and they ledd hym toward the king,
 that soone knew hym. For other tyme he had seen
 hym. The knight then enclyned hym before the 4
 king, and made to hym the reuerence / and the kinge
 receyued hym moche benyngly / and demanded to hym
 som tydylges; and he reherced to hym worde by word
 all the faytte / and how Vryan dyde, & had rescued 8
 the proye / also of thauenture of the bridge, and alle
 other thinges, & how hys entencion & wylle was for to
 gyue batayll to the sawdan, and to reyse the siege / &
 that shortly / . 'By my feyth,' sayd the kyng, 'that 12
 man ought me god wyll, for to rescue my land of the
 fel & cruel dogges paynemys / and for the holy feyth
 crysten to susteyne & enhaunse / and, certaynly, ¹I
 shal to morne doo fele to the sawdan þat my socour 16
 & help is nygh redy to my behauf & playsire, & that
 I double hym not of nothing.' 'My frende,' said the
 kyng to the knyght, 'goo & say these good tydylges to
 my doughter.' 'Sire,' said the knight, 'right gladly.' 20
 Then came he in to the chambre where the mayde
 was, and ²moche humbly salued her, and rehersed to
 her al the auenture. 'How, sire knight,' said she,
 'were ye at that bataylle?' 'By my feyth, damoyselle,' 24
 ansuerde the knight, 'ye.' 'And how,' sayd she, 'that
 knyght that hath so straunge a face, is he such a fyghter
 as men saye?' 'By my feyth, my damoyselle, ye
 more than a houndred tymes / For he ne dreddeth no 28
 man, al be he neuer so grete & so pusissaunt. And
 wete it what that men saye to you of hym / he is one
 of the moost preu & hardy knyghtes that euer I sawe in
 my lyf.' 'By my feyth,' sayd the damoyselle, 'yf he 32
 had now hyerid you for to preyse & speke wel of hym,
 he hath wel employed hys coste.' 'By my feyth, my
 damoyselle, I spake neuer with hym. but yet he is betre

being led before
the King of
Cyprus,

he reconnts the
victory.

The king is glad,

and sends the
knight to his
daughter,

² fol. 78 b.

who asks about
the battle,
and Urian.

The knight says
Urian is the
bravest and
strongest knight
he has ever
seen..

¹ Fr. *Je ferai demain sentir.*

worthy than I telle you.' Then she answered to the knight, ¹'goodnes & bounte is betre than fayrenes & beaulte.' And here leueth thystorye to speke of the
 4 mayde / and retourneth to Vryan, þat abode at the bridge, and founde hys oost lodged at this syde of the bridge / And also the Captayne þat had brought the men of armes, that he leuyed fro the garnysons & for-
 8 tresses vnto the nombre of V^{ML} men of armes, with two thousand V. C. crosbowe men / and also there were many footmen / And þey were alle lodged in the medowe at the other syde of the ryuere. Where
 12 Vryan found his pauyllon dressed vp / and the other that had be at the pursywete & chaas of the paynemys, they lodged þem that nyght the best wyse they coude,
 & made good watche. And here resteth thystory ther-
 16 of, and bygynneth to speke of the kyng of Cypre, that was moche joyous & glad of the socours that was come to hym / and regracyed deuoutely our lord of it / and in that party passed the nyght. But who
 20 someuer was glad that was Ermyne, For she coude not by no manere in the world haue out of her thoughte Vryan, ²and desired moche to see hym for the well that it was said of hym / in so moche that she said in
 24 herself, that yf he now had the vysage more straunge & more contrefaytte than he had / yet he is wel shappen for his proesse & bounte to haue the doughtir of the moost high kynge in the world to hys paramour. And
 28 so thoughte the damoyselle al the nyght on Vryan, For loue by hys grete power had broughte her therto. Here resteth thystorye to speke of her, & bygynneth to speke of the kyng her fader.

32 **T**he hystorye recounteth here, that on the morne
 T at the spryng of the day, the kyng had hys folke all redy, & yssued out of the Cyte with a thousand men of armes, and wel a thousand of Crosbowemen ;

Urian rests that night in his tent.

The King of Cyprus was glad at the victory,

and his daughter Ermine thought ever of Urian,

² fol. 79.

his strange visage, and his bravery,

because love by its great power had hold of her.

In the morning the king with a host

¹ Fr. *Amy, bonté vault mieulx que beaulté.*

went out of the city and fought the enemy,

giving no quarter.

The paynims come in great force,

and the King of Cyprus shows great bravery.

² fol. 79 b.

The Sultan, bearing a poisoned dart, comes with a great company, and seeing the king, strikes him on the left side with it,

which causes the king great anguish. He pulls out the dart, and throws it at the Sultan, but missing him it kills a paynim warrior.

and some brygandyners were embusshed at bothe thendes of the barrers, for to helpe & socoure hym yf he were to moche oppressyd by the paynemys. And þen the king entred in to thoost, & bare grete dommage 4 to hys enemys. For he had commanded vpon peyne of deth that none shuld take eny prysoner, but that they shuld putte al to deth / and this dide he for cause they shuld not tende to the dyspoylle & proye, 8 and that at laste he myght gader them ayen togidre for to withdrawe them without ony losse. And then the oost began to be mevyd / and who best coude of the paynemys came to the medlee. And whan the king 12 perceyued that they cam with puissaunce, he remysed hys folke togidre, and made to withdraw them al the lytil pas, and came behynde, the swerd in his fyst. And whan he sawe a knight approuche, he retourned 16 & made hym to recule abacke. but yf he atteyned hym, he chastysed hym so that he no more had langyng to siew¹ hym. And there the kynge dide so wel & so valyauntly, that euery one sayd he was 20 moche preu & worthy of his hand / and there ne ²was so hardy payneme that oo stroke durst abyde. Then came the Sawdan with a grete route of paynemes, armed on a grete hors, that held a dart envenymed. 24 And thaune whan he aspyed the king, that so enyl demened his folke, he cast at hym the darte yre, & hytte hym at the synester syde, in suche wyse that he perced hym thrugh & thrughe, For hys harneys coude 28 neuer waraunt hym / And soone after the kyng felt grete anguysshe, and drew the dart out of hys syde, and supposed to haue cast it agayn to the Sawdan / but the Sawdan tourned hys hors so appertly that the dart 32 flough besyde hym, & smote a payneme thrugh the body in suche wyse that he fel doun dede. And whan the sawdan, that ouermoeche had auaunced hym

¹ Fr. *suyrir*.

self, wende to haue retourned, the kynge smote hym with his swerd vpon the heed of hym, that he ouerthrew hym to therthe. Thenne cam the paynemes 4 there so strong that they made the kynge & hys folke to withdraw backe / and thenne was the sawdan redressed & remounted agayn vpon a grete hors. And thenne was þe prees grete, and the paynemes were 8 strong / in so moche that they made the kyng & his folke to withdrawe vnto theirre barrers. Thanne bygan the Cypryens, that kept the passage there, to shote & to launche on the paynemes so strong that they dyed 12 the place with the blood of theirre enemyes. but so strong were the paynemys, that they gaynstode the crysten / and also the king had lost moche of hys blood, & waxed feble, and hys folke bygane to be 16 abasshed. And how be it that the king suffred moche dolour & peyne, neuertheles he resioysshed moche hys peopple & encouraged them, and so moche they dide that the fals paynemes might gete nothing on them / 20 but that they lost twytes ¹asmoche more / and was the scarmusshing moche fyers & peryllous. And thus the kyng of Cypre, by hys valyaunce & noble herte, recomforted his folke. and though he felt grete peyne 24 & woo, he fuþ wel remysed hys folke into the toune. And it was grete meruayþ how so grete a lord, wounded to the deth, myght sytte on horsbake / but the stroke was noþing mortaþ but for the venyme, For the dart 28 was envenymed / and wel it appered within a lytil tyme after, For he deyde of that same stroke. but for certayn he had the herte so full of valiauntnes, as the faytte shewed it, that he ne dayned not make signe 32 of eny bewayllyng before his folke, vnto tyme that one of the barons perceyued aþ his senyster syde dyed with bloode / the whiche Baron sayd to the king: ‘Sire, ye abyde to long here / come & make your folke to 36 withdrawe them in to the toune or it be more late,

The Sultan, advancing too near the king, is overthrown by him,

but is rescued by his people,

who at last drive the Cyprians back;

but these shoot so well that many paynims are killed.

The king now begins to be faint from loss of blood.

His people are abasshed, but, encouraged by him, they fight well, and slay many more of their enemies.

¹ fol. 80.

At last he conducts his folk to the town, still on horseback. Though suffering from the poisoned wound,

he makes no sign of pain, but a baron seeing the blood on his side advises him to withdraw.

For the nyght approucheth / to thende that your
enmyes putte not them self thrugh the medlee emongt
vs.' The kyng, whiche felt grete sorowe, ansuerd to
hym thus : 'Doo therof after your wylle.' This knyght 4
thenne made a houndred men of armes, that were
reffresshed, to come before the barryere, & made to
bygynne ayen the scarmusshing with an C crosbowe
men ; and so were the paynemes sette abacke, wherof 8

This baron with
some archers
continues the
fight,

which makes the
Sultan angry,
who calls on his
people 'to do
well,'

upon which
they fight
vigorously.

The king, though
in great pain,
comes to the
rescue,

² fol. 80 b.

and the paynims
are driven back;

afterwards the
king and his
people return
to the town,
where they learn
of the king's
wound; at which
they mourn.

The king en-
courages them,

and tells them
he may soon be
healed,

the sawdan was full of grete anger, and escryed to
hys folke : 'fourth lordes & barons, peyne your self
to doo wel, For the toune shalbe oures this day : hit
may not escape vs.' And thenne enforced ayen the 12
medlee. And there ye had see wel assayld &
ryght wel deffended, of that one part & of that other.
But whan the kinge of Cypre sawe that the paynemes
strengthed them soo, he toke courage grete, & ranne 16
vpon them vgyourously / and there he suffred so moche
peyne þat al the synewes¹ of hys body were open,
wherof, as some ²sayen, his lyf was shorted / and by
that same enuahisshing were putte aback the paynemes, 20
& many of them wer slayn & sore wounded. The nyght
thenne approuched, and was nygh / and grete harme
& losse was there of both partes. but alwayes the
paynemes withdrew them vnto theire oost, For the 24
king encouraged hys folk soo that they ne doubted no
stroke nomore than yf þey had be of yron or of stele.
And whan the paynems were departed, the kinge &
hys folke retourned in to the toune. And whan they 28.
knew the euyl auenture of theire king, they beganne to
sorowe & to make grete dueil. And the kynge, that
sawe this, sayd to them : 'My good folke, make no
suche waymenting⁴ ne sorowe, but thinke wel to def- 32
fende you ayenst the Sawdan / and god our sauycour
shalbe at your ayde & helpe, For yf it playse hym I
shall soone be heelid.' Thenne was the peopple peased

¹ Fr. *vaines*.

ayen. but neuerþeles, the kyng that said such wordes
 for to resioysshe hys peuple, felt in hym self that he
 coude not escape fro deth. And thenne he commanded
 4 to his folke they shuld make good watche, and gaf
 hem leue, & came to the palleys, and there alyghted
 & yede in to hys chambre / And thenne came hys
 daughter, that somewhat had vnderstand of hys mys-
 8 aventure. but whan she perceyued that hys harneys
 was al rede with bloode, and sawe his wounde, she
 feþ doun in a swoune, & lay as she had be deed.
 Thenne commanded the kynge that she shuld be borne
 12 in to her chambre / and so it was doon. After the
 Cyrurgiens came to see the kingis wounde, and was
 leyed on his backe along his beed / and they told hym
 that he was saaf fro pareþ of deth, and that he shuld
 16 not be abasshed. 'By my feyth,' said the kynge, 'I
 wote wel how it is with me / the wylle of god be doo /
 hit may not be kepte so secretly but that it shalbe
 1 knownen thrughe the Cyte.' And thenne byganne þe
 20 sorowe moche grete among the Cytezeyns & peple of
 the Cyte, and more without comparacion than it was
 byfore. But here resteth thystorye of the kynge & of
 the siege / and shal speke of Vryan and of his brother,
 24 and how they exployted afterward. /

In the morning
Urian hears
mass, reviews and
numbers his
men, finding between
nine or ten
thousand in all. He addresses
them.

In this parte, saith thystorye, that on the morow
 erly, that was thursday, was Vryan after hys masse
 herde byfore hys tente / and there he made come,
 28 one aftir other, al the Captayns & chieftayns with
 theire penons & standarts, and theire folke vnder them
 al armed of al pieces, for to behold & vysyte theire
 harneys, yf eny thing wanted / as wel the straungers /
 32 as hys owne folke / and beheld wel the mayntene &
 contenaunce of them. And after this was doo he
 made them to be nombred / and they were founde by
 extymacion about ix. or ten thousaund fyghting men.
 36 Thenne said to them Vryan: 'Lyste, al fayre lordes,

'It is their duty
to maintain the
faith of Christ,
who died for
them.'

even at peril
of life,

though our
enemies are ten
to one against us.

Alone, Christ
fought for our
redemption.

² fol. 81 b.

If you die,
salvation and
Paradise awaits
you.

Soon I will
march;

but if there be
any whose heart
is not steadfast,
let him withdraw,

for one coward
has often spoiled
a great under-
taking.'

we are here assembled for to susteyne the feyth of Jeshu
cryste, of the whiche he vs alle hath regenerated and
saued / as eche of vs knoweth wel ynough how he
suffred cruel deth for the loue of vs, to thende he 4
shuld bye vs ayen fro the peynes of helle. Wherfore
lordis, seen & considered in our hertes that he hath
doon to vs such a grace, we ought not to reffuse the
deth, or such auenture as he shal gyue vs, for to 8
deffende & susteyne the holy sacraments that he hath
admynystred vs for the saluacion of our sowles /
thought that we now haue adoo with strong partye.
For our enmys ben tene ayenst one to the regarde of 12
vs / but what therof we haue good ryght, For they
are come to assayll vs without cause vnto our right
herytage / and also we ought not to resoyngne ne
dylaye therfore. For Jhesu Criste toke alone the warre 16
for our redempcion, And by hys deth alle good folke
that kepen his comman²dements shal be saued. ye
oughte thenne to vnderstand al certaynly, that alle
thoo that shal dye in this quarelle, mayntenynge & 20
enzaunsyng the feyth, shal be saued, & shal haue the
glorye of Paradys / And perfore, fayre lordes, I tell you
in generaH that I haue entencyon, god byfore, to meve
presently for to approche our enmys, and to fyght 24
with them as soone as I may. Wherfore, I praye you
frendly, that yf there be ony man in this place that
feleth not his herte ferme & stedfaste for to withstande
& abyde thauenture, such as it shal playse to god to 28
send vs / that he withdrawe hym self apart fro other,
For by one only Cowarde & feynted herte is sometyme
lefte & loste al a hoole werke. and wete it that, al thoo
that wyl not comme with theire good wyH, as wel of 32
my folke as of other,³ I shaH gyue them money

³ 'Wha will be a traitor-knave?
Wha can fill a coward's grave?
Wha sae base as be a slave?
Let him turn and flee!' (*Scots wha hae.*)

ynougue & syluer for theyre sustenaunce & fyndyng
for to passe ouer the see ayen.' After these wordes he
made hys banere to be dressed a bowe shote fro the
 4 valey, vpon the mounteyne, and ordeyned hys brother
Guyon for to hold & bere it / and after he said, al on
hye, in heryng of hys folke / 'All they that entendē,
& haue deuocion for to auenge the deth of Jeshu
 8 criste, to thenhaunsyng of the holy feyth cristen, Also
to ayde & helpe the kynge of Cypre, lete hym with-
drawe hym self vnder my banere / and they that ben
of contrary wyȝt, lete them passe ouer at the oþer syde
 12 of the bridge.' Thanne whan the noble hertes herde
hym saye thoo wordes. they held it to grete wysedome
of hym, & of grete prowesse & worthynes, & went alle
in a compayne togider vnder his banere, wepyng for
 16 Joye & for pyte of the wordes that Vryan had said /
ne none delayed ne taryed for nothing, but yede all
vnder hys banere, as said is / Thenne was moche
gladde Vryan, and joyous, and anone he made his
 20 trompettes to be blowen vp, and all was troussed¹ &
putte them self on theire way. And thanne the
2maister of Rodes, and the Captayne of Lymasson
putte them self assembled togidre, and rode in fayre
 24 batayȝt, And said wel that ayenst Vryan and his folke
no man shal endure / And thus they rode tyl they
came nygh to the mountayne / and as half way to the
place where the batayȝt had be the day byfore. 'By
 28 my feyth, lordes,' sayd Vryan, 'there nygh that yond
ryuere were good that we went to be there lodged tyl
we were refreshed. And in the meane while we shal
see and aduyse how we shal for the moost surest way
 32 hyndre & adommage our enmyes' / And they ansuerd
that so was good to doo. They went thenne all togider,
to thende they were not founde abrode, & lodged þem
self there. Now leueth here of them thystorye / and
 36 bygynneth to speke of the Sawlan. /

Urian gives
Guion his
banner,

and calls on all
who want to
avenge Christ's
death,

and to help the
King of Cyprus,
to come under it,

and march across
the bridge.

The noble hearts
heard him,
and were glad,
and marched
under his
banner.

The trumpets
are sounded,
and the march
begins;

² fol. 82.

they come to a
mountain,

and halt for
refreshment,
and to hold
council.

¹ Fr. *troussé*.

On the Sultan's spies telling him the state of the city,

and of the socour coming, and of the illness of the king,

he orders an assault.

The townspeople defend themselves by shooting stones, pitch, hot oil, and overturning the enemy's scaling ladders.

The Sultan urges on the assault,

³ fol. 82 b.
and promises the first man that enters the city his weight in silver.

They attack vigorously, and are pelted with logs of wood, burning oil, molten lead, quick lime, sulphur, and brimstone on fire,

and are obliged to retire,

Thy storye sayth that the Saudan had hys espyes within the Cite, whiche aspyed secretly þe Convyne of them of the toune. Wherby he knew that socours & help came to the kyng / and also how 4 the kyng was sore wounded, wherof the peuple was gretly troubled. Thanne had the sawdan cause to do assayH the toune / and he made to blowe trompettes whan þe sonne was vp, and ordeyned his bataylles, and 8 his Crosbowes & pauseys,¹ and came vnto the dyches & barryers. There bygan the scarmusshing outrageously fyers / they shotte with Crosbowes demesurably of one part & of other. There were many paynemes slayn, 12 For they within the toune shotte many gonne,² & cast vpon them fro the batelments of theire walles grete stones, pyche & grece brennyng hoot, and reuersed them fro the ladders vnto the botome of the dyches. 16 Thenne came the Sawdan fourth, cryeng with a high voys, ‘Now, lordes, deffende yourself worthily, & lete vs take toune or ony socours come to our enemyes, For on my god Machomete, he that first shalH entre 20 ³the toune, I shalH gyue hym hys pesaunt or weyght of syluer in suche estate as he entre in to it.’ Who thenne had see them assaylle & cleme vp to the walles, and putte them self in parellous passage, he 24 shuld haue be meruaylled. But they that were vpon the walles within, fourth cast on them ⁴grete logges of wode, brennyng oyle, lede molten / tonnes & barels full of vnquynched lyme, and vesselles full of flaxe 28 grecyd with oyle and mixtyouned with brymstone and sulfer, al ardaunt & brennyng / so that magre them they were fayn to relenquysshe the place, and to remounte at another syde of the wall: and there 32

¹ Fr. pavilliers. ² Fr. gros canons et d'esprin galles.

³ Fr. pierres, pieux agus, huilles chaudes, plong fondu, poisons plains de chaulx rive, tonneaux plains destouppes engressées et ensouffrées tous ardens.

abode many paynemys al brent and sore hurt. And thanne the Sawdan made thassawte to be strengthed with new folke / but they within forth deffended them
 4 ful valyauntly as preu & hardy. Also they were more vgyourous of herte, for that they knew theire socours commyyng, that was nygh. Here I shall leue of þis materc / and shal say how Vryan dide, whiche had
 8 sent hys espyes to knowe how it was of the siege / And they reported to hym how the saudan gaaf grete & contynuel sawtes to the Cite / and that without shortly it were socoured, they were within in grete daunger /
 12 and how the kynge was syke & sore wounded. Whan vryan and Guyon vnderstode these tydynges, they were within them self wel angry and fylled with sorowe / but no grete semblaunt they made of it, to thende
 16 theire folke shuld not be of lesse courage therfore. /

many burnt
and hurt.
The Sultan
renews the
assault, but
the townsfolk,
knowing of the
soccours, fight
vigorously.

Urian's spies tell
of the assault on
Famagosse,
and the sore
need of the
King of Cyprus,

at which he
sorrows, but dis-
sembles his grief.

Cap. XXII. How the Sawdan was slayn byfore Famagoce.¹

² In this parte sayth thy storye, that whan Vryan herde
 20 the tydynges forsaid, he made to sowne his trompettes, and made thoost to be armed, and departed it in foure bataylles; wheroft of the first batayll he hymself was conductour, hys brother lede the seconde, the
 24 maister of Rodes was Chieftayn of the iii^{de}; And the foureth was conduyted & lede by the Captayn of Lymas. And he made to abyde in the valey al the sommage, and mad it to be kept with a houndred men
 28 of armes and fyfty cros bowmen. And after they bygane to mounte the hille, And fro thens they sawe how the paynemes assayld moche strongly the Cite. And thenne Vryan said to his folke / ‘Lordes, that
 32 folke is of grete nombre / but no doubte they be oures /

² fol. 83.

Urian sounds
to arms,
and marches his
host in four
battalions,

leaving the
baggage with a
guard in the
valley.

At the hill they
see the battle,
and the great
number of the
pagans.

¹ Famagusta (named by Augustus after the battle of Actium, Fama Augusta), on the west coast of Cyprus, south of the ancient Salamis, the only harbour in the island.

Urian encourages them to expect victory.

¹ fol. 83 b.

They march forward; the paynims at first take them for friends, but recognizing them, are sore afraid.

Urian's battalion enters the fight; two other battalions march forward between the enemy's watch and the city.

At last all four battalions march together against the enemy.

The Sultan learns that his camp is captured,

and sees the forces marching against him;

becomes angry, sounds for his warriors to retire.

But Urian's battalion falls on them before they have time to do so,

² fol. 84.

and god before they shalbe dyscomfyted by vs / and that right soone. goo we thenne ayenst theire oost / and so fourth without dylayeng to them that sawten the Cite. ¹and I wene with goddis grace that they 4. shal not endure long ayeñst vs.' And they ansuerd, 'that good it was for to doo soo.' Thenne he wold descende the mountayne and haue passed at back syde of the oost; but whan they supposed to haue passed 8 fourth, the Payneimes perceyned that they were not of theire folke / they cryed alarme and were sore afred. Thanne sayd Vryan to the Captayn, that with al his bataill he shuld entre thoost to fight ayenst them that 12 were there. There bygan a mortal medlee, And Vryan and the other two bataylles yede ferther, & putte them self atwix the watche & them that assayld the Cite / and so long they sawted, that alle they that kepte theire 16 lodgis and of þeire watche were slayn and dystroyed, and incontynent al the foure bataylles in fayre ordynance marched fourth toward the other that strongly assayld. But one came to the sawdan, and said to 20 hym how the tentes & pauyllons were take, and alle they that kepte them slayn / 'and they that haue doon þat faytte, ye may see them commyng hitherward, the moost strong and feit folke that euer I sawe ne herde 24 speke of.' The saudan thanne loked abacke, and sawe baners & standarts and hys enmyes commyng in fayre ordynance / and so nygh togider that they semed not in nombre to be as moche by the half as they were. 28 Thenne was the Saudan abasshed and wood angry / and made to sowne hys trompette to withdrawe & assemble his folke togider. But or they were half assembled, Vryan came first with hys batayll / and with a grete 32 courage ran vpon them moche asprely, And þer began thoccsyon & slaughter moche grete / but for certayn the gretest losse tourned on the paynemes, For ²they had no lesor for to putte them self in aray of baytaylle, and 36

were sore wary of thassawte / & none of them were vnder his banere whan Vryan and his folke ranne vpon them, whiche were aspre & harde and ful wel wyſt
 4 the crafte of armes, wherfore many of the paynemes putte them ſelf to flight. But the sawdan, that was ful of grete courage & of grete vasselage, realyed his folke about hym, & delyuered & gaf ryght a grete sawte to
 8 our folke moche proudly. There were many men ſlayn & ſore wounded / and made hym ſelf to be redoubted and dradde, For he held a two handes ax / and smote with at lyfte syde and at the ryght syde that none
 12 myght susteyne hys strokes that were about hym.

But whan Vryan perceyued hym þat ſo ſore demened his folke, he was ful woo, and ſaid in hymſelf, ‘ By my feyth, it is grete pyte & dommage that yonder Tureke
 16 byleueth nat on god, For he is moche preu & valyaunt of his hand ; but for the dommage that I ſee he doeth on my folke, I ne haue cauſe to forbere hym ony more / and also we be not in place where grete & many wordes
 20 may be holden.’ Thenne he braundyſſhed hys ſwerd and with a fyers contenaunce rane vpon the Saudan / And whan he ſaw hym commyng he refuſed hym not, but toke his ax and wende to haue smyten vryan withal
 24 vpon the crosse of the heed / but Vryan eſchewed the stroke ; the ax was penaunt and heuy, and with that vayne stroke it ſcaped fro the Saudans handes. And thanne Vryan ſmote hym vpon the helmet a greto
 28 stroke with all his might / and was the ſawdan ſo ſore charged with that stroke that he was ſo аſtonyed and amased that he neyther ſaw nor herde, and lost the brydel and the steropes, and the hors bare hym where
 32 he wold. And Vryan ¹pursiewed hym nygh, and yet agayn atteyned hym with his trenchaunt ſwerde betwix the heed & the ſhoulders, For his helmet was al vnlaced and his hawtepyeſſe felt of with the forſaid stroke,
 36 wherfore with his ſecond stroke vryan made hys ſwerde

kills many of them, and puts others to flight.

The courageous Sultan rallies his people, and assaults the Christian folk severely.

Urian ſeeing the bravery of the Sultan,

regrets he believes not in God;

but because of the damage he is doing,

rides againſt him,

ſtuns him,

¹ fol. 84 b.

and with a second blow wounds him so that he falls from his horse.

At length the Sultan dies from loss of blood.

Urian, Guion and their followers fight so well

that in a short time they take or slay all their enemies.

After the battle they lodge in the pagans' camp,

where the brethren fairly divide the booty.

² fol. 85.

The Captain of Lymas and thirty knights leave the brethren and go to the city, where they are received gladly,

to entre in the sawdants fleshe, in so moch that he detrenched & cutte the two maister vaynes of his nek, and feſſe doun fro hys hors to the erthe. And there was so grete prees of horses of one parte and of other, 4 that the stoure of batayſſe was there so aspre and so mortaſſe that hys folke might not help hym / and lost so moche of hys blood that he most there deye in grete dystres & sorowe / And soone after that the paynemes 8 knew that the saudan was deed they were affrayed and moche abasshed, and neuer aftir they fought with no good herte. Thanne Vryan and his brother Guyon esprouued themſelf there, & faught so strongly, gyuyng 12 grete & pesaunt strokes, that wonder it was to see. And wete it wel þat bothe Cypryens & Poytevyns dide so valyauntly that in ſhort ſpace of tyme they dystroyed theyre enmyes, whiche were all slain or take. And 16 thenne Vryan & his folke lodged them ſelf in the paynems lodgys / and was the ſommage of the cristen ſent fore / and the gardes and kepers of it, fayne & glad of the vyctory, came & brought it in to thoost and lodged 20 there / And the two brethern made the Butyn or conqueſte to departe & deele ſo egaly after euery man had deseruyd & was worthy, þat none there was but he was ful of Joye & content of it / And here reſteth 24 thystorye of Vryan / and ſhal speke of the capytayne of Lymas,¹ that ſoone came to Famagoce.

In this parte telleth vs thistorye that after þe dyscomfyture of the batayſſe the Captayne ² departed 28 fro the two brethern, with hym xxx knightinges of grete affayre, and came to the Cite, where the yates were opend to hym gladly, and entred and found the folke by the ſtretes, of whiche ſome made grete feaste, for 32 þat they ſaw them delyuered of theire enmyes, and belliſh the heure that euer the children of Lusignen were borne, and the heure also whan they entred the

¹ Fr. *Lymasson* :—Limassol, on S. coast of Cyprus.

land. And some folke made grete sorowe, grete weepinges, soro lawmentyng, and grete bewaylling, for theire kynge þat was wounded to the deth. Wherfore 4 he wyst not what to thinke, For he knew not yet the kyng was hurt. And so moche he exployted that he came to the palleys, and there he alighted, where he found the peuple wel mate¹ / and he demanded of them 8 what they ayled, and yf they wanted of eny thing. ‘By my feyth,’ said one of them, ‘ye / and that ynough; For we lese the moost true & valyaunt man that euer was borne in this royalme.’ ‘How thanne,’ said the 12 Captayn, ‘is the kynge syke?’ ‘Ha / a! sire,’ ansuered to hym a knight, ‘knowe you no more of it? We dide yssue yesterday, and enuahysshed our ennyses / and at retourne of it the sawdan smote our king with a 16 venomous darte, by so that no remedye nys founde thereto / For we supposed euer that these two damoy-seaulx had come to our ayde & help at that day, And wete it that the kingis doughtir demeneth such 20 heuynes & sorowe, that grete pyte it is to see, For almost two dayes are passed that she ete no manere of mete / woo & euylhap shalbe to vs yf we lese both our king & our damoyselle & lady, For yf that happed the 24 land were in grete orphanite of bothe lord & of lady.’ ‘Fayre lordes,’ said the Captayne, ‘aH is not yet lost that lyeth in pareH. Haue lost² in our lord Jhesu Criste, and he shall helpe you. I pray you lede me toward 28 the king.’ ‘By my feyth’ / said ³the knight, ‘that shaH soone be doo, For he lyth in the next chambre, where euery man may goo as he had no harme / He hath alredy made hys testament, & hath ordeyned & 32 bequethed of hys owne good to his seruaunts, so that euery one is content / and he is confessed & hath recyued our lord, and he is admynystred of aH his rightes & sacrem ents.’ ‘By my feyth,’ said the Cap-

but find the folk weeping.

The Captain of
Lymas proceeds
to the palace,

where he learns
that the King has
been mortally
wounded by a
poisoned dart,

and that the
King's daughter
is sore depressed
and will not eat.

The Captain asks
an audience with
the King,

³ fol. 85 b.
who lies in the
next chamber.
It is granted.

1. Fr. *mat.*

2. Fr. *fiance.*

On entering,
the Captain
makes his rever-
ence, and is
welcomed by the
King,

who asks him to
bring Urian and
Guion, as he
desires to reward
them for the help
they have given
him.

The Captain
promises to
bring them,

and the King has
the great street
of the city
decorated.

¹ fol. 86.

The Captain re-
lates his news to
the brethren,

and tells how the
King wishes to
reward them.

Urian protests

tayne, 'he is thanne in good caas / and he hath doon as
a wyse man oughte to doo' / And thenne he entred in
to the Chambre & enclyned hym self byfore the kynge
that leye on his beed, and made to hym the reuerence. 4
'Captayne,' said the kinge, 'ye be right welcome /
and I thanke you of the good diligence that ye haue
doo to haue accompanied these two noble men by
whome my land is out of the subgectioun of the pay- 8
nemes, For I had no more puyssaunce to gourerne my
folke ne my land / I pray you that ye goo & telle
them on my behalf that þey vouchesaaf to come &
see me or I be deed, For grete wylle I haue to make 12
satisfaction to them to my power of the loue & cur-
toysye that they haue shewed to me ; And also I haue
grete desyre to see & speke with them, for certayn caas
whiche I wyl declare vnto them.' 'My lord,' said the 16
Captayne, 'gladly I shall doo your commandement.'
'Now gooth thenne,' said the kynge, '& lete hem be to
morne with me by the houre of pryme.' The kinge
thanne commanded that the grete strete where they 20
shuld passe shuld be hanged richely vnto the paleys,
and dyde doo make grete appareyl ayenst theire
commynge. And here resteth thistory to speke of the
king / and retourneth to saye of the Captayne. 24

Thistorye saith that so fast rode the Captayne that
¹ soone he came to the oost, and alighted at the
tente of the two brethern, that moche humbly receyued
hym. And thenne he recounted to them how the king 28
was sore hurt / and that affectuelly he prayed them
that they vouchesaaf to come toward hym, so that he
might thanke them of the noble socours that they
had doon to hym, and to make satisfaction to them of 32
theyre peyne & dyspens to his power, and also for to
speke with them of other matere. 'By my feyth,' said
Uryan, 'we are not come hither for to take sawdees²

² Fr. *souldoyer pour argent.*

ne for no syluer / but only to susteyne & enhaunse the catholique feyth. And we wol wel þat euery man knowe that we haue hauoyr & syluer ynough for to pay
 4 our folke / but alway we right gladly shaſt goo toward hym. And wete it that I purpose to goo toward the king in suche a state as I departed fro the batayH; For yf he vouchesaaf I wyl receyue of hym the ordre of
 8 knighthode for the valyaunce & honour that euery man sayth of hym. And ye, Captayn, ye may goo and telle hym that to morne at that houre he hath poynted bothe my brother and I and the maister of Rodes, god
 12 before, we shal be toward hym, and a houndred of our moost high barons with vs.' Thenne toke leue the Captayne and came to the Cite, where he was receyued moch honourably / and soone he came to the paleys,
 16 where he fonde the kynge in also good poynte as he lefte hym. And there was his daughter Ermyne, that was ful of sorowe for the euyl of her fader / but that notwithstanding she recomforted her self moche of
 20 this that men said to her, that the two damoyseaulx shuld come there. And wete it that she moche desyred to see Uryan. And thenne the Captayne salued the kyng.
 'Ye be right welcomme,' said the kinge / 'what tydinges
 24 bryng you of youre ¹ message / shal I not see that two gentil damoyseaulx?' 'Sire, ye,' said the Captayne / 'they and houndred more with them / and playse you to knowe that they wil haue no recompense of you /
 28 For as they saye they be not sawdyours for siluer / but þey name them self sawdyours of our lord Jeshu criste. And so moche, sire, hath told me Uryan / that to morne, god before, or it be fullysshе pryme, he shal
 32 come toward you in suche a poynt & state as he came fro the baytaylle; For he wyl receyue thordre of cheualrye and to be dowbed knight of your hand.'
 'By my feyth,' said the kyng, 'I lawde our lord Jeshu-
 36 Criste, whan before my dayes be termyned, it playseth

that his only desire is to support the Catholic faith,
and that he has treasure enough;

he will however go to the King to be knighted.

The Captain returns to the King, who is still alive and pleased to see him,

as is his daughter, when she learns that the brethren are coming to the city

¹ fol. 86 b.

The Captain delivers his message,

for which the King thanks his Saviour.

hym that I make & dowbe knight one so valyaunt & hye prynce / and wete it I shal therfore deye betre at ease.' And whan Ermynre herd of these tydinges she had so grete joye therfore in her herte, that she coulde 4 not holde her coutenance ne manere / but therof she made no grete semblaunt, but shewed to haue grete sorowe woo in her herte. She toke thanne leue of her fader / and sore weping kyssed hym moche swetly / 8 and she went into her chambre / and there she bygan to bewaylle her self sore / one heure for the doulour & woo that she had for her fader / and another heure for the grete joye & desyre that she had of the sight of 12 Vryan, whos taryeng enjoyed her moche / & moche long she was in thoughte so argued and vexed therwith al, that al that night she coude not slepe /

In this parte saith thistory, that on the morne erly 16 the king commanded that al noble and vnnoble shuld make theire houses to be appareylled ¹ & hanged without forth euery one after his power, for to make feste & honour at the commyng of the two brethern and of 20 theyre folke / and that at euery corner of a strete shuld be trompettes and other dyuerse Instruments of musyque making grete melodye / And for certayn the peuple endeuoyred them self wel / ye / more than the kynge had 24 commanded to be doo. What shuld I make long prologue / the two brethern within pryme came mounted moche nobly vpon two grete coursers / and Vryan was al armed, euen so as whan he came fro the batayH, 28 the swerd naked in his fyst. And Guyon, hys brother, had on a gown of fyn clothe of damaske, rychely fourred / and byfore them rode thretty of the moost hye barons in noble aray / and nygh to them was the 32 maister of Rodes and the Captayn of Lymas. And after the two bretheren came & folowed nygh thre score & ten knighthes and theire squyers & pages in her compayne / and in fayre aray they entred in to the 36

Hermine rejoices
at the news,

she kisses her
father,
and retires to her
room, where she
weeps for his
wound,

and also for the
joy of being
about to see the
brethren.

¹ fol. 87.

The King com-
mands the in-
habitants of the
city to decorate
their houses,
and arranges for
music in the
streets.

Before prime
(6 A.M.) the
brethren on two
coursers arrive
with many of
their men.
Urian armed as
he was at the
battle,
and Guion in a
richly furred
damask cloth
gown.

Cyte. There had ye seen the feste begynne moch
grete / and the trompettes & menestrels dooyng¹ theire
crafte / And thrugh the stretes had ye sene folke of
4 grete honour that were moche wel and richely clothed,

The welcome is
great, what with
music,

whiche cryed with a hye voys / ‘ha / a welcomme be ye,
prynce vctoryous, of whom we hold and are al sus-
cited of the cruel seruytude & boundage of thenemyes
8 of our lord Jeshu Cryst.’ There had ye see ladyes &
damoyselles at wyndowes in grete nombre / and thaun-
cyent gentylman & burgeys were merueylded of the
grete fyerste of the noble Vryan, that was al armed,

shouting, decorations,
and the
press of people.

12 the vysage dyscouered / a grene garland on his hed,
an the swerd in his fyst. And the captain bare by-
fore hym hys helmet on a tronchon of a spere. And
whan they perceyued his fyers visage ¹they said be-

The townsfolk
are surprised at
Urian's fierceness,

16 twene them self togidre / ‘that man is able and shappen
for to subdue & putte vndre hym al the world.’ ‘By
my feyth,’ said the other, ‘he sheweth it wel, For he
is entred into this toune lyke as he had conquerd it.’

¹ fol. 87 b.

and say he is
able to subdue
all the world.

20 ‘In name of god,’ said other / ‘the rescue of the daun-
ger of whiche he hath kept vs fro is worth & ynough
for a conqueste.’ ‘Certaynly,’ said other, ‘thaugh his
brother hath not so fyers a face, yet he semeth to be

24 man of wele & of faytte.’ And so talkyng of one thing
& of other they conueyed þem vnto the paleys, where
they alighted. And here resteth thystorye to speke
ony more of the people / and bygynneth to speke how

At length the
brethren arrive
at the palace,
where they
alight.

28 the two brethren came byfore the king /

Cap. XXIII. How Vryan & Guyon came byfore the kinge, he beying in his bed syke.

² **T**historye sayth now that the two breþern moche
32 T honourably came & made the reuerens to the
kinge / and the kinge receyued them joyously / and
thanked them moche gracyously of theire ayde & socours /

² fol. 88.

They make rever-
ence to the King,
who thanks them
for the aid they
have given him,

and says they
have saved his
people from
being either slain
or perverted,

and so he owes
them a great
reward.

Urian replies
that he wants
none,

as he desires only
honour, and that
the Catholic
faith may be
strengthened,
and says he would
consider himself
well repaid if he
and his brother
were dubbed
knights.

The King con-
sents and orders
mass to be said;

¹ fol. 88 b.

this done, Urian
kneels before the
King,

asking as his
reward the hon-
our of knight-
hood for himself
and brother.

and said to them / that after god / they were they by
whom he & al his reaume was suscited fro the moost
cruel passage, & more fel þan eny deth, For yf they
had not be, the paynemys had dystroyed them all / 4
or had constrainyd to be converted to theire fals lawe,
whiche had be to vs wers & heuyer than ony deth corporall. For they that to it had consented with herte,
they had had for euermore dampnacion eternel / 'And 8
therefore,' said the kyng, 'it is rayson that I rewarde
you to my power, For I haue none other wylle than to
endeuoyre me þerto / how be it certayn that I may
not accomplysshe to the regarde of the grete honour 12
that ye haue me shewed / but lowly & humbly I beseeche
you to take in worthe my lytil puyssaunce.'
'By my feyth,' said Vryan, 'of this ye ought not to
doubte / For we be not come hither neyther to haue 16
of you gold nor syluer / ne of your tounes, castels, ne
landes / but only to seke honour and for to dystroye
thenemyes of god, and to exalte the feyth catholical /
and I wil, sire, that ye knowe that we hold our peyne 20
wel employed, yf ye vouchesaaf to doo vs so moche of
honour that ye wyl dowbe my brother & me knighthes
of your hand.' 'By my feyth,' said the king, 'noble
damoyseaulx, in asmoche as I am not worthy to accom- 24
plysshe your requeste, I consent to it / but first shal
the masse be said.' 'Sire,' said Vryan, 'tha me seny whole
doon.' And thanne the chapellayne ¹was soone
redy. And thenne Vryan, llys brother, and al other 28
deuoutly herle the messe & the seruyse deuyne, And
after the deuyne seruyse Vryan came tofore the king.
And thenne he drew the swerde out of the shede &
kneled doun byfore the kyng, where he laye, and sayd 32
to hym in this manere: 'Sire, I requyre you, for alle
the salary of my seruyce that I haue doo or may doo
in tym to come, that ye vouchesaaf to dowbe me
knight with this swerde / and so shal ye haue wel 36

rewarded me of all that ye say that my brother & I
 haue doo for you and for your realme ; For of the hand
 of a more valyaunt knyght and noble lord, I ne may
 4 receyue the ordre of knighthede / than of yours.' 'By
 my feyth,' said the kinge / 'damoyseau, ye shew me
 more honour than ye owe me / and ye say moche more
 of me than euer I deserued. but sene I considered
 8 that grete honour is to me to dowbe you knight, I am
 agreeable therto / but after that I haue accomplysshed
 your requeste, ye shall couuenant with me yf it
 playse you to graunte me a yefte, the whiche shal not
 12 tourne you neyther to preuidice ne dommage, but only
 to your ryght grete prouffyt & honour.' 'By my feyth,'
 said Uryan, 'I am redy therto to accomlysshe your wille
 & playsire.' Thenne had the kynge grete joye, and
 16 dressyng hym to sytte vp, and toke the swerde by the
 pomel that Uryan toke hym, and therwith dowbed hym
 knyght, sayeng, in this manere / 'In the name of god,
 I adoube you & admitt you into thordre of a knyght,
 20 prayeng god to putte from you al euyt.' And þenne
 gaf hym the swerd ayen, and thus makynghis wounde
 opend, and out of it ranne blood thrugh ¹the wraper,
 wherof Vryan was sory & woo, and so were al other
 24 that sawe hym ; but thenne the kyng layed hym self
 ayen along in his bed sodaynly, and said he felt none
 euyt. And after he commanded two knightes that
 they shuld fetche hys doughter / and they dide soo /
 28 and brought her at mandement of her fader. And
 whan the kyng sawe her, he said thus / 'My doughter
 thank & remercye these noble men of thayde and so-
 courre that they haue doon to me & to you bothe, and
 32 also to al our realme, For yf had not be the grace of
 god & theire strengthe & puyssaunce we had be al
 dystroyed, or at leste exilled out of our land / or ellis
 vs to haue be conuertid to theire fals lawe that had be
 36 wers and more importable to vs than to suffre deth

Before knighting
 him the King
 gets Urian to
 promise to give
 him a gift, the
 giving of which
 will not impover-
 ish Urian ;

then in the name
 of God, the King
 dubs Urian
 knight.
 The exertion
 opens the King's
 wound,

¹ fol. 89.

but he is eased
 by laying down;

then he sends for
 Hermine,

and bids her
 thank the
 brethren;

which she does
much humbly,

and is overcome
by her feelings of
sorrow for her
father and love
for Urian.

Urian seeing her
emotion,
raises her,
and bows to her.

The people say
that were Urian
to marry their
lady, they would
have no fear for
the pagans.

¹ fol. 89 b.

The King tells of
his approaching
end,

and seeing his
daughter's grief
tries to console
her,

by promising to
provide for her.

temporaH' / And thenne she kneled byfore the two bretheren & salued them, & thanked moche humbly And wete it that she was in suchē manere commouyd² as she had be rauysshed, and wyst not how to hold 4 contenaunce, what for the woo & sorowe that she had at her herte of thanguysshe that her fader felt / as of the thoughtes that she toke for Uryan, in so moche that she was as a personne that is awaked newly fro 8 her dreme. But thenne vryan, that wel perceyued that she had her spiryte troubled, toke her vp ryght swetely, and enclyned hymself byfore her, makynge³ moche reuerence eche of them to other / and where as they 12 of the countre said / 'yf this noble man had take oure damoyselle to his lady wel it shuld come to passe, For thenne we shuld drede neyther payneme nor man that wold doo vs hurt.' And thenne called the kyng 16 his doughtir, and to her said thus: 'My doughtir, sette you here ¹by me, For I deme that ye shall not long hold me company.' And she thanne wepyng satte herself by hym. And thanne alH they that were there 20 bygan to sorowe & wepe for the pyte they had of the kyng, And also of the sorow that they sawe the virgyne, his daughter, made so pitously.

Thystory telleth vs that the kyng was sorowfuH 24 whan he sawe hys daughter take suchē heuynes, and thenne he said amyably: 'My doughtir, lete be your heuynes and your grete doulour that ye take, I pray you, For that thing that may not be amended it 28 is folye to make therof grete sorowe / notwithstanding it is raison naturel that enyche creature be sorowfuH for hys frend & neyghbour whan that he lesith hym. but, and it playse god, I shal puruey for you 32 so that ye shal hold you content, or I departe fro this mortal world, and so shalt alH the baronye of my realme' / And þenne bygan the mayde to wepe more

Fr. esmeue.

haboundauntly than she diide to fore, And also all the barons demened suche woo & sorowe that it was pyteous for to see / but vryan and guyon were sorowfullest
 4 of al^t. and the kynge perceyuyng^t theire doulour, he said to them : ‘ Fayre doughter, and you, vryan and guyon, this sorowe is not necessary to you, For therewith I preuaylle not nor you neyther in no manere /
 8 but it augmenteth my doulour, wherfore I you comande that ye cesse of this heuynes yf ye loue me,
 and to haue me yet with you here alyue a lytil space
 of tyme.’ And thenne they bygan to cesse theyre
 12 doulour in theire best manere, for the wordes that the
 kyng^t to them said. And ouer that spake the kyng^t
 hym self dressyng to vryan, and thus said : ‘ Sire
 knyght, thankynge be to you, ye cōuenanted with me
 16 a yefte whiche I purpose now to take / and þat shal
 neyther touche your cheuaunce nor honour.’ ‘ By ¹my
 feyth,’ sayd Vryan, ‘ demande what it playse you, For
 yf it be of that thing wheroft I haue power I shal fulfy^H
 20 it voluntarily.’ ‘ Gramercy sire,’ sayd the kyng^t, ‘ wete
 it that by this that I shal demande of you, shal retourne
 to you a noble thing. Now, sire knight, I pray you
 that it may playse you to take my doughter in mary-
 24 age, and al^t my royalme with her / And fro this tyme
 fourth I gyue you full possessyon therof to doo ther-
 with your prouffyt’ / And wel veray & trouth it is that
 he had doo brought there the crowne / and with these
 28 wordes he took it, & said / ‘ hold, Vryan, ne refuse
 not my requeste that I desyre of you.’ Thenne were
 the barons of the land so joyous that teiris fel fro
 theire eyen for pyte & joye that they had therof. And
 32 whan Vryan vnderstode these wordes, he called a lytel
 remembraunce / and wete it wel he was sorowfull &
 dolaunt therof. For he was wyllyng to seke the straunge
 countrees of the world and poursiewe for honour. But
 36 alwayes for as moche as he was accorded with the kyng^t

Hermines sor-
row causes her to
weep more,
and all the
Barons sympathize
with her.

But the King
tells them all

that their sorrow
will not avail,
and that it in-
creases his pain,

and so they
become calm.

The King re-
minds Urian of
the promised gift,

¹ fol. 90.

who says he is
ready to fulfil
his promise.

The King then
asks Uriau to
take his daughter
in marriage,
and his kingdom
in fee.

Urian wishing to
see more of the
world, hesitates.

The Baron asks him if he refuses the gift?

He replies, no;

and takes the crown and puts it in Hermine's lap,

which gladdens the King and Barons.

¹ fol. 90 b.

Hermine says she will see the end of her father's sickness before proceeding farther;

but the King upbraids her as desiring his death,

upon which she kneels at the King's feet, and promises to obey him.

The King bids her leave her sorrow and decorate the hall of the palace,

and prepare a feast,

of the yefte, he wold not gaynsaye it / And whan the barons sawe hym so penseful^H they cryed al with a hye voyce ryght pteously / 'ha / a then, noble man, wilt thou refuse the kinges requeste?' 'By my feyth, lordes & barons,' said Uryan, 'no more shal I doo.' Thenne enclyned Uryan byfore the kyng wher he laye, and toke the croune and putte it in Ermynes lap, sayeng / 'Damoyselle, it is your, and sith it hath fortuned thus 8 with me, I shal you helpe to kepe it my lyf naturel, yf it playse god ayenst al them that wold vsurpe it or putte it in subgection.' Thenne was the kinge joyful and glad, & so were al the barons. And after he dide 12 make come the archebysshop of the Cite that asuryd them togidre. But Ermyne ¹said she wold see first the termynacion of her faders syknes or she shuld procide ony ferther. Thanne said Vryan, 'damoyselle, 16 sith that it playseth you to doo so I am agreeable thereto.' Thenne was the kyng woeful^H & dolauant, and said: 'Fayre daughter Ermyne, ye shew wel þat lytel ye loue me, whan that thinge which I desire moost to see afore 20 myn ende ye ne wyl acomplisshe. Now wel I see that ye desyre my deth.' Whan þe mayde vnderstode hym she was ryght dolauant & sorowfu^H / and wepyng kneeled byfore the king, hir fader, and said in this 24 manere: 'My right redoubted lord & fader / there nys thing in the world that I shuld refuse you vnto myn owne deth / commande you me your playsire.' 'Ye say now,' said the king, 'as a true doughtir ought to 28 say, that is wylling for to kepe her fader from wrathe & fyre. I now thanne commande you that ye leue your sorowe, and lete this halle to be dressid and with ryche clothes hanged, and make the masse to be said / 32 and aftir the deuyne seruise do make the tables to be couered, and after dyner make here byfore me the feste as that I were now on my feet; For wete it wel / that shal helpe & confort me wel.' And thenne they al 36

endeuoyred them self to fulfy^H this that he commanded. Thenne was the masse said, and sate them self at dyner / & Ermyne was sette at a table that was
 4 layed byfore her faders bedd / and Vryan with her,
 And Guyon serued Ermyne of mete. Thanne had the king grete joye, but he made betre semblaunt than his herte was of power, For certayn what chere that he
 8 made he felt grete peyne & grete dolour, For the venom that was within the wounde caused grete putrefyeng & rotyng of his flesshe / but for to rejoye the baronne he made no semblaunt of no sorow ne ¹douleur / and
 12 after dyner bygan the feest, and lasted til nyght came.
 The king thanne called to hym vryan, and said, 'Fayre sone, I wyl ye wedde my daughter to morne, and I wyl delyuere vnto you the Crowne and Ceptre of this
 16 realme, For wete it I may not long be alyue. Wherfore I wil that alle the barons of þis land make theire hommage to you byfore my deth.' 'Sire,' said vryan, 'sith that playseth you / your wylle & myne be one' /
 20 And there was Ermyne present þat refusseth not to fulfylle her faders wy^H.

After mass the company dine,

which pleases the King,

though he is in great pain from his wound.

¹ fol. 91.

The feast over, the King tells Urian that he wishes him to marry Hermine the next day, and to have the Barons make hommage to him.

Cap. XXIV. How Vryan espoused Ermyne, daughter vnto the kinge of Cypre.

24 **O**N the morne next, about the hooure of tierce, was ^{In the morning} the spouse appareylled & rychely arayed, and the chappell nobly hanged with riche cloth of gold, And the Archebysshop of Famagoce espoused them ther. ^{the marriage takes place,}
 28 And after came Vryan before the kyng ²that toke the Crowne, and ther withal crouned vryan, that moche of thankes rendred to the kynge therfore. Thenne called the king to hym al the barons of þe lande / and
 32 commanded them to make theire hommage to kyng Vryan, his sone / and they voluntarily dide soo. And the masse than bygan, and after it was doo they satte ^{2 fol. 91 b.}
 Urian is crowned,
 and the Barons of the land render hommage to him.

A great feast is given,

after which the espoused retire.

Urian and the Barons from Poitou visit the King,

who welcomes them.

The King tells his daughter that he will die more easily,

¹ fol. 92.

having married her to a valiant prince.

Mass is said,

at dyner / and syn bygan the feste right grete, and endured tyl euen / and after souper begane ayen the feste / and whan tyme was the spouse was lede to bed / and anone aftir Vryan layed hym self by her / 4 and the bysshop came & halowed the bed / And so thenne all departed / some went to bed / and some retourned ayen for to daunce. And Vryan laye with his wyf, and her acqueyntaunce toke curtoysly & wel / 8 And on the morne they came ayen tofore the kynge / the masse anoone was bygone. And thither was the queene conueyed & lede of guyon her brother, and by one of the moost highe barons of the lande. 12

In this parte sheweth vs thistorye, that on þe next morne after about the hooure of pryme, kyng vryan accompanied with the baronnye of poitou and of the royalme of Cipre, came byfore the king and enclyned 16 hym self & salued hym right humbly. ‘Fayre sone, ye be welcome,’ said the kyng. ‘I am ful joyous of your commyng / make my doughter to come, so shul we here the deuyne seruyse.’ Thenne came his doughtir 20 Ermyne, wel nobly accompanied of many ladyes & damoyselles / and she come byfore her fader & salued hym full humbly. Thenne said he to her: ‘My wel beloued doughter, ye be welcome. I am right wel joyous 24 whan god hath don to me suche a grace, that I have purveyed you of so hye a prynce & worthy knyght to your lord / and wete it that therfore I shal dey more easely sith that you and al my land is out ¹ of the 28 daunger of the paynemes, and no doubte ye haue to your protection and wraunt a prynce worthy & valyaunt, that right wel shal kepe and defende you ayenst all your euyl willers, and in especial anenst thinfideles & 32 enemys of Ieshuerist.’ And with that worde the Chapelain bygan the masse. And whan the masse was celebred & said, the kyng callid to hym Vryan & Ermyne, & to them said in this manere: ‘My fayre 36

children, ryght affettuously I pray you that ye think
to loue, kepe, and honoure wel eche other / and to hold
& bere good feyth one to other, For nomore I may
4 hold you compayne. Now thanne I recomandye you
to the blysfull kyng of heuen, prayeng hym deuoutely
that he gyue you feas & loue togidre, and honourable
lyf & long.' And with these or semblable wordes he
8 shette hys eyen and departed fro this mortal lyf so
swetly that they supposed that he had be aslepe /
But whan they were certayn of his deth the douleur
& sorowe bygan to be grete. Thenne was Ermynē had
12 in to her Chambre, For she demened such sorowe that
grete pite it was to see. The kynge thenne was buryed
and his obsequyes doon ryally, and in the moost hon-
ourable guyse that coude be deuyed after the vse and
16 custome of the land. And wete it that all the peple
was sorowfull & dolaunt; but they took comfort of
this, that they had founde & recouered a lord ful of so
grete prowesse as Vryan was / and lytel & lytil cessed
20 the lawmenting & heuynes. And soone after yede
Vryan thrugh al his realme to see and visite the places
& fortres / and betoke one part of his folke to Guyon,
his brother / and another part to the maister of Rodes,
24 and made them to be shipped on the see, for to wete &
knowe, for to here & knowe yf they shuld here ony
tydynges that paynemes were on the see for to lande in
his lande. 'For wete it wel,' said the king vryan,
28 'that we purpose ne think not to abyde ¹vnto tym
they fetche vs, For we shal & god before goo & vysyte
them within short tym, after that we haue ouerseen
the rule & gouernaunce of our land.' And forasmoch
32 departed Guyon & the maister of Rodes, & rowed on
the see with thre thousand fyghting men. And here
leueth thistorye of them / and bygynneth to shewe how
Vryan & Ermynē went and vysited theire land.

the dying King
gives his blessing
to his children,

and then departs
this mortal life
in peace.

Great sorrow is
felt by all,
especially by
Hermine.

The King is
buried,

and the people
seeing the
bravery of their
new lord, cease
their lamenting.

Urian visits the
towns of his
realm,

and sends some
of his men
to learn tidings
of the pagans.

¹ fol. 92 b.

Urian and his wife are well received in their land,

and his subjects marvel at his strength.

He reappoints honest officers,

and commands Justice to be well kept.

Afterwards the King and Queen return to Famagoce.

¹ fol. 93.
Guion and the Master of Rhodes searching on the sea for the pagans,

Thy story saith that king Vryan, with Ermynē hys wif, yede & vysited theire land al about, and ful glady & honourably they were receyued in euery burghe, toune, & Cite where they passed / and grete 4 yeftes were presented to them / And wete it that Vryan purueyed ryght wel to al hys fortres, of al suche thinges that were necessary for the werre yf some thing befel in tyme to come. And for trouth euery 8 one was meruaylled of his heyght, of his fyersnes, & of his puyssance & strengthe of body. And wel said the men of the Countree, that ferdful & daungerous thing was to cause his wrath & anger. And thus went 12 Vrian fro place to place thrughe his royalme. And suche officers that made rayson & kept justice, he lefte them in their offices stil / but to al oþer that oþerwyse dide than right requyreh, he purueyed of remede by 16 good & meure deliberacion of his conseil. And com-manded euery one to make raison & Justice in al tymes, as wel to the leste as to the moost, without to bere eny fauour to ony of eyther partye / and yf they contrary 20 did to this hys wyll, he shuld punyssh them so cruelly that al other shuld take ensample therby. And thene he, his lady, & his folke retourned to Famagoce / and the quene was grete with child / And now resteth 24 thystorye of them, and speketh of Guyon and of the maister of Rodes, that rowed on the see by the Costes of Surye, of Damask, of Baruth, of Tupple, & of Danette, for to knowe yf paynemes were on the see 28 or not.

Now saith thistorye, that so long sailed & rowed the Crystens on the see, that they sawe aprouch as of a leghe nygh to them a certayn quantite of shippes, 32 but by liklyhode they might not be grete nombre. Thenne they sent a Galleye toward our folke that al redy were in ordynaunce to wete what they were / but the galeye came so nygh that the cristens, our folke, 36

toke it / and by them knew and vnderstode almaner of tydynges. Oure folke thanne halid vp saylles hastily, and saylled anone toward theiro enmys. And whan the 4 paynemes perceyued them they were moch abasshed, and gretly aferd, and wend wel to haue withdraw them self in to the hauen of Baruth / but our galeyes aduaunced them, and ran vpon them by al sydes. There 8 was grete occyssion / and shortly to say the paynemes were dyscomfyted, and their nauye take / and al were cast ouerbord or slayne. And the nauye was full of grete goodes. And after our barons putte them self in 12 the see ayen for to haue retourned in to Cypre. but by fortune & strengthe of wyndes they were cast to Cruly¹ in Armanye. And whan the king of Armanye, that was brother vnto the kinge of Cipre, knewe theire 16 commyng, he sent anone for to wete what folke they were / And the master of Rodes said to them that came to wete what they wer: 'Telle the kyng that it is the brother of Vryan of Lusynen, kyng of Cypre, 20 that hath trauersed the see for to wete & knowe yf paynemes were on it in armes, for to haue come vpon the Cypryens for cause of the saudan that hath be dycomfyted & slayn, and al his folke at the grete batayH 24 of Famagoce.' 'How,' said they of Armanye, 'is there ony other kyng in Cypre than our kingis brother?' 'By my feyth,' said the maister of Rodes, 'ye / For the king ²was wounded with a dart enuenymed by the 28 sawdans hand in so mortal a wyse that he is deed therof, and he beying yet alyue, he gaf his doughtir in maryage to Vrian of Lusynen, that slew the saudan & dyscomfyted al his folk.' Whan they thanne vnder- 32 stode hym, they yede & denounced it to theire kyng, which was sorowfull of the deth of his brother. but not withstandyng, he came toward the see syde with a grete company, and entred in to the vessell where

take a galley and learn the pagans' whereabouts.

They set out for the fight, and gain a victory,

and set sail for Cyprus;

but are driven by wind to Cruly in Armenia.

The King of the land sends to know who they are,

and is sent word that it is the brother of the King of Cyprus.

The King of Armenia asks if there is a new King in Cyprus,

* fol. 93 b.

and the Master of Rhodes relates how Urian became King there.

¹ *Truli* in Fr. ed. Afterwards spelt *Cruli*.

The King of Armenia visits
the fleet of Guion,

and invites him
to his palace,

which courtesy
is accepted.

The King of Armenia is a
widower, whose
heir is Flory.

¹ fol. 94.

This lady was
joyful at the
visit of the
strangers,
and dressed her
self and maids
richly to receive
them.

Guyon and the maister of Rodes were in. And whan guyon wzyst of his commyng he went ayenst hym, and eche to oþer made grete reuerence. Thenne said the king to the grete Pryour of Rodes, ‘Maister, sethen 4 this yong damoyseau is brother vnto my nyghtis lord, I were vncurteys whan he is arryued in my land, yf I receyued hym not honourably as to hym apparteyneth. And of this I pray you, that ye vouchesaf to pray hym 8 on my behalf, that it playse hym to come in to our paleys, and we shal doo to hym the best chere that we can.’ ‘By my feyth,’ said the grete Pryour / ‘that shal I doo gladly.’ Thanne he spak therof to guyon, 12 whiche ansuerd to hym right gladly, ‘I wold doo a greter thinge yf it lay in my power for the kyngis sake. For good feyth & rayson requyreth it.’ And thenne they went togider / and guyon lede with hym a fayre 16 compayne of knightinges / but alwayes they had theire cotes of stede on þem, and were in right good aray, as folke vsed to the faytte of armes. And here speke I no more of þem, And shal speke of Florye the 20 doughter of the kyng of Armany. /

Thistorye sayth that the kyng of Armanye had a doughter, and none other children / but here. ¹ And the quene, his wyf, was deed / and wete it þat 24 this kyng and the kyng of Cypre had to theire spouses the two susters that were doughters to the kyng of Malegres / and eche of them gate a doughtir on their wyues / of the whiche Ermyne that Vryan spoused 28 was one / and that other was the pucelle florye of whome I haue bygonne to traytte. She was that tyme at Cruly ryght glad & joyous of the commyng of the straungers. She apparcyllled and arrayed her self 32 moche richely, and so dide alþ her damoyselles. Soone after came the kyng her fader / guyon / the maister of Rodes, & theire felawship, and entred in to the toune, and came to the palleys in to the grete halle. 36

And thenne Florye, that moch desyred theire com-
myng, came there, and humbled herself moche ayenst
her fader / and the kyng said to her, ‘Cherysshe and
4 doth feste to this noble men, & receyue them honour-
ably / and in especiall the brother of my nyghtis lord &
husband.’ And whan the mayde vnderstode that, she
was ful glad & joyous. She thenne came to guyon /
8 toke hym by the hand swetly, & sayd: ‘Sire damoy-
seau, ye be right welcome in to my faders royalme.’
‘Damoyselle,’ sayd Guyon, ‘gramerey to you.’ There /
bygan thenne the feest right grete & fayre / and wel
12 they were festyed, & seruyd with dyuerse meetes &
wynes / and betwix guyon & Florye were many honeste
& graeyous talkyng. and wete it for certayn yf guyon
had had leyser, he had dyscouered his thoughte to
16 her. but while they were in that grete solace & joye, a
galeye arryued to the port that came fro Rodes / and
they that were within were receyued honourably of
them of the toun / and joyful & right glad they were
20 whan they knew that theire maister was there. Wher-
fore one of them said to the people there, ‘Sires,
vouchesauf to lede one of vs there ¹the lordes befor,
to aduertysse them of paynemes that ben vpon the see
24 in grete nombre.’ Thanne was a knight brought there
the maister of Rodes was / and said to hym, that
paynemes with grete nauye were passed byfore the yle
of Rodes / and had taken the wind & waye toward
28 Cypre / and how men said that the Calyphē of Bandas
with al hys puissaunce & power was there. Whan
the maister of Rodes vnderstode these tydynges, he
went & told Guyon of it. Wherfore, guyon seeyng
32 hym self as constrainyd, humbly said to the pucelle,
‘Damoyselle, right hertily I beseche you that ye
vouchesaf, sethen I moste departe your presens, to call
me ofte in your remembraunce / For as to my part,
36 your vassall & seruaunt shal I euer be vnder the

She takes Guion
by the hand,
and welcomes
him to the land.

A fair feast is
served,

and Guion and
Flory have much
gracious speech
together.

News comes from
Rhodes

¹ fol. 94 b.

that the pagans
are at sea,

with a great navy
sailing towards
Cyprus.

Guion, on learn-
ing this, bids
Flory farewell,

and asks her not
to forget him.

The sudden parting makes her sad.

Guion sets sail,

watched by Flory from a high tower.

The Caliph of Bandas and the King of Brandy-mount

resolve to avenge the slaughter of the Sultan.

¹ fol. 95.

Thinking there was no King in Cyprus, they sail there,

but are seen, and Urien is warned, and prepares to receive them.

standart of your gouernance.' Florye thanne knowyng for certayn his soudayn departyng, her herte was fylled with dueyl & sorowe / how wel she kept contenaunce in the best manere that she coude / and louyngly be held guyon, whiche toke his leue of her fader, that conueyed hym to the see side, and grete peple with hym. There thenne entred guyon in to his ship, and commanded the sailles shuld be had vp to the wynde, 8 that was good & propyce to them. And wete that Florye was mounted vp vnto the vppermost wyndowe of an hye tour, and neuer departed thens tyl she lost the sight of guyons vessel, prayeng god to preserue 12 hym from al daunger. /

Thystorye recounteth & saith here that the Caliphe of Bandas, and the kinge of Brandy-mount in tharse, that was uncle to the saudan of Damaske, herde 16 tydynges how the sawdan was slayn, and al his folke putte to grete dyscomfytur in the yle of Cypre. Wherfore they beyng full sory therof assembled anone theirie power / and purposyng to auenge his deth entred theirie 20 shippes, and toke theirie way toward Cypre / and ¹they supposyng the Cypryens had be without king, hyed them fast thitherward in suche manere that they shuld not be perceyued where as they shuld arryue. but þey 24 of Rodes perceyued them, and made knowleche þeroft vnto kyng Vryan, that alredy had assembled his peple, and putte them in aray for to receyue the batayll. and morouer had made good ordonnaunce and gardes for the 28 portes, that assoone as they shuld perceyue them commyng to the hauen, that they shuld make a token of fyre, wherby the Countrey might perceyue the commyng of theirie enmyes, and euery man to be redy in armes 32 thitherward / and so was the kingis proclamaciōn vpon deth. And wete it that the king kept the feldes in the myddes of the portes of his royalme for to be the sooner at the porte where the sarrasyns shuld 36

arryue to take theire landing / And the king made so
grete moustre & semblaunt that he gaf his peple so
grete courage, that with hym & his enterpryse they
4 durst wel fight with the Caliphe, and with his puys-
saunce. It happned so, by the grace of god, that the
see was enragid thrugh the stormes and horrable
tempeste, that the sarrasyns were al dysmayed &
8 abasshed / and the tempeste casted them in suche wyse
here & there, that within short tyme they ne wanst
where eyghte of theire galeyes were become. And on
the morowe about the hooure of pryme, thayer was al
12 clere, and the wynd cessed, and the sonne shone fayre
& clere / thenne the grete shippes of the paynemes
held them togidre, & toke theire way vnto the port
of Lymasson. And of them I leue to speke / and shal
16 shew you of the viii vessels that were sparpylled by
the tempeste, and what way they held / and in thoo
vessels was all thartyllery of the paynemes, as gonne,
bowes, arowes / ladders / pauseys, & such habylements
20 of were ¹as they had / and so it fortuned that guyon
and the maister of Rodes with theire puyssauice re-
countred them, and perceyued eche other. but whan
oure peple knewe that they were sarasyns / and the
24 sarasyns knewe that they were crysten peuple / they
bygane eche of them to lye and bord^t other with
shotte of gonne & crosbowes / and whan they were
chayned togidre they threw darts as thikk as hayle
28 stones / and the batayll was so grete, hard, & stronge /
but guyon, the maister of Rodes, & theire puyssauice
assaylled so manfully the paynemes that they knew
not to what part they shuld tourne them to defende,
32 For our peple that were in the galeyes faught so
mightyly that the paynemes were as dycomfyted. There
might men here them crye on theire goddes / nat that
withstanding they were dyscomfyte & slayne. And
36 thanne whan theire admiral^t, that was maister of the

A storm causes
great damage to
the Saracen
fleet;

but on the mor-
row they sail
to the port of
Lymasson.

Eight galleyes full
of stores, belong-
ing to the Sarac-
ens, sparpylled
by the tempest,

¹ fol. 95 b.

were met by the
Master of
Rhodes,

who attacked
them, and fought
so well as to
defeat the pagan
sailors.

The admiral
seeing he is
defeated,

leaves the fleet
in a boat accom-
panied with eight
persons.

The Christians
enter the ene-
my's vessels,
and throw over-
board or take
prisoners the
Saracens.

The spoils are
divided,

Guion sending
his share to Flory,

¹ fol. 96.

and to her father
the King of
Armenia.

The King wel-
comes Guion's
knight, who con-
veys the present,
and Flory is very
joyful, for she
loves Guion
much.

The King of
Armenia learns
from his Saracen
prisoners that
their comrades
have gone to
Cyprus,

artylery, sawe the dycomfiture tourned vpon them /. he made to be haused a lytel galyote out of the grete galeye with viii hores / and so entred he and eyghte personnes with hym of the secretest / and toke thanen- 4 ture of the wynd / & rowed so mighty that our peuple meruaylled þerof / but they made neuer semblaunce to pursiew them / but entred into the paynemes vessels, & bygan to cast alle ouerbord. but they toke to the 8 nombre of ij C sarasyns prysionners / wherof guyon gaf oo hondred to the maister of Rodes to make them cristen, and also two galeyes / and guyon toke the other hondred sarasyns and two of the moost richest 12 vessels that they had wonne, and toke it to a knyght of Rodes / and thus said to hym, 'Conduyte me this two galeys, and þis houndred sarrasyns to Cruly, and recommand me to the kinge & his doughtir / and on 16 my byhalue ¹presente to the pucelle Florye this two vessels as they are garnysshed / and to the kyng the houndred sarasyns.' Wherof the knyght toke the charge & departed, & hasted hym tyl he came to the 20 Cite of Cruly / and dide his message as he was youen in commandement / and recounted to them the grete dyscomfyture and the valyaunt conduyte of guyon. 'By my feyth,' said the kynge, 'ye be welcome, and 24 thanking be to that noble damoyseau' / And the pucelle was so joyous of these nouuelles that she had neuer in her naturel lyf so grete joye. For knowe ye wel she loued so entierly guyon þat all her joye was of hym. 28 The king thanne & his daughter yaf to the knight a riche jewel, wherof he thanked þem, and toke leue of them, & retourned hastily to Rodes. And anone, after hys departyng, the kyng of Armenye questyoned with 32 the paynemes where the armee of the Calyphe was / and they said in Cipre to reuenge the deth of the sawdan of Damaske that the Cipryens had slayn in batayll. 'Par ma foy,' sayd the kyng, 'as for you, ye 36

haue faylded of your enterpryse' / And thenne he com-
manded that they shuld be feteryd with yrons, and to
be putte in to parfounde pryon / and the two vessels
4 to be descharged, and al the goodes that were in to be
borne into the Castel. It is now tyme that I speke as does Guyon.
of guyon and of the maister of Rodes, that had ques-
tyoned the sarasyns wher the Calyphe purposed to
8 land / and they said in Cypre. Guyon thenne by
thauys and Counsey^H of his barons for cause they had
many vessels & lytel nombre of people / commanded
that al thartylery that they had wonne shuld be putte
12 into their shippes / and also al other thinges that were
of nede to them / and the remanaunt & the vessels also /
¹ he gaf to the maister of Rodes that sent them to Rodes.
And whan this was don they sayld, & hasted þem
16 toward Cypre. And here leueth thy story to spek of
them / and retourneth to speke of the galyote where
thadmyral was in, where it became or toke porte. /.

Thy story sayth that the kyng brandymount & the
20 Calyphe of Bandas were sorowfull for þeir losse
& grete dommage / and so longe rowed thadmyral on
the see that he perceyued the port of Lymasson, &
sawe grete nauye byfore the toune. And whan he came
24 somewhat nygl̄ he herd shotte of gonne^s & sowne of
trompettes, and soone after he knew that it was þe
Calyphe of Bandas and his armee, & the puissaunce of
kyng brandymount of tharse,² that assayldled them of
28 the toune for to take it. But there was the Captayne
of the place & his peple³ wel pauyed, that valyauntly
defended the porte in so moche that the sarasyns
gat there nought / but lost many of their men, and
32 wysshed ofte aftir their galeyes with theiro gonne^s &
artyllery that were sprad on the see by the tempeste /
they wanst not where. Thenne came to them thadmyral
that thus said on hye: 'By my feyth, Calyphe, woo

Gulon ships the
spoils of the
victory,

¹ fol. 96 b.

and sets sail for
Cyprus.

The boat contain-
ing the admiral
and eight men is
rowed to Lyma-
son,

where the sound
of battle is heard.

The Captain of
Lymasson de-
fends his port
well, and the
Saracens wish for
their artillery
from the eight
vessels,
which they think
are still at sea.

² Fr. Tarche.

³ Fr. w. p]atout bons parars.

The admiral announces to the Caliph the defeat and loss of his vessels.

He is grieved,

and says that Fortune sleeps for them, but favours the Christians.

¹ fol. 97.

The admiral advises the Caliph not to show his grief for the reverse, else his army will lose courage;

and that he should withdraw to the port of St. Andrew,

where it will be easier to land.

The Caliph gives up the attack, and sets sail for St. Andrew, followed by a rampin from Lymasson, sent to learn the movements of the Saracens.

may be to you, For your nauye that I conduyted is lost & take, For the Cristen recounted vs vpon the see, and haue dyscomfyted vs / and none is scaped but only we that are here / and at oo word^{al} is lost / for to hold 4 you long compte therof that shuld preuayll you nought.' Thenne whan the Calyph vnderstode hym he was sorowfull & dolaunt. 'By my feyth,' said he / 'lordis, here ben heuy tydinges. For wel I see that Fortune slepeth 8 as to our help / and so hath he doo long / but fauourable & moche propice it is as now to crysten peple, For wel it appereth presently by vs / and so dide but of 12 late by our Cousyn the saudan, the which & al hys peuple also haue be slain or dyscomfyte in the same yle of Cypre.' Thenne said the admyral to hym : 'Sire, yf ye anounce or shew semblaunce of abasshement before your folke that shal cause them to be half dyscomfyte / and ouermore knowe ye to this that I perceyue of them of this porte & toune, that they be not shappen to lete you arryue & entre theire land without sore fyghting and grete sawtes gyuyng. For they shew not 20 to be afred of your puyssance. therfore I wold aduyse & counsey^H you, that we sha^Ht withdraw vs into the hye see, & lete coule them self / and about the spryng of the day we shalbe at a lytel porte that not ferre is 24 hens called the port of saynt Andrew / and there without ony deffense or gaynsayeng we may take land.' And this they dide. And whan the Captayn of Lymasson sawe hys enmyes departe, he made a rampyn or 28 smal galeye to folow them of ferre, þat it coude not be perceyued of them / and aspyed how at euen they ancredu aboute a myle nygh to saynt Andrews porte. Thanne retourned the rampyn hastily toward Lymasson / and to the captayne recounted al that he had seen / Thenne made the captayn fyre to be putte high vpon the garde for manere of token / and whan they of the nerest garde or watching place sawe the token of 36

fyre / soone after fyre was made fro garde to garde,
that knowleche was therof thrugh al the royalme.
Thenne euery man, what on foot & on horsbake, drew
4 them self to the place where kyng Vryan was, that al
redy had sent hys espyes to knowe wher the paynimes
shuld land, and manded to euery captayne they shuld
kepe & defend wel theire fortresses / ‘For,’ said he,
8 ‘yf it playse god none of them shal not repasse the see.

The alarm is given throughout Cyprus,

And here resteth the ¹hystorye to speke of kyng
Vryan / and bygynneth to speke of the Caliphe. /

¹ fol. 97 b.

12 **I**n this partie sheweth thistorye / that the sarasyns
that were entred in to the see / as soone as þey
appereyued the day spryng, they deceueryd, & toke
vp theire ancles, and came al in oo flotte to the porte,
& there landed. And wete it wel, that they of thabbey

The Saracens at daybreak weigh their anchors and land their men and artillery at St. Andrew.

16 of saynt andrew perceyued them wel, the whiche im-
mediately made knowleche to Lymasson / and the Cap-
tayne of þe place gaf vnto the kyng^t knowlech^t ther-
of / the which had grete joye therof / and fourthwith

Word is at once sent to Urien of their landing;

20 bygan to apparay^H hym to go to batay^H. And the
Calyphe, hys enemy, made to be putte a land his
artillery out of the shippes / and dide make hys lodgis
therby, as it were half a leghe fro the port, vpon a

24 grete ryuere at a cornere of a lytel wode, to refresshe
hym & his peple also ; and lefte foure thousand men
within the shippes, for theire sauergarde / and in the
meane saison guyon / the maister of Rodes, & theire

28 peopple arryued to Lymasson / where men said to them
how the sarasyns had landed / and how theire nauye
was a leghe fro saynt Andrewes porte. ‘By my feyth,’
sayd Guyon, ‘we shal thanne goo & vysyte them / For

and Guyon learns that their navy is unprotected,

32 who that might take them fro the sarasyns, none of
them shuld neuer retourne foot, in sury nor in tharsy’ /
and in these wordes sayeng, they putte them in to the
see, & went lightly sayllyng^t, that they came so nygh

so sets out to capture the Saracen fleet,

36 the panemes that they sawe the porte of saynt Andrew,

and the grete nombre of shippes that were there. Thenne they putte themself in aray and in good ordynance / and this done, they rane vpon theire enemys as thondre & tempeste, smytyng vpon the shippes of 4 the sarasyns byforce of shotte so horrably, that yl bestade were the sarasyns, that wel happy was he ¹that myght recouere the land. And by that meane were the shippes take / and al the sarasyns that were take 8 were putte to deth. Thanne guyon sent to the abbey foyson of them that he had wonne of the sarasyns / and brought to Lymasson with them as many galeyes & shippes as there were laden with the goodes of the 12 sarasyns, except suche as they brent. And þe other that escaped, came to thoost of theire lord, cryeng with a lyte voys alarme / and recounted & said how the Cristen had by force & strengthe discomfited them. 16

Thenne was the oost gretly mevyd, & came to the port who best coude, and fonde many of theire people ded, and som were hyd in the busshes. And whan the Calyphe perceyued & sawe this grete dommage, he was 20 moche dolaunt. ‘By machomete,’ said he to kyng Brandymount, ‘these Cristen that are come hither fro Fraunce, ben ouermuche hardy & appert men in armes, and yf they soiourne longe here it shal be to our grete 24 dommage’ / ‘By machomet,’ said the kyng Brandymount, ‘I shal never departe fro this land vnto tyme I be al dyscomfyted, or þat I hane put them to flignt, & brought to an euyl end.’ ‘No more shal I doo,’ ansuerd 28 Caliphe. Thenne þey recouered there six of their galeyes, & eschiewed þem fro the fyre, and lefte in it good wardes for to kepe them ; and after they retourned to theire peple. And here cesseth thystorye of them / 32 and retourneth to speke of Vryan /

Now sheweth thystorye how the kyng Vryan was lodged in a fayre medow vpon a ryuere, in that self place where the sourragers of the sawdan were 36

¹ fol. 98.

and succeeds,

taking many prisoners.

Fugitives arrive at the Caliph's camp with news of the defeat,

which makes him doleful.

He says that if the French knights stay they will do much harm.

King Brandy-mount swears he will remain to be either victor or conqueror.

The Saracens save six gallies from the fire.

dyscomfyted at the brydge, as before is said. And had sent his espyes to haue knowlege where his enemyes had take theyre lodgys / And thenne came ¹ the
 4 maister of Rodes, whiche alighted byfore the kinges pauyllon, whom he made reuerence moche honourably.
 And the king, that was moche joyous of his commyng,
 receyued hym benyngly, and demanded of hym how
 8 guyon his brother dyde. ‘By my feyth, sire,’ said the maister of Rodes, ‘wel / as the moost assurest man that euer I knew. Sire, he recommandeth hym to you as affectually as he may.’ ‘Nowe telle me,’ said the king,
 12 ‘how ye haue doo syn that ye departed from vs?’ And the maister recounted hym fro braunche to braunche all thauentures that had happed to them. ‘By my feyth,’ said the kyng, ‘ye haue worthyly vyaged; I
 16 thanke & lawde my Creatour therof / and as for myn vncle, þe kynge of Armanye, I am moche glad that ye lefte hym in good prosperyte. but we most haue aduys of our Counsey^H, to see how we may dystroye
 20 the Sarasyns / and as touching me & my peple, I am redy to departe for to approuche to them, For to long they haue soiourned in our land without to haue assayed vs. goo thanne toward my brother, and telle hym that
 24 I departe for to goo ayenst the paynemes.’ The maister thaune toke leue of king Vryan, and hastly retourned to Lymasson / and immedyatly the king & his people marched fourth, tyl they came & lodged them a leghe
 28 nygh to the Calyphes oost, vnknowyng the paynemes of it. And the maister of Rodes came to guyon, and told hym how the kyng was departed for to recountre & fyght with the sarasyns; wherfore guyon commanded
 32 his trompettes to blow, and departed fro Lymasson in fayre aray; & came vnto a ryuere, and lodged hym therby, vpon the which ryuere were the paynemes lodged, & no distaunce or space was betwene them
 36 & their enemyes, but a ²high mountayne. And now

Urian sends spies to find his enemies' camp.

¹ fol. 98 b.

The Master of Rhodes visits the King,

and tells him of Guion's bravery, and brings Guion's regards;

and also tells of their adventures.

Urian says he may have the advice of his council how best to overcome the Saracens,

and sends back the Master to Guion.

King Urian marches his people within a league of the Saracen host.

The master of Rhodes gives Guion the King's message,

and then Guion also marches his men near the Saracens.

² fol. 99.

resteth thistorye of hym, and retourneth to speke of Vryan his brother.

Thy storye sayth that kyng Vryan desired moch to knowe where the sarasyns were lodged / also to haue true knowlege of their conuyne; wherfore he called to hym a knyght, that knew wel al the Countrey, and said to hym: ‘putte on your harneys, and take the surest hors that ye haue, and come alone here byfore my pauyllon: and telle nobody of it / & ye shal come with me there as I shal lede you’ / and anone the knight dide his commandement / and wel horsed & armed retourned to hym byfore hys tente, wher he fonde king vryan redy on horsbak, the which said to some of his barons, ‘Sires, meue not your self fro this place tyl ye haue tydinges of me / but yf I cam not hither ayen / loke ye doo that I shal lete you wete by this knyght.’ And they ansuerd that so shuld they doo / ‘but take good hede,’ sayd they agayn, ‘where ye goo’ / ‘be not in doubte therfore,’ said vryan to them / And thenne they departed; and Vryan said to the knight, ‘conduyte me now the surest waye that ye can, tyl that I may see the porte where the sarasyns landed.’ And the knyght lede hym vnto the hylle ryght high, & said: ‘Sire, yonder is the porte that ye desire to see.’ ‘And how,’ said the kyng, ‘it hath be said to me that theirre nauye was al brent, and yet I see yonder some grete vessels? Fro whens myght they be come now?’ / and thenne behild the king / at the synester syde in to the founs¹ of the valey, and sawe his brothers oost, that was lodged vpon the ryuere / and at the ryght syde of the hille he sawe þe Caliphes oost, that were in grete nombre. ‘By my feyth,’ said the kyng, ‘yonder is grete multitude of peple payneme / them I knowe wel ynough; but þey ²of this other syde I knowe not what they be. abyde me

Urian and a knight

prepare to reconnoitre.

Urian tells the barons that they are to obey the orders of the knight, who is with him, until his own return.

The knight leads the King to a high hill,

where he sees some vessels,

his brother's and the Saracen host.

² fol. 99 b.

He does not recognize his brother's army,

¹ Fr. *font.*

here, and I shall goo wete what folke they be, yf I may.' The kyng thanne rode tyl he came nygh his broþers oost, and founde a knight on his way, which he knew wel; and anoon called hym by hys name, and demaunded of hym yf his brother guyon was there /.

and so rides to it.

Whan the knight vnderstode hys wordes, he beheld & knew hym, and soone kneeled byfore hym, sayeng in this manere : ' My liege & souerayn lord, your brother guyon is yonder with al hys peopple, and the maister of Rodes also.' Thenne commanded hym the kyng that he shuld goo to Guyon hys brother, and

On the way he meets a knight he knows well.

12 telle hym that he shuld come & speke with hym vpon the said mountayne. And the knight went & tolde these tydinges to guyon; wherfor he, and the maister of Rodes with hym, mounted on horsbak / toke

The knight kneels to him, and tells him to whom the host belongs.

16 the way to the mountayneward, wher as Vryan retourned to his knyght, whome he said : ' Frend, wel it is with vs, For that is my brother guyon which is lodged yonder.' Thenne came þer guyon & the maister of

King Urien sends for Guion,

20 Rodes where the two bretheren made moche, eche of oþer. The kinge after shewed to them thoost of theire enemyes / and whan they sawe it / they said / ' we wyst not them so nygh to vs.' ' Now,' said vryan,

who, accom-
panied with the
Master of Rhôdes,
comes to the
King.

24 'they may not escape vs, yf it be not by the meanes of yonder galeyes,' wherof guyon was abasshed / ' For,' said he / ' these deuels haue brought moo vessels, For within these foure dayes last passed we toke & brent

Urien says that now the Saracens cannot escape, except by the vessels.

28 al theyre nauye.' ' Thenne,' said the maister of Rodes, ' I suppose wel what that is / happily some of them were not fonde, which haue eschewed that few shippes fro the fyre.' ' By my feyth,' said the kyng, ' thus it

Guion is abashed at the Saracens having vessels, as he believed he had burnt or captured them all, but the Master says, these are some saved from the fire.

32 may wel be / but þerto ¹We most puruey of gardes, For therby shuld mowe escape the chief lordes of theire oost, that happily might adommage vs in time to come.' ' How, sire,' said the maister of Rodes, ' it

¹ fol. 100.
The King orders guards to be ready to prevent any one embarking,

36 semeth that ye haue dycomfyted them al redy, and

that it ne resteth more but to kepe the Calyphe and brandymount, that they scape not at þat porte.' 'Cer-
tainly,' ansuerd the kynge, 'yf they be nomore than I
see, we nede not so grete peple as god haþ leued vs.' 4

and sends his
knight with
orders to his men
to march to the
foot of the moun-
tain.

The kinge thenne commanded his knight, þat he shuld
goo to hys oost and make them to be putte in aray,
and that he shuld conduyte them vnto þe foot of the
said mountayne. The knight departed, & dide as it 8
was youen to hym in commandement / and al thoost
obeyed hym, and came in fayre aray & good ordyn-
naunce vnto the hille. Also guyon went and made
hys peple to be armed, and brought þem at the other 12
syde of the ruyere, so nygh the paynemes oost that he
might wel perceyue theire manyere & contenaunce.

Guion marches
his men near the
pagans.

The Master of
Rhodes is ordered
to prevent the
Saracens with-
drawing to their
ships.

And the kyng commandeda the maister of Rodes, that
he with all hys peopple shuld entre in to þe see / and 16
that they shuld trauersse, rowyng nygh the porte, to
thende yf the sarasyns shuld putte & withdraw them
self into theire shippes, that they might not escape /
'And I goo,' sayd vryan, 'putte my peple in aray, for to 20
gyue batayn to these paynemes.'

The King leads
his forces in
battle array
towards the
Saracens,

The kynge thenne came to his oost, and made his
archers & crosbowe men to marche & goo fourth ;
and after folowed the wynges. & the arryergarde came 24
after in fayre ordonnaunce / and assoone as þe sarasyns
perceyued them, they bygan alarme, and euery payneme
armed hym self / but or they were all armed, Vryan
sent vpon them a thousand ¹good men of armes wel 28

¹ fol. 100 b.
and before they
can arm sets a
thousand men on
to them.

At last the Sar-
cens array thein-
selves, and the
fight becomes
fierce.

horsed, that moche adommaged them, for they fonde
them vnpurueyed & out of aray. But notwithstanding,
they assembled them in batayn & aray. Thanne bygan
the stoure fyres & cruel. For there had ye seen arrowes 32
flee as thykk as motes in the sonne / and after Vryan
and his auantgarde assembled to his enemys ; and so
manfully they faught, that they made the sarasyns to
withdraw bakward. For vryan made there so grete 36

The Saracens are
driven back,

fayttes of armes, and gaf so pesaunt & horryble strokes both to the lyft & right syde, that al them that he recounted he smote & threw doun fro their horses to 4 the erthe, in so moch^l that his enemyes fled byfore hym as the partrych doth byfore the sperehauke. And whanne the Calyph^e of Bandas perceyned hym, he shewed hym to kyng Brandymount, sayeng, ‘yf we be 8 abasshed and yl bestad^l of this man only, al the other shal preyse & doubte vs noug^t’ / and sayeng these wordes, he broched his hors with hys sporys that blood rane out of bothe sydes / And know it wel, that this

Urian doing great feats of arms.

12 Caliphe was one of the moost fyers & strengest man that was that tymie alyue / he casted hys targe behynd his bakk / toke hys swerd, & rane vpon vryan, the whiche he recounted / and by grete yre gaf hym so

The Caliph, a strong man with sword and shield,

16 meruayllable a stroke vpon that one syde of hys helmet, that hys swerd redounded vpon hys hors nek by suche myght that nygh he cutte his throtte of.

runs upon Urian,

Thanne came kynge Brandymount vpon vryan, the 20 which^l, seeynge his hors almost deed, stood vpon hys feet, & lete goo hys swerd fro his hand, and embrased his enemy; and by the strengthe of his two armes, pulled hym from his hors doun to therthe. There was

and gives him a heavy blow,

nearly killing his horse;

24 ¹the prees grete, both of Sarasyns that wold rescue theyre lord / and of cypryens also, that wold haue holpen vryan their kynge, to bryng hys enterpryse at affect. The batay^H was there mortall fyers & doubtous

King Brandymount rushes on him also,

28 for bothe partyes. but vryan drew a short knyff out of the shethe that hanged at his lyft syde, and threstid it vnder the gorgeret thrugh brandymontis nek, and thus he slewgh hym. Thanne stod vryan vpon his feet

Urian dismounts, and pulls the Saracen King from his horse.

¹ fol. 101.

32 ayen, and cryed with a high voys ‘Lusynen, Lusynen’ / and the Poyteuyns that herd that, putte them self in prees by suche vertu, gyuyng so grete strokes that the sarrasyns that were about vryan lost & voyded the

The fighting becomes fierce at this point;

but Urian stabs his foe in the neck, and so slays him;

36 place. Thenne was kyng vryan remounted vpon kyng

and his companions put to flight the Saracens,

then Urian pursues the Caliph.

Guion on his side falls upon the Saracens,

and seeing his forces hemmed in, the Caliph with eleven men flies in a boat to his vessels,

weighs their anchors, and puts to sea.

The Saracens seeing Brandimont dead, and the Caliph fled,

² fol. 101 b.

lose heart, and try to escape;

but they are all slain,

and all their riches captured.

The Caliph swears he may yet live to avenge himself on the Cyprians;

brandymontis hors, and pursiewed the Caliphe of Bandas / and thus bygan ayen the batay^H to be reforced, in so moche that grete occysyon was don on eyther partye. And in that meane season came guyon 4 with his peuple, and courageously rane vpon þeire enemyes. And whan the Caliphe saw hym be surpryed on eche syde by his mortal enemyes / he with xi departed in the secretest manere that he coude out 8 of the batay^H, and fled toward the see / where the admyral^H of Damask was, whiche made them to entre into a lytel galyote, in whiche he escaped, as byfore is said / and soone aftir he made the nauye, that he sauued 12 fro brennyng, to take vp theire ancre, & entred in the see. And here seaceth thystorye of hym, and retourneth to speke of the batay^H. /

In this partye sheweth thystorye, & sayth þat whan 16 the sarasyns knew the deth of theyre kynge brandymount¹ / and how the Caliphe on whos prowes & strengthe was al theire hope & comfort² was thus departed and fled, they were all abasshed, and bygan 20 strongly to breke their aray and to voyde the place, putting themselves to flight.³ What shuld I make you long conte / the paynemes were putt all to deth, what in batay^H, what fleyng as drowned in the see. 24 And after the chaas, retourned kyng vryan and hys barons to the paynemys lodgis, where they found in their tentes & pauyllons grete riches. And here this storye cesseth of kyng vryan / and I shal shew vnto you 28 how the caliphe of Bandas dyde, the which swore by his machomet & his goddes, that yf he myght euer come to sauete in damask ayen, yet shuld he doo grete hynderaunce & enuye to the Cypryens. But as he was 32 rowyng in the see / and supposed to haue escaped al

¹ Fr. *Brandimont de Tarse*.

³ xviis. viiid. is noted in margin of MS. If it is price of copying up to this point, it would be about the rate of 1d. a page.

parels / the maister of Rodes that kept the see and
 wayted after hym, as aboue is sayd, pereyued the
 sarasyns flote þat wold haue retourned to Damask / by-
 4 gan to lye by them and sayd to his people in this
 manere : ‘ Fayre lordes and knighthes of Ieshu Criste, our
 desyre and wysshynge is brought to effect, for know-
 lege we haue ynough that the valyaunt & redoubted
 8 kyng vryan hath obtayned the vyctory vpon his ene-
 myes & oures / yf we be now men of faytte & valyaunt,
 none of them shal neuer see Damaske.’ Who thanne He is attacked,
 had seen the Cristen putte them self in aray, and theiro
 12 meruayllable shottynge with gonne & arowes vpon the
 sarasyns, he shuld haue be meruaylled / and syn oure
 folke cheyned with them & casted darts & stones with
 suche strengthe & might, that wonder it was to see.
 16 The sarasyns defendid hem self ¹manfully / but at last
 they were dyscomfyte. And the admyral that sawe
 the greto myschief þat fel on them hallid vp saylles /
 rowed in hys galyote with eyght hores and so he
 20 escaped. And the maister of Rodes and hys peple
 toke the galeyes of theire enemyes and al slew or
 casted ouer bord / and brought them ayen to saynt
 andrews porte. Thanne the maister of Rodes acom-
 24 panyed with C knighthes, bretheren of his religyon, went
 toward king vryan & guyon his brother, and recounted
 to them al theire good fortune. but sory was the king
 that the Caliphe and the admyral were so escaped.
 28 kyng Vryan thenne departed & dalt emong his people
 al the proye of his enemyes that he had wonne / sauf
 he reteyned for hym the artylery & some pauyllons &
 tentes, and gaf them leue to retourne in to theiro
 32 Countrees. These thinges thus don, kyng vryan in
 grete tryumph & honour as vyctorious prynce, re-
 tourned to his cyte of Famagoee, accompayned of Guyon
 his brother, of the maister of Rodes, and of al the
 36 barons, wher the quene Ermynie receyued them right

but his fleet is
observed by the
Master of
Rhodes, who is
on the watch.

¹ fol. 102.
and defeated,

but escapes
with the admiral
in an eight-oared
boat.

The master of
Rhodes captures
the navy, slays
or drowns all the
Saracens, and
takes the vessels
back to St. An-
drew's Port.

He recounts
his victory to
Urian, who is
sorry at the
caliph's escape.

Urian and his
companions
return to Fama-
goee.

honourably, thankynge god of the noble vyctorye that they obteyned vpon his enemyes. /

Urian's wife
Hermine, being
with child, he
prepares to give
a feast,

but a fair son is
born three days
before the feast
is ready.

¹ fol. 102 b.
He is named
Henry.

Now sayth thistorye, that Ermyne was grete with child & nygh her terme / and that vryan made 4 a feest to be cryed & proclaimed ; For he wold in tyme of feas & rest haue festyed his barons of poytou and al other prynces estranglers & other his subiects. Eyght dayes toforne the feste, begane grete multitude 8 of peple to come to the Cite, wherof the kyng was joyful, and made cryees vpon peyne of deth that none shuld make derrer the vytaylles. And trouith it was that thre dayes tofore the feste the quene Ermyne 12 was ¹delyuered of a fayre sone. Thenne bygan the feste to wex grete / and the child baptised and named Henry, bycause of hys auncestre hight Henry. And so encreased the feest in ryches & in yeftes. And 16 there were some of the barons of poytou that toke their leue of the king^t & of his brother, and of the quene, for to departe, whom the kynge yaf grete yeftes of riches. And they were in nombre six knighthes and 20 þeire companye, which putte them in to the see. Now wyl I cesse of them that are departed to the see / & shal shewe of the feste that was ryght noble and sumptuous, but soone it was turned to sorowe, bycause of 24 the tydinges of the kingis deth of Armenye that came to the Court. /

Thystorye sheweth all thus, whan the feest was at best, there came xxi^t¹² knighthes of the moost 28 noblest barons of the royalme of armany, al clothed in black / and it shewed wel by their contenaunce that they were sorowful in herte. And whan they cam tofore the kyng^t they dide their obeyssance ryght nobly / 32 and the kynge receyued them with grete honour / and they said to him : ‘ Sire, the kynge of armenye, your vncle, is passed out of this world, on whos sowle god

Twenty-one Ar-
menian knights

come to Urian,

with news of the
death of the King
of Armenia,

haue mercy / and hath lefte to vs a ryght fayre pucelle
 begotten of his body by lawfull maryage / and she is
 alone hys heyre. Now knowe ye thenne, noble kynge,
 4 that in hys playn lyf he dide doo make this *lettre*, and
 commanded vs to directe it to your noble grace / pray-
 eng the same that the tenour of þe *lettre* ye vouchesaf
 tacomplysshe.' 'By my feith, fayre lordes,' said Vryan /
 8 'yf it be of the thing that I may goodly doo, I shal
 fulfyll his wyll ¹right gladly.' Thenno toke Vryan
 the *lettre* & redd it, of the whiche the tenour was this :
 ' Ryght dere lord and right wel beloued nevew, I re-
 12 commande me to you as ferfourth as I may / prayeng
 you right hertyly to haue me to my ryght dere & be-
 loued nyghte your wyf to be recommanded. And
 where by these my *lettres* I make to you the first re-
 16 queste that euer I demanded of you / also consideryng
 that it shal be the last / For certaynly at the makyng
 of thees my present *lettres*, I felt myself in such pouynt
 that in me was none hope of conuaescence nor of lyf.
 20 I hertyly beseche you that ye haue it not in ressus nor
 in dysdayne. It is so thanne that none heyre I ne
 haue of my body, sauf only a daughter, the which
 your brother guyon sawe but of late / whan he was
 24 with me. Wherfore I pray you that ye vouchsauf to
 entrette your said broþer in manere that it playse hym,
 to take the cepter of my dignite ryall and my daughter
 to hys lady, and thus to crowne hym self king of
 28 armanye. And though she be not worthy to haue
 hym to her lord, yet is she come of royal blood. con-
 sideryng thanne her consanguinitate haue pite on her /
 and yf that mouyth not you to compassyon / yet re-
 32 membre that ye be chamyon of Crist, exalting his
 feyth. My roialme is now cristen, and hath be long
 soo / Woo were to me / yf for wantyng of a preu &
 valyaunt man it shuld retourne in to the paynemes
 36 handes. Wherfore, noble kyng, haue regarde to this

and that his
heir is a fair
maiden.

They bring
Urian a letter
from the de-
ceased king,

¹ fol. 103.

paying respects
to Urian and his
wife,

and intimating
his near end.

The king tells
of his daughter,
whom Guion had
seen,
and begs Urian
to entreat his
brother to marry
the heiress of
Armenia, and to
be king of the
country;

as the land re-
quires a valiant
man to protect
it from the
Saracens.

that forsaid is,' &c. Whan vryan vnderstode the tenour
 of þe *lettre* he was moche dolaunt of the kingis deth /
 & mouyd by compassion & pyte, ansuerd to the ¹Arma-
 nyens, sayeng in this manere : 'Lordes & barons, I shall 4
 not fayH you at your nede, For yf my brother wyl not
 accorde therto, yet shal I endeuoyre my self to gyue
 you helpe, ayde, comfort, & counseyl, as ferre as my
 power shal reche.' Thanne called he to hym guyon, 8
 hys broþer, that thanne knew the kingis deth, wheroft
 he was sorrowfull / and vryan to hym sayd the wordes
 that here folowen : 'Guyon, receyue this yefte, For I
 make you heyre of armenye and possessour of the moost 12
 fayrest pucelle that is in aH the land / that is my
 Cousyn florye, doughter to the kyng of Armanye, which
 by the wyH of god is passed out of this world / and I
 pray you that ye dayne to take this yefte, For it oughte 16
 not to be refussed.' 'By my feyth, fayr brother and
 my lord,' said guyon, 'I thanke you moche therof, and
 hym also that is causer of hit, on whos sowle god haue
 mercy.' Thenne were the knyghtes of armanye joyfuH 20
 & glad. And as soone as guyon had consentid therto,
 they kneeled byfore hym & kyssed hys handes, after
 the custome of theire land / And thanne bygan ayen
 the feest greter than it was afore. And in that meane 24
 saison the king dide doo make hys nauye redy, that
 was in to the porte of Lymasson, and in the vessels
 he made to be putte grete rychesses / and guyon hys
 brother, accompanied with the maister of Rodes, & with 28
 many barons of poytou and of Cypre, toke hys leue, &
 entred in to the see & saylled so longt that they arryued
 in Armenye,² where they were receyued honourably.³

² Fr. *Et tant allèrent, tant de jour comme de nuit, qu'ils apperçurent et visrent la balet du Crub, qui est la maistresse ville du royaume d'Armanie.*

³ There is an omission here; the French version opens a new chapter, entitled *Comment Guion espousa la pucelle Florie et fut roy d'Armanie*, as follows:—*Adone l'ung des*

fol. 103 b.

The letter causes
Urian sorrow,
and he promises
to aid the Ar-
menians.

Guion is sent for,
and is told of the
king's death.

He is offered
the hand of the
daughter of the
king of Armenia.

He accepts it,
and thanks his
brother.

The Armenian
knights are joy-
ful, and kneel
before Guion
and kiss his
hands.

The navy is
prepared at Ly-
masson, and
Guion and many
of his friends
sail to Armenia,

There was guyon wedded with Florye / and after the
feste al the barons of the land came to Cruly & made
theyre homage to guyon, whiche crownned himself
4 king & regned honourably. And after these thinges
doon the maister of Rodes & the barons of Poytou toke
theire leue of guyon, whiche yaf to them grete yeftes
of ryches, & they entred in to theire shippes and rowed
8 tyl they ¹cam at Rodes, whero as the said maister
festyed worshipfully the estraungers, and so dide al the
knightes bretheren of hys relygyon. And at thende
of viii dayes the barons of Poytou entred agayn in to
12 the see, and in short tyme they arryued in Cipre, And
recounted to Vryan al the trouth of the fayt, and how
his brother guyon was honourably receyued in armanye / and how he had wedded Florye, and was crowned
16 kyng of the land & loued of al the peple there,
wherof moche thankes rendred guyon to god. Witin
few dayes after many of the knightes of poytou toke
theire leue, and to them yaf vryan grete yeftes of
20 ryches / and sent word by them in wrytyng to his
fader & moder of al thestate & prosperous fortune of
hym & of hys brother. And thus departed the barons
& entred in to theire shippes, whiche they fonde wel
24 purveyed of al that was necessary to them, and toke
theire way toward Rochelle in poytou.

² **N**ow sayth thystorye, that the barons of poytou
sailed so long that they perceyued & sawe
28 Rochelle, whero they arryued with grete joye / and

where he weds
Florry.
The barons do
their homage to
him, and he is
crowned, and
reigns honorably.

His friends set
sail to Rhodes,
¹ fol. 104.
where the Master
entertains them,

and from thence
to Cyprus, where
they relate to
Urian all the
adventure.

Some knights of
Poitou, after
receiving gifts
from Urian, and
a letter for his
parents,

set sail for
Rochelle.

They arrive,

barons d'Armanie parla moult hault addressant sa parole à Guion, et dist : Sire, nous vous avons été querir pour estre nostre seigneur et nostre roy ; si est bon que nous vous delivrons tout ce que nous vous devrons bailler. Et voiez cy ma damoiselle qui est toute preste de accomplir tout ce que nous vous avons promis et au roy Urian votre frère. Par foi, dist Guion, ce ne demourera mie à faire pour mey ; and continues then as above.

² This begins a new chapter in the French version, entitled, *Comment les messagiers apportèrent les lettres à Raymond et à Melusine de ses deux enfans qui estoient roix.*

and three days
after ride to
Lusignan,

where Raymond-
din and Melusine
receive them
with great joy.
They deliver the
letters from
Urian and Guion,

which please
their parents.

This year Melu-
sine builds the
Church of our
Lady and many
other abbeys,

¹ fol. 104 b.
and Odo marries
the daughter
of the Earl of
March.

Anthony and
Regnald, hearing
of the brothers'
success,

desire to follow
their example;

so they ask per-
mission to go out
into the world
to earn the order
of knighthood.

there they refresched them self the space of thre dayes, and after mounted on theire horses & rode toward Lusynen, where they founde Raymondyn and Melusyne and theire other children with þem, whiche receyued 4 them with grete joy. And þenne they delyuered to them the *lettres* of kynges Vryan & guyon theire sones. And whan they herde & vnderstod^t the tenour of them they thanked god of the good auenture that he of 8 his grace had youen to theire two sones / and yaf grete jewelles & ryche yeftes to the barons that brought tydyngis of þem. And that same yere melusyne fownded the chirch of our lady in Lusynen & manie other 12 abbeyes in þe ¹ lande, and endowed them with grete possessyon. And thenne was the trayttee of maryage made betwix Odon her sone and the Erle of marchis doughtir, And was the feest grete & noble holden in 16 a medowe nygh to the Castel of Lusynen. /

Thystorye sheweth here, that Anthony & Regnald were right glad whan they vnderstode the tydinges of the fortune & noble fayttes of armes of theire 20 two bretheren / and that in so short space of tyme they had sore adommaged the enemyes of god, and said one to other, ‘ My ryght dere brother, it is now tyme that we goo seke auenture thrugh the world, For here to 24 dwel ony lenger we may not acquyre nor gete honour, as oure brethern Vryan & guyon haue don.’ Wherfore they come to theyre fader & moder, and to them said humbly in this manere, ‘ My lord and you my 28 lady, yf ye vouchsaf it were tyme that we went thrugh the world at our auenture, for to gete & acquerre thordre of knyghthode as our bretheren vryan & guyon haue don / how wel we be nat worthy to receyue 32 it so nobly nor in so noble a place as they haue doo / but yf it playseth god our entencion is to endeuoyre vs þerto.’ Thenne ansuerd^t to them Melusyne theire moder, ‘ Fayre sones, yf that playseth wel your fader, 36

I me consent to your requeste.' 'By my feyth, lady,' said Raymondyn, 'doo your wy^H therof, For what someuer ye wyl I me consent thereto.' 'Sire,' said 4 Melusyne, 'it semeth to me good that from hens fourth they begynne to take on them som vyage for to knowe the world & the straunge marches / also to be renommed & knownen / and to knowe & diserne good from euyl.' 8 Thenne the two bretheren kneeled byfore theire fader & moder, & thanked them mochly humbly of the honour that they promysed them to ¹doo. And here ceaseth thystory to spek of them / and speketh of another 12 matere.

In this partye sayth thystorye, that in the marches of Allemayne, betwene Lorayne & Ardane, was a noble Countrey, the which was somtyme called the 16 Erledome of Lucembourgh, and now it is named a duchye. In that same Countree was some tyme a lord erle of the land, whiche after his decesse lefte a fayre daughter his heyre / she was clepyd Crystyne, and her 20 fader was named Asselyn. Alle the barons of the land made theire homage to her as to the rightful heyre of the lande. On that tyme was in Anssay a kynge whos wyf was dead in her child bed at the birthe of a 24 daughter, whiche the fader made to be baptised & named Melidee. Whan this kynge thanne herde how the Erle of Lucembourgh was passed out of this world, and that none heyre he had but a daughter, whiche

28 was the fayrest damoyself of all the land / he sent in ambaxade to her the moost noble & secretest men of hys Cunsey^H, to speke & treate the maryage of hym with her. But the pucelle Crystyne wold neuer consent thereto / wherfore he waxed sorowfull in herte / and sware god that outhre by force or by her wy^H he shuld haue her, whatsoeuer it might fall therof. Thenne made he his mandement, & chalenged the mayde & alle 32 her lande. Whan thanne the barons & noble men of

Their parents consent.

¹ fol. 105.

At the time when the ruler of Luxembourg was a maiden named Christine,

the wife of the King of Anssay died.

He wished to marry again, and made proposals to Christine,

but was rejected.

In revenge he swore he would have her by force, and challenged her and her land.

the lande & all the commynalte wyst it / they said & sware that syth theyre lady wold not haue hym to her lord / they shuld shewe to hym that he dide wrong to the pucelle and to them also. And immediatly they 4

¹ fol. 105v.

The people put it in a state of defence,

garnysshed theirc Cites, tounes, & Fortresscs. ¹ And the moost part of the barons drew themself to the toune & Castel of Lucembourgh with Cristyne, their owne propre lady. What shuld I make you long conte / 8

they were nat that tyme strong ne puyssaunt ynough for to fyght ayenst the kyng of Anssay. For he came vpon them with a grete puyssaunce of peple & moche adom-maged the lande / and came al brennyngⁱ vnto byfore 12 the toune & Fortressc of Lucembourgh, where he layed siege. And of faytte theire was grete scarmysshingⁱ and grete losse of one parte and of oþer. It happed thanne

that one of the noblest barons of the land, the whiche 16 had be with Vryan at the conqueste of the royaume of Cipre, and euer was with hym at al the baytayHes that he had ayenst the paynemes / the whiche was come ayen with the barons of Poytou vnto Lusynen / and 20 had receyued of Melusyne riche jewels & grete yeftes of ryches / and sawe there Regnald and Anthony, that were moche strong and grete, & of fyers & hardy contenaunce / and wel it semed to hym that they 24 shuld ensiew the condicions & maneres of theire bretheren, and theire high prowes & enterpryse / drew the noble men of the land apart, and said to them in this manere: ‘Fayre lordes, ye may conceyue and wel 28 perceyue that we may not hold longe ayenst the puyaunce of the same kinge. Wherfore yf it seme you good, myn oppynyon were to see a remedy be had to it rather to fore than to late, For good it is to shette the 32 stable or euer the horses be lost.’ And they ansuerd, ‘that is trouth / but we may not perceyue no remedy therto without the grace of god be.’ ‘For southe,’ said the forsaid baron, ‘Without godis grace none may but 36

A baron, who had been with Urian when he conquered Cyprus,

takes the barons of Luxembourg apart,

1 fol. 106.

lytel or nought doo, but with that it is good to take ayde who that may ¹haue it.' 'Certaynly,' said the barons, 'ye say right wel; yf ye thanne know some gentylman worthy to haue our lady, and valyaunt & preu to deffende vs ayenst our enemyes, lete vs knowe hym. For ye be therto hold & bounden bycause of your alygeaunce.' This gentylman thanne rehered to them fro hed to hed how vryan & hys brother departed fro Lusynen, and al thauenture of theire vyage / also thestate of theire fader and moder / and ouermore, he shewed to them the fayre maynten & countenaunce of

12 Anthony & Regnauld / and that he knew for certayn / that who so went to seke & requyre the socours and helpe of the two bretheren, they shuld come with grete puyssauce, whan they shuld haue knowledge of 16 the faytte. 'By my feyth,' said the noblemen, 'ye say fu^H wel.' Thenne they fourthwith went tofore Crystynne theire lady, and worde to worde they recounted to her al this affayre. And sho said to them, 'Fayre

20 lordes, I recommande you my land and yours / doo what semeth you best to thonour of me and of you, for the commyn wele of al my land. For wete it for certayn, that for to dey or to be dysheryted, I shal not 24 haue the kyng of Anssay to my lord / how be it he is

better than to me apparteyneth, but for asmoche that he wyl haue by force me & my land.' And they ansuerd to her / 'doubte you not therof, my lady, For

28 yf it playse god, he shal not haue so moche of puys- sance as long as we shall mowe stere our owne bodyes.'

'Lordes,' said she, 'gramercy.' And thenne they departed thens. Thenne said one of the barons to the forsaid

32 gentylman in this manere: 'ye that haue putte vs in this quarelle / say now what best is for to doo.' 'By my feyth,' said he, 'yf it lyke you good, ye shall delyuere me two of you to goo with me to Lusynen, to wete yf

36 we can fynde there ²ony thing to vs prouffytable.'

and tells them
of the bravery
of Urien and
Gulon,

and of their two
brothers, An-
thonyl and
Regnald, who would
come to their
assistance with
great forces if
they were asked.

The barons have
an audience with
Christine.

She puts herself
in their hands

and once more
refuses the King
of Anssay.

They pledge
themselves to
defend her.

2 fol. 106 b.

Two wise and noble men are sent as messengers to Lusignan with Urien's knight.

Thenne they anoone chose among them, that is to wete, two of the wyest & noblest men for to goo with hym. And they departed about the first slepe, mounted vpon good & lyght horses, and yssued out of a posterne, and 4 passed by that one side of thoost, so that they were neuer perceyued / and hasted them self on theire way toward Lusynen. And here cesseth thystorye of them, and speketh of Meluysyne & her children, that is to wete, 8 of Anthony and of Regnald. /

During the great feast, at which Anthony and Regnald distinguish themselves in jousting,

the ambassadors from Luxembourg arrive,

and are welcomed.

Urien's knight is asked by Anthony if he will accompany him and his brother on a voyage

Thy story sayth that the feste was right grete in the medowe byforsaid / and men jousted there valyauntly. but aboue alle the yonge squyers that 12 were there, Anthony and Regnald dyde best after the sayeng & commendacion of the ladyes and gentyl wymen that were there. And there were grete jewels gyuen. but alwayes Melusyne thoughte to purueye to 16 thestate of her children, and made to them fayre robes & ryche raymentes, and ordeyned and purueyed of men to goo with them, and in especial wyse, and noble men to endoctrine them, & shew to tham the way of good 20 gouernance. Duryng yet the feste, came there the ambaxatours of Lucembourgh / þe whiche made theire obeyssance to Raymondyn & to Melusyne ryght honourably, and also to alle the compayne / And joyously 24 they were receyued / & soone was there knownen the knight that had be with vryan at the Conqueste of Cypre. and he was honourably festyed, and of hym demanded Anthony, for the wele that he herde saye of 28 hym, yf it playsed hym to goo with hym & with hys brother Regnauld in som vyage where he purposed to goo, & to thayde of god, he shuld be wel rewarded. The knyght thanne demanded of Anthony: 'My lord, 32 & whither is your entencion for to goo?' And he ansuerd: ¹ 'At our auenture there as god shal conduit vs, for to gete honour and cheualrye.' 'By my feyth,' said the knyght, 'I shal telle you the fayrest and the 36

¹ fol. 107.

in search of honour.

moost honourable auenture that euer gentylman had
that aduentured hym self, and the moost honourable
enterpryse.' And whan the two damoyseaulx vnderstod
4 hym, they made moche of hym, & said in this manere :

'Noble man, vouchesauf to vttre to vs that noble
enterpryse that ye speketh of.' 'By my feyth, lordes,'
said the knight, 'in as moche that I were ryght joyous
8 you to see enhaunsed in honour, also for to susteyne
ryght & reason, I shal ryght gladly shew to you al the
matere therof.

12 **R**yght dere lordes, it is trouth that al thou that
loue ryghtwysnes and that be wylling to gete
honour / they oughte to helpe and susteyne the wydowes
an orphenyns. And forasmuche, fayre lordes, it is soo
that in the marche of Lorayne & of Ardane is a moche

16 ryche & noble Countree that clepen the duchye of Lucem-
bourg, the whiche duchye a noble man gouerned long
as hys owne propre herytage / the whiche valyaunt man
passed to god but of late, and hath lefte a doughtir hys

20 heyre of the land / to the whiche right noble and fayro
pucelle alle the nobles and barons of the land haue as
now don theyre homage & obeyssance. And where
it is soo that the kynge of Anssay, knowyng the beaute-

24 fulnes of the mayde, and her grete & noble enheryt-
aunce, hath demanded her by maryage / but that pucelle
reffused hym bycause he had be wedded tofore, & of
late he was wydower. Wherfore this kynge of Anssay

28 hath deffyed her and al her land, and supposeth to
haue her by force & ayenst her wylle / and he is entred
in to the land / and hath brent & slayn al byfore hym
vnto the toune & Castel ¹ of Lucembourgh, where as

32 he hath now besieged the said lady, and hath sworne
that he shall neuer departe thens vnto tyme he hath
his wylle of her, other by force or by loue. Wherfore,
lordes, me semeth that in al the world nys more honour-

36 able a vyage ne more raysonnable than that same is,

The knight tells
of the fair ad-
venture,

and is asked by
the brothers for
full information.

He relates that

the Duke of
Luxembourg

left his daughter
his heir,

and owing to
her beauty and
riches she is
sought as wife
by the King of
Anssay, but be-
cause he is a
widower she has
refused him.

In revenge war
has been de-
clared, and the
king is trying to
get her by force,

¹ fol. 107 b.

and now he is
besieging her at
Luxembourg.

On hearing the story Anthony agrees to succour the maiden,

and the ambassadors promise to conduct Anthony and help him all in their power.

Anthony and Regnald relate the tidings to their parents, and ask for help.

Raymondin thinks it a good opportunity,

¹ fol. 108.

and Melusine promises to provide well for her sons.

She announces that any man prepared to serve under the brothers, should come to Lusignan.

For alle thoo that loue honour & gentynnesse ought to draw them self that part.' 'In good feyth,' said thenne anthony, 'ye say trouth / and wete it I shal shew this matere to my lady my moder, to see what ayde and helpe my lord our fader and she wyl gyue vs / and how so euer it happeth, by thayde of god we shal goo and socoure the pucelle that the kynge of Anssay wyl haue by force, wherof me semeth that he is euyl coun- 8 seyld.' 'On my feyth, my lord,' sayd thenne the knight, 'yf ye vouchesauf to vndertake that vyage / I & my felawes, two knightes that be here come with me, shal conduyte & helpe you of al our power.' And 12 þe two bretheren thanked them moche, & saide / 'no doubte we shal goo thither, yf it be the playsire of god' / And thenne they retourned toward theire moder / and the knight toward his felawes / and reherced to 16 them how he had exployled / and that no nede was to speke ne requere Raymondyn ne Melusyne therof. 'Now, verlyl,' said the two barons, 'it is ryght wysly don of you / blessid be god therof.' / 20

Here saith thistory, that Anthony & Regnald came to theire fader & moder, and denounced to them these tydinges, and requyred them of help & ayde tacomplysse this enterpryse. Thenne 24 spake Raymondyn to Melusyne, & said, 'Certainly, lady, herto they may haue a fayre begynnyng in armes. Wherfore I pray you that ye purueye for ¹them in suche wyse that we may haue therof honour & prouffyt.' 28 'For southe,' said Melusyne, 'Sire, for tacomplysse your wylle, I shal endeuoyre me so diligently thereto, that bothe you & they also shal be content.' And thenne she made that ony man that wold take wages 32 vnder Anthony & Regnald of Lusynen, that they shuld come at a certayn day to Lusynen, and there they shuld be payed of þeir wages for one yere / and also she made it to be cryed al about the marches of poytou. / 36

On the day appointed for the meeting,

4000 helmets and 500 archers assemble.

They are well armed;

and are paid their wages.

The barons describe the state of the land to the brothers,

and send word of the aid coming to Luxembourg,

2 fol. 108 b.

whereat the barons, the lady Christine, and her people are glad.

The king of Ansay is informed of the rejoicing,

IN this partie reherceth thystorye, that within the day that Melusyne made to be cryed and announced the said wages,¹ were assembled many gentylmen in a meddowe bysyde Lusynen; and grete foysoun men of armes, to the nombre of foure thousand helmets and fyue houndred, some archers & oþer crosbowe men / and there were no pages, but al strong men / and were al lodged in fayre tentes & pauyllons, and so purueyed of all maner harneys & of al other thinges necessary to þem, that euery man was content. And while Raymondyn & melusyne payed them theire wages, & purueyed for al thinges that were nedefull to theyre vyage / Anthony & Regnald araysonned & demanded of the said knight and of his barons, hys felawes, of the estate of the pucelle of the land / And they said to them the very trouth / and were joyfull in theire hertes of the grete apparayll that they sawe so soone redy, For wel they had take in thanke half of the same to socoure with al theire lady. Wherfor þey thanked god & our lady his blessid moder, And sent fourth with a messenger toward the barons of Lucembourgh, for to announce to them the noble socours ²that god sent to them. Wherof they were joyful & glad. And aftir the barons went & told to theire lady the tdynges, of the whyche she was moch recomforted, and bygan moche deuoutely to lawde god her creatour. And whan the people knew therof, they had grete joye, and thanked god, and made grete fyres, and cryed with a mery voys, sayeng thus: ‘Joye & victory to our pucelle.’ And whan theire enemyes withoutforth herd them, they wondred moch, & went & denounced it to theire kynge, wherof he was abasshed & penseluh. And thenne came tofore certayn personnes, that said to hym: ‘Sire, doo make good watche, For they of the tounے awayte dayly for socours.’ ‘By god,’ said the

¹ waged in MS.

but believes he will starve them out, not knowing of succour on the way.

kinge, 'I ne wot nor may knowe by no maniere fro whens socours shuld come to them ; I doubte not / but that I shal haue them at my wy^H, other by strength or by honger and for lack of meete.' And thus the 4 kyng of Anssay assured hym self, But afterward he fond^t hym self deceyued. Now I shal leue of hym, and shal retourne to speke of Melusyne and of her two sones.

8

Melusine calls Anthony and Regnald, and gives them parting advice.

Melusyne thenne called to her Anthony and Regnald, her two sones / and to them she said in this manere : 'Children, ye now wyl departe fro my lord your fader & fro me / and happily we shal neuer 12 see you agayn. Wherfore I wyl teche & introdruyte you for your wele & honour. And I pray you that ye vnderstand & reteyne wel that I sha^t say, For that shal be to you nedeful^H in tyme to come. First, ye 16 shal loun / doubt, & preyse god our creatour ; ye shal fermely, iustly, & deuoutly hold the commandementes of our moder holy chirche / and stedfast shal you be in our feyth catholical. / be ye humble & curteys to good 20 folke / fyers & sharp to the wicked & euyl folke / and be ye ¹alwayes of fayre ansueryng, bothe to moost and leste / and hold talkyng to euery one whan tyme requyret, without eny dysdayn / promyse ne be- 24 heyghte nothing^t but that ye may shortly accomplisshe it after your power ; withdrawe not rapporteurs of wordes toward you / byleue not enuyous / nor beleue not to soone ne lyghtly / For that causeth somtyme 28 the frend^t to wexe mortal foo ; putte not in office auarycyous nor fel folke / acoynte² you not with another mans wyf / departe or deeple to your felawes of suche thinges that god shal gyue you ; be swete & 32 debonnaire to your subiects / and to your enemyes fyers & cruel vnto tyme they be subdued & vnder your puyssance / kepe your self fro auauntyng & fro

She tells them to love God and keep the commandments of holy Church,

to be courteous to all,

¹ fol. 109.

to be cautious in believing scandal,

to be fair to their comrades,

stern with their enemies,

² Fr. acointez.

menace / but doo your faytte with few wordes this that
 may be doo. Despyse neuer none enemy, thaugh he
 be lytel / but loke wel about and make good watche /
 4 be not emonges your felawes as maister, but commyn
 with them / and worship euerychon after his degré /
 and gyue to them after your power, & after that they
 be worthy. ¹gyue to the good men of armes hors &
 8 harneys & syluer as rayson requyreth. Now, my
 children, I ne wot nat what I shuld more saye to you /
 but that ye kepe euer trouthe in al your dedes &
 affayres. Hold! I gyue eche of you a ryng of gold,
 12 wherof the stones ben of one vertue. For wete it that
 as long as ye haue good cause, ye shal neuer be dys-
 comfyted in batayH. And thenne she kyssed them in
 moderly wyse, whiche thanked her; and toke leue of
 16 theire fader, that ryght dolaunt was of theire departyng.
 They made thenne theiro troompettes to be sowned &
 blowen, and putte them self al byfore, & conduyted the
 auauantgarde / and after folowed the sommage & the
 20 grete batayH in fayre ²aray / and the arryergarde also
 marched forth in fayre ordynaunce. It was a good
 sight to see the state of the vantgarde, whiche the two
 bretheren delyuered to be conduyted to a noble baron
 24 & valyaunt knight of poytou / and them self toke &
 conduyted the gret baytayH / and by them rode the
 ambaxadours of Lucembourg. And of the reregard
 were captayns the two knightes of poytou that ledd
 28 vryan & guyon in to Cypre, and that first told to them
 that the sawdan had besieged the Cite of Famagoce.
 And to these two knightes Raymondyn & Melusyne
 had recommended the estate of theire two sones, Reg-

not to be given
to vain speaking
Not to despise
their foes, but
ever to keep
good watch.

To treat their
men-at-arms
well,

and above all
to keep to the
truth.
She gives them
each a ring,
which will pre-
vent them ever
being defeated in
battle in a good
cause.

The brothers
take leave of
their parents,

sound the trum-
pets,

² fol. 109 b.

¹ Fr. *Donnez aux bons hommes d'armes, cheraux, cottes d'aeier, bassines, des premiers, et argent selon raison, et vous se vous roiez ung bon homme de la main qui rienne devers vous mal vestu ou mal monté, si l'appellez moult humblement et lny donnez robes, cheraux et harnois, selon la valeur de sa personne et selon le pouvoir que vous arez alors.*

and mearch that
night to Mirabel,

where they set
good watch.

Anthony orders
everyone to ride
under his banner
in battle array.

This wearies the
men,

and in ten days
the knight com-
manding the
vanguard

¹ fol. 110.

declares to the
brothers that
the people think
there is no need
to be so arrayed
till they are in
the enemies'
country.

But Anthony
replies that it is
best they should
learn themselves,

rather than that
their enemies
should teach
them.

nald & Anthony. And trouth it is, that on the first nyght they lodged them nygh to a strong toune vpon a lytel ryuere / and was that same toune named Myrabel, þe whiche Melusyne founded / and that same 4 nyght bygan the two brethern to make good watehe, as they had be alredy in land of enemyes, wherof many gaf themself grete merueyH; but they durst not reffuse it, For Anthony was so cruel that euery man drad 8. hym. On the morowe next after the masse was doo / the two bretheren made cryees vpon peyne of hors & haryneys, & to be banysshed out of the felawship, þat eueryman shuld ryde armed vnder his banere, in good 12 aray of batayH. none durst not refuse it / but thus was it doo, Wheroft they al merueylled. And in this manere they rode by the space of ten dayes, & so long that they cam in champayne / and many one were wery & 16: ennuyed of theire harneys / as moehe for þis that it was no nede / as bycause they were not acustomed of it / and som spake therof, wherfor the knight that con-
duyted the vangarde eam to the two brethern, & thus 20: said to them: 'My lordes, the moost part of your people is euyl apayed & content bycause that ye ¹eon-
strayne them to bere theire harneys; For them semeth no nede to doo soo tyl that they come nygh to the 24. marches of your enemyes.' 'And how, sire,' said Anthony, 'thinke you not that the thinge which is acustomed of long tyme be bettre knownen of them that exercie it, & lesse greuable than that thinge which is 28: newly lerned?' 'By my feyth, sire,' said the knyght, 'ye say wel.' 'morouer,' said Anthony, 'It is bettre for þem to lerne the peyne for to susteyne theire harneys in tyme, that surely they may so doo at theire 32 ease, & to refresshe them surely for to essaye them self, and knowe the manere how they myght easy susteyn & suffre it whan nede shalbe. For yf they muste be thaught of theire enemyes / theire peyne 36

shuld be greter & doubtous / and ye wote ynough, that who lerneth not his crafte in his yougthe, with grete peyne & hardē it shal be for hym to be a good werke-
 4 man in his oldē age.' 'Certaynly, my lord,' said the knyght, 'ye saye the playne trouth of it, and your reason is full good.' And thenne he departed fro hym, and anounced to many one this rayson, in so
 8 moche that knowlech of it they had thorugh al thoost,
 wherof euery man held hym self wel apayed & content / and al sayd that the two bretheren might not fayH to haue grete wele, yf god wold sendē to them long lyf,
 12 and that they shuld come to grete perfection of honour.

Thystorye sayth in this partye, that the same nyght
 the oost was lodged vpon a ryuere that men called aisne / and about the first slepe, the two bretheren
 16 made to be cryed alarme thrugh the oost right fersfully.

Thenne was there grete trouble, and in euery syde they armed them, puttyng themself in fayre aray of batayH.
 euery man vnder his banere byfore theire tentes. And
 20 wete it wel, that it¹ was grete beaute to see the good
 contenaunce & the noble ²ordynaunce & fayre aray of
 the men of armes, and of the two bretheren, that went
 fro bataiH to batayH / and there as fawte was of
 24 ordynaunce, they redressid theire peple to it. And
 the thre barons, ambaxadours of Lucembourgh, beheld
 wel theire maner & contenaunce, & said that one to
 that other: 'On my feyth, these two children ben wel
 28 chappen to subdue & conquer yet a grete part of the
 world / now wel may say the king^t of Anssay, that
 dere he shaH abyse his folye & proude enterpryse, and
 the dommage that he hath borne to our lady, & to
 32 her land & subgets.' In suche party they were long
 tyme, tyl the espyes that secretly were departed fro the
 oost to dyscouere & ouersee the Countre about, yf
 enemyes were nygh / came agayn, & sayd that þey

The answer satisfies the host, and the men say that the brothers will come to great honour.

When the host was lodged on the Aisne that night an alarm was raised by the brothers.

* fol. 110 b.

The forces arrayed themselves for battle,

and spies were sent over the country to find the enemy.

¹ is in MS.

They returned with the news that no enemy was in sight. At last it was known to be a false alarm.

The captains of the van and rear guards complained of the trouble,

but Anthony told them he did it to test the troops.

* fol. 111:

The next day they marched to Dam Castle,

which is twelve leagues from the besieged town.

The ambas-sadors advise the brethren to halt and refresh their men.

aspedyd no persone; whero[f] al gaf them self grete wonder of that alarme & affray, but at last it was wel knownen that the two bretheren caused it. Thenne came the two knightes, captayns of the arryergarde, 4 & also the Captayne of the vantgarde, to the two bretheren, & said to them in this manere: 'My lordes, grete symplenes it is to you thus to trauayle your peopple for nought.' 'How,' said Anthony to them / 8 'whan ye doo make a new rayment, be it harneys or clothing, make ye not it to be essayed, for to knowe yf ony fawte is fonde in it, and to haue it mended & sette as it shuld be?' / And they al ansuerd, 'For certayn, 12 sire, ye / and that is ryght.' Thenne sayd Anthony, 'yf I wold haue assayed my felawes to fore that it had be tyme, for to knowe how I shuld fynd them redy at my nede / sene & consydered that we approuche our 16 enemyes / to thend, yf ony fawte we had fond, to haue purueyed of conuenable remedy therto, at our lesse dommage / than yf in dede it had be.' Whane they [heard¹] that word / they ansuerd, 'my lord, ye 20 say but rayson' / and they wondred moche of ²theire gouernement, and of theire subtylte & wyt / sayeng betwene them self / that they shuld yet come to grete perfection. Soone after the day was come, the masse 24 was said and the trompettes sowned; at which sowne the vantgarde marched fourth, and the sommage and Cartes folowed / and after the grete oost deslodged, & went so long by theire journeyes that they came & 28 lodged them vpon a ruyere named Meuse, vnder a Fortresse named Damcastel / And fro thens vnto the siege tofore lucembourgh, were not past two days journey for them. Thenne came the barons ambaxadours of 32 Lucembourgh to the two bretheren, & said: 'My lord, we haue no more but xij leghis vnto the siege, it were good that ye shuld refresshe your peple here vpon this

¹ Word scraped out of MS.

fayre ryuer; For here is good soiourne & good abydyng'
and also is good to take aduys & Counseyl how ye wyl
doo.'

4 **T**hanne ansuerd Anthony ryght boldly: 'By my
feyth, fayre lordes, thaduys is ouerlong take,
For assoone that my brother & I haue sent toward the
kynge of Anssay, yf he wyl not doo after our wy^H, he
8 may hold hym sure to haue batay^H / and the vyctory
shal send god to whom it playse hym / but what / me
semeth we haue good quare^H, And therfor we haue
hope on our lord that he shal helpe vs / and also we
12 shal, or euer we fyght, demande of hym ryght &
rayson / but it muste be aduyised who shal goo on the
message.' 'By my feyth,' sayd the Captayne of the
vantgarde, 'I shal be your messanger, yf it please you,
16 and the gentylman that knoweth the Countre shal lede
me thither.' 'In the name of god,' said anthony /
'that playseth me ryght wel / but that shal not be tyl
myn oost be but thre leghes ferre fro them / to thende,
20 yf þe batay^H muste be that we may be nere them for
to fyght, and haue thayde of the toune with vs.
1 For yf he wyl the batay^H we wold be alredy by
hym.' And thus they lefte to speko of this matere.

24 And on the morne erly, after that the masse was doo,
thoost marched, & passed the ryuere vnder Damcastel
in fayre ordynaunce / and so long they rode that they
arryued on an euен betwene vertone and Lucem-
28 bourgh, and there lodged them self. And on the
morow erly Anthony sent the Captayne of the vant-
garde, and the said gentylman toward the kynge of
Anssay, to whom they said the wordes that herafter
32 folowe. Thenne they hasted them so moche that they
came to the siege, and were brought as messagers
tofore the kyng, whome they salued, & made reuer-
ence as they oughte / and aftir the knyght captayn
36 said to hym in this manere: 'Sire, hither we be sent

But Anthony
declines to do
so, and says he
will send to the
King of Anssay,
and if he accepts
not their terms
they will fight.

The captain of
the vanguard
volunteers to be
the messenger.

Anthony says he
will send when
they are as near
as three leagues
to the enemy.

¹ fol. 111 b.

In the morning
after mass the
army marches
beyond Virton,
and rests there.

Next morning
Anthony sends
the captain of
the vanguard
and the gentle-
man to the King
of Anssay.

The captain,
after making
reverence to
the king,

says he has been sent to show the outrage that has been committed on the noble lady of Luxembourg.

If the king will make amends for the wrongs he has done and depart, he can do so; if not he must fight.

The King of Anssay mocks the knight,

¹ fol. 112.

who now demands a speedy answer.

The king replies that he cares not a straw for the knight's masters; whereupon the knight defies the king on behalf of his lords.

from our redoubted lordes, Anthony & Regnald, of Lusynen bretheren, for to shew vnto you the fawte & grete oulfrage that ye doo to the noble damoyselle lady of Lucembourgh / the which our lordes redoubted 4 mande, & lete you knowe by vs that yf ye wyl restab-lysshe the dommage, & to make raysounable & lawful amendes of the Iniury & vylonnye that ye haue don to her / to her subgets & to her propre enherytaunce, 8 and after to departe out of her land^e ye shal doo wel, and they make them strong^t to make your peas with her / and yf ye wyl not so deeple with her / theire entencyon is for to take reparacion vpon you of the 12 dommages beforsayd by strengthe of theire armes & by batay^H. and gyue to vs an ansuere what your wy^H is to doo / and after morouer I shal telle you as I am commanded to doo.' 'How, sire knyght,' said the 16 kyng^t, 'are ye come hither for to preche vs / by my feith lytel or nought ye may gete here. For as to your lettres ne to your preaching, I shal not be letted of myn entencion / but as long ye may preche as ye wyl, For I 20 vouchesaf. ¹For I take my dysport in your talkyng & prechement. And also I trow that ye ne doo or saye suche thinges but for dysport.' 'By my heed, sire,' said the Captayne, that was angry / 'yf ye doo not 24 promptly & anoone this that our lordes mande by vs vnto you / the dysport that ye speke of / shal hastily tourne you to grete myschief & sorowe.' 'Sire knight,' said the kyng^t, 'of menaces ye may gyue vs ynoughe. 28 For other thing^t ye shal not haue ne withbere fro me, For your maisters, nor your menaces I preyse not worth a strawe.' 'Thenne, king^t of Anssay, I deffye you on my ryght redoubted lordes byhalf.' 'Wel 32 thanne,' said the kyng^t, 'I shal kepe me fro mystakyng & fro losse & dommage, yf I may' / 'By ² my sowle,' answerd the Captayne, 'grete nede ye shal haue to do

² MS. read *My.*

soo.' And without ony moo wordes they departed / And whan they were out of thoost or siege / the gentylman toke leue of the Captayne, and secretly entred in to
 4 the toune for to recounte the tydinges of the two brethern / and whan he came to the gate he was anone knownen, and the yate was opened to hym, & gladly he was welecommed of eueryone / and they
 8 demanded tydynges of hym / whiche ansuerd to them.

The captain and the gentleman leave the king. The gentleman secretly enters the town to give tidings of the brethren.

'Sires, make good chere, For soone ye shal haue the moost noblest socours that euer was seen / and wete it wel that the king of Anssay abydeth so long, that he
 12 shal be certaynly othre slain or take, & his peopple al dyscomfyted, take, or putte to deth.' Thenne byganne the joye to be so grete thrugh the toune that they withoutforth herd the bruyt therof, and wounded moche
 16 what it might be / and announced it to the kyng.

He tells the people that the King of Anssay will be either slain or taken, and his people overcome;

whereat they make a joyful noise.

'By my feyth,' said the kynge, 'they recomforte themself for the commyng^t of thoo two children by whome that knyght hath deffyed vs, For ¹as I trow, they
 20 haue herd some tydynges therof, and þerfor they make suche joye.' 'In the name of god,' said an auncyent knight, 'al this may be / but good were to take heede thereto / For there nys none litel enmy, but we ought

The King of Anssay says they rejoice because of the succour of

¹ fol. 112 b.

the children who have defled him.

An ancient knight advises the king to take heed of the report.

24 to haue doubte therof. For I know them wel ynough by semblaunt. For or euer they come hyther from poytou we shold haue brought about a parte of our wy^H.' Now I shal leue to spek of the kynge / and shal
 28 retourne to speke of hym that brought tydynges of the two bretheren in to the toune. Whan the knyght thanne was entred as byfore is said, he went fourth vnto the Castel where the pucelle Cristyne was / and

The Luxembourg knight goes to the castle where the maid Christine dwells,

32 after hys obeyssance don vnto her, he reherced to her al the playn trouth of the mayntene & countenaunce of the two bretheren / and he said to her / 'how Anthony bare a claw of a Lyon in his face' / and shewed to her
 36 hys grete fyerte & his grete strengthe / Also how

and describes Anthony and Regnald to her.

Regnald had but one eye / and the beaulte of theyre bodyes & of their membris / wherof she merueyld moche, & said that it was grete dommage, Whan eny contreyfayture was in the membres of suche noble men. 4 And now cesse thystory to speke of them / and retourneth to tel of the captayne that retourneth to thoost toward Anthony and Regnald. /

The captain arrives at the two brethren and their host,

and recounts the king's proud answer, and how the knight left him to go to Luxembourg.

¹ fol. 113.

The brethren send word through the host that those who have no will to fight can go home,

but the host cries, 'Let us go forth upon your enemies.'

The host marches forward to a little river,

where they rest, sup, and appoint a good watch.

At day-spring they are ready; 200 men of arms and 100 crossbowmen are left to take charge of the camp.

Thystorye sayth that so long rode the Captayne 8 that he came in to thoost of the two bretheren, & recorded to them how he had fulfylled hys message, & recounted word by word the proude ansuere of the king, and how he had deffyed hym in theire byhalf / 12 and also how the knyght was departed fro hym, & was gon to Lucembourgh to tel there ¹ of theire commyng / And whan the two bretheren herd hym they were full joyous / and soone made cryees thrughe theyre oost, 16 that al they that had no wyll for to fyght & abyde the batayll shuld draw themself aparte, & gaf to them leue to retourne agayn in theire Countrey / but they escryed them self with an hye voys. 'Ha / a, franc 20 demoyseaux make your trompettes to be sownded, & lete vs go forth vpon your enemyes / For we ben not come in your companye / but for to take thauenture with you suche as god shal send vs / Ha, lordes, goo we 24 & renne vpon our enemyes, For with goddes grace, & with the good wyll that we be of, they shal soone be dyscomfyted.' Whan thenne the two bretheren herd the ansuerd of theire peple they were joyfull, and made 28 theire oost to departe, & came & lodged vpon a lytel ruyere / and the vantgarde & the grete bataill lodged togidre, bycause they might goo no ferþer / and they soupped togidre, and after went to reste them, & made 32 good watche / and at day spryng they were al redy / and lefte to kepe their lodgis two houndred men of armes with an \emptyset crosbowes / and thenne the oost in fayre aray marched forth. There myght men see 36

baners & standarts in the wynd, and vnder them the flour of cheualrye in good aray & fayre ordynaunce / there had ye sene salades & helmets shynyng clere / 4 and harneys knokyng togidre that grete beaute it was to see. They kept & marched nygh togidre, so that one passed not that other. And Anthony and Regnauld rode at the first frount, mounted vpon two grete horses 8 armed of al pieces. And ¹in that estate and aray they went tyl they came vpon a lytel mountayne / and sawe fro thens in the valey the toune & Castel of Lucembourgh, and the gret siege that aduyrouned it 12 about. And wete it þat they of the siege had not yet perceyued thoost of the two bretheren / but they were all asured þat they shuld haue the batayll. Thenne sent anthony foure houndred helmets for to scarmysshe 16 the siege / and the oost folowed with lytel paas in fayr aray of batayll / And on the wynges of thoost were knigtes and Crosbowes in fayre ordynaunce. Now tell we of the foure houndred fyghting 20 men that went for to scarmysshi with them of the siege. /

Thystory saith that the foure houndred fyghtyng men entred vpon theire enemyes, and slew &

24 hew doun al that they recounted / And whan they were come nygh to the kingis tente, they of the night watche that were not yet vnarmed went ayenst them, for the cry that they made that was 'Lusynen' / many sperys

28 were putte there al to pieces, and many one cast doun to the ground / and the gretest dommage tournd vpon them of the siege / but sodaynly the kyng armed hym self, and putte hym vnder his banere byfore his tente /

32 and whiles they held foot alle thoost was armed, & drew them toward the kyngis banere. And he demanded of them, 'Fayre lordes, what affray is this?'

'By my feyth,' said a knight, 'they are men of armes 36 that entred in your oost ryght fyvers, and they call

They march forth
in good order;
Anthony and
Regnauld in
front on two
great horses.

¹ fol. 113 b.

They come to a
little mountayne,
from which they
see the town and
castle of Luxem-
bourg and the
siege around it.
The besiegers do
not see the
relieving host.

Anthony
sends 400 skir-
mishers in
advance.

These knights
slay all they
encounter,

and come nigh
the king's tent,
which was de-
fended by his
night watch.

The king arms
himself,

and asks his
men what affray
is this?

A knight answers
that men of
arms have

damaged them
sore, but the
night watch has
driven them
back.

¹ fol. 114.

Anthony with his
men comes up in
battle array,

and the king
comes forth to
meet him.

The battle
begins, and
much blood is
split.

Anthony fights
so well

that the most
hardy dare not
abide him.

Regnald also
does great feats
of arms.

² fol. 114 b.

Lusynen, and they haue adommaged you sore / and yf it had not be the nyght watche the losse had be greter,
For they haue faught with them valyauntly / and haue made ¹them to goo back by force.' 'By my feyth,' said 4
the kynge / 'these damoyseaulx, in whos behalf I am deffyed, haue not taryed long to come & bere dom-
mage to me / but wel I think for to auenge me therof.' Thenne is come Anthony and his batay^H, which made 8
his trompettes to be sowned clerly. And whan the kyng perceyued them he came withforth the lodgis in fayre aray & batay^H renged. And thenne the bataylles recountedre eche other / and archers & cros- 12
bowemen approuched & bygan to shoote, and there were slayne & hurt many one of the king^t of Anssays party,
and neuertheles the grete batay^H assembled togidre / and there was grete occysyon & fyers medlee. And 16
thenne anthony broched his hors with the sporys, the spere alowed, & smote a knyght by such vertue that the targe nor his cote of stele might not warauntyse hym,
but that he threw hym doun to therthe al deed. 20
And thenne he drew out his swerd^l, and smote on the lyfte syde & on the ryght syde, gyuyng grete & pesaunt strokes, in so moche that in a short while he was so knownen thruh al the batay^H that the moost hardy 24
of them alle durst not abyde hym. Thenne came Regnald mounted vpon a grete Courser callyng 'Lusygnen,' which made so grete appertyse of armes that alle his enemyes redoubted hym. Thenne was the baytay^H 28
fyers, cruel, and mortal on bothe partyes / but alwayses the gretest losse & dommage tourned vpon the kyng of Anssay & his peple, which was moche dolaunt & sorow-
fu^H, & envertued hym self strong, and made with his 32
handes grete vasselage / but al that preuaylled hym nought, For the poytevins ²were ryght strong^t, hard, &
fel lyke lyons / and theire were the two lordes so puyssaunt that none so bold^t was there that durst abyde 36

them. Thenne sawe wel the kynge by the puyssance & strength of the two brethern, that he myght no lenger suffre theire force.

The King of Anssay sees he cannot withstand them.

4 Cap. XXV. How Anthony & Regnald dyscomfyted the kynge of Anssay tofore lucembourgh / and how he was take.

The kyng^t thenne, which was a valyaunt man & strong^t, cryed with a hye voys ‘Anssay, Anssay, lordes & barons be not abasshed, For the batayll is oures’ / and at his callyng^t his peuple toke courage, & assembled them self ayen togidre about their kynge, 12 and made a fyers enuahye¹ vpon the poyteuyns / there was many man slayn / hewen & sore hurte with grete doleur. That mornyng^t was fayre & clere, & the soonne shoone bright vpon the helmets / and caused

He encourages his people,

16 the gold & syluer ther on to ²resplendysshe, that fayre it was to see. And they of the toun^e that herde this grete affray, toke theire armes; & eche of them made good watche, For they were ryght ferdfull & doubtous 20 of treson. And the knyght which anounced to them the socours of the two breþern was with the pucelle Crystyne in a hye toure, & loked out at a wyndowe / and he knew wel that it was Anthony & Regnald, that

they rally and again fiercely attack the Poitevins.

24 were come for to fight ayenst the king^t and his peple, & anon called with an hye voys, ‘My lady, cōme hither & see the floure of knyghtod^t, of prowesse & hardynes / cōme & see honour in his siege roiall, & 28 in his mageste / cōme & see the god of armes in propre figure.’ ‘Frend,’ said the pucelle / ‘what is that ye say to me?’ ‘I calle you,’ sayd the knight, ‘to come hither & see the flour of noblesse & of all 32 curtoysye, that fro³ ferre land is come hither for to fyght with your enemyes for to kepe your honour,

* fol. 115.

The noise of the battle is heard by the towns-folk, and by the knight messenger who is with the maid Christine.

He asks her to look at her champions,

¹ Fr. *envaye* = attack. ² *for* in MS.

the children of
Lusignan.

When the maid
sees the slaughterer

she is full of
grief for being
the cause of
such deeds.

¹ fol. 115 b.

Anthony, seeing
the havoc made
on his host,

resolves to fight
the King of
Anssay.

He rushes upon
the king,
smites him,

and casts him
from his horse.

He makes him
prisoner.
Four knights are
appointed to
guard him.

your lande, & your peple / this are the two children of Lusynen, that be cōme for to defend you ayenst the king^t of Anssay & al^H his puyssance, and to putte theire honour & lyf in auenture for to kepe your 4 honour sauf.' Thenne came the mayde at the wyn-dowe, & beheld the mortal batay^H & horrable medlee / sayeng in this manere : 'O Veray god, what shal^t doo this pouere orphenym / bettre it had be that I had 8 drowned myself, or that I had be putte to deth in some other wyse, or elles that I had be deed whan I yssued out of my moders wombe / than so many creatures shuld be slayne & perysse for myn owne 12 synne.' Moche dolaunt & heuy was the yong^t damoy-selle of the grete myschief that she sawe, For in certayn thoccysyon was grete on both partyes, For the king recomforted his peuple by his wo[r]þy conten- 16 aunce & valyaunt maynten ; For with his propre swerd^t he moch^t adommaged his enemys poyteuyns. ¹But Anthony, seeyng the grete dommage that the kyng bare vpon his peple / he was dysplaysed with, & sayd 20 in hym self : 'By my feyth, thy lyf or myn shal not be long^t, For rather I wold dey than to suffre & see my peuple so murdryd before me.' Thenne he sporyd hys hors / and fyersly as a lyon rane vpon the king^t. and 24 with his swerd^t of stèle smote hym vpon the hyest part of his helmet by suche strength & vertue that he made hym to be enclyned vpon þe hors neck, so sore astonyed that he ne wyst wheþer it was nyght or day, nor he 28 had no force ne power to helpe ne redresse hymself vpward / and Anthony that this sawe, putte his swerd^t in the shethe ayen ; & toke the king by the middes of the body / drew hym fro the hors, & so rudely cast 32 hym to therthe that vnnethe hys herte brake within his bely / and after toke hym to foure knighting, and charged them on theire lyues that they shuld kepe hym, so that þey myght ansuere hym of it. And they 36

said that so shuld they doo / and they thanne bonde hym & lede hym out of the batay^H, and called xxv^{ti} archers with them. And after these thinges thus doon
 4 Anthony retourned in the prees, callyng^t ‘Lusynen’ with a hye voys, & said: ‘Now lordes & barons, gyue grete strokes, & spare none, For the journey is ours thankyng^t be to god ; For I haue take the kynge of
 8 Anssay my pryonner, that so grete vylonny haþ don to the gentyl pucelle Cristyne.’ Thenne was the medlee rude & paryllous / and there dide the bretheren so moche of armes, that al tho that saw them said, that
 12 they sawe neuer two so valyaunt knyghtes. What shuld preuay^H you long compt^e. ¹ Whan the Anssays peopple knew that theire kynge was take, they neuer syn made no deffense / but wer alle outhre slayne or
 16 take. And there gate the poytevyns grete conqueste & noble proye, and lodged them self in the pauyllons & tentes of the king of Anssay & of hys peple. And was the kinge brought in Anthony's tente, which a
 20 lytel byfore was hys owne propre tente ; wherfore the king^t myght not hold his owne tonge, but said: ‘By my feyth, damoyseaulx, wel sayth he trouth that sayth / “that god doth / he doth anoone” / For this day, in
 24 the mornyng, men had doo here within but lytel for your commandement.’ ‘Sire,’ sayd Anthony, ‘your folyshnes & synne is cause therof ; For tofore ye wold rauysshe by force the pucelle Crystyne lady of this
 28 toune / but therof ye shaſt be payed after your deserte, For I shal yeld your self vnder her subgect^eion.’ Thenne whanne the kyng^t vnderstode hym, he was shamfast & woou^H / and as dysolate & dyscomfyte,
 32 ful^t heuyly ansuerd in this manere: ‘Sith now it is thus vnfortunatly happed with me, rather I wyl dey than to lyue.’ ‘Nay,’ sayd Anthony, ‘ye shal delyuere your self / no doubtē of / vnto þe mercy & subgect^eion
 36 of the pucelle.’

They lead him out of the battle.

Anthony now urges his men to give great strokes, and to spare none, and tells them he has made the king prisoner.

¹ fol. 116.

The king's people give up hope after he is taken.

He is brought to Anthony, and confesses that ‘that god doth, he doth anone.’

Anthony tells the king that he is to blame for desiring to seize Christine,

and announces that he is to be delivered into her hands.

Cap. XXVI. How the kyng of Anssay was
lede byfore the pucelle Crystyne.

¹ fol. 116 b.

Thenne called Anthony to hym the two barons, ambaxadours that were come to Lusynen, with 4 the said gentylman fro Lucembourgh and xx^{ti} other knyghtes of poytou, and to them said in this manere : ‘ Now lede me this kinge tofore þe damoyselle Crystyne, and recommande vs moche vnto her / and that we send 8 her / her enemy pryonner, for to do with hym her wyȝ. ’ And thenne they departed, & lede the king as they were youen in commandement / and came to the toune, where they were wel festyed & honourably 12 receyued. And thenne the Citezeyns conduyted them toward the pucelle, theire lady Crystyne, with grete joye. ‘ Noble lady,’ said the messagers, ‘ the two yong damoyseaulx of Lusynen recommande them hertyly 16 vnto you, ²and send you this kyng your enemy pryonner, to doo with hym after your dyscrecyon & wylle.’ ‘ Fayre lordis,’ ansuerd the damoyselle / ‘ herto behoueth gret guerdon / but I am not puyssaunt 20 ynough for to reward them as they haue deseruyd. I pray to god deuoutely that of hys grace he wyl rewarde them to whom I am moch bonden / and I pray you, fayre lordes, that on my behalf ye wyl pray my two 24 yong lordes that they vouchesauf to come and lodge them self here within, & as many of theyre barons with them as it shal lyke them good. & in þe meane while men shal burye the deed bodyes, & the deed 28 horses shal be brent / and also they of my Counseyl shal take theire best aduys to see how I shal reward them of theire grete peyne & traueyl, that they haue suffred for me vnworthy þerof, and to recompense 32 them of theire grete expenses & dommages in the best wyse that we can or shal mowe. And ye, kynge of Anssay, ye swere vnto vs by your ryalte that ye shal

Anthony de-
spatches the
King of Anssay
under guard
to Christine,

² fol. 117.

who gives great
thanks,

and hopes God
will reward
them.

She says her
council will
consider how
to recompense
her deliverers,

and binds the
king to promise
that he will stay

not departe from hens without the wy^H & gree of the two noble damoyseaulx, that here haue sent you toward me. For yet so moch^I I knowe / thankyng to god / 4 that I shuld mysdo^I to cast you in prysen / not for your sake / but for loue of them that hither haue sent you.' Whan therne the kynge vnderstode the wordes of the pucelle, he ansuerd al ashamed, 'Noble damoy- 8 selle, I swere you on my feyth that neuer hens I shal departe without your leue & theirs also; For so moch^I of wcle / of honour & of valyauntnes I haue sene in them, that moche I desyre to be acoynted with them / 12 how be it that grete dommage they haue borne vnto me & my men.' And therne the noble mayde made hym to be putte into a fayre chambre & riche, & with hym ladyes & damoyselles,¹ also knyghtis & squyers, 16 for to make hym to forge^I his losse, & forto reioye & haue hym out of melencolye. And thus don, the messagers retourned toward the tentes, & reported the mandement & prayer of the pucelle Cristyne vnto the 20 two bretheren, whiche were counseilled to goo thither; and ordeyned the mareshal of the oost for to gouerne theire peple vnto tyme that they came agayn / and also he commanded hym to make the deed bodyes to 24 be buryed, & to make the place clene where as the batay^H had be. Thenne they departed, acompanyed with theire baronnye / and ayenst them came, in theire best wyse, an houndred gentylmen / and also the 28 barons of the land mete with them, & made theire obeyssance ful honourably vnto the two brethern, prayeng them yet agayn, on theire ladys behalfe, that they vouchesauf to come & lodge them in the toune / 32 And they ansuerd that gladly they wold doo soo. Anthony was mounted vpon a grete Courser / and he had on hym a jache of Cramesyn velvet, al brouded & sette with perlis, and held a grete vyretton in his hand. 36 And in lyke & semblable manere went hys brother

in the town until
the brethren are
satisfied.

This done
he is given a fair
chamber.
Knights and

¹ fol. 117 b.
ladies are sent
to keep him
company.

The guard of the
king returns to
the brethren,

who leave their
army in charge
of the marshal,

and accompanied
with their barons
go towards the
town.

The barons of Luxembourg, who come to meet them, are astonished at the appearance of the brethren,

and marvel at Anthony's claw,

and at Regnald's one eye.

¹ fol. 118.

They enter the town amid the sound of trumpets.

The houses are richly decorated,

and the windows full of women.

As the brethren ride through the town, the people say that it would not be wise to oppose them.

Regnald. And whan the barons of Lucembourgh sawe the two brethern, they wondred moch of theire fyersnes, gretnes & myght, and wel said that there was no man that might withstand ne abyde theire 4 puyssaunce / and moche they merueyld of the Lyons claw that appiered in Anthony's cheke, & said that yf ne had be that he were the fayrest man in the world / and moche they playned Regnald of that he had but 8 one eye, For in al his other membres he passed of beaulte al oper men.

¹ In this partie sayth thistorye, that in noble estate & faire aray entred the two brethern in to the toune 12 of Lucembourgh ; & before them sowned trompettes in grete nombre, with heraults & menestrels ; And Cyte-seyns had hanged theire houses withoutforth toward the stretes, with theire best & rychest hangyng clothes / 16 and the stretes where the said lordes passed were couered on high with lynen clothes, that no rayne or other fowH wedryng myght lette peire entree within the toune / and many noble & worshipful ladyes, bourgeys 20 wyues / damoyselles and faire maydens, were in theire best rayments, eche one after the state & degree that she was of / lokyng out at wyndowes for to behold & see the noble brethern & theire felawship. 24

Thystorye thanne sayth that the two bretheren de-parted out of theire tentes with noble companye, as barons, knightes, squyers, & other gentylmen / and as vyctoryous prynces rode fuH honourably vnto 28 Lucembourgh, and thrugh the toune, where as they were behold with joyous herte of euery one, sayeng that one to other: See yonder be two the fyers men, bretheren that are to be redoubted / he is not wyse 32 that taketh noyse or debat with them / and they had grete wonder of Anthonyes cheke / and also for certayn it was a straunge thing to behold & see / but the grete beaulte that was in his body caused that inconueny- 36

ence to be forgoten / And thus they rode toward the Castel. The ladyes & damoyselles beheld them out of the wyndowes / and said that they neuer sawe two
 4 damoyseaulx of more noble affayre. And thenne they came to the Castel, wher they alighted, and entred fourthwith into the halle, where as the noble Crystyne mete them at the gate, wel acompanyed of ladyes &
 8 damoyselles in grete nombre, and of knightes & squyvers / and with a joyous contenaunce & gracyous maynten honou'rably receyued them & gretly festyed them.

The halle was hanged nobly with ryche clothes after
 12 the vse of the land, and fro the halle they went in to another chambre, moch noble & ryche, & þero the pucelle Cristyne bygan to say to them in this manyere :
 ‘My right dere lordes, I thanke you moch, as I may
 16 of the noble socours & help that ye haue don to me / I am not so moch worth as ye ought to be rewarded of / not that withstanding I shal endeuoure me therto / al shuld I laye of my land in pledge this tene yere day.

20 And also, my lordes, of your noble grace ye haue sent to me the king of anssay, myn enemy, of the which plaise it you to knowe that I am not she to whom oughte þe punysshement of hym / but to you appar-

24 teyneth to doo therwith your playsire & volente, that haue had the parl & peyne for to ouercome & take hym your pryonner / wherfore after that right requyreh he is yours, & may doo with hym whatsoeuer
 28 it plaise you / and I remyse hym in your pocession.

For as touching my persone I gyue hym ouer vnto you, & loke not to medle ony more with him tofore you.’

‘Noble damoyselle,’ said thanne anthony, ‘sethen it is
 32 your playsire, we shal ordeyne wel þerof, in suche wyse that it shal be to your grete honour & prouffyte / and to hym grete shame & confusyon / no doubt of / And wete it that my broþer and I are not cōme hither for
 36 loue of your siluer, but for to susteyne rayson & right /

The ladies say
they have never
seen such noble
youths.

At the castle

Christine meets
them in the hall,

and receives
them honour-
ably, and richly
feasts them.
fol. 118 b.

She thanks the
brethren for
their help,

and promises to
reward them.

She gives back
the King of
Anssay into
their hands

to deal with as
they wish.

Anthony replies
that they came
not for silver,
but to sustain
justice,

and because
they think all
noble men
should aid
widows and
orphans.

¹ fol. 119.

He declines all
reward,
save the lady's
favour and good
grace.

Christine is
abashed,

and wishes to
pay the soldiers
of the brethren,

but her offer is
refused.

The steward an-
nounces dinner;

they wash,
and send for the
King of Anssay,

who sits down
to dinner with
them.

¹ fol. 119 b.

also considered that alle noble men oughte to helpe & ayde the wydowes, orphenynis, and the pucelles also. And forasmoch also that we were truly informed, that the kinge of Anssay made grete werre ¹anenst you & 4 your land wrongfully, wherfor no doubte of / of all your goodes we wyl not take the value of one peny / but alonly to be receyued in your noble fauour & good grace, al vylounye excepted.' Whan the pucelle 8 Cristyne vnderstode these wordes, she was abasshed of the grete honour that the two bretheren dide vnto her / not that withstandyng she ansuerd in this manere: 'For southe, my gracyous lordes, at lest it were no 12 raison, but that I payed wel your peple that be come hither to take your wages as sawdoyers.' 'Damoyselfe,' said penne Anthony, 'vouchsaf to suffre that we haue said, For my lord our fader, & my lady our moder, 16 haue payed them alredy for a hole yere day, or euer they departed out of our land / & yet it is not fullyssh a moneth complet syn that we departed thens; And ouermore wete it that syluer & gold we haue ynough. 20 Wherfore, noble demoyselle, ye lese your wordes to speke therof, For certayn it shal none other be' / and she thenne thanked them in her best manere ryght humbly.

24

Thenne came the styward, & enclyned hym tofore the pucelle, & said: 'My lady, ye may wesshe whan it playse you, For al thing is redy to dynner' / 'whan, my lordes,' she said, 'be redy þerto, I am 28 playssed.' Whom Anthony ansuerd: 'noble damoyselfe, we be al redy whan ye vouchesaf to go therat.' and thenne they toke eche other by þe handes & wesshe. And Anthony desired the king of Anssay to be sent 32 for / and made hym sette first of al at the table / and after the pucelle and syn Regnauld / and anthony satte last. And nygh to them satte foure of the noblest barons of the land. And along the halle were ¹other 36

tables dressed, wherat sette all other gentylmen, barons & squyers, eche one after hys degree. Of the seruyse I nede not to hold you long comte, For they were so 4 nobly & haboundauntly serued, that nothing accordyng to such a ryall feste they wanted of. And whan they had dyned they wesshe handes, and graces were said, and all the tables voyded. thanne said the king of 8 Anssay in this manyere : ‘ Lordes damoyseaulx, vouchesauft to here my wordes. It is trouth that the wyll of god & myn vnfortune hath brought me to that caas, that by your valiauntes & prowes I am & haue be 12 bothe myself & al my peple dyscomfyte, & ouer that ye haue take me your pryonner / but I ensure you, consideryng your highi prowesse, your bounte, & your noble assayres, I am glad & joyous to fynde me now 16 with you, For I shal be the bettre therfore al my lyf naturel ; and syth, fayre lordes, þat my presence & long abydyng here with you may nought preuaylle to you / humbly I besechi you, as I best can, that it playse you 20 to putte me to raisounable raunson & payment port able to me, so that I be not al dystroyed nor dys heryted / thaugh it lyeth now in your power / bui haue pyte on me, & punyssh me not aftir the regarde 24 of my follyssh enterpryse / how be it þat rygour of justice requyreh it.’ ‘ By my hed,’ said Anthony, ‘ who that shuld punyssh you after the regarde of the grete iniurye, vylonnye, & dommage that ye haue don, 28 and yet had purposed to do to this noble damoyselle without eny lawful cause / ye were not puissant to make amedes suffysaunt therof / but for as moche that ye knowleche your synne the lasse penytence shal ye 32 haue / and I wyl wel that ye knowe that my brother & I be not come from our countre hither for hoop of getyng of siluer vpon you nor vpon other / but for desire & hope of getyng of honour & good fame or 36 renommee, without to haue ony wyll or appetyt to

MELUSINE.

Dinner over,
hands washed,
and grace said,

the King of
Anssay
declares himself
discomfited,

and beseeches
that a reasonable
ransom may be
named,

and prays that
he be not dealt
with according
to the extreme
rigour of justice.

Anthony answers
that he would be
unable to make
amends if he
were duly pun
ished for the
wrong he had
committed;

but as he and
his brother seek
honour and not
silver,

¹ fol. 120.

they give him liberty on condition that he pay Christine for all the cost his attempt has put her to,

and that he undertakes never again to injure her.

The king agrees to these terms,

and Anthony adds,

that the king must build and endow a priory for twelve monks,

who shall pray for the souls of those who have been slain in the battle.

The king swears on the Evangelis to keep these terms;

haue mortal rychesses. Wherfore, as touchyng our part, we ¹now remyse & putte you free quytte & at your lyberte / sauf that we taxe you to pay to this noble pucelle al such dommages that she hath had at your cause / and þerof ye shal gyue good pledges or euer ye departe hens, And yet morouer ye shal swere vnto her vpon the holy Euaungiles, that neuer ye shal bere, ner ye shal suffre to be borne ony manere of dommage ne dyshonour to the forsayd pucelle that is here present / but at your power ye shal gyue her ayde, help, & comfort at al tymes anenst al them that iniurye or dommage wold doo to her. And wel I wyl that ye knowe that yf ye wyl not swere & accorde to that I haue said with your good wylle, I shal send you in to such a place, wherout the dayes of your lyf ye shal not escape. And whan the kynge vnderstode these wordes he ansuered in this manyere. ‘Sire, I am wylling & redy to swere that conuenant, yf the noble mayde be content of that ye haue ordeyned & said.’ ‘By my feyth,’ said she, ‘I consent me therto, syn it is my lordes plaire’ / and yet morouer said Anthony suche or semblable wordes as folowen /

‘**Y**et, sire, I haue not al said that ye muste doo, For ye muste doo founde a Pryoure of twelue monkes & the pryor, in suche place there as my lady shal ordeyne / and ye shal endowe & emposesse them with rentes & reuenue conuenable for theire lyuyng & for their successors for euermore / the said monkes & pryor to pray there for the sowles of them that haue be slayne of your part & of myn in this batayn.’ ‘By my feyth,’ said thenne the king, ‘I promyse you þat so shal I doo, and good pledges & hostages I shall gyue you, & to my lady to be asured therof.’ Thenne sware the kynge by hys feyth vpon the holy Euaungiles that he shuld hold & accomplishsshe al that beforesaid is / & gaf & delyuered good hostages / & lettres patentes were

therof made vnder hys seal, & the seales of al the
 1 barons of his lande. And that don, Anthony said
 to the kynge / ‘I now gyue you, and delyuere free al
 4 the prysoneours that we & our folke haue take, and your
 tentes & pauyllons also / but the hauoir that is departed
 amonges my felawes I may not it rendre or yeld² to
 you / And thenne he made to be delyuered to hym
 8 foure thousaund prysouners or therabout, al men of
 estate & faytte / And thenne the kynge enclyned hym-
 self, & thanked hym moch therof. What shuld I
 make long³ conte / the feste bygane sumptuous &
 12 grete thrughe the toun of Lucembourgh, & specially
 in the Castel / and eueryone spake of the grete noblesse
 and curtoysye that Anthony & regnald his brother had
 shewed to the king⁴ of Anssay /

and he and his
 lords delivered
 1 fol. 120b.
 letters patent
 agreeing to the
 same under all
 their seals.

Anthony then
 delivers four
 thousand
 prisoners to the
 king.

There is a great
 feast in Luxem-
 bourg,

and all men
 praise the
 courtesy of
 Anthony.

16 Cap. XXVII. How the kinge of Anssay called to hym al the barons of Lucem- bourgh to Counseylle.

² Thenne called the king⁵ of Anssay al the barons of
 20 the land to Counseyll, and said to them : ‘ Fayre
 lordes, Whan the yron is hoot it moste be wrought &
 forged ; how be it thenne that I haue be yl wyller
 bothe to you & to your lady / the tyme is now come
 24 that I wold her honour and prouffit & youres also /
 lyst & here, For god hath sent good auenture to you,
 yf ye can take it in gree.’ Thenne said the barons :
 ‘ Now, sire, syth that ye haue entamed þe matere /
 28 vouchesauf to declare vnto vs the sentence therof.’

1 fol. 121.
 The King of
 Anssay calls the
 barons of Lux-
 embourg to
 council,

‘ Ye moste,’ said the kynge, ‘ fynde the manere &
 meane that Anthony take your lady to his wyf, and
 he to be your lord, For thenne ye shal mowe saye
 32 surely, þat no nede ye haue of none other / & none so
 hardy were to take an henne from you ayenst your
 wyll.’ And they ansuered thus : ‘ Sire, yf Anthonye

and advises
 them to find
 means to make
 Anthony marry
 Christine.

They say they
will be glad to
do so.

The King of
Anssay goes to
Anthony and
asks him to send
for his brother
and his council.

This is done.

Anthony and his
people come to
the barons of
Luxembourg,
who do them
reverence.

¹ fol. 121 b.

The King of
Anssay, in the
name of the
barons of Lux-
embourg says,
seeing that
Anthony and
his brother will
accept no gift
of Christine,

will Anthony
grant them a gift
of a kind which
will not lessen
his possessions?

Anthony answers
he will, if it is
something he can
do honourably.

wold do soo we were therof full glad & joyous.' 'Now thenne, fayre lordes, lete me deele therwith / and I hope to god I shal brynge the matere to a good ende. Abyde and tary here a lytel, & I shal goo speke with 4 hym.' Thenne came the kynge tofore Anthony, & said: 'Noble man & curtoys damoyseau, the barons of this land desire & pray you, that ye, your brother, & your Counsey^H come and entre in to this chambre. 8 For they desyre moch to speke with you for your prouffyt & honour.' 'By my feyth,' said anthony, 'ryght gladly.' And thenne he called to hym hys brother & them of theire Counsey^H / & syn entred in 12 to the chambre / and the barons of the land that were there enclyned themself, & made grete reuerence to the two brethern. Thenne spake the kynge of Anssay, & said: 'Fayre lordes, these two noble damoyseaulx are 16 cōme hither at your requeste & prayer / declare now to them your wylle.' And they ansuerde to hym: 'Noble kinge, humbly we beseche you, that ye anounce & shewe to them our entencion, that ye knowe ¹wel 20 ynough.' 'By my feyth,' said the kyng, 'I wyl.' And thenne suche wordes as folowen he bygan to say /

'A nthony, noble man, curtoys & valyaunt knight,
A pe barons of this Countree haue had regarde to 24
the grete honour that ye haue borne & shewed to theire
lady, to her lande, & to them / also they haue con-
sidered how noughe ye wyl take of theyre lady ner of
them / and for asmoche that they desyre your wele & 28
honour, they humbly beseche your good grace that it
playse the same to graunte to them a yefte, the which
shal not lasse your good nor hauoys / but shal rather
augmente your honour.' 'By my feyth, noble kynge, yf 32
it be of that thing that I may recouere / touching myn
honour, I graunt it right gladly.' 'Certainly,' said the
king, 'theire requeste is thenne fulfilled, For they
desyre none other but your honour.' 'Now, sey thenne, 36

said Anthony, 'what they desyre of me.' 'Damoyseau,' said the kinge / 'they wyl gyue you the Duchesse of Lucembourgh, þeire liege lady, to your wyf / reffuse 4 not that noble yefte' /

The king offers the Duchess of Luxembourg to Anthony to wife.

Whan anthony vnderstode hym he stood^t penselful long tyme / and syn said in this manere: 'By my feith, fayre lordes, I supposed neuer to cōme vnto this 8 countre for that quarrell; but sethen I haue accorded to you I shal not gaynsay it / lete now the pucelle be sent for, For yf she be playsed therwith I consent me þerto.' Thenne was the damoyselle fete thither by

When Anthony understands the position,

12 foure of the noblest barons of the land, the whiche recounted to her al the faytte, wherof she was ryght glad & joyous / how wel she made of it no semblaunt.

he asks that the maid should be sent for, and says if she agree, he will consent.

And whan she entred in to the Chambre she made her

Christine is told what has been done, and is right glad.

16 obeyssance tofore antony, & salued alle the barons there / and as she beheld Anthony she bygan to wexe in her vysage more rede than a rose / and thenne the barons reherced & shewed vnto her al this affayre.

She enters the chamber.

20 And whan the pucelle had herd them speke 'she ansuerd to them in this manere: 'Fayre lordes, I rendred & yeld thankes & mercys vnto almyghty god, to his blessed moder, and to you also, of the grete honour

When she sees Anthony, her face becomes redder than a rose.

¹ fol. 122.

24 that now happeth to me, For I pouere orphenyme am not worthy to be addressed in to so highe a place as to haue to my lord the flour of knighthode and the noblesse of alle the world / and of that other part, I

28 wote & knowe wel that ye whiche are my liege men, that bettre knowe myn own affayres than I doo my self / wold not counsayle me that thinge, but it were to my grete prouffyt & honour. Wherfor I ne oughte 32 nor wyl not gaynsey it / but I am al redy to do therof your playsire.' /

She declares that though unworthy she is ready to do their pleasure.

Cap. XXVIII. How Anthony espoused
Crystyne, Duchesse of Lucembourgh. /

¹ fol. 122 b.

Anthony and
Christine are
assured together,
and on the next
morning they
are married.

That night
Anthony begets
a valiant heir,
who is called
Bertrand.

The King of
Anssay gives
leave to his
people to return
home, while he
remains to fulfil
his treaty.

Anthony, Reg-
nald, and the
king go through
the land and
visit the towns
and fortresses.

After his return
Anthony adds
the figure of a
lion to his arms.

³ fol. 123.
A messenger
arrives from the
King of Bohemia,

¹ ‘Forsoothe, noble lady,’ said the Barons, ‘ye say right wel & manerly.’ What shuld I bring ⁴ forth prolix or long talkyng? For shortly to say, they were assured togidre with gret joye / and on the next morne after they were espoused & maryed togidre, & was the feste holden right grete & noble, and the peple ⁸ of the land was ryght joyous whan they vnderstode & knew therof / and þat same nyght lay Anthony with the noble mayde Crystyne, and gate on her a moche valyaunt heyre, & was called Bertrand. The feste ¹² thenne endured longe sumptuous & grete, & grete ryalte was seen there / and anthony gaf noble & ryche jewels / and receuyed the homages of the lordes & barons of the land. And the king¹ of Anssay yaf leue to his peuple ¹⁶ to retourne into their Countrees / and abode with anthony with a pryuy² meyne for to fulfy³ & accomplisshes that he had promysed at traytee makyng⁴ of the peas. And soone after the due Anthony with his brother Regnald and the king¹ of Anssay and the baronnye, went thrugh the land to vysyte the tounes & fortresses & putte al thing¹ in good ordonnaunce / in so moche that euery man said, that he was one of the ²⁴ moost wysest pryncie that euer they sawe / and whan he had vysyted all þe land he retourned to Lucembourgh, where the duchesse Cristyne receyued hym right joyously / And thanne by thaduys of his Coun- ²⁸ sei¹ he adiousted to his armes the shadow or fygure of a Lyon, for cause of the duchery, wheroft the lady Cristyne had oftyme prayed hym to fore. And thus they soioured at Lucembourgh with grete dysport & ³² joye / tyl that a messager came fro the king¹ of Behayne there, whiche was brother to the king¹ of

² Fr. *privet maisgnée*.

Anssay, and was besieged within his tounē of praghe
by the paynemes & sarrasyns.

who is besieged
by the Sarasins
at Prague.

Cap. XXIX. How the kyng, of behayne
4 sent a messenger toward the king, of Anssay
his brother. /

Thystorye sayth that a messenger came to Lucem-
bourg fro the kyng Federyk of behayne, that
8 was moche valyaunt & a true man, whiche ryght strong
susteyned the feyth catholicaū ayenst the Sarasyns /
It is so that the paynemes entred in to his land / and
seeyng hym self not puyssaunt ynough for to gyue
12 them iourney of batayū, drew hym self & his peple
with hym in to hys tounē of Praghe / and had this
kyng Federyke but one only doughtir to his heyre,
whiche was named Eglantyne / & certayn it is that he

The valiant King
Frederick of
Bohemia,

16 was brother to the king¹ of Anssay. Wherfore he sent
a messenger to Lucembourgh there as the kyng of Anssay
his brother was at that tyme. And shortly to speke,
the messenger came & directed his lettres to the king¹

unable to give
battle to the
Paynims, with-
drew to Prague.

20 of Anssay, whiche opened & reddē it / by the tenoure of
whiche he vnderstode & knew the myschief where his
brother was in / and sayd al on high in heryng¹ of
eueryone there in this manere : ‘ Ha / a, Fortune, how

His heir is his
only daughter,
Eglantine.

24 art thou so peruerse & so crueū, certaynly² wel is he
deceyued þat trusteth in the nor in thy yestes by no
manere. it hath not suffysed the to haue ouerthrawen
me fro the vppermost stepp of thy whle vnto the

¹ fol. 123 b.
He sent a letter
to his brother,
the King of
Anssay,

28 lowest / but vtterly wylt dystroye me for euer, whan my
brother, whiche [is] one of the moost trewest & valiaunt
kyng¹ in the world, thou wylt so dysempare & putte
out fro his royaume, yf god of his grace purueye not of
32 remedy therto’ / and thenne he retourned hym self
toward anthony, & sayd : ‘ Ha / right noble & valyaunt

telling him how
matters stood.

The king after
reading it com-
plains against
fortune,

and tells
Anthony that it
is worse than
ever with him,

² Fr. version reads: *Certes l'omme est bien deceu que en
toy ne en tes dons se fie en riens.*

because now
that Anthony
has overthrown
his chivalry,

he is unable to
help his noble
brother Frederic
against the infidels.

² fol. 124.

Anthony is
sorrowful to
hear these
complaints.

He is given the
letter to read,
whereby he un-
derstands that
Zelodus, King
of Cracow, is be-
sieging Frederick
of Bohemia at
Prague.

Anthony asks
the king whether
he could be
soon ready to
accompany him
to succour
Frederick.

prynce, it is now with me wers than euer was / For your noble cheualrye & puyssaunce haue not only mated me & made lasse myn honour, but also ye haue dyscomfyted with me the moost true & valiaunt kyng⁴ that euer was of my lynee, & that more valyauntly hath deffended the cristen feyth ayenst thenemyes of god. For Federyke, my brother, noble kyng⁴ of Behayne, beyng sore oppressed & besieged within his toun of praghe by thinfideles & enemyes of god, writeth¹ vnto me ful tenderly for help & socoure / alas, now your grete fayttes in armes haue kept me therfro, so that I may not help hym / how be it that al 12 this commeth thrugh myn owne fawte & folyshe enterpryse, For god hath punysshed me lasse ynough than I haue deseruyd.⁵ And thenne he bygan to make suche sorowe that grete pite it was to see./ 16

² **T**hystorye sheweth in this partie that the duc Anthony was ryght dolaunt & sorrowful whan he vnderstode the pyteous bewayllyng⁶ of the king of Anssay, and said to hym in this manere: ‘Sire, telle 20 me why ye demene & make such dueyl.’ ‘By god,’ sayd the kynge, ‘wel I have cause / loke & see what the tenoure of this letre specyfyeth.’ Thenne toke anthony the lettred and redde it al ouer, Wherby he vnderstode & knew the grete myserye & myschief wherin Zelodus, kyng⁴ of Craco, held Federyk⁴, kyng⁴ of Behayne, besieged within the Cite of praghe. And thenne the noble duc Anthony consideryng⁴ the grete 28 myschief wherinne the Cristen peple was hold by the puyssaunce of the paynemes, his herte was al replenyssed with pite, and said in hym self that yf he might the Sarasyns shuld bye ful derly the peyne whiche they 32 made the Cristen peple to bere / and he thenne said to the kynge: ‘Sire, yf I wold helpe you for to socoure your brother, wold ye not be soone redy to goo thither-

¹ vnriteth in MS.

ward?' And whan the kyng vnderstod̄ thoos wordes
 he kneled dounē tofore the due, & said: 'Sire, yf ye
 wyl graunte me so moche of your grace / I swere &
 4 promyse you feythfully that I shall make Regnald your
 brother kyng of Behayne after the decesse of my
 brother, whiche is elder than I almost xx^t yere. For
 wete it that he hath none heyre sauf only a ryght fayre
 8 daughter, which is cleped Eglantyne / and she is about
 xv yere of age, & that pucelle shall I gyue, yf ye vouche-
 sauf, to Regnauld your brother.' 'By my feyth,' said
 thenne Anthony, 'and I accorde therunto. / goo thanne
 12 hastily to Anssay and make your mandement, and be
 with vs ayen within this thre wykes, and lode your
 people in yonder medowe, Where your tentes ¹as yet
 ben, and in the meane season I shal sende for my men,
 16 whiche are with a knyght of myn at the Leffe, where
 men had doon wrong to hym.' And the king ansuerde,
 'Noble & curteys lord, he rewardē you therof, that
 suffred deth for vs and bytter passyon.' And thenno
 20 he toke his leuo of the due and of the duches, of
 Regnauld, & of al the baronnye there, & syn mounted
 on horsback / and with his owne meyne rode tyl he
 came in to his land of anssay, sorowful for his losse
 24 & joyfull for the socours that the Duc Anthony pro-
 mysed to hym, for to helpe his brother ayenst the
 panemes & enemyes of god. /

The veray hystorye testyfyeth that so long rode the
 28 kinge of Anssay that he came in his land, where
 he was welcommēd of his baronnye / and soone went to
 vysyte & see his daughter Metydee, that was not yet
 two year old / and syn retourned with his barons / to
 32 whome he shewed al his affayre, and how he moste
 go socoure his brother; Also how Anthony & Regnald
 his brother shuld helpe hym therto with al theire pus-
 saunce. 'By feyth,' said thenne the barons, 'syth it is
 36 soo that thoo two brethern medlo with this enterpryse,

The king is glad,
 and ssys that if
 Anthony will go,

he will make
 Regnald king of
 Bohemia on his
 brother's death.

Anthony then
 asks the king to
 go to Anssay and
 to return with his
 people in three
 weeks.

¹ fol. 124 b.

The king thanks
 him,

and takes his
 leave.

He rides to
 Anssay, sorrow-
 ful for his losses,
 but glad that
 Anthony will
 help his brother
 against the
 Paynims.

The king arrives
 in his land,
 and visits his
 daughter
 Metydee.

He returns to
 his barons, and
 explains all his
 affairs.

The barons think
 that as the breth-
 ren of Lusignan

are going to help their king's brother, they are sure of success.

The king assembles a host of seven thousand men.

He leaves his land in charge of a noble baron, and in three weeks is back in Luxembourg.

¹ fol. 125,

The duke has nine thousand five hundred men;

one thousand of whom he leaves behind to guard the land, which is left in charge of the lord of Argemont.

hit may not fare but wel. For ayenst theire puyssance & worthynes may none withstand nor abyde / hast you thenne to make your cryees & mandement, For we al shall go with you.' Thenne made the kyng^t his oost 4 to be boden & sent for, & prayd al his frendes & alyez / & within a lytel space of tyme he assembled about seuene thousand fyghtyng men / and departed fro his royalme, whiche he lefte in good gouernaunce vnder a 8 noble baron of the land. And syn dide so moche by his journeys, that at thende of thre wykes he came & lodged hym & his oost byfore Lucembourgh, ¹in the medow where his tentes were lefte. And thenne were 12 also cōme the dukes people, that were in nombre fyue thousand helmets and a thousand V.C. archers & crosbowe men, beside them of the duchery, that were in nombre thre thousand, of þe whiche anthony toke 16 with hym two thousand and the other he lefte behynd for the sauegarde of the land / of þe whiche he ordeyned chief captayne and protectour a noble baron of poytou / and that was the lord of Argemount. /

20

Cap. XXX. How the duc Anthony toke hys leue of the Duchesse Crystyne, and went toward praghe with hys oost.

Now sayth here thy storye, that whan the Duc 24 Anthony toke his leue of the Duchesse hys wyf, she was right dolaunt & sory in herte, how wel she durst make no semblaunt / but she prayed hym to retourne assoone as he goodly myght / and he said 28 to her that so shuld he doo / And, morouer, he said to ²her in this manere / 'Duchesse, take good heede of your fruyte that groweth in your blood, and cheryssh your self / and yf goddis grace gyue that it be a sone, 32 make hym to be baptysed & named Bertrand, For thus is my playsire. Thenne they embrased & kyssed eche

Christine is sad at Anthony's departure, and begs him to return soon.

³ fol. 125 b.
Anthony bids her take care of herself on account of her unborn babe, and directs if it be a boy he is to be named Bertrand.

other, takyng leue one of other / and syn departed the
 duc & came to hys peuple, and made his trompettes
 to be sowned. Thenne mounted spere men on hors-
 4 back, and bygane euery man to marche forth in fayre
 aray. The vantgarde conduyted & lede the kynge of
 anssay and Regnald with hym, which was mounted
 vpon a hye Courser, armed of al pyeces except his
 8 helmet, and held a grete staf in hys fyst, and putte
 his men in ordre ful wel, & seemed wel to be a prynce
 courageous & of hye enterpryse / and after folowed the
 Cartes, Charyots & bagage, & the grete batay^H / and
 12 after siewed the ryergarde, which Anthony conduyted
 in fayre ordynaunce of batay^H, For it was tolde hym
 þat in that countre were many theevys / but the duc
 Anthony manded, & sent word fro fortresse to fortresse
 16 that yf they were so bold to take on hym or on hys
 peuple ony thing, that he shuld punyssh them in
 suche wyse that other shuld take ensample therof.
 And so he passed thrugh al the Leffe / and no man
 20 was so hardy that he durst take ony thing on hys oost.
 It is trouth that on an euen he lodged hym tofore the
 Cite Acon¹ with al hys oost / and the Citezeyns there
 made & presented to hym grete yeftes of ryches, wherof
 24 he thanked them moche, and proffred to them his ser-
 uyse, yf they myster of it. And on the morne after
 the masse he deslodged, & so long^t marched fourth on
 his way with his oost, that he came & lodged vpon
 28 the ryuere of Ryne, which is grete & meruayllous.
 And ²they of Coloyne made grete daunger to lete
 passe the oost thrughe the Cite at brydge / wherof
 anthonye was angry & dolaunt, and fyersly sent worde
 32 to them how he had entencion to reyse the siege, that
 the king^t of Craco had layed, & sette with lx thousand
 Sarasyns tofore the Cite of praghe, wherinne was in
 grete oppression and dystres the king of behayne,

The army
 marches away
 to the trumpet
 sound.
 The vanguard is
 led by Regnald
 and the King of
 Anssay;

then comes the
 baggage in the
 middle, as
 Anthony was
 told the country
 was full of
 thieves, and then
 the rearguard
 led by Anthony
 in good order.

At last they
 arrive at the
 Rhine.

* fol. 126.
 The men of
 Cologne object
 to the host pass-
 ing through the
 city.
 Anthony angrily
 tells them the
 reason of the
 expedition,

¹ Fr. Ays:—Aix la Chapelle, Ger. Aachen.

and asks if they
are on the
Paynims' side
or not.

When the men
of Cologne un-
derstand how
matters are,

they send four
burgesses,

who tell Anthony
they will let him
pass through on
condition that
the citizens are
protected from
all damage by
Anthony's men.

Anthony replies
that he wishes
them no harm,

and inquires if
any of his
ancestors had
at any time
done them any
misdeed.

¹ fol. 126 b.

The burgesses
return to the
city, and tell
their story to
the Council,

who can re-
member no
quarrel with
the Dukes of
Luxembourg.

and that they shuld send hym word yf they held with
the paynemes or nat / and vpon that he shuld take
hys aduys what he shuld doo / and also that magre
them he shuld fynd good passage, but not so short as 4
by theire Cite. And whan they of Coloyne under-
stode this mandement, & were wel infourmed of the
grete prowes & fyersnes of the two bretheren, they
were dredfu^H & doubtous. And soone after they sent 8
toward Anthony foure of þe notablest & moost worship-
fu^H burgeys of the cyte, whiche came & made to hym
ryght honourable and humble reuerence / and wondred
moche of hys fyersnes and proude contenaunce / not 12
that withstanding, they said to hym in this manere :
'right high & myghty prynce, the Citezeyns and com-
mynalte of Coloyne haue sent vs toward your good
grace. And know ye þat gladly they shal suffre you 16
& al your oost to passe feasibly thrugh the Cite, soo
that ye shal kepe & preserue them fro al dommage
that your peple might bere vnto them.' 'By my
feyth,' sayd Anthony, 'yf I had be wyllyng to doo the 20
contrary of theire wy^H, they shuld haue had of me
knowlege therof / and also I haue no cause to doo soo,
For I knowe not that they haue mysdoon to me of ony
thing, nor to the myn nother / How wel they cause 24
me to thinke other wyse / goo and telle to them, yf
they remembre not of old some mysdede don to them
by myn auncestry, or of the Dukes, my predecessours,
wherof as yet they be ¹not pacifyed & accorded / 28
that they wyl suffre me & myn oost passe surely / or
ellys to send me wordes therof.' Whan they vnder-
stode hys wordes & knew his wy^H, they retourned to
the Cyte, & announced to the Commynaltee the mande- 32
ment of the Duc 'Anthony. And they anone as-
sembled theire counsey^H, & the auncyent men / and
found that neuer they had no hate ne dyscorde with
the dukes of Lucembourgh, nother to theyre frendes 36

nor alyez / and that sethen he was so noble a man & so
valyaunt, they shuld lete hym passe, and al his oost
also. And they remanded to hym theire wylle with
4 grete yeftes of ryches that they made to be presented
to hys grace / and purveyed for hys oost moch of
vytay^H, as bred^k, wyne, and flessho / & ootys for theire
horses / And whan the Duc vnderstode theire ansuere
8 & sawe theire grete yeftes, he thanked them moche /
and was joyous of that they of Coloyne wold be hys
frendes. Wherfor he said to them, that yf they had
nede of hym & of hys powere, he was redy at theyre
12 commaundement / and they thanked hym ryght
humbly. And the duc Anthony made to gyue to
them that had brought to hym the said presents of
vytay^H, many ryche yeftes, that asmoch were worth, or
16 more than the presents & yeftes gyuen to hym by the
toune, For he wold not that thabytants of the Cyte
shuld suppose or thinke that he wold haue ought of
them for nought.

20 In this partye sheweth thy storye, how that same
nyght soiourned the oost byfore Coloyne, & was
wel refresshed of them of the Cite & of theire vytay^H.
For as the dukes commaundement was / they were
24 departed in suche wyse tha[t] euery man therow
part therof. And on the morne erly,¹ the Duc entred
into the Cite with hym, two houndred men of armes /
and made his cryees, vpon peyne of deth, that none
28 were so hardy to take ony thing of them of the toun ;
but he payed wel for after raison. And soone after
passed the vantgarde in fayre aray ouer the bridge, and
so forth thrugh the Cyte. And so passed al thoost,
32 and lodged them at the oper syde of the ryuere of
Ryn / and it was about euen tyme, or euer al the
Cartes, Charyots, & bagage were past. And that nyght
the Duc & grete part of his baronnye lodged within the
36 Cyte, where as grete honour was doon to them. The

The agree to let
Anthony and his
host pass,

and send him
many gifts for
himself and
victuals for his
host.

When the duke
understands
their answer, he
thanks them,

and gives them
as rich gifts and
presents as had
been sent to him.

The host remains
opposite Cologne
for the night.

¹ fol. 127.

In the morning
the river is
crossed, and the
host marches
through the city.

The duke and
his barons stay
all the night in
the city,

and give a great supper, and great gifts to the ladies of the town.

He leaves in the morning, after thanking the townspeople,

who offer him aid.

As the duke comes from mass,

four knights and five hundred men arrive from the city.

¹ fol. 127 b.
The knights say that the commonalty of Cologne wish to be his allies, and ask him to accept the help of the five hundred men of arms.

One of the knights offers to guide the army to Cracow.

duc Anthony bode at souper with hym all the ladyes of the Cyte, & festyed them ryght honorably, & gaf grete yeftes ar he departed in so moche that they of the Cyte wysshed hym to be theire lord. 4

In the morne the Duc toke his leue of them of the toun / and thanked them moche of the grete honour that they had shewed to hym & to his barons. And they ansuerd all with one voyce: ‘Noble Duc / 8 the Cite / we & all our goodes ben at your commandement more than to ony other lord that marcheth about vs / and spare vs not of nothing¹ that we may doo for you, For we be now, & shal euer be, redy to do you 12 playsure, ayde, & comfort at your mandement and first callyng’ / And he departed fro them, and went in to his tente. And on the morne as he came from the masse, & commanded the trompettes to be sowned for 16 to departe & meve / there came fro the Cite foure knighthes wel mounted on horsbak, & armed of all pyeces sauf the helmet, whiche alighted byfore the duckes tente with foure houndred men of armes, and 20 C crobowe men in theire felawship. These knighthes made their obeyssance / and syn sayd in this manere: ‘Right noble & puyssaunt duc, the Cite & commynalte of Coloyne recommande them to your good grace / 24 and where as þey haue sene so moche of noblesse & curtoysye in you / ¹desyryng right affectuelly to be frendes & alyez vnto you, they sendþ you foure hondred men of armes & an C crobowes, al payed of theire 28 wages for tene monethis day, for to goo with you where so euer it playse you to goo.’ ‘By my feyth,’ sayd Anthony, ‘thankyng be to them, whome I am moche beholden to / this curtoysye is not to be reffused / 32 & wete it I shal not forgete it / but remembre in tyme & place.’ ‘Sire,’ said one of the foure knighthes, ‘there nys none of vs foure, but he knowe wel al the way fro hens to Craco / and yf it mystier, we shal guyde & lede 36

you wel & surely thrughe al the passages & ouer al the ryueres betwix this & that.' To that ansuerd the Due & said / 'this that ye say hurteth not our affayre,
4 and I gaynsay not your sayeng', whan tyme shalbe.'

Thenne he putte them in ordynaunce, and receyued them vnder his banere. And þonne desloged the vant-garde, the grete batay^H, & the ryegarde, and marched
8 on theire waye in fayre aray so long¹, that they entred in the land^L of Bavryere, nygh to a grete Cite named Nuenmarghe, where as the Due of Ode was with a grete compayne of people, For he doubted tho kyng
12 Zelodus of Craco, that had besieged the kyngo Federyke of Behayne, and held hym in grete necessite,
For he had with hym foure score paynemes / and the Due Ode was doubtous lest he shuld come vpon hym,
16 yf he subdued and dyscomfyted the kyng Federyke.
And therfore, he had assembled hys Counseyl to knowo
& see what best was to doo. /

Thenne cam to the Cite an auncyent knyght that
20 was of the Due Ode, to whom he said after his obeyssance made: 'My lord, by my sowle I come from the marches of Almayne / but there is ¹commyngh
a grete oost hitherward of the moost goodlyest men of
24 armes and best arayed that euer I sawe in my dayes / but I wot not where they purpose to goo / but so moche I know, that they draw them self hitherward.'

'By my feyth,' said the Due, 'I gyue me grete wonder
28 what folke they may be, yf the king of Anssay had not
be of late dyscomfyted tofore Lucembourgh, I shuld suppose that it were he that wold^L socoure his brother
Federyke ayenst the Sarasyns / and on my sowle yf it
32 were he I shuld goo with hym for to helpe his brother.'
'My lord,' said the knyght, 'it were wysely doo to haue
knowleche certayn what folke they be, ne yf they purpose other wyse than wele.' 'Siro knyght,' said thanne
36 the Due, 'ye muste your self goo to knowe & reporte

The duke accepts the company, and puts them under his banner.

The army marches to Bavaria, nigh to Nuenmarghe,

where the Duke Ode is taking council what to do about the siege.

¹ fol. 123.
An ancient knight tells Duke Ode of the approach of a great host.

The duke says if it were the King of Anssay he would go with him to help Frederick.

The duke sends the knight to ascertain what host it is.

He comes upon
the host in a
valley

where they are
taking exercise.

¹ fol. 128 b.
The knight
thinks them
worthy men of
war.
He enters the
host, and asks
for the governor.
He is brought
before Anthony.

The knight says
he is sent by
Duke Ode to
inquire why the
host had come
into his land.

Anthony an-
swers that he
is the Duke of
Luxembourg,
and with him is
his brother and
the King of
Anssay, and that
they are going to
raise the siege of
Prague.

the certayne of it, syn ye haue sene them' / And he
ansuerde, 'By my feyth, my lord, I am redy thereto.'
And soone he departed, and so longe he rode that he
perceyued thoost in a valey by a ryuere. There he ⁴
sawe grete companyes of gentyl men here & there,
some castyng the barre of yron / other held theire
spere & shild and esprouued them self that one on þat
other / some assayed theire harneys with shoot, with ⁸
strokes of swerdes, and in many other appertyse of
armes they exercyted them self. 'By my feyth,' said
thenne the knight / 'there is fayre mayntene and noble
contenaunce of men of armes / suche folke is to be ¹²
doubted and dredde.' Thenne he loked on the ryght
syde vpon a lytel mountaynne & sawe the grete batayn,
and sawe the watche and the scourers al about the
oost. 'By my feyth,' said the knight that moche thing ¹⁶
had sene in his dayes / 'this ben ¹worthy men of
werre and able to subdue ony lande.' And thenne he
entred in to thoost / and demanded after hym that had
the gouernance & guydyng of it / And soone he was ²⁰
brought tofore Anthony. And whan he saw the Duc
he was moche abasshed of his facion / but alwayses he
salued hym ryght curtoysly / and syn said to hym,
'My lord, the Duc Ode hath sent me toward you to ²⁴
wete of you what ye seeke in hys land / and yf ye thinke
or purpose other wyse than wele / also what ye be that
conduyteth so fayre company of peple that I see here
assembled. For he woteth wel that ye come not hither ²⁸
with suche a felawship without it be for som grete af-
fayre' / 'Frend,' sayd anthony / 'telle your lord that we ne
demande ought of hym, nor suppose not to dommage his
land in no wyse. Also ye may telle hym that it is the ³²
kinge of Anssay / Anthony of Lusynen, Duc of Lucem-
bourg, and Regnald his brother, with theire puys-
saunce that supposen to goo reyse the siege of prague,
that the Sarasyns haue besieged.' 'Sire,' said thaun- ³⁶

cyent knyght, 'god graunte you good vyage.' And so he departed and retourned toward the Duc Ode of Bauyere, to whom he reherced as aboue is said, and 4 shewed hym the fyersnes and facion of Anthony, and the contenaunce of his oost / sayeng^t that they were folke to be redoubted & dred^k. 'By my feyth,' said thenne the duc Ode, 'It commeth of noble courage to 8 that two bretheren to haue come fro so ferre lande for to seke auenture of cheualerye & honour, and also for to come & gyue ayde & socour to kynge Federyke anenst the enemyes of god / and I promyse god that 12 shal not be without me, For it shuld be tourned to me to grete shame yf that I went not thither / seeyng that he is my Cousyn, & that my land is so nygh his royalme / and that the straungers come fro so ferre 16 for to ayde & helpe hym ayenst the paynemes.' And thenne had the Duc Ode ¹made his mandement but of late, and had assembled al redy foure thousand fighting men. What shold I make long compte / thoost desloged 20 and passed^d byfore Murmych. And thanne the Duc Ode yssued out of the toun with a fayre companye of people, and came and presented hym self and al his peple tofore the kinge of Anssay, Anthony / and his 24 broper, whiche Joyously receyued them / and thus marched thoost forth in fayre aray and good ordynaunce by the space of six dayes. And now seaceth thistorye to speke of them, and speketh of the king^t Federyke 28 and of the siege. /

Here sheweth thistorye how the puyssaunce of Zelodyus, kyng of Craco, was ryght grete / and the king Federyk durst not goodly haue yssued / but 32 alwayes he scarmousshed ofte with his enemys / and almost dayly was at the barrers / the medlee was grete & stronge / and there were within the toun about a houndred helmets of Hongery, that were valyaunt 36 knighthes & good men of werre / the whiche yssued /

MELUSINE.

The knight returns, delivers his message, and describes the host.

The King thinks the brethren courageous,

and resolves to go with them

against the paynims.
¹ fol. 129.

He assembles four thousand men,

and presents himself with his company to the King of Anssay and the brethren.

Frederick is unable to cope with Zelodius,

though he often tries skirmishes.

Early one morn-
ing the pagans
assault the town.

Frederick drives
them back to
their camp;

but the king of
Cracow comes
with fifteen
thousand Sar-
cens,

and forces
Frederick to
retreat.

Frederick sees
Zelodius,
1 fol. 129 b.

cuts his way
up to him,

and smites him
on his helmet.

Zelodius is suc-
coured by his
men;

and launches
a dart at
Frederick,

ofte & dide grete dommage to the sarasyns. It happed on a mornyng erly that the paynemes gaf a grete sawte to the toun / and the king Federyke with his peuple yssued out vnto the barrers / and there the scarmyssh- 4 ing bygan grete & mortall / and so manfully faught the kyng, that with the help of his men he gretly dommaged his enemyes / and made them to cesse of the sawte / & made them to goo back vnto theirre lodgys. 8 And that tyme was the kyngⁱ of Craco mounted vpon a grete hors, his banere to the wynd^k accompanied with xv M^l sarasyns, and came in fayre ordynaunce to the batayll. There was many stroke gyuen & receyued / 12 and by force of armes the kynge & his peple was constrainyd to withdrawe hym back vnto the barrers. There was grete occysyon made, For horrable strokes were gyuen of bothe sydes, and the king Federyke re- 16 comforted wel his peple, For he dide grete faytte of armes of his owne handes. And whan he perceyued¹ kyng Zelodius that sore dommaged his peple, he sporyd his horse and toke his swerd^k in his fyst / and 20 rane smytyng on the lyft syde and on the ryght syde vpon his enemyes tyl he made place, and came & smote Zelodius vpon his helmet, by suche strengthe & vertue that he made hym to enclyne vpon his hors neck 24 al astonyed / and lytel faylld that he was not ouer-thrawen to the erthe, For he lost bothe the steropes / but soone he was socoured of his men whiche redreced^k hym vp ryght / and the king Federyk adreced^k hys 28 swerd^k vpon a payneme, & suche a stroke he gaf hym that he slew hym therewith. The kingⁱ of Craco was thenne redreced as said is / and he perceyuyng the kyng Federyk / that hewed legges & armes, & casted^k to 32 therthe al that he recountedred of the sarasyns / had grete anger in his herte and came nygh at hym / and with an archegaye or dart launched at hym, by suche strengthe that the dart entred so depe into hys body 36

that the hed^t of it was sene at the back syde of hym.
 That doon the kynge Federyk that felt the dystresse of
 deth myght no more hold hym self up ryght, but fel^t
 4 & reuersed deed fro his hors to the ground. Thenne
 was his peple full heuy and dolauant, and withdrew
 them self anoone, and reentred into the toun & shetted
 the gates after them. And thenne byganne the sorowe
 8 to be grete in the town al about. /

which pierces
his body through
and through.

He falls to the
ground.

His people with-
draw to the town
and close their
gates.

Cap. XXXI. How the kinge of Craco dide do
 take the body of kynge Federyke that he
 had slayn and commanded it to be brent.

12¹ **T**he king of Craco thenne glad & joyous for cause of
 kyng Federykes deth, commanded the corps to be
 brought byfore the gate, & there to be brent for to haue
 abasshed the more þem of the Cite, seyng theyre king
 16 in a fyre. Whan the Cyteseyns & commynalte of
 praghe knew the deth of theire kyng / and the grete
 tyranny of Z[el]odyus, they made grete sorowe / but in
 especial the pucelle Eglantyne, his doughtir, was sorow-
 20 full in herte, and so pyteously bewaylled and lamented,
 that grete pyte it was to here & see / sayeng such or
 semblable wordes: ‘Ha / god ! who might confort me
 whan I see my faders deth byfore me, & the total dys-
 24 comfytur of hys peple, & also the destruction of my
 self, For I see no way wherby myght come ony socoure
 vnto me, For I haue herd say that myn vncle, the
 kyng of Anssay, on whome I trusted more than to
 28 al² other men in the world, hath be dyscomfyted
 tofore Lucembourgh. Ha, veray god ! creatour of Crea-
 tures, I ne wote other refugge for me for to escape the
 tyraunt Z[el]odyus handes than the mercyfull bosom
 32 of your grace to hyd me therin. O ryght noble, ryght
 puissaunt, & ryght excellent prynesse ! virgyne &
 moder of god ! Marye, my lady & maistresse / haue

¹ fol. 130.

Zelodius com-
mands Fre-
derick's body
to be burnt.

The citizens of
Prague are sor-
rowful for the
death of their
king.

His daughter,
the maid Eglan-
tine, piteously
mourns her
father's death,

² fol. 130 b.

and calls on the
Virgin Mary.

Those who see
her grief are
full of pity.

The commonalty
propose to yield,

but two true
knights upbraid
them,

and advise them
to wait tidings
from the King
of Anssay:

and bid them
trust in Christ.

The people are
comforted, and
refuse to yield,

² fol. 131.

whereat Zelodius
is angry.

He sorely as-
saults their city.

compassion on me! poure orphenyn & faderles.' Certaynly the pucelle Eglantyne bewayled, syghed, & complayned so piteously that no personne beheld her / but they were of pyte constrainyd to wepe how hard 4 that theire hertes had be, For in her anguysse & sorowe she made none ende, but euer she wept & rendred teeris habundauntly. Thenne the commynaltee of the toun, sore agast and timerous, were in propos 8, & wylle for to yeld the toun & themself ouer to the kyng Z[el]odyus, þat made them to be requyred & admounested¹ therof / shewing to them how they myght not long endure nor withstand ayenst his grete puys- 12 saunce / & that theire Cateh & goodes shuld be sauued to them / but yf he toke theire Cyte byforce, he shuld make þem bothe theire wyues & children to be brent al to asshis, as theira kynge was. Wherfore the cyte 16 henge in balaunce to be delyuered & gyuen ouer to the Sarasyns. But emonge other were there two good men, true & auncyent knighthes, that said in this manere: 'False peopple, what wyl you now doo, yet is 20 not the messenger come agayn that rode toward the king^t of Anssay for socour, take courage & comfort your self, For within short space of tyme ye shal here good tdynges / thinke that ye be Cristen / & that 24 Criste shal helpe vs or it be long.' And whan they herd hym so speke they were all recomforted, & ansuerd to the paynemes ambaxatours that they shuld neuer yeld them ouer vnto the last ²mans lyf of all 28 them. And whan the kyng Zelodyus knewe theire wyll, he was wood angry & sorowful, & sware his goddes that he shuld putte al on fyre. /

The kyng³ Zelodyus was mouyd to yre & grete 32 anger for thansuere of the commynalte of Pragh, wherfor he scarmysshed them sore, & gaf grete sawtes to theire Cite, but the noble and valyaunt men that

¹ Fr. *faisoit remonstrer.*

³ kyng of: MS.

were within deffended it strongly. I wyl now retourne
to speke of the Due anthony and of hys brother Reg-
nauld, of the kynge of Anssay / and also of Ode, Duc
4 of Bauyere, whiche conduyted theyre oost, & marched
fourth hastily, For they had tydinges of the myserye
that they of the Cite were in / but nothing they knew
of the deth of king^t Federyke. And on a thursday at
8 euen, they lodged themself nygh to a grete ruyere, a
leghē & a half fro the Cite of Praghe / and that same
euen was a knight of that same Countree that was in
theire felawship commandied that on the morne he
12 shuld anounce theirre commyng to them of the Cite /
and he on the morne erly mounted on hys hors, and
toke his way toward the Cite / and after a grete sawte
was seaced^t for fawte of daylight, he cam vnto a lytel
16 posterne / and they of the garde there knew hym anone,
and lete hym entre the toun / and as soone as he was
entred he rode softly along^t by the gardes, cryeng alowde
in this manyere : ‘Lordes, deffende you wel, For herc
20 commeth the floure of knighthode to your socours &
helpe with the kinge of Anssay, & anoone ye shal see
them bygynne the bataylle / and be a good^t chere, For
on my hed not one Sarasyn shaſt escape, but he be
24 deed^t or take.’ And ¹whan they vnderstode hym, they
bygane to make such a Cry, & so lowde, that it was
wonder to here sayeng : ‘Lawde & thankyn^t be to god
almighty þerof.’ And thenne they employed them self,
28 & defended so valiauntly, that no sarasyn durst no
lenger abyde nygh the waſt a bowe shotte / & many
paynemes were thenne slayne, in so moche that the
dyches watre was as tourned & dyed with theyre blood.
32 And whan Zelodyus sawe the grete & courageous
deffense of them of the toune he was abasshed^t, &
meruaylled moche of theire joyful contenaunce. /

36 **T**henne whan Zelodyus perceyued that his folke
withdrewe them self thus backward, he was

The relieving
host marches
hastily,

and arrives on
a Thursday even-
ing a league and
a half from
Prague.

A knight is sent
to the city with
the news of their
approach.

He enters, and
bids the lords
fight well be-
cause of the
succor that is
near.

¹ fol. 131 b.

The people thank
God for the good
news,

and slay many
Saracens.

Zelodius is sorrowful that this assault has failed.

Anthony and his host approach.

They see the Saracens' camp.

Anthony calls a halt, and orders archers to his wings.

¹ fol. 132.

The paynims perceive their coming, and tell Zelodius.

He is wroth, and commands his men to assemble in battle array.

Anthony's host advances against the paynims.

The air is full of arrows.

Christians and paynims fight manfully.

sorowfull & dolaunt, & had grete merueylle, why & wherfore they of the toun were of so corageous deffense more then in other sawtes tofore gyuen / but soone after hys doleur & sorowe encreced moch more, For 4 anthony approuched in fayre aray. He, & Regnald hys brother, conduyted the first batay^H; and the kyng^t of Anssay, & his Cousin the due of Bauyere, ledd^t the aryer garde. There had ye seen fayre companye of 8 gentilmen in good aray / the baners & standarts dysployed / helmets & salades wel garnysshed with fyn gold & syluer, which resplendysshed ful^t clere / And so they cam & sawe the Cite that the paynmes assayld, 12 & gaaf grete sawte / & sawe theire tentes & pauyllons, where were grete nombre of sarasyns. Thenne made Anthony his folk to tary and be styl a while, tyl the aryergarde were nygh to them / and ordeyned archers 16 & crosbowes to be vnder the wynges of hys batay^H. and thenne they were apperceynd, ¹and seen of the paynmes, which went & made knowlege therof to theire kyng^t, sayeng^t in this manyere: 'Sire, leue the 20 sawte, that in an euyl heure was bygonne / wete it that such a multitude of Cristen peple be commyng hitheward^t that all the feldes be couered with.' Whan Zelodus vnderstode these tydynge he was wood^t 24 wroth, & gretly abasshed, and lefte the sawte, and made the trompettes to sowne the retrayte, & that euery man shuld assemble togidre vnder hys banere. he thenne ordeyned his bataylles as he coude best. 28 And Anthony commanded hys trompettes to be sowned for to bygynne the batay^H / and they approched the paynmes, keping^t good ordynaunce. Thenne bygan the shotte to be grete & thikk as snowe in the ayer / 32 and syn the men of armes medled^t togidre, and entred one vpon other, & valyauntly brake speres, & ouerthrew eche other as it happed. The Cristen faught corageously / and the paynmes withstode & susteyned theire 36

grete strokes manfully. There was many sarasyn reuersed to therth & slayn. Wel assayed the poyteuyns them self, & dyde grete faytte of armes vpon theire
 4 enemyes. But the king^t Zelodius putte his sheld tofore his brest, & held his spere alowe, and broched his hors with the sporys, & rane vpon the Crysten; and aftir hym folowed xv Mt paynemes. Zelodius
 8 dide there grete merueytle of armes, and ouerthrew many a Cristen to therthe, & gretly dommaged them. For his folke that folowed at back syde of hym faught meruayllously. Thenne cryed the kyng^t Zelodius his
 12 baner: ‘Lordes, barons, auaunce, the journey is oure,
 For they may not vs escape’ / And they of poytou receyued them moch hardyfly, and wete it wel that there was grete losse of peple of bothe partyes.

Zelodius with a great host rushes on the Christians,

and greatly hurts them,

and cries ‘the day is ours.’

16 Thenne came duc Anthony with the swerd¹ in his fyst / and whan he perceyued his peple recule a lytel, nygħi he deyed for sorowe / and cryed: ‘Lusynen! with a high voys, and putte hym emong^t the sarasyns
 20 more hastyfully than thundre falleth fro heuen, and faught & smote on eche syde vpon his enemyes, and ouerthrew all them that he recounted. and his peuple folowed at back syde of hym that were al wondred of
 24 his grete fayttes & valyauntnes, For there ne was so hardy a sarasyn þat durst hym abyde / but fledd & reculed vnto theire tentes. And this seyng^t the king^t Zelodius, he cryed: ‘auaunt, lordes & barons, and
 28 deffend^t you / how is that for one man alone that ye flee / it is to you grete shame.’ And aftir these wordes he retourned, & assembled his peple ayen togidre, and gaaf grete batayl mortal vnto anthony & the poytevyns.
 32 Thenne came thadmyral with ten thousand^t fighting men / and thenne enforced the batayl ryght horrable, For there were many of the sarasyns slayn and sore hurt.

¹ fol. 132 b.

Anthony sees his people retreating; he cries ‘Lusignan,’ and falls on the Saracens like thunder from heaven.

The Saracens flee.

Zelodius upbraids them,

they rally and fight again.

The admiral arrives with ten thousand men.

Cap. XXXII. How the king¹ of Craco was slain in bataylle.

¹ fol. 133.

The rearguard, under the King of Anssay, comes up and fights vigorously.

Anthony and Regnauld give marvellous strokes,

and wherever they are they cause the Saracens to run.

² fol. 133 b.
Zelodius encourages his folk, and does great damage.

Regnauld spurs his horse against him.

Zelodius hurts him in the thigh,

but Regnauld hits him back,

Thenne came the ryerward¹ that the kinge of Ans-
say and the Duc Ode conduyted þat entred 4
vygourously into the batayll, where was grete occysyon,
For the batayll was mortal on bothe partes. And vpon
that arryued Anthony & Regnauld, that entred by one
assent vpon the sarasyns, making suche occysyon that 8
there ne was sarasyn ne Cristen, but he meruaylled of
þe meruayllous strokes that they gaf. And in con-
clusyon there was none so hardy a sarasyn that durst
withstand² them, For wher someuer they sawe them 12
they fledd, and so strongly faught the cristen / that
the sarasyns tourned theire back, puttyng³ them self to
flight / but the kyng Zelodyus valy²auntly encouraged
& reteyned them togidre. And wete it wel that he dide 16
grete dommage to the Crysten. But whan Regnauld
perceyued the king¹ Zelodius, that rendred so grete a
stoure & batayll mortall to hys folke / he sware that
he shuld dye or he shuld delyuere the place fro the 20
sarasyns / Thenne tourned he the targe behynde and
sporyd his hors by grete yre and came vpon the king¹
of Craco. And whan Zelodyus the kynge sawe hym
cōme he haunced⁴ hys swerd¹ and smote hym vpon his 24
helmet / but his swerd¹ glenced doune by the lyfte
syde vnto his thye, & hurted hym in such manere that
the blood rane vnto his foote / And thenne Regnauld
þat was ful¹ dolaunt, with bothe handes lyfte vp his 28
swerde and smote the kynge Zelodyus vpon the helmet
with so grete yre that he was therwith astonyed, in so
muche that the swerd¹ fel¹ out of his hand¹ and bowed
vpon his hors neck, and therwith brake the taches of 32
his helmet. And thenne Regnauld retourned & smote
hym ayen, and charged hym with so many hydouse
strokes that he moste nedes parforce fal¹ to therth.

And fourthwith^t was the prees grete aboue hym bothe
of horses & men / but hys peple came & socoured
hym fro the horses feet / but in conclusyon they coude
4 not obteyne nor hym ayde / but he was slayne. And
whan the sarasyns sawe that they went to flight / And
the cristen peple pursiewed þem manfullly and slough
them bothe in feld^t & in wodes. And wete it wel
8 that there escaped but few, and thus was the batay^H
fynysshed. And this don the Cristen lodged them in
the tentes of the sarasyns. And the two brethern /
the king^t of Anssay and the Duc Ode departed with
12 a C. ¹knyghtes with them toward the Cite, where as
they were nobly receyued, For the Citezeyns had so
grete Joye of the vyctorye that they had wonne ypon
the sarasyns. And thenne came they & descended at
16 the palays rya^H. Thenne came the pucelle Eglantyne
and recounted her vncle the king^t of Anssay and al^t
his barons.

Cap. XXXIII. How the kynge Zelodius &
20 the other saracyns were brent and bruyled¹.

The pucelle Eglantyne was thenne joyfull & glad
for the dyscomfyture of the paynemes and also of
the commyng^t of her uncle. But not notwithstanding she
24 had sorowe at herte for the kynge, her faders deth,
that she might not forget it. And neuertheles, whan
she cam byfore her vncle she enclyned & honourably
made to hym her obeyssance, sayeng^t: 'My right dere
28 vncle, ye be right welcomme / playsed god that ye
were arryued two ²dayes rather, For thenne ye had
found my fader on lyue, whiche Zelodius hath slayne
& made to be brent & bruled to the moost vytupere &
32 shame of the Catholycal feyth.' And whan the kyng^t
of Anssay vnderstod^t it he was wroth & dolaunt, and
sware that thus and in suche wyse shuld he do of the

and thongh
Zelodius' people
come to defend
their king,

Regnald slays
him.
The Saracens
then flee;
many are slain,

and but few
escape.

The Christians
take the camp
of the Saracens.

¹ fol. 134.

The brethren
enter the town.

The maid Eglan-
tine is glad for
the victory.

She welcomes
her uncle, the
King of Anssay,

² fol. 134 b.

and tells him
how Zelodius
has burnt her
father's body.

He swears

to treat the Saracens the same way.

Their bodies are laid in a heap,

and are burnt;

but the bodies of the Christians receive Christian burial.

The King of Anssay is woful for his brother's death.

He has the cathedral prepared for his brother's obsequies;

¹ fol. 135.

and goes toward the Saracens camp,

where the brethren were dividing the spoil.

The King of Anssay tells how his brother was slain and his body burnt,

and how he burned the Saracens.

kyng Zelodius and of all the sarasyns, that he coudē fynde dedē or alyue. And anon were cryees made thrugh the toun, that of euery hous one man shuld goo in to the feldē for to assemble the deed bodyes of the 4 sarasyns togidre vpon a mountayne, and that men shuld bryngē thither wodē ynough for to brule & brēne the corps. And thus it was don. And was the corps of Zelodyus sette vpon a stake so that it was seen aboue 8 al other / And so was the fyre grete about them / and so they were al brent & bruled / and all the deed bodyes of the cristen men that were foundē were buryed there as cristen people ought to be. And þese thinges 12 doon, the kyngē of Anssay made al thingē to be redy for to make thobsequye of the kingē his brother, and that moche honourably as it is shewed herafter. /

In this partie, sayth thy storye, that woeful & sory 16 I was the kyngē of Anssay for the deth of his brother / but syth it plesed god to be so he lefte & passed his deuel the best wyse that he coude. Thapareyl was thenne made for the obsequye whiche was 20 don in the Chirche Cathedral of the Cite. And syn the kyng of Anssay and the duc of bauyere ¹ mounted on horsback and many barons of behayne with them, and al clothed in black went towardē the sarasyns tentes, 24 where the two bretheren were whiche had do cōme þer all the Sommage, Cartes, Charyotes, & bagage, And syn departed amongt theire people all that they hadē wonne vpon the paynemes /. Thenne arryued there 28 the kynge of Anssay, the duc Ode, and all the baronnye and nobly salued the two brethern, And the duc Anthony, & Regnauld hys brother receyued them joyfully. Thenne reccounted the kynge of Anssay to þe 32 two bretheren how the kynge ffederyk was slain in the baytayH, and how Zelodyus hadē made hys body to be brent in despyt of al cristianyte / and therfore he had doo like wise of Zelodyus body & of all the sarasyns 36

that were founde alyue or dead. And Anthonyo þenne
 ansuerd^k, ‘On my feyth ye haue don right wel / and
 veryly kynge Zelodius mysdede ouermuche grete cruelte,
 4 For syn a man is deed / grete shame is to hys enemy
 to touche hym ony more.’ ‘By my feyth, sire,’ said
 the duc of Bauyere, ‘ye say trouth, but the kinge of
 Anssay is come hither to you for to beseche you &
 8 your brother to cōme to the obsequye of the kyng
 Federyke his brother.’ And thenne ansuerd^k the
 bretherne, ‘we shal thither goo gladly.’ Thenno they
 mounted on hors back & rode toward the Cite, wherō
 12 as the ladyes and damoyselles, knighthes & squyres /
 cytyzeyns & commynalte beheld them fayne and mer-
 uaylled moche of the Lyons clawe that shewed in
 An^lthonyes cheke / and preyed moche his fayre & wel
 16 shappen body, and also of Regnauld hys brother / and
 said emong themself, ‘these two bretheren ben able for
 to subdue al the world.’ And thus they came to the
 chirch where thobsequye shuld be made and there
 20 alyghted.

Anthony thinks
Zelodius was
cruel.

The duke Odo
asks the brethren
to the obsequies.

They agree to
come;

and are well
received in the
city.

1 fol. 135 b.

Cap. XXXIV. How the two brethern were at buryeng and obsequye of kyng Fe- deryk of behayne.

24 **E**glantine that was in the Circl came and re-
 counted the two bretheren, whom she made hum-
 bly her obeyssance, thankyng them mekely of theire
 noble socours that they had doo to her, For they had
 28 sauied her honour, her lyf, and her land^k. And thenne
 anthony ansuerd^k humbly to her, sayeng, ‘Damoyselle,
 2 We haue nougħt doo but that we ought to doo, For
 euyer good cristen is hold^k & bound^k aftir the playsire
 32 of god toppresse & dystroye thenemyes of God.’ The
 pucelle was there nobly accompanied of the ladyes &
 damoyselles of the land^k, thobsequye was honourably &

Eglantine meets
the brethren at
the church, and
thanks them for
saving her.

2 fol. 136.

After the service,
which is nobly
done,

the brethren
convey Eglantine
to the palace,

where they have
dinner.

The King of
Anssay calls
the barons of
the land,

and tells them
they must take
council how to
govern the
kingdom.

They say that
in his presence
they must not
speak.

¹ fol. 136 b.

He advises them
to marry their
lady.

They ask the
king to seek her
a worthy man.

nobly doon as it apparteyned to suche a noble kyngⁱ as he was. And after the seruye fynysshed the two bretheren mounted on theire horses, and theire meyne also, and conueyed the pucelle Eglantyne vnto the 4 paleys where they descended, & syn mounted in to the hall where the tables were redy couered / and thenne they wesshe theire handes & satte at dyner / and syn were nobly seruyd & festyed / and after dyner the tables 8 were voyded & take vp & wesshe handes / and syn þey conueyed Eglantyne vnto her chambre, þat was euer sorowful for her faders deth. And þenne the kinge of Anssay called to hym al the baronnye of the land, & 12 said to them in this manyere :

' **L**ordes, barons, ye muste CounseyH emongⁱ you, & take your best aduys how ye myght haue a valyaunt man for to gouerne the royaume, For the land^k 16 which is in the guydyng & gouernaunce of a woman only is not surely kept. Now, loke thenne what best is for the prouffyt & honour of my cousyne Eglantine, & for þe common wele of this land.' Thenne ansuerd 20 one for them alle & sayd : ' Sire, we knowe none that oughte to medle hymself therwith tofore you, For yf your Cousyn were passed out of this mortal lyf, that god forbede, al the royalme of Iehayne shuld appar- 24 teyne to you. Wherⁱfor we al bes[e]che you that therto ye puruey after your playsire.' Thenne ansuerd the king, & thus said : ' Sire, as touching my personne, I may not long abyde with you to be rewler & protectour 28 of this land, For thanked be god I haue land ynough to entreteyne myn estate with / but in conclusyon lete my cousyn take some valiaunt man to her lord, that shal defende the land ayenst the enemyes of god.' 32 Thenne ansuered the barons fourthe with, ' Sire, yf it plaise you þat your Cousyn be maryed, seke for her some noble & worthy man to be her lord & oure, For tofore you none of vs oughte to medle withaH.' Thenne 36

ansuerd^t the kyng in this manere, 'We thenne shal purueye therto to her honour & prouffyt & to yours also / and that anoone, For I go to speke with her for 4 this cause.' The kynge thenne departed and came in to the Chambre where his Cousin was, that moche humbly receyued hym. And the kyng^t said to her in this manere, 'Fayre cousyne, thankyn^t to god your assayres 8 be now in good party, For your land is delyuered^t fro the paynemys by the puyssance of god & of the two brethern of Lusynen. Now it muste be aduyised & sene how best your reaume may be guyded in good 12 gouernaunce to your prouffyt & honour, and of your people also.' Thenne ansuerd^t the mayden, 'My right dere vncle, I ne haue noon of Counsey^H & comfort but you / so I requyre you that of good remedye ye pur- 16 ueye therto. And conuenable & lawful it is that I obey you more than ony other personne in the world, & so wyl I doo.' Thenne had the kynge pite on ¹her & said, 'Fayre Cousyn, we haue alredy purueyed 20 therto / ye muste be maryed to suche a man that can kepe and deffende you & your land ayenst alle enemyes, the which is fayre, noble, & valyaunt damoyseau, & not ferre hens.' 'Certaynly,' ansuerd^t the pucelle. 24 'Dere vncle, wel I knowe for certayn that ye wold never Counsey^H me þat thing^t but it were to my grete honour & proffit, and for the commyn wele of all my land / but ryght dere vncle, I to be maryed so soone 28 after my faders decesse / shuld not shewe semblaunt of duey^H for his deth. Wherfor me semeth I were blamed to doo soo / and suche shuld shew to me fayre semblaunt byfore me,² that wold moke me at a pryvy 32 place /.'

He promises to find one, and leaves to speak to his cousin on the subject.

She receives him humbly.

He tells her that the way must be found how best to govern the land.

The maid asks his advice.

¹ fol. 137.

He says she must get married.

She answers that she knows he gives good counsel,

but she thinks she should not marry so soon after her father's death.

The King replies that one must choose the lesser evil.

To that ansuerd^t the king, & said: 'My right fayre Cousyn, of two euylles men ought to choose the lasse, whan nedes muste one be had. But, fayre

² Fr. *qui en tendroit mains de compte derrière.*

He would like to
wait to be at her
wedding,

but he lives afar
off.

Then the
brethren must
be rewarded,

but half of her
kingdom would
not be sufficient
for this,

¹ fol. 137 b.
and she is not
worthy to have
Regnauld as
her lord.

Then the maid
was ashamed,

and told her
uncle to do
with her and her
kingdom as he
thought best.

The King bids
her cease weep-
ing.

He goes to the
brethren,

Cousyn, it is wel trouth, that who myght goodly tary
the day of your weddyng it were your honour / but
what, fayre Cousyn, my dwelling place is ferre hens /
and here I may not make long^t soiourne, without my 4
grete dommage, as wel of other mens goodes as of
myn. Also the two bretheren most be recompensed &
rewarded of theire noble socours, outhre of my goodes
or of yours / and some saith that bettre is to haue 8
more of prouffyt & lasse honour. And to say that ye
coude recompense them as they oughte to be, by raison
of the grete curtoysye by them shewed vnto you ; the
half of your royme shuld not suffise. And ouer 12
more, fayre Cousyne, wete it that ye be not to suffy-
saunt ¹for to haue suche & so noble a man to your lord
as is Regnauld of Lusynen, For in certayn he is wel
worthy to marye the gretest lady in the world. What 16
for his noble lynee, as for his bounte, beaute, & noble
prowesse. Whan the noble pucelle Eglantyne vnder-
stode the kyng her vnkle, she was shamfu^H & hontous /
and on that other part, she consyderyng^t the daunger 20
where bothe she & her peple had be & myght be wystr
neuer what to say, and bygane to wepe / but at last
she ansuerd in this manere : 'right dere vnkle, all my
trust, my hoop & comfort is in god & in you, wherfor 24
doo with me & with my reaume what it playse you' /
'Fayre Cousyn,' said the kyng, 'ye say right wel / and
I swere you by my feyth, that nothing I shal say in
this party ne doo, but that it shal be for the best. 28
Now thenne, noble Cousyne, seace your wepyng, &
delyuere you of this affayre, For the more long^t that
these baronye with theire peple that be in nombre xv.
M^t. be soiournyng^t in your land the greter dommage 32
shal ye haue.' And she that wel knewe he said trouth,
ansuerd to hym in this manere : 'Dere vnkle, doo ther-
of al your playsyre.' Thenne came the kynge in to
the grete halle where the two brethern were, & the 36

baronye with them, and said to Anthony in this manyere: 'noble Duc, vouchesaf to understand my wordes, the barons of this land that be here present,
 4 besech your good grace / & as touching my self, I hertyly praye you that it ples you, that Regnauld your brother be king of this royalme, and that he take Eglantyne my Cousyn to his lady / prayeng hym that
 8 he this wyl not refuse, For the barons of the land desire hym moche to be theire lord.' 'Sirc,' ansuerd anthony, 'this requeste is worthy to be graunted, &
 also shal it be. Doo hither come the noble da^lmoy-
 12 selle.' And fourthwith the kynge & the Duc Ode yede & fette the pucelle, and despoyllled her of her dueyl & black clothing / and syn was arayed ful rychely of her noblest raymentes, and accompanied
 16 with her ladyes & damoyselles, she was conueyed by the forsaid lordes vnto the presence of the noble bretheren, whiche merucyld moche of her grete beaute / and she humbly enclyned byfore them, mak-
 20 yng her obeyssance. Thenne bygan the king of Anssay to speke, & thus said /

Noble Duc of Lucembourgh, hold ye to vs your couuenantes; this is wherof we wyl hold oure
 24 promesse.' 'For sooth,' said Anthony, 'it is wel reason. come hither Regnauld brother, receyue this pucelle to your lady, For she maketh you kynge of behayne.' Thenne said Regnauld, in heryng of alle that were
 28 there present / 'thankyng be to god, to the kynge, & to al the baronye of this lande, of the grete honour that they doo to me. For yf thys noble pucelle had not one foot of land, yet wold I not refuse her loue
 32 to haue her to my lady, after the lawes of god requyren.'

For with thayde of almighty god, I hoop to conquer ynougue to hold & entreteyne therwith her noble estate' / 'Fayre brother,' said þenne anthony / 'ye say raison / this royaume ye haue wonne alredy / god yeue

and asks Anthony to make his brother marry Eglantine and rule her kingdom.

Anthony agrees.

¹ fol. 133.

The maid, richly arrayed,

is brought before the lords and the two brethren.

The King asks Anthony to keep his promise.

Anthony calls on Regnauld to take the maid to wife.

Regnauld accepts her for her merits, not for her lands,

and says he hopes to conquer still more.

Anthony hopes
that he will.
The bishop
comes and af-
fiances Regnauld
and Eglantine;
after that the
feast is great,
and the towns-
folk make much
joy.

[¹ MS. the the]

² fol. 138 b.
Rich robes are
made for the
ladies.

The maid is led
to the tents,

good watch is
set,
and a good sup-
per is served

before bedtime.

At day spring
many ladies
accompany the
spouse to mass.

³ fol. 139.

where the bishop
solemnly es-
pouses Regnauld
and Eglantine.
They return to
the pavilion to
dine.

you grace to subdue & conquere other reames & landes vpon her enemyes.' And in conclusyon, the bysshop was sent for, & assured them togidre. And syn bygane the¹ feest sumptuous & grete, For soone it was knownen 4 thrugh al the toun, wheroft the peple made grete joye / and were the stretes hanged with ryche clothes, & grete & noble apparayl was there made, as to suche a feste apperteyned / and was ordeyned that the weddyng² shuld be hold^d in the feld^d within the chief pauillon. Many riche rayments & robes were made what² for the spouse / as for the ladyes & damoyselles. That nyght passed, and on the morne on which day they shuld 12 be espoused / the pucelle nobly was conueyed^d & ledd vnto the tentes, whiche were al of cloth of gold^d / And that night was good watche made as þe enemyes had be nygh to them / and there the feste encressed, & 16 were honourably seruyd at souper. And whan tyme was, euery one went to bed vnto the morow erly, when Aurora shone clere. /

Cap. XXXV. How Regnauld espoused 20 Eglantyne, daughter to the kynge of Behayne. /

Here sheweth thistorye, & sayth that whan the day spryng^d appiered, & the day was ful fayre & clere, 24 the spouse nobly & rychely arayed in her robes of cloth of gold, & fourred^d with Ermynes, & purfyllid^d al with precyous stones, accompanied with grete nombre of ladyes & damoy³selles, was right honourably conueyed 28 vnto the place where as the masse shuld be sayd^d; and solemnly the bysshop espoused them here / and aftir the masse, she retourned to the pauillon with al the noble baronye with her, where they fond^d al apparayld 32 & redy to dynner. They were ful wel & nobly seruyd of al thinges that to suche a feste be requysite & con-

uenable. And after they had dyned, graces were said,
& weshe theire handes, and syn were the tables
voyded, thanne bygane they to daunce & to make grete
4 joye. /

after which they
danced and made
great joy.

Cap. XXXVI. How the knightes & esquyers jousted after dyner.

8 **T**historye sayth that after the daunce was seaced the
ladyes & damoyselles mounted vpon the seafoldes.

The knights be-
gin to joust;

Thenne cam the knightes rychely armed, & bygan to
jouste / trompettes sowned, & knightes reuersed eche
other / but none might withstand the noble bretheren,
12 but he was ouerthrow, bothe hors & man / so that no
man dide there nought ¹to the regarde of their prowes.

the two brethren
cannot be over-
thrown.

¹ fol. 139 b.

Wherfore, they seyng that the ioustes affeblysshid for
cause of them, they departed fro the lystes & toke of
16 theire armeures / and syn dured the jousting tyl tyme
of souper came. And thenne the ioustes seaced, and
the knightes & squyers departed, & went & dysarmed
them. Thenne mynestrels with dyuerse Instruments

Supper time
arrives.

20 of musique sowned & played melodyously the first
cours of the souper / & syn they were nobly serued of
al maner wynes / and after souper they daunced. But
whan tyme was, the spouse was ledd to bed with grete

Minstrels play
while it is served.

24 honour & Joye. And anone after came Regnauld
there, whiche went to bed with the pucelle. Thenne
voyded euery one the chambre / some to theire rest /
some retourned to the daunce / some sang, & other

After some dancing
the spouse
is led to bed, and
is followed by
Regnald.

28 made grete reueyh. Regnauld, thenne that laye nigh
Eglantyne, swetly embrased & kyssed her / and she
to hym moche humbled her self, sayeng in this manere :

‘ My lord redoubted, ne had be the grace of god / your
32 curtoysye & prowes, this poure orphelym had be / no
doubt of / exilled, desolat, & lost. Wherfor, my ryght
redoubted lord, I yeld thankynge to god, & to you also

Eglantine de-
clares that his
prowess has
saved her from
exile,

and thanks him
for making her
his wife.

Regnald declares
she has done
more for him
than he for her.

¹ fol. 140.

He begets
Olyphart,

who became
famous for deeds
of arms.

In the morning
before dinner
letters are
brought to An-
THONY from
Christine

which tell of the
birth of a fair
son.

that haue dayned to take to your wyf her that was vnworthy therto.' 'By my fayth,' said Regnauld, 'dere herte, & my best beloued, ye haue do moche more for me than euer I dide ne possible is to me to 4 doo for you / sene & consydered the noble yefte youen by you to me / that is your noble lady / and yet besyde that of your noble royme ye haue endowed me / and with me nought ye haue take / sauf only my symple 8 body.' Thenne ansuered Eglantyne, & said / 'Ha / noble lord, your valyaunt body is derer to me & bettre worth than ten other suche rōyames as myn is / & more it is to be preyed.' Of ¹theire wordes I wyl 12 seace / but that nyght was begoten of them a noble sone that was named Olyphart / he made in tyme afterward grete faytte of armes, and subdued & gate al the low marche of holland & Zeland, Vtreyght, & the 16 Royame of Danemarche / and al the partyes of Northweghe also. On the morne the day was fayre & clere. Thenne was the noble lady Eglantyne ledd to here the masse / and al the baronye, ladyes & damoyselles, acom- 20 panyed her thitherward. And after the mass was doo, they retourned to the ryche pauyllon / and as they were redy to sette þem at dyner / came there two knightis fro Lucembourgh, that brought *lettres* to Duc Anthony 24 from the Duches Crystyne his wyf / the whiche after theire obeyssance honourably made, said to hym in this wise : 'My lord, ye oughte to take grete joye / For my lady the Duches is brought to bed of the most 28 fayrest sone that euer was seen in no land.' 'Now, fayre lordes,' said anthony, 'blessid be god therof / and ye be right welcome to me' / & syn toke the *lettres*.

Thistorye sayth that anthony, Duc of Lucem- 32 bourgh, was joyful & glad of these tdynges, and so was his brother Regnauld. Thenne opened he the *lettres*, wherof the tenour was acording to that the knightes had said. Thenne made anthony moche of 36

them, gyuyng to them grete yeftes of ryches. Thenne he satte hym at dyner nygh to Eglantyne / and dured the feest eyght days, sumptuouse & open houshold.
 4 And whan the feste was fynysshed, they reentred in to the Cite with gret honour & joye. And on the morne next the kyng¹ of Anssay / Anthony & the Duc Ode, & al theire baronye toke theire leue of ¹Regnauld & of
 8 Eglantyne, whiche were dolaunt of theire departing. And anthony made coūenaunt with Regnauld hys brother, that yf the paynemes made ony moo werre with hym, he shuld come & all his baronnye with hym
 12 to ayde & helpe hym. And the kyng¹ Regnauld thanked hym moch. And eche of them thanked & kyssed eche other at departyng¹ / Soo long¹ marched thoost þat they came to Mouchyne² in Bauyere / & lodged them in a
 16 fayre medowe nygh the toun. There the Duc Ode festyed them right honourably the space of thre dayes / and on the fourthe day they departed & toke theire leue of the Duc Ode / and rode so long¹ tyl [they]³
 20 came a day journey nygh to Coloyne. And there the foure knighting that conduyted the Coloyners auaunced them self byfore Duc Anthony, & to him said in this manere: 'My lord, it is best that we hast vs byfore
 24 you toward the toun, to apparayH & make al thing redy for your passage.' 'By my feyth,' said the Duc Anthonye, 'that playseth me wel.' Thenne departed the foure knighting & theire men with them, & rode
 28 tyl they came to the Cite of Coloyne, where they were receyued with Joye / and the Cytezeyns & governours of the cyte demanded of them how they had exployted in theire vyage / And they recounted to them all the
 32 trouth of the fayte and the valyauntnes & noble prowes of the two brethern / & how regnauld was made kyng [of] Behayne. And whan they of Coloyne ⁴understode them they were ryght glad & joyous, sayeng they

Anthony gives the messengers great gifts.

The feast lasts eight days.

Anthony, the King of Anssay,
¹ fol. 140 b.
 and Duke Ode take leave of Regnauld.

Anthony promises to help him against the paynims.

They march to Mouchine, where the Duke feasts them, and

on the fourt day they march again.

They arrive near Cologne.

The four knights go in advance to Cologne and

are joyfully received.

They tell the news of the expedition.

⁴ fol. 141.
 The Cologners are glad

² Fr. Muchin. ³ MS. has day.

to have the
friendship of
such noble lords.

Anthony and the
king arrive at
Cologne.

They are nobly
feasted,

and promise the
townspeople
their succour if
it should be
wanted.

Anthony arrives
near Luxem-
bourg.

Christine is joy-
ful at her lord's
return.

² fol. 141 b.

His people re-
ceive him with
shots of wel-
come.

He feasts the
King of Anssay
and frees him
from all his obli-
gations except
the founding of
the priory.

were wel happy & ewrous¹ to haue acquyred the loue
& good wy^H of two lordes of so grete valeur. And
thenne they made grete apparay^H for to receyue the
Duc Anthony, and the king^t of Anssay with theire 4
baronye. Soo long^t rode thoost that they came to Coloyne, where the Cytezeyns cam & mete hem honour-
ably / and to the prynces they made grete reuerence,
prayeng them that they wold be lodged that nyght 8
within the toun, where they were nobly festyed &
honourably seruyd at souper. And on the morn
Anthony & his oost passed ouer the Ryn, and toke his
leue of them of Coloyne, whiche he thanked moche, 12
sayeng : 'yf they were in ony wyse oppressed by theire
enemyes he wold^t be euer redy for tayde & socoure them
after hys power.' Wheroft they thanked hym moche.
Thenne the Duc Anthony & the king of Anssay dyde 16
so moche by theire journeys, that on an euen they
came & lodged them in the medow nygh by Lucem-
bourg. /

The duchesse Cristyne was replenysshed with joye, 20
whan she knew the commyng of her lord anthony /
and immedyatly she, nobly accompanied, yssued out of
the toun / and al^t the noble cyteseyns folowed her to
mete with theire lord, the whiche they recounted a 24
half a myle fro the toun. What shal I say / greter
joye was neuer sene than that was made for the retourne
of Duc Anthony. The Duchesse made humbly her
obeyssance vnto hym / and ²hertyly welcommed hym. 28
The peuple cryed on hye for Joye, sayeng thus :
'welcomme our lord ryght redoubted.' The joye was
grete thrugh the toun where the Duc festyed the kynge
of Anssay by the space of six dayes contynuelly, & for- 32
gaf & rendred to hym al^t his obligacions, and held^t hym
quytte / except the Foundation of the pryore, where as
sowles shuld be prayed for / for the loue of Regnault

¹ Fr. *eureux*.

his brother. And the kinge of Anssay thanked hym moche, & toke his leue of hym / departed, & came in Anssay, where as he was receyued with joye / And the
 4 Duc anthony abode with the Duchesse Cristyne, on whom he gate a sone that same yere which was clepid Locher, whiche afterward delyuered the Countrey of Ardane fro thevys, murdrers, & robbeurs ; and in the
 8 wodes there he founded an abbeye, and endowed it with grete pocessyons / And he also dyde doo make the bridge of Masyeres vpon the ryuere of Meuze, and many other fortresses in the basse marche of holland /
 12 and dyde many fayre fayttes of armes with the king Olyphart of behayne, that was his Cousyn, & sone to kyng Regnauld. It happed not long after the kyng of Anssay was retourned in to his royme, that warre
 16 meuyd betwix hym & the Duc of austeryche & the [Erle] of Fyerburgh. wherfor he besought the Duc Anthony for socour, that gladly obtempered to his requeste, in so moche that he toke by force of armes
 20 the Erle of Fyerburgh / and syn pas¹sed in Austeryche, where he dyscomfyted the Duc in batayH, and made hym to be pacyfyed with the kyng of Anssay, to the grete prouffyt & honour of the kinge. And bertrand
 24 theldest sone of the Duc Anthony, was assured with Melydee the sayd kinge of Anssays daughter / the whiche Bertrand afterward was kyng of anssay, and hys brother Locher was Duc of Lucembourgh, after
 28 the decesse of the Duc Anthony hys fader. But of this matere I wyl no more speke at this tyme / but shal retourne to speke of Melusyne & of Raymondyn, and of theire other children. /

32 **N**ow sayth thystorye, that Raymondyn by hys noblenes & grete vasselage conquer^l grete countrees / and to hym many barons dyde homage vnto the land of Brytayne. And Melusyne had two yere after
 36 that two sones, the first was named Froymond, that

Anssay thanks him, and afterwards returns to his country.

Anthony begets Locher, who frees Ardennes from thieves,

and builds fortresses, and does feats of arms along with his cousin Olyphart of Bohemia.

The King of Anssay asks the help of Anthony against his enemies.

¹ fol. 142.

Anthony assists him.

Bertrand is assured to Melydee, the daughter of the King of Anssay.

Raymondin conquers great countries, and many barons do homage to the land of Brittany.

Melusine bears two sons, Froymond,

entierly louyd holy Chirch, and that was wel shewed in his ende, For he was professid^t monke in to thabbeye of Maillezes, wheroft there befel a grete & an horrable myschief, as ye shal here herafter by thy storye / and the other child that they had the yere folowyn^g was named Theodoryk, the whiche was ryght batayllous.

and Theoderick.

who became a monk,
Geffray with the Great Tooth was the most enterprising of all his brethren.

¹ fol. 142 b.

Here I shal leue to speke of the two children / and I shal shewe you of Geffray with the grete tooth, that was yrous & hardy / & most enterpryse dide of al hys bretheren. And wete it wel that the said geffray doubted neuer man / And thy storye ¹sheweth, & the true Cronykle that he faught ayenst a knight, that was gendred with a spyryte in a medowe nygh by Lusynen, as ye shal here herafter. It is trouth that thenne Geffray was grete & ouergrownen / and herde tdynges that there was in Garande peple that wold not obey to hys fader / thenne sware Geffray by the good lord that he shuld make them to come as reason requyreh, and to do that he toke leue of hys fader, that was right wroth of hys departyng / and had with hym to the nombre of fyue houndred men of armes, and a houndred balesters, and so went in to Garande / and anoone enuyred after them that were dysobedyent / and they that held the party of Raymondyn shewed hym the Fortresse where they were, & armed them to goo with hym to helpe to dystroye hys enemyes. ‘By my feyth, fayre lordes,’ sayd Geffray with the grete tooth / ‘ye are ryght true & loyal peuple / & I thanke you of thonour that ye proffre me / but as for this tyme present I shall not nede you, For I haue men of armes ynough for taccomplicsh myn enterpryse.’ ‘For soothe, sire, ye haue more to doo than ye suppose, For your enemyes ben ryght strong & of meruaylous courage, & they be frendes & cousyns, and of the grete & moost noble blood of al the Countree.’ ‘Fayre sires,’ said Geffray, ‘doubte you not, For thrughe thayde of god

He hears tidings
that the people
of Garande will
not pay his father
their tribute.

He goes to Gar-
ande against his
father's will.

Raymondin's
partizans there
offer to help
Geffray.

He thanks them,
but declines their
aid.

They tell him his
enemies are very
powerful.

16
12
20
24
28
32
36

omnipotent I shal the matere ¹ wel redresse. And wete it wel there shal be none so myghty / but I shal make them to obeye my commandement or to deye of an euyl deth. And also, fayre lordes & true frendes, yf I nede you I shall send^t for you' / And they ansuerd^t, 'we are now al redy, and also shal we be at al tymes that it playse you vs to calle.' 'Fayre lordes,' said Geffray with the grete tooth / 'that ought to be thanked for.' Thenne toke Geffray hys leue of them / and went forth on his way toward a Fortresse that was called Syon / & within the same was one of the enemyes of geffray that hight 12 Claude of Syon, & were thre bretheren. Moche were the thre brethern yrous & proude / and wold^t haue subdued and putte vnder theire subjection al^t theire neygh-bours. Thenne sent geffray with the grete tooth wordes 16 of deffyaunce / outhre to come & make theire obeys-saunce to hym for Raymondin his faders. And they ansuerd^t to the messenger, 'that for Raymondyn ner for no man on his byhalf they shuld nought doo / and that 20 he shuld no more retourne to them for this matere, for than he were a fole.' 'By my feyth,' said the messenger, 'I shal kepe me wel therfro / but that I bryng^t with me a maister in medecyne, that shal make such 24 a lectuary or drynk wherof ye shal be poysonned^t, & syn hanged by the neck.' And of these wordes were the iij bretheren wood wroth. And wete it wel that yf the messenger had not hasted his hors away he had 28 be take & deed without ony remedye, For ²they were full yrous & crue^t, and doubted not god nor no man luyngt. Thenne retourned the messenger toward geffray and recounted hym the grete prude & auauntyng of the 32 bretheren. 'By my heed,' said Geffray with the grete tooth, 'a lytel rayne leyeth doun grete wynd^t / & doubt^t you not but I shal pay them wel theire wages.'

36 **T**hystorye sayth, that whan geffray vnderstode the grete prude & the fel ansuere of the thre brethern,

¹ fol. 143.

Geffray says he will compel his enemies to obey.

He goes against Claude of Sion,

one of three proud brethren.

He sends his defiance, and orders them to make obedience to him on Raymondin's behalf.

They refuse, and

² fol. 143 b.

the messenger tells Geffray of their pride and boasting.

Geffray says that "a little rain layeth down a great wind."

Geffray approaches near the fortress.

He arms, mounts; and takes a squire with him; and orders his men to rest till he sends them word.

A knight, who well knew his boldness, follows with x men.

Geffray arrives at the Fortress of Sion.

He sees its strength on one side,

and spies all round it.

¹ fol. 144.

He finds that it is weakest by the bridge,

and returns toward his men.

Philebert and his fellowship keep out of Geffray's sight.

He sees xiv armed men in Geffray's way, and is afraid,

without ony moo wordes he came & lodged hym & his peopple half a leghe fro the said Fortresse. Thenne toke he his armures & armed hym of al pieces; toke with hym a squyer that wel knew the Countrey / 4 mounted on horsback / commanded his men that they shuld not meue them thens vnto tyme they had word of hym, & departed with hys esquier / but there was a knyght that wel knew hys noble & fyers courage, & 8 that he doubted nothing¹ of the world / which toke x. men of armes with hym and went after Geffray, folowing² hym fro ferre, For he moche loued geffray. Geffray rode so long³ that he sawe the Fortresse of Syon vpon 12 a hye roche. ‘By my feyth,’ said thenne geffray, ‘yf the Fortresse be so strong at that other syde as it is at this syde, hit shal gyue me moche peyne or euer it be take, I must see & know yf it be also strong at that 16 other parte.’ Thenne he & his esquier aduyronned the Fortresse about, al along⁴ by a lytel wod, that they might not be aspyed ne sene. They came & descended ¹in a valey / and euer the forsayd knyght that 20 was named Philibert² folowed hym a ferre / and so long rode geffray tyl he had ouer sene the said fortres al round⁵ about / and hym semed wel that it might be take by the brydge syde, For it was the feblest syde of 24 it / Thenne entred geffray & hys esquier in a lytel path, & retourned vpon the mountayne toward⁶ hys lodgis, where his peopple were hym abydyngt. Philebert, that sawe Geffray retourne, thought he woulde lete hym 28 passe tofore hym, Wherfor he and his felawship reculed within the wode, to thende they shuld not be perceyued of hym / but soone after they sawe a companye of men of warre comynge that same way that geffray came 32 toward the Fortresse, and were to the nombre of xiiii personne wel armed. Wherfore the said knight philibert was abasshed & agast, lest they shuld mete with

² Fr. Ver. *Philibert de Mommoret.*

geffray, For wel he wyst that geffray wold fyght with them / as he dide / and that shal ye here herafter./

because he
knows Geffray
will fight them.

In this partye, sayth thistorye, that vpon the topp of the mountayne geffray recounted the said companye, And who that shuld enquere of me what folke they were; I shuld say it was one of Claude of Syon bretheren that came toward his brother at his mandement. And wete it wel, that the way was there so narow that vnnethe one hors myght passe by other. And whan Geffray with the grete ¹tooth recounted them, he sayd to hym that rode first of alle that he shuld tary and make his company to stand asyde tyl he were passed the mountayne. ‘By my feyth,’ said he þat was proude & orgueyllous, ‘Sire daw fole,² wel we muste first knowe what ye be, that say that we retourne vs for you.’ ‘By god,’ said Geffray with the grete toth / ‘that shal you knowe anone, For I shal make you retourne ayenst your wy^H. I am Geffray of Lusynen / tourne back / or elles I shal make you to retourne by force.’ Whan Guyon the brother of Claude of Syon vnderstode hym & knew that it was geffray with the grete tooth / he cryed to his folk, ‘auaunt, lordes barons, For yf he escape grete shame shal be to vs / in an euyl heure is he come in to oure land for to demande seruytude of vs.’ Thenne whan geffray vnderstode these wordes he drew out his sword & smote the nethermost of alle vpon his hed, so grete a stroke that he ouerthrew hym al^t astonyed doune to the erthe, and syn passed forth by hys hors, & ouer hym that laye along^t the way, in suche wyse that he al to brusid the body of hym / And thenne geffray atteyned another in the brest foynyng with hys swerd, so that he fel^t doune deed to therthe / and syn cryed aftir the oþer, ‘False traytours, ye may not escape, ye shal retourne to your euyl helthe.’ Thenne he passed fourth

Geffray encoun-
ters one of
Claud's bro-
thers and his men
on a narrow road.

¹ fol. 144 b.

Geffray asks
them to stand
aside till he has
passed.

They ask who he
is.

He answers,
“Geffray of Lu-
signan,” and bids
them turn, else
he will make
them.

Gilion cries to
his men not to
let Geffray es-
cape.

But Geffray
draws his sword
and smites one
of his company
so hard that he
is overthrown.

He falls at
another in the
breast, and kills
him.

² Fr. *damp musart*.

¹ fol. 145.

to the iii^{de}, which was grete & strongⁱ, & smote Geffray vpon the helmet with al his strengthe / but the helmet was hard^t and þe swerd^t glenced asyde & dommaged hym nought / but Geffray toke his swerd^t with two 4 handes and smote hym vpon the coyffe of stele vnto the brayne, & reuersed hym deed to the erth. And whan guyon perceyued this myschief he was wode wroth & full of yre, For he might not come to geffray, 8 wherfore he commanded euery man to retourne, that they might haue them self at large to duffende eche other. Thenne euery man tourned back & feld^t, &

He cuts open the head of a third.

Guion is wroth because he cannot get at Geffray.

He commands his men to retreat.

They flee to a field.

Geffray pursues them.

Guion's men set on Geffray on all sides.

He and his squire fight bravely.

² fol. 145 b.

The knight that Geffray dismounted hastes as he best can to Sion.

He finds Claude at the gate,

and tells him of the adventure,

and that the fighting is still going on.

yssued out of that narrow way in to a playn feld^t, And 12 geffray with the grete toth pursiewed them, the swerd^t in his hand^t. Now shall I speke of the knight philibert, whiche was approched nygh the said^t way, and herde the noyse / so he called^t to hym his felawes. 16 And thenne guyon and his men were in þe playn & assaylled geffray on al sydes of hym / but as preu & valyaunt he duffended vgyourously his flesshe / and also hys esquier bare hym valyauntly / and was ryght 20 strong the batayll. Now most I speke of hym which geffray first ouerthrew to therthe in the path^t forsaide, For whan he perceyued that guyon was retourned by the force of geffray / and sawe his two felawes lyeng 24 deed by hym, he was moche dolaunt, and behelde ²all about hym & fond^t his hors, wher on he with grete peyne mounted, for he was al to brusyd in hys body, & hasted hym as he coude best toward Syon. And whan 28 he came to the fortresse he fond^t Claude at yate and some of his men with hym / the whiche perceyued that he that was commyng toward hym was al bloody and knew hym wel / & of hym demanded who so had 32 arayed hym / And he recounted thadventure how they had recounted^t geffray, and how he adommaged them and had made guyon hys brother to retourne fro the narow lane by force, & that yet lasted theyre bataylle. 36

Thenne whan Claude vnderstode hym he was sorowfull
& angry, and yede and armed hym, and made his men
to be armed.

Claud orders his
men to arm,

4 M oche dolaunt was Claude whan he vnderstod of
the vlyonnye & dommage that geffroy had don
to Guyon his brother / and how yet they were syghtyng
togidre / & armed of al pieces. his men with hym rode
8 thitherward / and were in nombre thre score bassynets.

He rides to aid
his brother,

But for nought he toke hys waye, For philibert with
his ten knyghtes were come to the batay^H, & faught in
suche wyse that al guyons meyne were slayne & he
12 take / and soone sware Geffray that he shuld make
hym to be hanged by the neck. Thenne came the said
esquier, whiche was retourned in to the forsayd land,
to fette a fayre swerd, that he tofore sawe falle fro one
16 of Guyons men / & said to Geffray in this manyere,

as the men are
slain and his
brother is Gef-
fray's prisoner.

'My lord, I haue herd grete bruyt of men armed
commyngh hitherward.' And whan Geffray vnderstode
hym he fourthwith made Guyon to be bound at a tree
20 within the wod^l nygh by them, & syn retourned with
hys men toward the said path or lane for to abyde
there his aventure. And philibert rode vnto the top
of the hy^H, and perceyued Claude & hys felawship

A knight tells
Geffray that
more men of
arms are ap-
proaching.

¹ fol. 146.
Guion is bound
to a tree.
Geffray and his
company return
to the path to
wait the arrival
of Claud.

24 that entred the lane / thanne he retourned to his
felawes & sayd to Geffray, 'Sire, the best that ye can
doo is to kepe wel this pathe, here cōme your en-
emyes.' And Geffray with the gret tooth ansuerd /
28 'doubte you not / but it shal be wel kept & deffended.'

Thenne he called to hym the squyer that was come
with hym, & said: 'renne hastily toward thoost, &
make my folke to cōme hither.' And he anone de-
32 parted toward thoost, and whan he was there arryued
he said to þem, 'Fayre lordes, now lightly on horsback,
For geffray fyghteh ayenst his enemyes.' And they
armed them & soone mounted on theire horses, and
36 hasted them to folowe the squyer that guyded them

Geffray sends a
messenger to his
host.

His lords haste

to succour him. the nerest way there he supposed to fynd Geffray, fighting with his enmyes.

Thystorye sayth that geffray, philibert, & theire knightes were at thentree of the pathe / and 4 thenne came Claude & his men with grete puyssaunce along' thruh the lane, & wel they supposed to haue mounted the montayne. But Geffray was at thentre of the path that vgyourously & valyauntly deffended 8 the passage / and wete it wel there was none so hardy but he made hym to recule. For there were two of his knightes that descended fro theire horses, & stode at eyther syde of geffray, & proudly rebuckyd Claudes 12 men with theire speres, & many of them were there slayne. Philibert ¹was thenne descended from his hors, and thre othre of his companye, and recouered the montayne aboue the pathe, where as they gadred 16 stones and threw them vpon them that were in the lane, thruh suche yre & grete strength, that there was none so strong' bassynets nor armure but it was perced; and therwith they were astonyed or elles ouerthrawen / 20 and wete it wel þat there were more than xx^t. slain.

Geffray blocks
the path,
,

¹ fol. 146 b.

while the Knight Philibert and three men ascend the mountain, and throw stones on Claud and his men.

Geffray's company arrives, and is ordered to prevent Claud returning to his fortress.

Thenne cāme there the squyer with the batayl that he brought. And whan geffray knew it, he com-manded thre houndred men of armes, that they shuld 24 draw at the other ende of the lane to kepe the passage, that Claude nor hys peple should not retourne to theire fortresse. And anone from thens the squyer with his companye departed, & came hastily to fore the medowe, 28

Clerevauld, third brother of Claud, takes Geffray's company to be friends.

& passed byfore the Fortresse. And whan Clerevauld, the iii^{de} brother of Claude, sawe them, he demed that it was some socours that came to them / For he trowed not that in the land shuld haue be so many enmyes. 32 The whiche esquier with his companye came with amy-able contenaunce, shewyng no semblaunt but as frendes. And thenne Clerevauld, that byleued wel that they were theyre frendes lete falle the bridge, & opened the 36

yate where he stode with xxⁱⁱ. men of armes. And whan the squyer & his compayne perceyued þat the bridge was doun & the gate open, they drew them
 4 hastily in the way to passe the Fortres. And passyng by the Fortresse, Clervauld demanded what they were / and they ansuerd^k: 'We be frendes.' and in approuching of the said^k bridge to the nombre xxⁱⁱ knightes, they
 8 enquyred after Claude of Syon: 'For fayn we wold speke with hym.' And Clereuauld them approuched, sayeng^j: 'he shal retourne anoone, For he is departed to fyght with Geffray with the grete tooth our enemye,
 12 that he & Guyon our brother haue enclosed in yonder mountayne that is there byfore you / and wete it wel that Geffray may not escape them, though he were tempred with fyne stele, but that he shal be slayne
 16 or take.' 'By my feyth,' sayd the squyer, 'this be good tdynges.' An thenne he approuched with his xxⁱⁱ knightes nerer & nerer, askyng hym where shal we goo to helpe hym. 'By my feyth,' sayd Cler-
 20 uauld, 'gramereys it shal not nede at this tyme.'

Thystorye sheweth that the squyer approached to Clereuauld so nygh by his fayre wordes, that he & hys company came vpon the bridge / & thenne he
 24 cryed to hys peple / 'auaunt, lordes, the fortresse is oure.' And whan Clereuauld herd these wordes, he supposed to haue reculed & to haue lyft vp the bridge / but the squyer & his people came so rudly that it
 28 was not in theire powere to haunee the bridge / but bare it doun by force, and anone alighted & entred in at the gate / and with two speres vndersetthe the portecollys / & immedyatly descended more than an houn-
 32 dred of the squyers men on foot, & came & entred into the Fortres. Thenne was clereuauld take, and al hys peple that were there with hym, & brought vnto a chambre fast bounden, where they were surely kept
 36 with fourty men of armes / ²And after this don, they

He allows them to come near the fortress.

Clerievald asks who they are;
 1 fol. 147.
 "We be friends," they answer.

The squire and his company by fair words get on the bridge. He

then cries, "The fortresse is ours."

Clerievald tries to pull up the bridge, but is too late.

He and his men are taken prisoners.

² fol. 147 b.

assembled them, & toke Counsey^H how they might best send word^t vnto geffray of this faytte, & how they shuld kepe them within the Fortresse to thentent to take Claude yf it happed hym to retourne / And thenne 4 said the squyer that he hym self shuld goo to gyue Geffray knowlege of this auenture. And thenne anone he departed and came to Geffray, to whom he shewed al^H the trouth of the faytte / and whan geffray knew 8 thauenture he was joyful, & made hym knight, & gaaf hym the gouernaunce of a houndred men of armes / & commanded that he shuld go anoone in to the countrey, to kepe wel that Claude shuld take none oþer way, but 12 the way to the Fortresse ; For yf he escaped he might do grete harme tofore he were take, & that bettre it were to close hym in that lane, & there by force to take hym.

'Sire,' said the new knight, 'doubte you not he 16 shal not escape you, but yf he cane flee, yf that I may come by tymes to the lane.' Thenne he departed & descended the mountayne with hys men of armes. And geffray taryed at the pathe, that mightily faught with 20 his swerde vpon his enemyes. And wel fourty knyghtes were alighted on foot vpon þe hylle, & threw stones vpon Claude & his peple in suche wyse, that by force he & hys peuple was constrainyd to retourne / And 24 Geffray & his peple entred in to the lane & chaced þem / but vnnethe he might passe to pursiew men for deed men that were slain with castyng^t of stones.

Now shal I shew you of the new knight that was com- 28 myng^t at the other lanes ende with his company / but whan he herd^t the bruyt of the horses / he thought wel that ¹Claude retourned / and he toke the couert of the mountayne & suffred Claude to take the way toward 32 the Fortresse.

Thystorye telleth that Claude hasted hym fast to come out of the lane for to sauе hym self & his peple in the Fortresse of Syon, but that the fole 36

The squire returns to tell Geffray of their deed.

Geffray is glad, and knights the squire, and gives him a hundred men to prevent the escape of Claud.

Claud is obliged to retreat,

Geffray chases him.

The new knight hears the noise of the retreat, and

¹ fol. 148.

suffers Claud to return to the fortress.

thinketh oftynes commeth to foly. It is veray trouth
that he spedē hym so fast that he was out of the lane
& came to his large / and so he ne taryed neyther for
4 one nor for other / but came walapyng toward the

Claud and his
people reach the
fortress, and cry,
"Open the
gates."

Fortresse. And whan he was nygh, he cryed with a
high voyce / 'open the gates' / & so they dide / and
thenne he passed the bridge and entred, & was alyghted
8 afore that he perceyued that he had lost the Fortresse /
and fourthwith he was seasyd & bounde by hys enemyes.
Thenne was he gretly abasshed ; For he sawe not about
hym no man that he knew. 'What dyuel is this ?

He is seized and
bound.

12 where are my men become?' 'By my feyth,' said a
knight / 'ryght foorth shal ye knowe, For ye shal lodge
with them' / And so immedyatlly he was brought to
the chambre where Clereuauld, his brother & his people

He asks about
his men.
He is told that
he will see them,
as he is to be
lodged with
them.

16 were in pryon. Thenne whan he perceyued them bound
& kept as they were, he was ryght dolaunt. And whan
Clereuauld sawe hym, he said : 'Ha / a, Claude, fayre
brother, we are fāt by your pryme into grete captiuite /

Clerevald sees
his brother, and
upbraids him.

20 and doubtē it not we shal never escape from hens without losse of our lyues, For to cruel is Geffray.' And
Claude ansuerd hym : 'We muste abyde all that therof
shal fāt.' Thenne came Geffray ¹ryght foorth to the

¹ fol. 148 b.

24 Fortresse, & had slayn or take all the residu of Claudes
peple / saaf hys brother Guyon which was brought
with hym, & putte pryonner in the said pryon where
as Geffray entred / and emong al oper said to Claude :

Geffray arrives
and brings his
prisoner Guion.

28 'How,' said he, 'thou fals traytour, durst thou be so
hardy to hurte or dommage my faders Countre & his
people, thou that owest to be his subget / and by the
feyth that I owe to my fader I shal punysshe the, in
32 exemple of all other, For I shal doo the hang^t byfore
Valbruyant, the Castel in syght of thy Cousyn Gueryn,
that is a traytour as thou art, vnto my lord my fader.'

Geffray tells
Claud that he in-
tends to hang
him before Val-
bruyant, the
castle of his
cousin Guerin,
who is also a
traitor.

And whan Claude herd that gretynge, wete it wel / he
36 was not therwith playsed. But whan the peple of the

The people of the land are glad that Claud and his people are taken or slain;

because they robbed them and despoiled all passers by the fortress.

Geffray sets up a pair of gallows and hangs all the people of Claude, but spares his two brothers.

Geffray leaves the castle in charge of a wise knight,

¹ fol. 149.

and departs to Valbruyant.

He erects gallows in front of the castle, hangs Claude and his brothers, and orders them off the castle to yield on pain of hanging.

Guerin departs from his castle to Mountfrain to have counsel.

Courtney knew that Syon the Fortresse, & Claude and his brethern were take & theire peple slayne / thenne came playntes of robberyes & other euhl caas vpon Claude & vpon his peuple, & within that same Fortresse 4 were founde more than a C prysonners of the good peple of the Countrey, as marchants & straungers that were robbed passyng by the way / For tofore that tyme none passed by the said Fortresse vnspoyle^d. And 8 whan geffray herd^d of this tydynges, he made to be sette vpon the syde of the hille a payre of galowes / & therat dide do be hanged al the peple of Claude / and his two brethern he spared for that tyme / and gaaf the 12 Castel in keping vnto a knight of the Countrey that was ryght valyaunt & wyse / & commanded hym ¹vpon his lyf to kepe it wel / and to gouerne lawfully his subgets, & to kepe good justice / And he promysed 16 hym so to doo, For he gouerned the countre wel & rightfully. And after his commandement he departed on the morowe toward Valbruyant / and toke the thre bretheren with hym, the whiche had grete fere of 20 deth / and that was not without cause / as ye shal here herafter.

Thy story sayth that geffray & his peuple rode tyl they cam tofore Valbruyant / wher as tentes were 24 dressed & sett vp, and euery man lodged in ordre. Thenne made geffray ryght foorth to sette vp galowes tofore the Castel gate, and there dide do hang incontynent Claude & his two bretheren / and sent worde 28 to them of the Castel / yf that they yelded not to hym the Fortres, that he wold hang them yf he had it by force. And whan Gueryn of Valbruyant herd^d these tydynges, he sayd to his wyf: 'It is so for trouth, 32 madame, that ageynst this strong dyuel I ne may withstand^d ne kepe this Fortresse, wherfor I wyl departe & goo vnto mountfrayn to Guerard my nevew, & to other my frendes for to haue Counsey^H how we may haue 36

trayte of pais with Geffray.' And thenne the wyf
that was right sage & subtyl said to hym / 'go foorth /
by the grace of god, & kepe you wel that ye be nat
4 take by the waye, and departe not from Mountfrayn
tyl ye haue tdynges fro me, For by thayde of god I
hoop that I shal purchasse a good trayte with geffray
for you ; For had ye don after my CounseyH, & byleued
8 me, ye shuld not ¹haue meddled with the werkes of
Claude & of his bretheren / not with standing yet haue
ye not falsed your feyth toward your liege lord Ray-
mondyn of Lusynen.' Thenne Gueryn her said : ' My
12 dere sustir & spouse, doo that ye thinke best, For
my fyaunce is in you / and I wyl byleue al that ye
may counseylle.' And thenne departed he by a prvy
posterne vpon a swyft hors, and passed by the couerts
16 of the wodes, so that he was not aspyed. And whan
he was a lytel passed he sporyd his hors, and the hors
bare hym swyftly, and wete it that he had so grete fere
lest he shuld be aspyed, that he was almost out of his
20 wyt / & thanked god moche whan he fond thentre of
the Forest þat dured wel two leghes / and toke the way
toward Mountfrayn, as moche as he coude ryde.

Thystory testyfyeth, that so long rode Gueryn that
24 he came to mountfrayn, where he found guerard
hys neuew, & recounted to hym al these werkes ; and
how Geffray with the grete toth had take Claude
theire Cousyn & his two brethern, & brought tofore
28 Valbruyaunt, where he dide al thre to be hanged / and
how he was departed thens, doubtyng to be take with-
in the Fortresse. 'By my feyth,' said Guerard, ' Fayre
vnkle, ye haue do wysely, For after that men speke of
32 Geffray, he is a valyaunt knight of hye & puyssaunt
enterpryse / and he is moche cruel & moche to be
doubted. Woo is to me that euer we went to Claude !
For wel we knew that he & hys bretheren were of euyl
36 gouernement, & that none passed foreby theire For-

MELUSINE.

S

His wife tells
him not to leave
there till she
sends him tid-
ings;

she declares she
will make a
treaty with Gef-
fray.

¹ fol. 149 b.

Guerin tells her
to do her best,

and leaves on a
swift horse by a
privy door.

He rides fast, as
he fears to be
seen.

He tells Gerrard
the news, how
Geffray has
hanged Claud
and his two
brethren,

and how he had
fled to escape
capture.

Gerrard says he
has acted wisely,

and is sorry they
had had to do
with Claud,
because Claud
and his brethren
were of evil con-
duct.

¹ fol. 150.

tresse vnrobbed. Now pray ¹We god, that he preserueth bothe our lyues & honour in this affayre. Fayre vncle, vpon this caas we muste seke remedy / It is good that we lete haue knowledge to our parents & frendes þerof, þat haue be of this folyssh alyaunce.' And gueryn ansuerd: 'that is trouth.' Therne they sent wordes to theyre frendes that they shuld al cōme to mountfrayn, so that they might haue Counseil togidre 8 vpon this faytte, & to seke the meane to escuse them toward geffray. Now resteth thy story of them / and speketh of the lady of Valbruyant that was moche subtyl & sage / and she euer blamed her lord of that he 12 had consented to Claude & to hys brethern. This lady had a daughter, whiche was of the age of ix yere / & fayre & gracyous; and also a sone that was ten yere of age, whiche was fayre & wel endoctryned. And thenne 16 this lady as she had of nothing¹ be abasshed² / mounted upon a palfray rychely arayed, & dide do be mounted her two children vpon two horses, and ordeyned two auncyent gentylmen to conduyte theire horses / and 20 acompanyed with six damoyselles, dide open the gate where she fond the new knight that brought the mandement of geffray, which she receyued benyngly, and he that coude moche of honour made to her the 24 reuerence / and the lady seyd to hym temperatly: 'Sire knight, my lord is not within / and therfore I wyl go myself toward my lord your maister to knowe ³what is his playsyr, For it semeth me that he is come hither 28 to make werre / but I byleue not that it is for my lord nor for none within this fortresse. For god deffende that my lord or ony of this place had do that thing that shuld dysplayse geffray or my lord his fader / and 32 by aduenture yf some of his synester frendes haue informed geffray otherwyse than raison, I wold humbly beseeche & pray hym that he vouche sauf to here my

Guerin and Gerard send to their friends to come to Mountfrain to devise means of excusing themselves to Geffray.

The lady of Valbruiant

mounts her two children on horseback

and accompanies them to the gate of the castle,

where she tells the new knight that she will go to Geffray herself,

³ fol. 150 b.

as her lord has done nothing to displease Geffray or his father.

² Fr. *Adonc la dame ne fut ne folle ne esbakie,*

said lord & husband^t in his escuses & deffenses' / and thenne whan the knight herd her speke so sageously / her ansuerde : 'Madame, this requeste is raisonable,
 4 wherfore I shal conduyte you toward^t my lord / and I hope that ye shal fynd^t hym frendly, & that ye shal haue a good^t traytye with hym / how be it, he is infourmed of gueryn your lord ryght malycyously / but I
 8 byleue that at your requeste he shal graunte a part of your petycion' / And thenne they departed & came toward the lodgys of Geffray.

The new knight undertakes to conduct her to Geffray.

Thystorye sayth that whan geffray saw the com-
 12 myng of the lady he yssued out of his tente & came ayenst her / and she that was wel nourrytured held her two children tofore geffray, to whom she made humble reuERENCE / and thenne geffray enclyned hym
 16 to her, & toke her vp right humbly, & said : 'Madame, ye be right welcome' / and 'my lord,' said she, 'I see þat I desyre' / and thenne her two children dyde
 1 fol. 151.
 1 theyre obeyssaunce in the moost humble wyse / and

Geffray issues from his tent,

20 he gaf to them ayen his salut. Thenne toke the lady the word^t / and feynyng as though she had knownen nothing of hys euyl wy^t / said vnto hym in this wyse : 'My lord / my lord ! myn husband as for this tyme he
 24 is not present in this Countre. Wherfore I am come toward you to pray you that it may playse you to take your lodgys in your Fortresse, and take with you as many of your peple as shal you playse ; For, my lord,
 28 thanked be god, there is ynough to plese you with / and wete it wel that I & my meyne shal receyue you gladly, as we owe to doo the sone of our souerayn lord naturall.' Whan geffray vnderstode her requeste

She feigns to know nothing of her lord's ill-doings.

She tells Geffray that her lord is away from home,

and invites Geffray to lodge in the fortress.

32 he was gretly abashed how she durst desyre hym / consyderyng how he was infourmed ageynst Gueryn her husband. Neuerthele he sayd, 'By my feyth, fayre lady, I thanke you of your grete curtoysye that ye offre
 36 me / but this requeste I ought not to agree, For men

Her request abashes Geffray.

who says that he has been told that her lord does not deserve such recognition,

but that in her lord's absence she and those in the fortress are safe.

¹ fol. 151 b.

The lady answers that neither herself nor her husband have done wrong;

and hopes that Geffray will hear her husband's excuses.

Geffray promises to listen to them,

and gives him a safe conduct for a week.

The lady goes to Mountfrain

and tells her lord of her interview.

² fol. 152.

An ancient knight says that they will have a

haue youen to me knowlege that your husband hath not deseruyd it ayenst my lord, my fader, & me / how be it, my fayre lady, I wyl wel that ye knowe that I am not come for to make warre ayenst ladyes & damoy- 4 sellies / and be ye of this sure, that neyther to you nor to none of your fortres I wyl nought say nor hurt, yf your husband^d be not there' / And she therne said : ' gramercy, my ¹lord. But I requyre you, that it playse 8 you to shew me the cause of your indignacyon that ye haue vnto my lord myn husband^d, For I am in certain nother he nor I haue neuer do no thing^t to our knowleche that shuld be your dysplaysure / and I byleue 12 that yf it might plese you to here my lord & husband^d & his escuse, that ye shal fynd them that thus haue informed you, be not matere of trouth / and my lord, therupon I make me strong^t that in conclusyon ye shal 16 fynde as I say.'

In this partie sheweth thistory, that whan geffray herd^d the lady thus speke he thought a lytel, & syn ansuerd^d & said : ' By my feyth, lady, yf he goodly can 20 excuse hym that he haue not falsed hys feyth, I shalbe glad therof / & I shal receyue hym gladly in his excusacayons with his felawes & al^t theire complyses / and from this day seuen nyght I gyue hym saaf gooing & 24 commyng, and fourty personnes with hym.' Thenne toke the lady her leue & retourned to Valbruyant, where she lefte her children / and accompanied with teñ knighting and squyers, & with thre damoyselles 28 departed, & rode so long tyl she came to Mountfrayn, where she was receyued joyously of her lord & his frendes, to whom she recounted how gueryn her lord had safconduyte of geffray for hym, & fourty personnes 32 with hym / & yf he may excuse hym geffray shal here hym gladly, ²and shal admynystre hym al rayson. ' By my feyth,' said an auncyent knight, ' thenne shaſ we haue a good traytē with hym / For there nys none 36

that may say that euer we mysdyde in eny thing ayenst our souerayne lord naturel. Yf Claude, that was our Cousyn, had vs requyred of ayde, yf he neded, & we
 4 had promysed hym to helpe hym / not for that we ne haue yet mysdon / nother geffray nor none other may not say that euer we had the helmet on heed, nor þat
 we yssued euer out of our places for to comforde or
 8 ayde hym ayenst geffray by no wyse / goo we thenne surely toward geffray, & lete me doo there withal, For I doubte not but that we shal haue good traytys with hym.' The frendes & cousyns of gueryn confermed
 12 this propos, & made theire appareyl for to goo toward geffray on the iii^{de} day folowynge. And thenne the lady departed, & retourned to Valbruyant, where she sent for breed, wyne, capons, chikkons, conyns, & such
 16 vytayl, with hey & ootys, and presented it to geffray / but he neuer receyued of it / but suffred that who wold toke of it for his money / and the said lady lete geffray haue knowleche how her lord & his frendes
 20 shuld come toward hys grace. /

Here sayth thystory, that Gueryn of Valbruyant & guerard hys neuew, taryed for theire frendes at mountfrayn / and whan they were come they mounted
 24 on theire horses & rode tyl they came to valbruyant / and on the morne ¹they sent word to Geffray of theire commyng, and that they were al redy to come toward hys good grace to theire excuse. And geffray ansuerd :
 28 þat he was apparayld to receyue them. And þenne they departed fro the Castel & came tofore the tente of geffray, to whom they made theire obeyssaunce ryght honourably. And there thauncyent knight of whiche
 32 I spak tofore toke the word, & said : " Mighty & puys-saunt lord, we are come hither toward your highnesse for this, that we vnderstand how ye are infourmed ayenst vs, that we were consentyng to the ylnesse &
 36 dysobedyence of Claude ayenst our souerayne lord

good treaty with
Geffray,

for they did not
help Claud
against Geffray.

The lady returns
to Valbruyant

and sends vic-tuals to Geffray,

and tells him
how her lord is
about to come
before him.

Guerin and Ger-rard arrive at
Valbruyant,

¹ fol. 152 b.
and send word
to Geffray,

who announces
his readiness to
receive them.

They present
themselves and
make their obed-i-
ence.

The ancient
knight
tells that he has
heard that Gef-
fray thinks they
cousented to
Claud's miscon-
duct.

naturel, your fader. My lord, it is wel trouth that the said Claude our Cousyn, tofore hys folysshe enterpryse, he assembled vs togidre, & thus said to vs: 'Fayre lordes, ye be al of my lynage & kynrede / & I of 4 yours / wherfore rayson requyreh that we loue eche other.' Thenne sayd we / 'by my feyth, ye say trouth / but wherfor say ye soo?' And thenne he ansuerd couertly: 'Fayre lordes, I doubte me to haue 8 shortly a strong' werre & to haue a doo with a strong partye; Wherfor I wyl wete yf ye wold helpe me' / & we thenne asked of hym / ayenst whom / he ansuerd: 'we shuld knowe it al in tyme, & that 12 he was not parfytte frend, who that relenquysshed hys cousyn at hys nede.' Thenne said we to hym, 'we wyl wel that ye knowe that there nys none so grete in this countrey, ¹ne so myghty, yf he wyl 16 hurt or dommage you, but that we shal helpe you to kepe & susteyne you in your ryght.' and vpon that he departed / and syn had he many rancours ayenst some where we ayded hym / but my lord wete it wel 20 that fro the tyme of hys dysobedyence to my lord your fader, we ne doubtie nor fere neyper god nor man that we euer putte piece of harneys on vs / nor that none of vs al yssued out of his fortres, nother for hym nor for 24 his faytte / and the contrary shal be nother knownen nor fond, For herof we wyl not haue grace / but we requyre only right & justice / and yf there be other cause that our euyl wyllers might haue contruyued vpon 28 vs thrugh enuye or hate / I say by right that ye ne owe to be therfore indigned ayenst vs, þat are very subgets & obedient to my lord, your fader Raymondyn of Lusynen, For yf some were wylling to vexe or 32 moleste vs by ony wyse ye oughte to helpe & kepe vs / and herof I can no more say, For we can not thinke that none of vs dide euer that thingⁱ that myght dysplayse my lord your fader. Wherfor we al present 36

He relates how
Claud had asked
their help,

but did not give
the name of the
enemy,

¹ fol. 153.
and how they
promised to as-
sist him.

They helped
Claud against
some of his ene-
mies,
but after his dis-
obedience to
Raymondin they
had not aided
him.

Therefore he
thinks Geffray
should not be in-
dignant against
him,

because they
cannot think
what they have
done displeasing
to Geffray's
father,

beseche & pray you that ye be not infourmed but of rayson." /

and beg
to be informed
of their fault.

4 **W**han geffray had herd the excuse of the old knyght
that spake for al, he called his Counseyll to
hym / and syn said to them : ' Fayre lordes, what semeth
yow of this fayte ? ¹ me semeth that these folke excuse
them self ful wel.' ' By my feyth,' sayd they al in
8 commyn, ' that is trouth / nor ye can not aske of
them, but that ye make them to swere vpon the holy
Euaungylles, that yf the siege had be layed tofore
syon / they had socoured Claude or not ayenst you /
12 and yf they swere ye / they are your enemyes / and to
the contrary, yf they swere that noo / ye owe not to
bere to them euyl wyll.' To this they al accorded /
& therewith concluded theire counseyll. And thenne
16 were gueryn & hys frendes called tofore geffray / and
after he had recorded to them the sayd conclusyon /
they said that gladly they shuld swere as they dyde.
Wherfore they had feas with geffray, and syn went
20 with hym al about the Countre vysytyng the Fortresses
& places by the space of two monethes. And after
Geffray toke leue of the Barons there / and lefte gouern-
ours to kepe & rewle the Countrey / and syn departed
24 & retourned to Lusynen, where he was gretly festyed
of hys fader & moder, that were glad of his retourne.
Thenne was there come a knyght of poytou fro
Cypre, whiche had reported tydynge how the Calyphe
28 of Bandas, and the grete Carmen were arryued in
Armenye / and moche they had adommaged the kynge
Guyon. Also how kynge vryan had tydynge how
they entended to make warre ayenst hym in Cypre.
32 Wherfore he made hys assemble of men of armes & of
shippes, for to recountre & fyght with them in the see.
² For his entencion was not to suffre them to entre in his
land. Whan thenne Geffray vnderstode these tydynge
36 he sware by the good lord, that shuld not be without

¹ fol. 153 b.
Geffray tells his
council that he
thinks they have
made a good de-
fence.
The council ad-
vises that Guerin
and his friends
should be made
to swear that
they would not
have helped
Claud had his
castle been be-
sieged. -

Guerin is ready
to swear ; so he
has peace with
Geffray.

Geffray returns
to Lusignan, and
is greatly feasted.

News comes from
Cyrus that the
Caliph of Bandas
is attacking
Guion, King of
Armenia.

Urian is assem-
bling ships to
fight his bro-
ther's enemies.

² fol. 154.

Geffray resolves
to aid his brethren.

hym, and that to long he had kept his fyre / and said to Raymondin hys fader, & to Melusyne his moder / that they wold make hym cheuyaunce of help for to goo ayde hys bretheren ayenst thenemyes of god / And 4 they accorded therto / so that he promyse^d them to retourne within a yere day toward them.

Geffray asks the
knight from Cy-
prus to accom-
pany him.

Ryght joyous was geffray whan his fader had graunted hym his wy^H. and thenne he prayed 8 the knight that was come fro Cipre, that he wold retourne with hym, & that he shuld reward^d hym wel therof. ‘By my feyth,’ sayd the knight / ‘men telleth me as touching your prowes may none compare / and I 12 shal go with you for to see yf ye can doo more than Vryan & Guyon your bretheren ; For thoo two I knowe ryght wel.’ ‘By my feyth, sire knight,’ said geffray, ‘it is a lytel thing of my faytte concernyng^t the puysaunce of my lordes, my brethern / but I thanke you of this lyberal^H offre to goo with me / & I shall meryte you, therfore, yf it playse god.’ Thenne he made hys mandement & dyde so moch^t, that he assembled xiii. C. 20 men of armes, & wel iij. C. arbalestres, and made them to drawe toward^d Rochelle / And raymondyn & melusyne were there, whiche had don arryued many vesselles, & wel purueyed of¹ vytaylles necessary. 24 And 2thenne Geffray toke leue of his fader & of hys moder, & entred into the see with his compayne, & sayld so þat they lost syght of land, For they made good^t way. Here resteth thystorye of them to speke / 28 and begynneth to speke of the Calyphe of Bandas & of the Sawdan of Barbarye, that was nevew to the sawdan that was slayn in the batay^H vpon the heed of Saynt Andrew aboue the black montayne.

He assembles
xiii. C. men of
arms and iii. C.
archers, and
marches them to
Rochelle,
where Raymond-
in had provided
and victualled
many vessels.

² fol. 154 b.

Geffray sets sail.

And 2thenne Geffray toke leue of his fader & of hys moder, & entred into the see with his compayne, & sayld so þat they lost syght of land, For they made good^t way. Here resteth thystorye of them to speke / 28 and begynneth to speke of the Calyphe of Bandas & of the Sawdan of Barbarye, that was nevew to the sawdan that was slayn in the batay^H vpon the heed of Saynt Andrew aboue the black montayne.

32

The Saracen
lords resolve

Thystorye sheweth vs that the Caliphe of Bandas & the Saudan of Barbarye / the kyng^t Anthenor of Anthioche / and the admiral of querdes³ had made

¹ Orig. of of.

³ Fr. Cordes.

togidre theire affyaunce, that neuer they shuld retourne
 tyl they had dystroyed the kynge Vryan of Cipre, and
 guyon the kyngⁱ of Armanye his brother / and had wel
 4 assembled to the nombre of xvi.^M sarasyns, & had
 theire shippes all prest to thentent to arryue first in
 Armanye / & first of all theire werkes to dystroye
 the yle of Rodes, & after the royalme of Armanye / &
 8 so passe in to Cypre to dystroye & putte to deth / &
 had sworne that they shuld make kyngⁱ Vryan to dey
 on the crosse / & hys wyf & his children they shuld
 brenne. But as the wyse man saith / ‘the fole pro-
 12 poseth & god dysposeth’ / and at that season were
 many espyes emongⁱ them as wel of armenye as of
 rodes / and there was one of the maister of Rodes spyes
 that was so ¹Lyke a Sarasyn that no man mysdyined
 16 hym for other than a Sarasyn, & had the langage as a
 man of the same Countrey ; the whiche knewe the
 secrete of the sarasyns / and syn departed fro them &
 came to baruth, where he fondⁱ a barke þat wold say^H
 20 to Turckye to fette marchandyse, and entred in it. And
 whan they had good wynd they toke vp theire ancre
 & saylled so long that they sawe the yle of Rodes,
 where they came to refresh them there / and soone
 24 after the sayd espye went out of the shipp and toke
 hys way toward the Cite of rodes, where he fonde the
 maister of rodes, that welcommed hym & demanded
 what tydynge. And the spye recounted to hym al
 28 that the Sarasyns entended for to doo / the which
 tydynge the maister of rodes dyde doo knowe by
 wrytyng to the two bretheren kynges of Armenye & of
 Cipre / and that they shuld entre in to the see with
 32 þeire power / and that he shuld mete with them at the
 porte of Japhe / and thenne whan guyon kyngⁱ of
 armanye vnderstode this he entred in to the see, & had
 with hym to the nombre of six thousandⁱ men of armes,
 36 & wel iii.^M balesters, & cam^e saylyng to Rodes, where

to destroy Urien
of Cyprus and
Guion of Ar-
menia.

They intend to
first destroy the
Isle of Rhodes,
afterwards the
kingdom of
Armenia, and
then to capture
Urien of Cyprus,
and make him
die on the cross.

¹ fol. 155.

A spye of the
Master of
Rhodes among
the Saracens

returns to his
master and tells
all that they in-
tend to do.

Word is sent to
the Kings of Ar-
menia and Cy-
pris, and they are
asked to set out
to sea and to
meet the Master
of Rhodes at
Jaffa.

Guion sails to Rhodes,
where the prior receives him joyfully.

¹ fol. 155 b.

as he fonde the grete maister at the porte / And whan the grete prour of Rodes sawe him he had grete joye, & forthwith he entred with hym & al his puyssance into the see to the nombre of¹ iii.C bretheren men of armes, 4 & vi.C balesters or crosbowmen. Whan they were assembled togidre fayre was the Flote, ²For by very estymacion they were fonde to the nombre of ten thousand men of armes / & about xviii.C what balesters 8 as Archers. And wete it wel, it was a fayre syght, For the baners & standarts wayued with the wynd / and the gold & azure vpon the helmets & armures resplendysshed brigh & clere, that it was grete meruayH / and 12 syn they rowed toward the porte of Japhe, wher the Sarasyns had made theire nauye to dryue. And here resteth thystorye of them to speke, & sheweth of vryan as ye may here herafter. /

16

They set sail to Jaffa.

Urian gathers his barons at Lymasson,

takes leave of Ermine,

and soon sails out of sight.

Geffray arrives three days after at Lymasson, but the master of the port will not let him enter.

Thystory sayth, that the kyng Vryan made & sent his mandement thrugh al his land of Cypre, for to gadre his baronye togidre with theire puyssance, & whan they were assembled at the porte of Lymasson he 20 toke leue of the quene Ermyne, his wyf, & entred into the see. And wete it they were in nombre, what men of armes as balesters & archers xiiii.^M, And þenne they departed fro the porte, & sayld by suche force of 24 wynde that quene Ermyne, which was vpon a hye toure, lost soone the syght of them. And wete it wel that geffray with the grete toth, within thre days after arryued vnder Lymasson / but the maister of the porte 28 suffred them not to entre within the porte. how be it he was abasshed to see the armes of Lusynen in theire baners vpon the toppes of theire shippes, & wanst not what to deme or say ; wherfore he went anoone to the 32 Castel & anounced these tydynges to the quene / And she þat was full sage, said to hym / ‘go ye to know

² Fr. *six mille hermins et bien trois mille arbalestriers.*
Hermins = Armenians.

what folke¹ they be, For without treson, they are some
of my lordes lynee / speke thenne with them, hauyng
your men prest & redy vpon the porte to thende, yf
4 they wold arryue by force, that ye may withstand
them' / And he anone fulfylled the quenes commandement
& came to the barryers of the clos & demanded
of them what they sought. Thenne ansuerd the knight
8 whiche tofore that tyme had be in Cypre / 'lete us
arryue, For it is geffray, kyng¹ vryans brother, that
commeth to socoure & ayde hym ayenst the Sarasyns.'
And thenne whan the maister of the porte vnderstode
12 þe knight he knew hym anone, & thus sayd: 'Sire,
the kyng¹ is departed from hens thre dayes agoo, &
hath take lys way and hys puyssance with hym
toward the porte of Japhe, For he wyl not suffre, yf he
16 may, that paynemes entre in his royme / but pray, my
lord, hys brother, that it playse hym to come & see
the quene that ryght ioyous shal be of hys comyng!'
And he al this said to geffray, whiche anoone entred
20 into a lytel galyote, & with hym the said knight and
other of hys felawship, & rowed to the chayne² that
anoone was open / & so they entred in to the hauen,
where as they fonde many noble men that honourably
24 receyued geffray & his felawship, whiche meruaylled
them gretly of hys grete courage & of hys fyersnes, &
brought hym toward the queene that abode for hym,
holdyng her sone Henry in her armes. And as Geffray
28 approached to her she enclyned herself tofore him / and
geffray to her made his obeyssance & toke her vp &
kyssed her / & ³syn said to her, 'Madame, my sustir, god
yeue you joye of al that your herte desyreth' / And
32 she welcommed hym frendly & honourably. And
thenne geffray toke vp his neuew Henry, that kneled
tofore hym. What shuld I now make long conte.
Geffray was thenne glad / & the port was open & hys

¹ fol. 156.
The Queen says
they may be of
her husband's
lineage.

The master of
the port is told
it is Geffray, the
king's brother,
who is in the
ships.

He tells the
knight that the
king sailed for
Jaffa three days
before.

Geffray visits the
queen,

² fol. 156 b.

and is welcomed.

² Fr. chainne.

His navy enters
the port and is
refreshed.

Geffray asks for a
pilot.

The queen orders
the portmaster
to prepare a gal-
ley with the
sagrest mariner
that can be
found.

He has a rampion
ready, which
guides Geffray,

who soon sails
out of sight.

¹ fol. 157.
Urian comes to
Jaffa,
and sees the
Saracen fleet
there.

The Saracens
intend
to sail against
Rhodes.

nauye entred, & whan they were wel refreshed geffray said to the quene: ‘Madame, I wyl departe, lete me haue a maronner that wel knoweth the costes of this see, so that I may fynd my brother.’

4

To this ansuerd the quene, ‘My right dere brother / By my feydh, I wold it had cost me a thousand poundes that ye were now with my lord, your brother, For wel I knowe he shal haue grete joye of your commyngh.’ and thenne she called to her the maister of the porte, & sayd / ‘go make a galyot to be shipped redy with ten oores, & seke for the sagest maronner & best patron that can be fond, for to conduyte my lord my brother toward my lord.’ ‘Madame,’ ansuerd

the maister of the port, ‘I haue wel a rampyn alredy shippes to rowe, wel armed & vytaylled, & resteth no more than to meve & departe.’ Thenne was geffray 16 right glade & toke hys leue of the quene & of his nevew, & entred in to his shipp / and the said rampyn or galley gyded hym / & so departed with hys flote, & rowed & made good way, so that in short space they 20 of the porte lost the syght of them. And the quene Ermyné prayed deuoutely to god that they myght retourne with joye. Of hym I shal leue to speke. But Vryan his broþer rowed so long tyl they perceyued the 24 porte ¹of Japhe, & the bygge & grete vesselles that were there assembled / and thenne was there comine the Caliphe / the Saudan of Barbarye, the kyng^t of Anthioche, & thadmyral of querdes, with their puys- 28 saunce. And was by them concluded the king^t anthenor & thadmyrah shuld make vantward, & shuld hold the way toward rodes / and yf that they neded socour they shuld wryt to the Caliphe & to the Sawdan, 32 whiche alwayes be redy to helpe & ayde them / and the kyng^t antenor of Anthyoche & thadmyral of Cordes departed fro the porte of Japhe with fourty thousand panemes, & toke their way toward Rodes by such 36

wyse that Vryan knew nothing of theire departyng¹ / and had rowed but two dayes journey whan they perceyued kyng guyon & the nauye of rodes, and also the
 4 Cristens perceyued them / Thenne was there grete alarme of bothe partes, and soone they borded togidre. There was grete occysyon & horryble medlee / and at the first recountryng were six galleyes of the sarasyns
 8 sounken & perysshed in the see / And the noble crystens endeuoyred them self wel & faught valyauntly, But the force & the quantyte of the Saracens was grete / and the Crysten peuple susteyned grete charge, & had
 12 be dyscomfyted yf god of hys grace had not conduyted geffray that part as it shal be recounted herafter.

They meet Guion,
and fight.
There is much
slaughter,

six Saracen gal-
leys are sunk;

but because of
the multynde of
Saracens the
Christians would
have been de-
feated,

Thystory saith, that geffray & his peple saylled in the see by force of wynd þat they had at theire
 16 wytt so long, that they ¹approuched the place where the batayH was. And first of all the rampyn that con-
duyted them approuched so nygh that they sawe them fyght / and anone retourned & said to geffray, ‘Sire,
 20 commande al men to be redy, For we haue perceyued the batayH / & as we suppose they are sarasyns & crysten fyghting togidre.’ Thenne rowed the galyote & came so nygh the baytayH that they herde crye on hye,
 24 ‘Cordes & Anthioche’ / and at the other part ‘Lusynen & saynt John of Rodes’ / and immedyatlly retourned the rampyn toward geffray, & said to him, ‘Sire, at that one party they ben sarasyns / and at the other part theire
 28 callyng is Lusynen & Saynt Johan of rodes / but certaynly it is not the kyng vryan / but I byleue, my lord, that it is the kyng guyon hys brother & the maister of Rodes that thus fyght with the Saracens.’

Geffray is told
that it is a fight
between Christians and Saracens.

32 ‘Ryght foorth,’ sayd geffray, ‘go we to them asprely’ / thenne they haunced saylles vp & saylled foorth by such wyse that it semed as it had be the vyretton of a Crosbow, & stemed the shippes of the sarasyns in suche
 36 manere that they were sparpyllede, so that there rested

He sails swift as
an arrow and
breaks up the
Saracen fleet.

He cries, ‘Lusignan,’ which makes the Armenians think Urien has come to help.

The Christians take heart.

¹ fol. 158.

The Saracens rally and attack their enemies.

Geffray damages the Saracens;

boards the vessel of Anthenor,

and causes many to enter the Admiral of Cordes' ship.

King Anthenor and the admiral see that they have been dis-

³ fol. 158 b.
comfited, so set sail to Jaffa.

not foure of al the flote, and cryed ‘Lysynen’ with a high voys. Wherfor the Ermayns & they of Rodes byleued þat it had be the kyng Vryan that were cōme fro cypre. And thenne toke they good herte to them 4 courageously. And the kyng of Anthioche ¹& thadmyrah of Cordes gadred ayen theire peple, and rane vpon the crysten with grete force. But geffray & hys peuple, that were fresshe & new, ouerrane them in 8 such manere that they dommaged gretly the sarasyns / and thenne the vessel where geffray was / borded the vessel of the kynge anthenor & were chayneð togidre. And geffray entred into the vessel of the kyng¹ & bygan 12 to make grete occysyon of the sarasyns, & his peuple entred & faught so valyauntly with suche a strength that there was no sarasyn so hardy that durst shew hym or make deffense / and many of them for theyre 16 relyf supposed to haue entred into thadmyral shipp & they were drowned / the whiche admyral, guyon & his peuple assayld strongly, & drowned foure of the sarasyns shippes.² The batayH was fyers & horrable 20 & thoccysyon hydouse / and briefly to say, the sarasyns were putte in suche manere so low that they had noþing them to deffende. /

Muche was the batayH hard & strong, but aboue al 24 other faught geffray manfully, & so dide the poyteuyns that were come with hym there, & so dyde guyon the maister of Rodes & theire peple / but they were abasshed for this that they cryed ‘Lusynen’ / 28 but thenne it was no saison tenquere. And thenne the kyng¹ anthenor & thadmyral perceyued wel þat the dyscomfiture fyH on them, For they þenne ³had lost more than the two partes of theire peple, wherfore they 32 made the resydu of theire peuple to withdraw them

² In Fr. *et toutesfois le roi Anthenor se sauva au vaisseau de l'admiral de Cordes et fut tantost son vaisseau pillié de ce qui y estoit de bon, et puis fut effondré en mer.*

toward the port of Japhe to haue socour / and the said kyng⁴ & admiral put them self in a shipp of auauantage & made grete sayll fro the batayll, and whan the sara-
syns perceyued they went after, he that might. But the Ermayns & they of Rodes ouertoke the moost part & putte them to deth & threw þem ouerbord. But whan geffray perceyued the departyng⁸ of the kyng⁸ anthenor & the admiral, he dyde make sayll & went after with al hys nauye, & made so fast way that anoone he lefte the Ermayns & the maister of Rodes at sterne.

Geffray chases
them,

And whan the rampyn ship of auauantage perceyued 12 geffray, the patron cryed to hys peuple with a hye voys / ‘after / after / fayre sires, For yf geffray leseth his way & fayllet to mete with hys brother, I shal neuer dare retourne to my lady.’ And thenne the kynge

16 Guyon, that knew the rampyn, asked of the patron what was that lord cristen that so had socoured them. ‘By my feyth,’ said the patron, ‘it is geffray with the grete toth, your brother.’ And whan the kyng guyon 20 vnderstod it he cryed with a hye voys, ‘make more sayll, þat we were with our brother, For yf he were perysshed I shuld neuer haue hertly joye.’ But þe rampyn went tofore so fast that in short tyme he ouer-

and is followed
by the rampin
to Jaffa.

24 toke geffray, that was neer the ¹sarasyns that approuched the porte of Japhe. Here I shall leue to speke of them, & shal shew of Vryan that tofore was come to the port and had fyred the sarasyns shippes 28 there / but the paynemes rescued them in theire best manere / not that notwithstanding there were more than ten vesselles brent.

¹ fol. 159.

32 In this partie sheweth thy storye that Geffray with the grete tooth pursiew so long¹ the king anthenor & thadmyral of Cordes, that they approuched nygh to the port of Japhe, where they entred in / and geffray after them; For by no manere he wold leue them / 36 though men shewed to hym the grete multitude of

Urian had been
there, and had
set fire to some
of the Saracen
fleet.

Geffray enters
the port of Jaffa
after the king
and the admiral.

paynemes that therne were entred in to the vesselles to socoure the kyng^t anthenor. But he anoone bygan the batay^H that was hard^t & mortall, in so moch^t that the kyng and thadmyra^H were constrainyd^t to take land^t, 4
they take to land.

They tell the caliph and the sultan their ad- ventures.

and went to the toun of Japhe, where they fond^t the calyphe of Bandas and the Sawdan of Barbarye that were gretly abasshed^t that so soone they were retourned, and demanded^t of the cause wherfore / and they re- counted to them al thaduenture, And how the kyng of armenye & the maister of Rodes were dyscomfyted, had not a knyght araged or wodd^t that came & so- coured them with a few peuple that cryed 'Lusynen' / 12 & there may none withstand^t hym, whiche is now yonder at the porte where he fyghteth ayenst our people / and al that he recountreth is brought to hys ende. And whan the sawdan vnderstod^t it he had no wy^H to 16

¹ fol. 159 b.
The sultan repeats an old prophecy that says that people who believe in Mahomet cannot withstand the Lusignans on the sea.

1 lawghe / but said, 'By machomet, it is tolde me of cld^t that I, & many other of our sette and lawe, shall susteyne grete parels vpon the see, by the heyres of Lusynen / but yf we might haue them on land^t, and 20 that our peuple were out of þe shippes they shuld be soone all dyscomfyted.' 'By all our goddes,' said the Caliphe, 'ye say trouth, / and also yf they were here dystroyed we shuld subdue lyghtly Rodes, cypre, & 24 armany^t / Lete vs thenne make our peuple to come to land^t, and suffre the Cristen to take peasybly theire landing!' But in certayn for nought they spake soo,

For they yssued out without ony commandement, by 28 the vertue & strength^t of Geffray that therto constrainyd^t them / and Geffray with his peuple pursiewed them at land^t, & chaced them vnto the Cite of Japhe / and all thoo that were ouertake were put to deth / and they 32 that entred in the toun cryed 'treson, treson!' Thenne were the gates shette, and euery man went to hys garde / and geffray retourned to his shippes / and com- manded that the horses shuld be had^t out aland^t. For 36

Geffray mean- while drives the Saracens from their ships.

They fly to Jaffa.

Geffray orders the horses to be landed.

he said that neuer he shuld departe but he shuld dey or he shuld make men to say, that Geffray with the grete toth hath be here.

4 **T**hystorye telleth vs that whyle Geffray was about to haue out of the shippes hys horses, the rampyn perceyued the baners & penons of the kyng vryan, that moch strongly scarmysshed the nauye of

Urian is seen by
the men of the
rampin.

8 the sarasyns that knew nothing that geffray had take land, For they had take the deep of the porte. And ¹ the kyng and thadmyraff were arryued at the narowest syde to be the sooner on land. Thenne departed the

¹ fol. 160.

12 rampyn shipp of auantage, and rowed toward vryan. And thenne they recounted^d guyon, whiche asked of the patron tydynges of geffray. ‘Yonder he hath take land,’ said the patron, ‘& hath chaced^d the paynemes

They row to
him,

16 vnto þe Cite / and yonder is the kyng vryan your brother, that scarmyssheth theire nauye, to whom I goo for to anounce hym your auenture, and the commyng of geffray, his brother’ / And thenne the rampyn

and tell of
Geffray’s doings.

20 rowed fast, and came to vryan to whom, after his obeyssance don, he recounted al the faytte. Wherof Vryan thanked god deuoutely / & cryed to hys peple, ‘auaunt, lordes, thinke to doo wel, For our enemyes

Urian drives the
Saracens to land.

24 may not escape vs, but that they be other slain or take.’ Thenne the crysten borded theire enemyes, the which were gretly abasshed of this, that they had knowleche that the kyng anthenor & thadmyraff were

They fly to the
town.

28 retourned to Japhe. wherfor they toke land who that might, & fledd toward the toun. And thenne whan the Calyphe and the saudan sawe theire peple aland, they dyde send ambaxades toward the prynces Cristen

The caliph asks a
truce for three
days.

32 for to haue trews the space of thre dayes, & that they shuld suffre theire landing, & on the foureth day they shuld gyue them journey of batayff. Kinge Vryan accorded thereto, and sent word therof to his brethern

Urian agrees to
it.

36 guyon and geffray / and thus they landed peasybly, and

MELUSINE.

T

The brethren
land their hosts,
¹ fol. 160 b.

greet each other,
and refresh them-
selves.

The truce is
lengthened.

The Saracens
march inland to
prevent the
Christians escap-
ing after the
battle.

The hosts are
140,000 Saracens
against 22,000
Christians.

The Christians
think the Sar-
acens have fled.

An interpreter
comes to the
brethren.

³ fol. 161.
He wonders at
their fierceness;
especially at Gef-
fray's tooth.

assembled theire peple togidre. Thenne ¹was the Joye grete emong^t the thre bretheren, and theire oost was nombred xxii.^{ml} what men of armes / balesters & archers.

Thystorye sayth that the thre bretheren and theire people made moche eche of other, & refresshed them during^t the trews. But þanne the Sawdan of Damaske that had knowleche of the crystens landing ⁸ sent word to the Calyphe & to the sawdan of Barbarye, that they shuld not fyght with the cristen tyl he were come with them, & that they shuld take otlre thre days of trews / & so they dide; wherto the ¹² noble prynce cristen accorded. And duryng that terme the Caliphe & ² the sawdan of Barbarye dyde withdraw theyre people toward Damaske to thentent that they might have the Cristen more within the land, ¹⁶ so that none might flee to theyre nauye; but he were ouertake & slayne. For they wend to haue all theire wy^H vpon the Crysten. For they were after the saudan of Damaske was assembled with them to the ²⁰ nombre of VII score thousand^t fyghtyng men / and þe cristen were but xxii.^{ml} good men / the which, whan they knew of the departyng^t of the sarasyns fro Japhe, they were ful dolaunt; For they supposed they had ²⁴ feld / but for nouȝt they wend soo / for at ende of six dayes they came & approuched nygh them, & on the morne gaf them batay^H. Thenne came a trucheman mounted vpon a dromadary, whiche alighted tofore the ²⁸ tentes of the thre bretheren, and humbly salued them / and they rendred hym ³ gretyng^t / and he beheld them long or he spake. For he wondred moche of theire noble maynten & fyers contenaunce / and in especial ³² he meruaylled moche of Geffray that was the hyest of personne, & saw the teeth that passed ouer the lyppe along hys cheke; wherof he was so abasshed that almost he coude not speke / but at last he said to ³⁶

² MS. & and.

kyng Vryan in this wyse. ‘ Noble kyng of Cypre / my right redoubted lordes the Sawdants of Barbarye & of Damaske / the Calyphe of Bandas / the kynges of 4 Anthioche & of Danette & thadmyrah of Cordes send word by me to you that they be prest¹ redy to lyuero you batayh, & they tary after you in a medowe vnder Damaske where ye, with al your puyssauce may 8 come / saf and peasybly there to make and take there your lodgys tofore them wheresomeuer it playse you / and by auenture whan ye haue sene theire puyssauce ye shal fynd some good & amyable traytys 12 with my said lordes. For certaynlly it is not to your power to withstand theire strength.’ And whan geffray herd there wordes, he sayd to hym / ‘ goo thou to thy kynges & sawdants, & to thy Caliphe / and say 16 them that yf there were none only but I & my people, yet wold I fyght / & say them þat of theire trews we haue nougnt to doo / and whan thou shalt come to them say that geffray with the grete toth deffyeth them / 20 and anoone after that thou art departed from hens I shal sawte the Cite of Japhe, & shal fyre it / and al the sarasyns that I shal fynd, I shal putte them to deth / and say to them, as thou passe by ²that they puruey 24 them wel, For I ryght foorth shal departe to asayh them.’ And whan the trucheman or messager herd this ansuere, he was al abasshed / and without eny more proces he lept vpon his dromadary, For he had so greto 28 feir of the fyersnes of geffray that alwayes he loked behynd hym, for fere that he had folowed hym / & sayd in hym self: ‘ By mahon, yf al the other were suche as that with the grete toth, our lordes, nor theire 32 puyssauce were not able to withstand them.’ And thenne he came to Japhie, & said to them that geffray with the grete toth wold come anoon tassayh theire Cyte, and that he had sworne that he shuld putte in

He delivers his message,

that the Saracen lords are ready for battle.

He suggests a treaty.

Geffray bids him return to the Caliph

with his defiance,

and the news
that Geffray is
about to assail
Jaffa and to slay
all the Saracens
he finds there.

² fol. 161 b.

The interpreter leaps upon his dromedary and full of fear rides away, thinking that his lords cannot withstand many Geffrays.

He tells the people of Jaffa that Geffray is about to assail them.

¹ Fr. pretz.

subjection of hys swerd al them that he fond. Thenne
were they all abasshed / and wete it wel that the more
parte of the peple there fled for fere toward Damaske,
and toke with them theire goodes. And anoon geffray 4
dide blow vp hys trompettes, & armed hys peple, & went
incontynent to sawte the toun, and wold neuer cesse
therof, For ony thing that his breþern said / and sware
by god that he shuld shewe them such tokens that men 8
shuld knowe that he had ben in surye. But here seaceth
thistorye of hym, & speketh of the forsaid messanger
þat rode so long that he came tofore the lodgys of the
sarasynts at Damaske.

12

Many fly to
Damascus.
Geffray ap-
proaches Jaffa.
The interpreter
returns

¹ fol. 162.
to the Saracen
knights,

and relates the
result of his em-
bassy.

In this party, sayth thystory, that the messenger rode
so fast vpon his dromadary that he cam / vnto
thoost tofore Damaske / & fond in the tente of the
Calyphe the two sawdans, ¹ the king^t anthenor / thad- 16
myral of Cordes, the kyng^t golofryn of Danette, &
many other that asked tydynge of the Cristens. And
the messenger them said / ‘I haue don your commandement
& message / but whan I shewed vnto them, 20
yf that they had seen your puyssance it wold haue
be a meane of traytye with you / and thenne one of
them that had oo grete toth, wold not suffre the kyng
of Cypre to haue the wordes, but he hymself said þus, 24
“Goo thou to thy kynges and sawdants, & say them we
haue not to doo with theire trews, / & that yf there wer
but he & his peple only, yet wold he fyght with you” /
and morouer said to me / that assoone as I shuld come 28
to you that I shuld take you ayen þe patents of your
trews, & that ye shuld beware of hym / and that in
despyte of you all he wold assawte Japhe, & putte the
fyre thrugh al the toun & destroye them for euer / and 32
that thus I shuld say to them whan I passed by the Cite /
and so haue I doo / and wete it wel that the more²
part of the Cytezeyns be come after me, & immedy-

² MS. has *more* twice.

atly after my departyng I herd hys trompettes blowe
 thassawte of Japhe / & ye coude neuer thinke thorryble
 & fyers contenaunces of the prynces crysten with theire
 4 puyssauce / And wete it wel after the semblaunce that
 they shew, ye be not of power tabyde them, & in
 especial he with the grete toth hath none other fere
 but that ye shal flee or they come to you.' And whan
 8 the saudan of Damaske vnderstod it, he bygan to lawgh,
 & said, ' By machomid, in asmoche as I haue perceyued
 now your hardynes, ye shal be the first in batayH ayenst
 hym with the grete toth.' Wherto ansuerd ¹ the mes-
 12 sager / ' vnhappy be that heure or day that I approch
 hym / but yf there be a grete ryuere or the toures or
 walles of Damaske or some other Fortres betwix hym
 & me / and yf I doo other, lete my lord mahomid
 16 drowne me,' / & therwith bygane euery personne to
 lawhe. But ther were suche that lawhed, that aftir-
 ward, yf they might haue had leyser, they wold haue
 wept. Now shal I shew how geffray assawted Japhe,
 20 and toke it by force, and putte to deth all the sarasyns
 there, and toke their hauoir and goodes out of the Cyte /
 & bare it vnto the vesselles, and after sette fyre on the
 Cite / and this don, retourned the crysten to theire
 24 lodgys, where geffray requyred his bretheren that they
 shuld take hym, the maister of Rodes, & hys people, to
 make the vantgarde / & they were agreed / and that
 same nyght they rested them tyl on the morowe.

28 **T**he next day, as the hystory wytnesseth, after the
 masse herd, desloged the vanward, and after the
 grete batayll, & the sommage & syn the ryergarde /
 and it was a noble syght to see thoost & the fayre
 32 ordynaunce to departe. Thenne came a spye to
 geffray, & hym said: 'Sire, about half a leghe hens
 ben a thousand sarasyns, whiche drawe them toward
 baruth to kepe the hauen of the toune.' to whom
 36 geffray asked / ' canst conduyte me thither?' / 'ye, by

He tells the Saracens that he thinks they are unable to withstand the Christians.

The Sultan of Damascus jeers and says he will make the interpreter the first to fight Geffray.

¹ fol. 102 b.

The interpreter declares he will not fight Geffray.

Geffray assaults Jaffa, slays the inhabitants, and takes their goods to his vessels.

The battle is arranged.

The host marches in good order.

A spy tells Geffray of the march of a thousand Saracens to Beyrouth.

my feyth, sire,' sayd the spye. Thenne said geffray to the maister of rodes, that he shuld conduyte the vanwarde, puttyng fyre vpon the way where he went, to thentent he shuld not fayH to fynd¹ hym by the trasse 4
 of the fumyer / and the maister of ¹Rodes said / 'it shal be don.'

¹ fol. 163.

Geffray follows

and overthrows them.

They fly to Beyrouth, chased by the Christians.

The Saracens cross the bridge, followed by five hundred of Gefray's men.

The Saracens are driven out of the other gate, and fly to Tripoli and Damascus.

Geffray slays all the Saracens he finds,

and says that he will keep the place.

And thanne departed geffray with the spye, and went before, where he perceyued the sarasyns commyng fro a mountayn ; & he shewed to geffray the 8 sarasyns, which was joyful therof, & hasted hys peuple. and whan he had ouertake them / he sware : 'by god / ye gloutons ! ye may not me escape' / & so rane vpon them, & ouerthrew the first that he recounted to the 12 erth, & syn drew hys swerd, & dyde meruayllous fayttes of armes, & his peuple in lyke wyse. What nede is to speke more of the sarasyns, they were dyscomfyte, & fled toward Baruth, & the Crysten in the 16 chaas. And whan the sarasyns of baruth sawe the fleers, they anoone knew them, & lete fall the bridge, & opened the gates & barryers / thenne the fleers entred within the toune / but alwayes geffray folowed so 20 hastily, that he entred with them within the town with wel fyue C men of armes. And whan Geffray was entred he commanded to kepe [the] gate² tyl the resydu of hys peuple were come / And thenne bygan 24 the batayH to be fyers & strong / but neuertheles the Sarasyns might not endure, but fled at another yate out of the toun. And he that penne had a good hors was wel bestad, For they sporyd fast, som toward the Cite 28 of tryple, & some toward Damaske. And geffray & his peple slew al the sarasyns that they fond¹ in the toun, and threw them in the see / and he that sawe the toun strong & the Castel nygh the see, fayre porte 32 garnysshed with toures for the sauergarde of the nauye / sayd / 'that place shuld be kepe for hym self' / and there geffray lefte two houndred men of armes & a

² Fr. à garder. MS. has *repegate* = *kepe* [*the*] *gate*.

C balesters of his peple / and he hymself ¹soioured there al that same nyght. And on the morne he toke leue of his men that he lefte there, & rode after thoost
 4 by the trace of the fumyer & smoke / but the maister of Rodes was aferd lest he shuld haue grete empeschement /. Here seaceth the hystorye of hym / and sheweth of the fleers out of Japhe toward Damaske, whiche
 8 came to thoost at the tente of the Sawdan, where as the lordes sarasyns were / and pyteously recounted to them the dystrucion of Japhe / how the Cristen had putte to deth bothe yong & old, & sette fyre on eche part
 12 of the toun. Whan the saudants & kynges sarasyns vnderstod it, they were ful dolaunt. ‘By al our goddes,’ said the saudan of Damaske, ‘Moche hard ben the crysten, & they doubte nougnt as it semeth /
 16 but ful wel they knowe that they are not of power to withstand our grete puyssauce ; wherefore they make semblaunt, that nougnt they fere vs, & make suche sawtes while that we are ferre fro them / but yf we
 20 marched foorth / no doubte they wold recule & withdrawe them in to theiro shippes.’ ‘By mahon,’ said the sawdan of Barbarye / ‘yf they were here alle rosted or soden, & yf it were custome to ete suche flesshe, they
 24 were not to the regarde of our peple suffysaunt for a brekfast / by my lawe, yf there were but I & my peuple only, yet shuld none repasse of them homward.’ But whan the trucheman or messenger herd hym so speke
 28 he coude neuer hold hys tonge, but that he sayd / ‘myghty sawdan, yf now ye sawe the kyng Vryan / the kyng guyon hys brother, & he with the grete toth, theire horruble & fyers contenaunce, shuld cause ²you
 32 to be in peas & cesse your grete menaces. And wete it wel, or the werke be ful doo ye shal not haue them fo[r] so good chep as ye say / but oft he that menaceth is somtyme in grete fer & drede hym self, & aftirward
 36 ouerthrawen’ / And thenne whan the saudan vnder-

¹ fol. 163 b.
He leaves three hundred men to guard it,

and by the guidance of the smoke rideth to the Christian host.

The fugitives from Jaffa recount their mis-hap to the sultan.

The Sultan of Damaske says the Christians would fall back if he marched against them.

The Sultan of Barbary says there are not enough Christians to make the Saracen host a breakfast:

but the interpreter says if the sultan saw the brethren he

² fol. 164.
would cease his threats and make peace

stode the messagers wordes, he said to hym : ‘By Mahomid^t, fayre sire, I see wel by the grete hardynes that is in you, ye wold^d fayne be ordeyned at the first recountre of þe batay^H ayenst Geffray with the grete 4 tooth.’ & he ansuerd^t : ‘By my lawe, sire, yf he be not recounted of none other but of me / he may wel cōme surely ; For I shal tourne myn heelys toward^d hym / ye / one leghe or two ferre fro his personne.’⁸ Thenne the lawhing was there grete / but soone after they herd^d other tydynges, wherof they had no wy^H to lawhe, For the fleers fro baruth forsayd came to thoost, and to them recounted^d the dommage & pyte of 12 the toune of Baruth, and how geffray with the grete toth had chaced þem by force, & al the resydu of them he had slain / & ‘by mahon,’ said they, ‘wete it wel he is not of purpos to flee, For he hath lefte garnyson¹⁶ at Baruth, & wel vytaylled it, & commeth hyþerward^d in al haste to hym possible / & men see nothing^t thrugh al the Countre where he passeth but fyre & flāne, & the wayes be all couered with sarasyns that he & hys 20 peple haue slain.’ Thenne whan the saudan of Damaske vnderstode it he was moch^t dolaunt & angry. ‘By mahomid^t,’ said he, ‘I byleue fermely that he with the grete toth hath a dyuel in his body.’ Thenne said 24 the saudan of Barbarye, ‘I am in doubte of that is told^d me.’ ‘What is that ?’¹ said^d the saudan of Damaske / ‘it is said that the heyr^s of Lusynen shal dystroye me, and that our lawe shal by theire strengthe be hurt & dommaged.’ Thenne was there none so hardy a Sarasyn but that he shake for fere. And now cesseth thystorye of them, & retourneth to geffray.

Thystorye sheweth in this partie, that so long rode 32 geffray with hys felawship, that he ouertoke the vanwarde that the maister of Rodes conduyted, whiche was glade of his retourne, & asked how he had employted. And geffray recounted to hym how he & his 36

The fugitives
from Beyrouth

relate how they
have been chased
by Geffray,

and that he is
approaching.

The Sultan of
Damascus be-
lieves Geffray to
have a devil in
his body.

¹ fol. 164 b.
He refers to a
saying about the
heirs of Lusignan
destroying him.

Geffray over-
takes the Master
of Rhodes,

peple, with thayde of god, he had wonne tho toune,
castel, & hauen of baruth, and that by force they had
chased a grete part of them that were within, and the
4 resydu they had putte to deth / & how he had lefte
certayn nombre of his peuple to kepe it. ‘By god,’
sayd the maister of Rodes, ‘ye haue wel don, & nobly
& valyauntly exployted’ / and soone these tdynges
8 were knownen thrugh thoost / & Vryan & Guyon were
joyfull therof. ‘By my feyth,’ said Vryan to Guyon :
‘Oure brother Geffray is of grete enterpryse & ryght
valyaunt in armes, and yf god of his grace yeuo hym
12 long lyf, he shal do yet many grete actes worthy to be
had in mynde.’ ‘By my feyth,’ said guyon, ‘ye say
trouth.’ Long tyme went the two bretheren thus spek-
yng of the prowes of geffray / And so long marched þeir
16 oost, that on an euen they lodged them by a ryuer
fyue myle fro Damaske / & there came theire espyes,
that declared to them al the manyere & contenaunce
of the sarasyns. And thenne they toke Counseyl to
20 wete what best was to doo, & they ¹concluded that on
the morne theire oost shuld lodge a leghe nygh to
the Sarasyns as they dide. And thus on the morne
they departed, & was commandyd that none shuld
24 sette fyre on his lodgys, nor in none other place ; to
thende that the Sarasyns shuld not soone perceyue
theire commyng. And briefly to say, so long they
went tyl they came to the place where they lodged
28 them togidre, & made þat nyght good watche toward
theire enemyes. & after they souped & lay al nyght in
theire harneys. And anoone aftir middenyght geffray,
accompagned with a thousand fyghting men, toke a
32 guyde that wel knew the Countre, & went toward
thoost of the Sarasyns al the couert. & nygh therby
was a forest that dured a myle, and there he embusshed
& sent word to thoost that they shuld be redy as to
36 receyue theire enemys.

and relates how
he captured Bey-
routh.

The news
spreads, and
Urian and Guyon
are joyful.

The brothers
speak of the
prowess of Gef-
fray.

The host arrives
close to Da-
mascus.

¹ fol. 165.

Next day they
march still
nearer.

At midnight Gef-
fray ambushes a
thousand men
near the Saracen
host.

He takes two hundred more men, and tells those of the aubush not to fight until he and his company fall back; and that then they should rush upon their pursuers,

Geffray marches to the Saracen host.

¹ fol. 165 b.

It is asleep.

When he sees the great multitude he says that they would have to be dreaded if they were Christian, but as they are, they are only dogs.

Geffray sees a rich tent;

he enters and smites those inside.

They awake;

Thystorye testyfyeth that geffray at the day spryng, mounted on horsbake, with ij. C fyghtyng men, & commanded them of thembusshē þat for nothing that they sawe they shuld not meue them tyl that they sawe 4 hym & hys company recule, and thenne vpon them of the chaas they shuld renne. Thenne departed geffray, & went vpon a lytel montayne, and sawe the sarasyns oost aþ styl, & herd̄ nothing, as nobody had̄ be 8 there. Thenne was he dolaunt, that sooner he had not knownen theire contenaunce, For yf hys bretheren had be there with theire peple, they shuld haue had good chep of sarasyns / but notwithstanding, he sware that 12 syth he was so nygh, that he shuld make them to knowe his commyng. Thenne said geffray to hys felawes: 'ryde we fast, & see that ye be not aslepe as they are / & make no bruyt tyl I shal command̄ you.' 16 And they said ¹that nomore shuld they doo. Thenne they rode al the couert nygh togidre, & and entred into thoost, & wel perceyued that they were aslepe on euery syde / geffray behel & sawe the grete multitude of peuple / and syn he said in this wyse: 'By my feyth, yf þey were crysten, they were to be ferd̄ & dred̄ / but yet they be not so good as dogges.' and with his felawship went vnto the myddes of thoost, or they 24 made eny stryf. And there geffray perceyued a ryche tente, and supposyng that it had be other the Caliphes tente or one of the saudants / said vnto hys people / 'auaunt, lordes & good men, it is now tyme to chere & 28 awake these houndes, for to long they haue slept.' Thenne Geffray, & ten knightes with hym, entred in to the sayd tente, & vpon them that were in smote with theire swerdeſ, makyng heedes, armes, & legges to leue 32 the bodyes. There was the noyse, & the cry grete & hydous to here / & wete it that it was þe tente of the kyng Gallafryn of Danette; which̄ anoone rose vp fro hys bed̄, & wel he supposed to haue fled out at the 36

backsyde of hys tente, but geffray perceyued, & gaf hym such a stroke with his swerd that was pesaunt, & cuttyng sharp as a raser, that he cleft hys heed vnto
 4 the brayne / & the sarasyn kyng fell doun deed / and none escaped of them that were in the tente ; but they were al slayne. And thenne cryeng ‘Lusynen’ they retourned thrugh thoost, puttyng to deth al the sarasyns
 8 that they recounted. Thenne was thoost wel awaked & made grete alarme / And anoone came these tydyinges to the tente of the saudan of Damaske, that said : ‘What noyse is that I here yonder ¹without?’

12 Thenne a sarasyn that came fro that part, which had a broken heed, in such manere þat hys one eere lay vpon hys sholder / sayd to hym : ‘Sire, that are x dyuelles, and theire meyne that haue entred into your
 16 oost, which slee & ouerthraw al them that they re-countre in theire way / and they haue slain the kyng of Danette your cousyn, and theire cry is “Lusynen !”’ Whan the saudan vnderstod it he made hys trompettes
 26 to blow vp, that euery man shuld be armed. And thenne the saudan & x. M¹ sarasyns with hym went after. And geffray went with hys peple thrugh thoost makyng grete occyson of sarasyns, For they were
 24 vnarmed, & might not endure nor withstand. And wete it that or euer they departed fro thoost, they slough & hurt more than iii. M¹ sarasyns / and whan they were out of the lodgys, they went al softe &
 28 fayre / And the saudan of Damaske hasted hym after.

Moche dolaunt & angry was the saudan of Damaske, whan he perceyued the grete occyson that the crysten had don vpon hys peuple / & sware by hys
 32 goddes Appolyn and mahon, that forthwith he shuld be auenged on them, & that not a crysten shuld be take to mercy, but shuld al be slayn. thenne he folowed geffray with x thousand Sarasyns. And
 36 thenne geffray that perceyued, & sent word therof to

Geffray cuts
Gallafrin's
head open.

The Christians
crying ‘Lusignan,’ return
through the host
and slay many
Saracens,

¹ fol. 166.
The Sultan of
Damascus hears
the tidings,

and with x. M¹
Saracens

hastes after
Geffray.

hys bretheren by his peple feynyng^t to flee / and he entred^d within the busshe where his peple was, for to putte them in aray / And the saudan folowed alway,
 & passed^d before thembussh^t. Wete it wel that the 4
 maister of Rodes that conduyted the vanward^d was
 thenne in fayre ¹batay^H. And whan he sawe the
 saudan that folowed the crysten / he ranne ayenst the
 sarasyns, the spere in the rest, and there they medled^d 8
 togidre & faught strongly / and within a lytel space of
 tyme the Sarasyns were dyscomfyte. For at the first
 recountre with the speerys, eche cristen ouerthrew a
 sarasyn to the erth. And whan the sawdan sawe 12
 that he might no lenger withstand^d he reculed,
 & assembled his peple in hys best wyse, abydyng the
 sarasyns that came after. But geffray & hys com-
 panye yssued out of thembussh^t and ranne vpon them 16
^þut went without ordonaunce after the saudan. And
 within a whyle there were slain of the sarasyns by the
 way more than foure thousand. And thenne many of
 them fledd toward theire oost, and fond^d the caliphe of 20
 bandas, the saudan of barbare, the king Anthenor,
 & thadmyral of Cordes, whiche asked them fro whens
 þey came / And they ansuerd: ‘we come fro the
 batay^H where the sawdan of Damaske hath be dys- 24
 comfyted.’ And whan they vnderstod^d it they were
 dyscomforted & sorowful, & wanst not what they shuld
 say or do. Now I wyl retourne to speke of the batay^H.
The batay^H was horrible & cruel, & the sawdan of 28
^þ Damaske faught manfully ^þat day, after that he
 had^d assembled hys peple. Thenne came geffray, that
 ranne vpon them at backsyde / and the maister of
 rodes at the other syde, In so moche that there was 32
 made grete occysyon of sarasyns. What shuld I make
 long compte / the feled them assaylded on bothe sydes,
 wherby ²they were dyscomfyted, & might no lenger
 defende. And whan the saudan perceyued the dys- 36

¹ fol. 166 b.He is driven
back by the
vanguard of the
Christians.Then his host is
fallen upon by
the ambush,four thousand
Saracens are
slain.Some of them
escape to their
hostand tell the Saracen leaders of
the mishap.The Sultan of
Damascus fights
manfully.² fol. 167.

comfyture, he went out of the batay^H & tourned the
targe behynd^t, and sporyd hys hors, & fled fast toward
thoost of the sarasyns / and geffray was at that syde,
4 that wel perceyued hym, & demed wel by hys ryche
armures that it was he, or some grete lord of the
sarasyns. Thenne he broched hys hors with the sporys
after the saudan, and cryed to hym, ‘retourne, or thou
8 shalt dey ! For I shuld haue grete vergoyne yf I smote
the behynd^t / but alwayes, yf thou not retourne, nedes
I most do soo.’ And whan the sawdan vnderstod^t
hym, he sporyd hys hors, & hasted hym more than he
12 dide tofore / and geffray, that ryght dolaunt was that
he might not ouertake hym, cryed to hym ayen,
sayeng^t: ‘Fy on the ! recreaunt coward ; that art so
wel horsed, & so nobly & surely armed, and yet darest
16 not abyde a man alone / retourne, or I shal slee the
fleeyng^t / how be it, that shal be ayenst my wy^H.’
And thenne the saudan, vergoyinous of geffrays wordes,
that for fere of a man alone he fledd / retourned at
20 the corner of þe wode, nygh by thoost of the sarasyns,
in that same place where as geffray had that day
embusshed hys peuple / and putte hys shild^t tofore hys
brest, and the spere in the rest, & thus he cryed to
24 geffray : ‘What art thou, þat so hastly folowest me /
by mahon ! that shal be to thy grete dommage.’ /
‘and for thy proufft I am not come thus ferre,’ said
geffray / ‘but syth that myn name thou axest, thou
28 shalt ¹it knowe. I am Geffray with the grete tooth,
broþer to the kinges Vryan & guyon / and what art
thou ?’ ‘By mahon,’ said the saudan, ‘that shalt thou
knowe / I am the saudan of Damaske. And knowe
32 thou, that I were not so joyous who that had gyuen me
a C thousand^t besans of gold^t, as I am to haue fond^t the
so at myn ease, For thou mayst me not escape / I deffy
the, by machomet my god.’ ‘By my feyth,’ said
36 Geffray, ‘nother thou nor thy god I preyse not a

When discom-
fited
he flies to the
Saracen host.

Geffray recog-
nizes him, and
cries to him,

‘Return, or thou
shalt die !’

He hastes away
the faster ;

but Geffray again
calls on him.

At last the sultan
turns round and
asks his name.

¹ fol. 167 b.

Geffray replies
that he is brother
to Urian and
Guion, and de-
mands his ad-
versary's name.

The sultan tells
him, and defies
Geffray.

rotyn dogge; For soone thou shalt fynd me nerer the,
to thyn euyl helthe / and yf it playseþ to god, my
creatour, thou shalt not escape.'

Geffray cries that
he will not
escape.

Geffray and the
sultan go apart,
then run upon
each other.

Geffray bears the
sultan to the
earth.

He cleaves his
helmet,

and is about to
take it from his
head,

¹ fol. 168.

when he sees
sixty Saracens,
who cry, 'Your
end is come.'

Geffray smites
the first dead,

and slays many
others.

The sultan comes
to his senses,

Here sayth thy storye, that Geffray & the saudan, 4
that bothe were of grete courage & strength,
reculed eche fro other, and syn ranne vpon eche other /
and the Saudan valyauntly smote geffray, & tronchoned
his spere vpon his shild / but it is wel to byleue that 8
the noble & valyaunt geffray, at this first cours, faylled
not; For he smote the Saudan by suche radeur, that he
lefte hym out of hys arsouns, & bare hym vnto therthe.
and so passed foorth, and immedyatlly toke in hys hand 12
hys good swerd / and pretendyng that men shuld speke
of his fayttes & valyaunces, he smote the saudan by
suche vertu that he perced hys helmet, and effoundred
hys heed almost to the brayne, so that the sawdan was 16
sore astonyed and euyl bestad, in suche wyse that he
nother sawe nor herd / but as geffray wold haue
alyghted to haue take the saudans helmet, to haue
brought it to hys bretheren, & to see yf he ¹ was deed, 20
he perceyued wel thre score sarasyns, that cryed after
hym, & said: 'By my lawe, false crysten, your ende
is come.' And whan geffray vnderstode it, he sporyd
hys hors, & brandysshed the swerd; and the fyrrst that 24
he recounted, he smote doun to therthe al deed. And
who that had be there, he had seen hym execute noble
fayttes & armes, as of one man deffendyng hys lyf; For
geffray cutte and smote of heedes & armes, and dyed 28
the place with grete effusyon of sarasyns blood / and
they casted at hym sperys & dartes, and made grete
peyne for to haue had ouerthrowen hym to therthi.
And thenne the saudan was come at hymself ayen, 32
and stode vp al astonyed, as he had come fro slepe /
he loke at ryght syde of hym, and mounted on hys
hors, & sawe the batayH, where he perceyued wel
geffray, that made grete occysyon of sarasyns / and was 36

geffray wounded & hurt in many places of his body.

Thenne cryed the saudan, admonnestyng^t his peple,
sayeng / ‘auaunt! worthy sarasyns / by mahomid, yf

and incites his
people against
Geffray,

4 he vs escape, I shal neuer haue joye ; For who might
bryng hym to an euyl ende, the resydu were not to be
doubted.’ Thenne was geffray assaylle^d on al partes /

who defends him-
self valiantly,

& he deffended hym hardyly & so valyauntly, that no

8 sarasyn durste hym abyde / but casted at hym fro ferre
sperys, darts, stones & arowes / vyretons & quarelles,

¹ fol. 168 b.

with theire crosbowes / but it semed not that he ¹made
ony force therof / but as a hongre wolf renneth vpon

and
as a hungry wolf
runs upon sheep,
so runs Geffray
upon the enemies
of God.

12 sheep / so dide he renne vpon the enemyes of god.

The sultan cries
that Geffray is
either a great
devil or the
Christian God.

‘ By my goddes, Appolyn & mahon,’ sayd thenne the
saudan / ‘ this is not a man / but it is a grete dyue^H,

come out of hel^H / or the Cristen god, whichⁱ is come

16 hither to distroye our lawe ’ / And, For certayn, geffray
was in this auenture wel by the space of two heures.

In this parel was geffray vnto tyme that the new
knight, whichⁱ had be with hym in garende, which

Geffray's new
knight sees his
lord's danger,

20 had sene hym departe after the saudan / cam at him
with wel a C men of armes, For he loued hym entierly.

And thenne, whan he approched the wode, he perceyued
the batay^H, and sawe the sawdan, that dyde his best

24 for to hurt & dommage Geffray, that faught alone
ayenst mahondys peopple ; wherfore he said / ‘cursed
be he of god, that shal not helpe hym now’ / and the

and rushes at
the head of his
people to the
rescue.

knights peple ansuerd^d, ‘to theire euyl helthe they

The sultan takes
flight.

28 haue recountedred geffray.’ And forthwith they broched
theire horses with theire sporys, & came to the

Geffray thanks
the knight,

batay^H. but assoone as the saudan perceyued the
socours, he sporyd hys hors, & hastily fled toward

32 thoost / & left his peple in that plyght, of the which
neuer one escaped, but were al slayne. Thenne whan

geffray perceyued the new knight, that so wel had
socoured hym, he thanked hym moche, & sayd : ‘ My

36 frend, suche rooses ben good, & of swete odour / & the

¹ fol. 169.

lorde that hat about hym suche cheualrye, may take his rest surely.' 'Sire,' said the knight, 'I haue not doo that thing¹ wherof I owe to be ¹rewarded, For euery trew seruaunt oweth to take heede to thonour & 4 proufft of hys maister and lord. And thenne, syth it is soo / no reward ought not to be had therfore / but departe we hens, For it is tyme that ye take your rest: ye haue do this day that wel may suffyse. & also we 8 be lytel nombre of peuple, & nygh our enemyes, that haue grete puyssance / and your woundes and soores must be vysyted and ouersene / and also, it me semeth best, that we retourne toward oure oost by our owne 12 wy^H / than yf by force we were constrainyd to retourne; For no doubte / who that retourneth fleeynge, & is chassed by hys enemyes / that may be to hym but blame / how be it, that oftyme it is said / that bettre 16 it is to flee, þan to abyde a folyssh enterpryse.' Thenne said geffray: 'Fayre sire, at this tyme we shal byleue your counsey^H.' And they thenne departed, and went toward theire oost, & fond² in theire way the feldes 20 sownen with sarasyns deed. And wete it wel, that the same day, byfore none, the sarasyns lost wel xxv^{ti} thousand^d men, that by fayt of armes were al slayne / and there escaped^d, fleeynge, XL. M^l. And wete it 24 also, that the Caliphe and the two saudans, the king^r Anthenor and thadmyral of Cordes fond^d of seuen score thousand^d panemes that the euen tofore were in theire oost, but foure score thousand, wherof they were gretly 28 abasshed^d. Now I shal speke of Geffray, that was retourned to thoost, where he was wel festyed^d of hys bretheren, and of theire baronye / and his woundes were vysyted by the Cyrurgyens, that ²said that he 32 shuld not leue the harneys therfor: and they all thanked god. And now I shal shew of the sawdan. / **T**hystorye sayth, that whan the saudan was departed fro the batay^H, he walaped^d tyl he came to the 36

¹ who advises him
to return to the
Christian host;

because it is
often better to
flee than to abide
a foolish enter-
prise.

Geffray follows
the knight's
counsel.

On the way back
they find the field
covered with the
slain Saracens,
who have lost
xxv. M^l men.

² fol. 169 b.

Geffray's wounds
are tended, but
they do not
oblige him to
leave off his
armour.

sarasyns oost, where as he fond^t his peple al abasshed,
For they wend he had be slayn. And whan they sawe
hym, they made grete joye, & made to hym theire
4 obeyssance, and asked how he had employted. ‘By
mahomid,’ sayd þe saudan / ‘lytel or nougnt haue I
doo, For my peple is al deed.’ And incontynent he
was desarmed, & recounted them al thauenture. And
8 the two oostes rested them that night, without ony
approching or cours don of neyther partye. /

The sultan gallops to the Saracen host.
They thought him to be dead, so receive him with joy.

He relates his adventure.

Here sheweth thy storye, that on the morow by
tymes, the Crysten armed them, & rengid^t &
12 ordeyned them in batay^H, and lefte good watche for to
kepe theire lodgys / and them that were wounded &
hurt, that myght bere no harneys / and marched foorth
in fayre ordynaunce toward thenemyes. In the van-
16 wardes were geffray, & the maister of rodes, & theire
peple; & good arblasters were vpon the wynges, wel
rengid^t. And in the grete batay^H was the king Vryan /
and the king Guyon conduytethe ryergard^t / and so
20 long they marched, that they sawe thoost of the
sarasyne / And anoone was made thenne, on bothe
sydes, a meruaylous cry / with whiche they marched
that one ayenst that other. And bygan the batay^H by
24 the archers and arblasters so aspre that thayer was
obscurid^t with the quarelles & arowes, that flew so
thyk^t. ¹The valyaunt geffray was in the Formest
frount of his peple, and whan the shotte seaced, he
28 toke his shield & hys spere in escryeng ‘Lusynen’ by
thre tynes, and smote his hors with his sporys, &
thrested^t in to myddes of his enemys so swyftly that
the maister of Roles coude not folowe hym. Ther was
32 thenne horryble bruyt with theire cryes / that one
cryed ‘Damaske’ / that other / ‘barbarye’ / some
cryed ‘bandas,’ & some ‘anthioche,’ and other were
that cryed ‘cordes’ / and geffray & his peple cryed
36 ‘Lusynen & Rodes.’ There made the thre bretheren

In the morning the Christians arm

and march against the enemy.

The archers begin the battle.

¹ fol. 170.

Geffray shouts, ‘Lusignan,’ and rushes upon the Saracens.

The brethren do such deeds of arms that all are abashed.

The Sultans of Damascus and Barbary rush on the brethren;

but the Christians pluck up heart and slay many of the enemy.

³ fol. 170 b.

Geffray gives the admiral a stroke so great that he dies.

Urian sees the Sultan of Barbary,

and strikes off his left arm.

The sultan retreats to Damas-
eus, but the Saracens con-
tinue the fight.

so meruaylloous faytes of armes / that not only the sarasyns were abasshed / but also the crystens merueyld therof. The saudans of Damaske, & of barbarye, perceyued the thre bretheren, that so ouerthrew & slew 4 theire peple; wherfore they, with xx. M^l sarasyns, couched theire sperys & rane vpon them. There reforced the batayH / and with that ¹cours the cristen the lengthe of a spere ferre. And whan the thre 8 bretheren saw the sarasyns, that thus ouerane theire peple / bygan to crye 'Lusynen,' & said, admounestyng theire peple / 'auaunt, lordes barons! these dogges may not long withstand our armes.' And thenne the 12 Cristen toke herte corageous, & vygourously made an horrable cours vpon theire enemys; wherby the stour was strong, & the batayH mortal,² For they ouerthrew & slough many sarasyns. Thenne was þer Geffray, 16 that effoundred heedes vnto the brayne, & smote doun to therthie al that he recountedred with his swerd; Whiche perceyued thadmyral of ³Cordes, that smote on the Cristen. Thenne thrested geffray thrugh the prees, 20 & cam and smote thadmyral by suche vertu, that he brake bothe helmet & heid vnto the brayne. There was the prees grete, For ther came the two saudants and theire puyssance, that supposed wel to haue 24 redressed thadmyral vpon his hors / but it was for nought, For he was deed. Thenne came there Vryan, and sawe the saudan of barbarye, þat moche hated hym, for cause that he had slain the saudan his vnkle 28 in Cypre. Thenne came Vryan, & smote hym by suche strengthe, that he made hys lyft arme to flee fro the body. And whan the saudan sawe hym thus arayed, he went out of the batayH, & made ten knightes 32 to conduyte hym to damaske / and neuertheles faught euer the sarasyns, For the saudan of damaske, & the caliphe of bandas, & the king anthenor held them in

¹ Fr. se reculèrent le long d'une lance.

² Fr. greigneur.

vertu. There was grete doleur, & grete pestylence. And wete it wel, that the Cristens were sore dommaged / but as the veray cronykle sayth, the sarasyns receyued
 4 there ouergrete dommage & losse, For of them were slain XL. M^l & more / and dured the batayll vnto euen tyme, that they withdrew them eyther other part to theire lodgyses. And on the morne the Caliphe, &
 8 the king^t anthenor, & the residu of theire people, withdrew them in to the Cite of Damaske. And whan the thre bretheren vnderstod it, they went & lodged, with their puyssance, tofore Damaske. And wete it wel,
 12 they were gretly febled, & the more part of them hurt. And there they rested them by the space of VIII
¹dayes, without sawtyng ne scarmysshing.

Thystorye sheweth vnto vs that the kyng Vryan
 16 and hys bretheren and the maister of Rodes were ryght dolaunt & wroth for the grete losse of theire peple. For wel they sawe that yf the sarasyns assembled new men, it myght come therof some euyl to them. For
 20 wel they had lost viii^{MI} of theire men. But at that other part were the saudans al abasshed. For they knew not the dommage that the Crysten had receyued.
 And they had Counseyll that they shuld requyre kyng
 24 Vryan journey of traytye vpon fourme of peas / and so they dide / And the kyng hadd counseyll that he shuld be greable to it. And the iourney was assygned by thaccoerde of bothe partes on the iii^{de} day atwix the
 28 lodgys & the toun / and were the trews graunted & were delyuered good pledges & hostages of both partyes. And thenne came they of the toun to selle theire
 marchaundysse in to the Crystens oost. Thenne came
 32 to the iourney of traytye that was assigned the saudants and theire Counseyll. And of the other part came Vryan & hys bretheren, the maister of Rodes & theire baronye with them, and spake, & communyked togidre
 36 of one thinge & of other, / and dede so moch of eyther

Both sides are hurt, but the Saracens the more.

The battle stops at eventide.

Next morning the Saracens, greatly enfeebled, retire to Damascus.

They rest viii. days.

¹ fol. 171.

Urian and his brethren

see that if the Saracens assemble new men they may lose, for they had lost viii. MI men.

But the sultans are abashed, and ask for a treaty.

It is granted.

The Saracens are to pay the Christians all the costs of their voyage,

and a yearly tribute to Urien and his heirs of xxx. Ml besaunts of gold;

¹ fol. 171 b.

also they promise not to wage war against Urien, Guion, or the Master of Rhodes.

The brethren return to Jaffa, accompanied by the Saracen kings.

The sultan makes much of Geffray, but he will receive no gifts.

Urien and Guion take leave of Geffray and go to Jerusalem.

Geffray sails to Rochelle, where he is honourably received.

On the morn he rides to his father at Merment.

partye that they were accorded, and pacyfyed by condycion that the Sarasyns shuld restore to the lordes Cristen all theire expenses & costes made in their vyage, & to paye yerly vnto kyng Vryan & hys heyres for 4 euermore xxx^{Ml} besauns of gold / and trews were made betwene them for ⠂ & one yere, and therof were letres patentes sealed. And this couuenant and trayte the sawdan of Barbarye that great doleur felt in 8 hys sholder for hys arme that ¹ was of / and the kyng^t of Anthioche / ratyfyed, / promytyng that neuer they shuld bere armes ayenst king Vryan, / ayenst Guyon of Armanye nor ayenst the maister of Rodes, nor theire 12 peple / and that yf other kynges or prynces sarasyns wold attempte ony werre anenst them, they shuld lete them haue knowleche therof assoone as they might know it / and yf thrugh that cause they had werre 16 ayenst ony king^t or prynce, Vryan promysed them to socoure and gyue them comfort with all hys power, / & in lyke wyse kyng^t Guyon & the maister of Rodes promysed to them / And soone after the thre breþern 20 and theire peple retourned to the port of Japhe. And the saudan of Damaske, the Calyphe of bandas, & the kynge Anthenor conueyed hym thither. And the sawdan made moche of Geffray, and proffred hym grete 24 yeftes, but he wold nought receyue / but that he moche thanked hym of his curtoysye.

Thystorye sayth that Vryan & Guyon entred in to the see, & vowed themself to Jherusalem. Wherfore they toke leue of geffray theire broþer, and hym moche thanked of hys noble ayde & socours / and syn they departed fro the porte of Japhe, and rowed toward Jherusalem. And Geffray toke hys way by the see 32 toward Rochelle, & saylled so long that he came there where as he was honourably receyued & gretly festyed. / And on the morn he departed, and rode with hys companye tyl he camē to Merment, where he fond bothe 36

his fader & and his moder, that knew tofore how he & his brethern had wrought beyond^t the grete see & festyed hym gretly / raymondyn hys fader kept a grete
4 feste & grete Court for joy that he had of his commyng.

Raymondin gives a great feast for joy of his return.

But soone aftir ¹ came there tdynges that in the Countre of the Garendo was a grete geaunt that by hys grete pryd & orgueyH, & by his grete strength held aH
8 the Countre in subjection. For no man durst gaynsay his commandement. Of these tdynges was Raymondin ryght dolaunt ; how be it he made of it no semblaunt, feryng that geffray shuld knowe & here of it. For he
12 knew hym of so grete courage that he wold goo fyght with the geaunt yf he vnderstod where he was. But it might not be kept so secret but that geffray vnderstode þe talkyng of hym / and that come to hys
16 knowlege / he sayd in this wyse / ‘how dyuel my bretheren and I haue subdued & made trybutary the saudan of damask & hys complyces, and that hound alone shal be suffred to hold my faders ryght enhery-
20 taunce in subjection / by my sowle, in his euyl helthe he thought to vsurpe it, For it shal cost hym hys lyf yf I may.’ Thenne came Geffray to hys fader, & thus said to hym. ‘My lord, I merueyH of you that are a
24 knight of so noble enterpryse how ye haue suffred so long^t of that hound Guedon the geaunt, that hath putte your countre of garande in subjection / by god, my lord, shame is therof to you.’ Whan raymondin vnder-
28 stod hym, he said / ‘Geffray, fayre sone, wete it is not long syn we knowe therof / & that we haue suffred vnto your joyful commyng. For we wold not trouble the fest / but doubtē you not, guedon shal haue hys
32 payment after his deserte. He slew my granfader in the Counte of pouthieu, as it was told me in bretayn, whan I went thither for to fyght with Olyuer, sone to Josselyn, that betrayed my fader.’ /

¹ fol. 172.
Tidings come from Garendo of a great giant who keeps the country in subjection.

Raymondin hides his grief in fear that Geffray will see it.

Geffray swears that he will attack the giant.

He tells his father that he marvels that he has suffered Guedon to keep his country in subjection so long.

Raymondin says the giant shall have his payment.

fol. 172 b.

Geffray says he
is ready to go
against him with
ten knights.

Raymondin sor-
rowfully con-
sents.

Geffray sets out
to find Guedon,

and men marvel
why he wants
him.

Geffray answers
that he brings
Guedon his pay-
ment for his
outrages.

1 fol. 173.

They tell Geffray
that a hundred
like him could
not withstand
the giant.

Geffray is con-
ducted near the
giant's dwelling.

Thanne ansuerd Geffray : ‘ I ne wot nor wyl not en-
quyre of thinges past, syth that my predecessours
haue therof had thonour & are come to theire aboue /
but at this tyme present that Iniurye shal be soone 4
mended yf it plese god & I may / and as touching your
personne ye ought not to meue your self for such a
theef & palyard ; For I, with ten knighthes of myn
houshold only for to hold me compayne / not for ayde 8
that I wyl haue of them ayenst hym, I shal goo fyght
with hym ’ / And whan Raymondyn hys fader vnder-
stood hys wordes he was dolaunt & sorowful, and thus
said to hym / ‘ sethen it may none other wyse be / goo 12
thou by the grace of god.’ And thenne geffray toke
his leue of his fader & of hys moder, and putte hym
self on the way toward garande accompanied with x
knighthes, and there where he passed by he enquyred 16
after guedon where he might fynd hym / And wel it
is trouth that it was told hym where the geaunt was /
But men were meruaylled, & asked of geffray why he
speryd after hym. ‘ By my feyth,’ ansuerde geffray, 20
‘ I bryng hym the trybut & payment that he by his
foly & oulrage thaketh vpon my faders lordship / but
it is neyther gold ne syluer / but it is only the poynte
of my spereheed, For none other payment he shal re- 24
ceyue of me but strokes of my swerd withal.’ And
whan the good peple herd hym thus speke, they said
to hym in this wyse : ‘ By my feyth, geffray, ye vnder-
take grete foly, ¹ For an hondred such as ye be shuld
not be able to withstand hys cruelte.’ ‘ doubtē you
not,’ said geffray / ‘ but lete me haue the feer alone ’ /
and they held theire peas, For they durst not make hym
wroth. For moche they fered hys fyernes & yre, of 32
whiche he was replenysshed / but þey conduyted hym
vnto a leghe nygh to the sayd geauntis retrette or
pryue dwellyng / and þene they sayd to geffray : ‘ Sire,
ye may lightly fynd hym at yonder place within the 36

forest' / and geffray ansuerd, 'I wold fayne see hym,
For to fynd hym I am come hither' / And here
cesseth thystorye to speke of geffray / and sheweth of
4 Raymondyn & of Melusyne. /

The veray and trew hystorye witnesseth that Raymondin and Melusine were at merment making grete joye for the prosperous estate & good Fortune of 8 theire children; but this joye was soone tourned to grete sorowe, For as ye haue herd how thystorye saith tofore that Raymondin promysed to Melusyne that neuer on the satirday he shuld not enquire of her nor 12 desyre to see her that day. It is trouth that on a

Raymondin and Melusine are at Merment making joy over the good fortune of their children, but great sorrow comes.

The history has told how Raymondin promised that he would never inquire after Melusine on Saturdays.

Satirday a lytel byfore dyner tyme, Raymondyn vnderstode that hys brother the Erle of Forests was come to Merment for to see hym & hys Noble Court.

The Earl of Forest comes one Saturday.

16 wheroft Raymondin was ryght Joyous, but sith grete myschief came to hym therfore as herafter shal be shewed. Thenne made Raymondin grete apparayH & ryght noble for to receyue his brother / And shortly to

20 shewe, he came & recounted hys brother ¹ with noble company & welcommes hym honourably, & dide moche that one of that other, & went to chircheward togidre / And after the deuyne seruice was don they came

¹ fol. 173 b.

24 agayn to the palleys where al thinges were redy to dyner / they wesshe theire handes and syn sett them at dyner and þey were worshipfully serued / ha / las ! thenne bygan a part of the doleur & heuynes. For hys

After attending church they return to the palace,

28 brother coude not kepe hym, but he asked after Melusyne, sayeng in this manere : ' My brother, where is my sustir Melusyne ? leto her come, for moche I desyre to see her.' And Raymondyn, whiche thought none

and sit down to dinner.

32 euyl, ansuerd, ' she is not here at this tyme / but to morne ye shal see her & shal make you good chere.' But for that ansuere the Erle of Forests held not hys feas / but thus said ayen to his brother : ' Ye are my

The earl asks after Melusine, and says he desires much to see her.

36 brother / I owe not to lyde to you your dyshonour.

Raymondin answers that he can see her next day.

The earl says to Raymondin, ' You are my brother, I cannot hide your dishonour.'

One set of folk
says your wife
goes to another
man every Saturday,

and others that
she is a spirit of
the fairies, and
goes on Saturdays
to do penance.

I know not
which to believe.'

¹ fol. 174.

Raymondin rises
from the table
full of jealousy;
he girds on his
sword and goes
to the place
where Melusine
retires on Saturdays.

He finds a strong
door,

and pierces a
hole in it with
his sword.

Now, fayre brother, wete it that the commyn talking of the peple is, that Melusyne your wyf euery satirday in the yere is with another man in auoultyre / & so blynd ye are by her sayeng^t that ye dare not enquere nor 4 knoweth wher she becommeth or gooth / and also other sayen, & make them strong^t that she is a spyryte of the fayry, that on euery satirday maketh hir penaunce. I wot not to whiche of bothe I shal byleue / and for 8 none other cause I am come hither but to aduertyse you therof.' Whan Raymondin thenne vnderstod^t these wordes that his brother hym said he roos ¹fro the table and entred in to his chambre, and anoone aH esprysed 12 with yre & Jalousy, withaH toke hys swerd & girded it about hym, & syn went toward the place where as Melusyne went euery satirday in the yer / and whan he cam there he fond^t a doore of yron thikk & strong / 16 and wete it wel he had neuer be tofore that tyme so ferre thitherward / and whan he perceyued the doore of yron he toke hys swerd, that was hard & tempered with fyn stele, and with the poynte of it dyde so moche 20 that he perced the doore, and made a holt in it, and loked in at that hoH, and sawe thenne Melusyne that was within a grete bathe of marbel stone, where were steppis to mounte in it, and was wel xv foot of length; 24 and therin she bathed herself, makynge there her penytence as ye shal here herafter. /

Cap. XXXVII. Here aftir foloweth how Raymondin by the admounesting of hys 28 brother beheld Melusyne hys wyf within the bathe, wherfor he toke hys brother the Erle of Forest in grete indignacion.

^{fol. 174 b.}

Thystorye sayth in this partie that Raymondin 32 stode so long at the yron doore that he perced it with the poynte of his swerd, wherby he might wel see

al that was within the Chambre / and sawe melusyne
 within the bathe vnto her nauel, in fourme of a woman
 kymbyng her heere, and fro the nauel dounward in
 4 lyknes of a grete serpent, the tayH as grete & thykk as
 a bareH, and so long it was that she made it to touche
 oftymes, while that raymondyn beheld her, the rouf of
 the chambre that was ryght hye. And whan Ray-
 mondyn perceyued it, weto it wel that he was ryght
 8 dolaunt and sorowful & not without cause, and coude
 neuer hold hys tonge, but he said, ‘My swete loue, now
 haue I betrayed¹ you, & haue falsed my couenaunt by
 12 the ryght fals admounestyng of my brother, and haue
 forsworne myself toward you.’ Raymondin therne was
 smyten to the herte with suche sorow & dystresse that
 vnnethe he coude speko / and pensefuH with a heuy
 16 contenaunce retourned hastly toward hys chambre, and
 toke some wax wherwith he went & stopped the holH
 that he had made at the doore of yron, and syn came
 agayn to the hall where he found hys brother. And
 20 therne whan therle of Forest perceyued hym and sawe
 hys heuy contenaunce / wel supposed he that he had
 fond Melusyne in some shamful fayt, and said to him
 in this wyse: ‘My brother, I wist it wel / haue ye not
 24 fond as I said?’ Thenne cryed Raymondin to hys
 brother of Forest in this manyere:² ‘Voyde this place,
 fals traytour, For thrugh your fals reporte I haue falsed
 my feyth ayenst the moost feythfullest & truest lady
 28 that euer was borne. ye are cause of the losse of al my
 worldly joye & of my totall destruction / by god, yf I
 byleued my courage, I shuld make you to dey now of
 an euyl deth / but rayson naturel kepeth & dessendeth
 32 me therfro, bycause that ye are my brother / goo your
 way & voydo my syght, that al the greto maisters of

Raymondin sees
Melusine in the
bath,

half woman, half
serpent.

He becomes
sorrowful, and
laments that
he has betrayed
her.

¹ fol. 175.

He returns hastily to his chamber,
to procure wax to stop the
hole in the door.

This done he re-
turns to the hall,

and orders his
brother out of
the place,

and tells him
that were he not
his brother he
should die.

² Fr.: *Fiez d'icy, faulx triste, car vous m'avez fait, par votre tresmauvais rapport, ma foy parjurier contre la plus loyalle et la meilleure des dames qui onques naquit, apres celle qui porta notre seigneur Ihesucrist.*

The earl and his people ride home as fast as they can.

He repents of his foolish enterprise.

¹ fol. 175 b.

Raymondin cries,
‘Alas, Melusine,
I have lost you
for ever.’

He upbraids Fortune,

that made him slay his uncle.

and now will make him lose his lady.

heſt may conduyte you thither’ / And whan the Erle of Forest apperceyued Raymondyn his brother that was in so grete yre, he went out of the halle & alſt his peple, & mounted on horsbak and rode as fast as 4 they might toward Forests ryght pensefulſt & heuy, repentyng hym of hys folyssh̄ enterpryse ; for he knew wel that Raymondin his brother wold neuer loue hym nor see hym. Here I leue to speke ¹ of hym, & shal 8 shewe you of Raymondin that entred in to his chambre wooful & angre. /

‘ **H** alas, Melusyne,’ sayd Raymondin, ‘ of whom alſt the world spake wele, now haue I lost you for 12 euer. Now haue I fonde the ende of my Joye / and the begynnnyng is to me now present of myn euerlastyng heuynes / Farwel beaute, bounte, swetenes, amyablete / Farwel wyt, curtoysye, & humilite / Farwel al 16 my joye, al my comfort & myn hoop / Farwel myn herte, my prowes, my valyaunce, For that lytel of honour whiche god had lent me, it came thrugh your noblesse, my swete & entierly belouyd lady. Ha / a, 20 falsed & blynd Fortune, aigre, sharp, & byttir / wel hast thou ouerthrown me fro the hyest place of thy whele vnto the lowest part of thy mansyon or dwellyng place, there as Jupyter festyeth with sorow & heuynes, the 24 caytyf & vnhappy creatures / be þou now cursed of god. by the I slough ayenst my wyſt my lord, myn vncle, the whiche deth thou sellest me to dere. helas ! thou had putte and sette me in high auctoryte thrugh 28 the wyt and valeur of the wyseſt, the fayrest, & moost noble lady of al other / and now by the / fals blynde traytour and enuyous, I must leſe the ſight of her of whom myn eyen toke theire fedyng! thou now hateſt / 32 thou now louest, thou now makeſt / thou now vndoſt / in the, nys no more ſurety ne reſt than is in a fane that tourneſt at al windes. Halas / helas ! my ryght swete & tendre loue / by my venymous treason I haue 36

maculate your excellent fygure / helas ! myn herte & al
 my wele ye had heeled me clene of my first soore / yl
 I haue now rewarded you therfore. Certaynly yf I
 4 now lese you / none other choys is to me / ¹but to take
 myn vtermost exil there as neuer after no man lyuyng
 shall see me.'

He cries that he
will
¹ fol. 176.
go into exile if
he loses her,

8 **H**ere sayeth thistorye, that in suche doleur & be-
 wayHinges abode raymondin al that nyght tyl it
 was day light. And as sone as aurora might be per-
 ceyued, Melusyne came & entred in to the chambre /
 and whan Raymondyn herd her come he made sem-
 12 blaunt of slepe. She toke of her clothes, and than al
 naked layed herself by hym. And thenne bygan Ray-
 mondyn to sigh as he that felt grete doleur at herte /
 and Melusyne embraced hym, & asked what hym eyled,
 16 sayeng in this wyse : ' My lord, what eyleth you, be ye
 syke ? ' . And whan Raymondin sawe that she of none
 other þing spake, he supposed that she nothing had
 knownen of this faytte / but for nought he byleued soo,
 20 For she wyst wel that he had not entamed nor shewed
 the matere to no man / Wherfor she suffred at that
 tyme & made no semblaunt therof / wherfore he was
 right Joyous, and ansuerd to her : ' Madame, I haue be-
 24 somewhat euyl at ease & haue had an axe² in maner
 of a contynue.' ' My lord,' said Melusyne, ' abasshe you
 not, For yf it plese god ye shal soone be hole.' And
 thenne he that was right joyous said to her, ' By my
 28 feyth, swete loue, I fele me wel at ease for your
 commyng' / and she said, ' I am þerof glad ' / and
 whan tyme requyred they roos and went to here masse /
 and soone after was the dyner redy / and thus abode
 32 Melusyne with Raymondyn al that day / and on the
 morne she toke leue of hym & went to Nyort, where
 she bylded a fortresse. ³And hero seaceth thistorye of
 her / and retourneth to speke of gefray.

and bewails all
the night long.

In the morning
Melusine re-
turns.
Raymondin
feigns sleep.

Melusine lies by
him. He sighs.

Melusine in-
quires what is
wrong.

Raymondin
thinks she does
not know of his
deed.

She does, but
makes no show
of her know-
ledge.

He replies he has
a fever.
Melusine says he
will soon be well.

He says he is
better since her
return.

Melusine goes to
Niort and builds
a fortress.

³ fol. 176 b.

² Fr. *ung peu de fièvre en manière de continue.*

Geffray is received with joy in Garendre.

He asks after Guedon, and is taken to his tower of Mermount.

His guides leave.

Geffray dismounts and arms himself.

He tells his knights to wait for him in the valley, and bids them come to him when they hear his horn.

Geffray mounts to the tower.

He calls to the sleeping giant,

Here sayth thystory, that Geffray came in garande, where as he was receyued with gret joye / and he asked where the geant guedon held hym self / and, as before is said, they conduyted hym, and shewed to hym the strong tour of Mermount, where the geaunt was, & said : ‘Sire, wete it / that yf ye byleue vs, it shal suffyse you to haue sene the toure, & shal retourne with vs ; For as touching our personnes, we shal goo no neer þat horrable geaunt, algaf you to eyther of vs your pesaunt or weyght of fyn gold.’ ‘By my feyth, sires,’ said geffray, ‘I thanke you moche, that thus ferre ye haue brought me.’

12

Geffray thenne, as thystory saith, descendid from his hors, & armed hym, and syn girded hys swerd¹ about hym, & remounted on horsback ; and after toke hys sheld, & heng it tofore hys brest ; & toke a clubbe of stele, & faste it at tharsons of his sadell ; and syn toke a trompe of yuory, and heng it at hys neck behynd ; and syn asked hys spere / and thenne said to his tene knighting, in this manere : ‘Fayre lordes, abyde me in this valey / and yf god graunte me the vyctory of the geaunt, I shal thenne blowe this horne / and whan ye shal here it, ye shal lyghtly come to me.’ And they were dolaunt that he wold not suffre them to go with hym, and bade hym farweH, prayeng god for hys good sped. Thenne departed the valyaunt & hardy geffray, and mounted the montayne ; and anoone cam to the first gate of the toure, & found it open / thenne entred he in to the bassecourt, & went toward the dongeon, that strong was to meruayH. And whan he was nygh, he beheld it, & moche ²playsed hym the facion and byldyng of hit ; but he sawe the brydge, that was drawen vp. For the geante slepte. Thenne he cryed with a hye voys, sayeng in this manere : ‘hourys sone & fals geaunt,

² fol. 177.

¹ *hys swerd* twice in MS.

cōme speke with me! For I bryng to the / the syluer
that the peuple of my lord, my fader, owen to the.'
And, for certayn, geffray cryed so long that the geaunt
4 awacked, & came at a wyndowe, and beheld geffray,
armed of al pyeces, mounted vpon a courser, that held
hys spere couched / and thus bygan to crye, with a
lowde voyce, 'knyght! what wold thou haue?' 'By
8 my sowle,' said geffray, 'I seke for the, & for none
other / and I come hither to chalange the, and bring
with me the trybut that thou hast ouersette vpon the
peuple of my lord, Raymondyn of Lusynen, my fader.'

who comes to his
window and asks
what he wants.

12 Thenne whan the geant vnderstode geffray, he was
nygh aragid & mad, that of one knight alone was so
bold to make hym warre, & had sette hym so nygh hys
place. but, notwithstanding, when he had wel aduyised
16 hym, he consydered in hym self that he was a man of
grete valyaunce. Thenne the geaunt armed hymself,
and laced the taches of hys helmet; & toke a grete
barre of yron, and a grete sythe of stèle, & came to
20 the brydge, and lete it fall; & came in the bassecourt,
& demanded of geffray: 'What art thou, knight, that
art so bold to come hither?' And geffray ansuerd, in
this manere: 'I am geffray with the grete teeth, sone
24 to Raymondyn of Lusynen, that comineth hither to
chalenge the patiz or trybut, that thou takest thrugh
thy grete prude, of my lord my faders peple.' Thenne
whan Guedon vnderstod it, he bygan to lawhe, and to
28 hym thus said: 'By my feyth, poure fole, for thy grete
hardynes & the grete enterprise ¹of thyn herte, I haue
pyte of the. Now wyl I shew to the curtoysye / that
is, that thou retourne lyghtly to make thy warre in
32 other place; For wete thou wel, yf now with the were
V. C suche foles as thyself art, yet coudest thou not
endure and withstand my puyssance. but for pyte
that I haue to putte to deth so hardy a knight, as I
36 suppose thou art, I gyue the lycence & congie to

Geffray answers
he bears him his
tribute for his
misdoings.

The giant is
enraged;

he arms

and descends to
the bassecourt,
and again asks
who Geffray is.

He answers that
he is the son of
Raymondyn, and
has come to chal-
lenge the tribute
he has heretofore
exacted.

Guedon laughs
at him,

¹ fol. 177 b.

and tells him to
go back, because
V. C like Geffray
could not over-
come him.

He says he will remit the tribute for a year.

Geffray is sorrowful that the giant appraises him at so little.

He taunts Guedon that he is afraid;

but the giant still laughs at him.

Geffray there-upon spurs his horse and rides against Guedon.

Geffray knocks him down.

¹ fol. 178.
The giant rises, and smites Geffray's horse.

Geffray dismounts and approaches the giant with sword drawn.
The giant comes against him,

and raises his scythe to smite Geffray,

retourne to Raymondyn thy fader / goo thou lyghtly hens / and for loue of the I shal forgyue to thy faders peple the payement of a hol^t yere of the trybut that they owe me.' Thenne whan geffray with the grete 4 toth herd that the geaunt made so lytel of hym, & that as noug^t he preyed hym, he was of it ryght dolaunt, and said to hym in this wyse: ' Meschaunt creature, thou alredy ferest me mochⁱ / I wyl wel thou wete that 8 of thy curtoysy I sett noug^t by, For thus spekest thou for the grete feir that thou hast of my tooth. but wete þou, for certayn, that I shal neuer departe fro this place vnto that tyme I haue separed the lyf fro thy body / 12 and therfor, haue pyte of thyself, & not of me, For I hold the for deed where as thou art / & ryght foorth I deffye ye.' And whan the geaunt herd hym, he made semblaunt of lawghing^t, sayeng al this: 'Geffray, fool, 16 thou commest in to batay^H, & thou mayst not endure one stroke of me only, without I felle the to þe erthe.' And thenne geffray, without ony more sayeng^t, smote hys hors with hys sporys, and charged hys spere, & 20 dressed hym toward the geaunt, asmoche as the hors might ranne; and strak hym thrugh the brest by suche strength that he bare hym to the ground, the bely vpward. ¹but the geaunt stert vp lyghtly, in grete 24 yre, & as geffray passed by, he smote hys hors behynd with hys sythe of fyn stele / and whan geffray wyst it, he descended lyghtly from hys hors, & came toward the geaunt, the swerd^t drawen. and thenne came the 28 geaunt toward hym, holding^t his sythe in his hand: where as was grete batay^H.

Cap. XXXVIII. How geffray slough Guedon, the geaunt, in garande.

32

Al thus, as ye haue herde, geffray was on foot tofore the geaunt, that held his syþe in his fyst, & supposed to haue smyte geffray / but he bare

it vp / & with that, he smote with hys swerd vpon the hafte¹ of the geantis sythe, that it fel in two pyeces. And thenne the geaunt toke hys flayel of yron, & gaf 4 geffray a grete buffet vpon his bassynet, wherwith he was almost astonyed. Thenne came ²Geffray toward hys hors, that laye on the erthe, & toke hys clubbe of yron, that hyng at tharsons of hys sadef², & lightly 8 tourned toward the geaunt, that haunce hys flayel, supposyng to dyscharge it vpon geffray / but geffray, that was pert in armes, smote with hys clubbe such a stroke vpon the flayel, that he made it to flee out of the 12 geantis handes. And thenne the geaunt, full of yre, put hys hand in hys bosom, where were thre hamers of yron ; of the whiche he toke one, & casted it by suche radeur, that yf geffray had not receyued that strok vpon 16 his clubbe, he might haue be myschieuyd therwith / by the force wherof hys cluble flough out of hys handes : and the geaunt toke it vp / but geffray drew lightly his swerd, & came to the geaunt, that supposed to haue 20 smyte geffray with the cluble of steele on the heed / but geffray, that was light & strong, fled the stroke, & the geaunt faylled ; & the stroke fel to therth, by the force wherof the heed of the clubbe entred in to the grounde 24 a large foot deep. And thenne geffray smote the geaunt vpon the ryght arme with hys swerd, in suche vyoncenc, & hys swerde was so sharp & trenchaunt, that he made it to flygh fro hys body to the erthe. Thenne was þe 28 geant gretly abasshed, whan he sawe thus his arme lost / notwithstanding, he haunce hys swerd with hys other hand, and trowed to haue smyte geffray at herte / but geffray kept hym wel therfro, & smote the geaunt 32 vpon the legge, vnder the knee, by suche strength that he smote it in two. Thenne the geaunt fel, & gaf such an horrable crye, that al the valey sowned þerof, so that they that bode for geffray, herd it / but they

who cuts it in halves.

The giant takes his flail and smites Geffray.

² fol. 178 b.

Geffray takes his iron club

and knocks the flail out of the giant's hands.

The giant throws a hammer at Geffray

and drives his club out of his hands.

The giant thinks to hit Geffray,

but he flees the stroke.

Then Geffray smites off the giant's right arm.

The giant tries to strike at Geffray with the other hand, but he cuts the giant's leg in two.

The giant falls, and utters a horrible cry.

¹ Fr. manche, a hast or handle. Written 'haste' in MS.

¹ fol. 179.

knew not the certayn what it was / but ¹alwayes they had grete meruay^H of that horrable sowne. Thenne geffray cutte the taches of the geant helmet, and after cutte of his heed / and syn toke hys horne, & blew it; ⁴ Wherby his peple, that were in the valey, might here it / and so dide other that were of the countre / and by þat they knew the geaunt was deed; wherof they gaaf lawdyng^t to our lord god deuoutely. and imme- ⁸ diatly they mounted the mountayne, & came to the place, where they fonde geffray, that said to them of the Countre / ‘this fals traytour geaunt shal neuer more patyse you, For he as now this tyme present, hath ¹² neyther lust nor talent to aske ony tribut of you.’ And whan they perceyued the body & the heed^t of the geaunt, lyeng in two partes, they were al abasshed of hys gretnes, For he was XV foot of lengthe / sayeng to ¹⁶ geffray, that he had enterprysed a grete faytte, to haue putte hym self in so grete parel tassay^H suche a dyue^H / ‘By my feyth,’ said geffray, ‘the parel is past. For, fayre lordes, I wyl that ye knowe / thing^t ²⁰ neuer bygonne / hath neuer ende / In euery thing^t most be bygynnyng^t, tofore the ende commeth.’

² fol. 179 b.

²Cap. XXXIX. How Froymond, brother to Geffray, was professed monke at Mayl- ²⁴ lezes, by consentement of hys fader & moder.

Moche were thenne the knyghtes abasshed, as thistorye reherceth, of this that geffray had ²⁸ slayn the geaunt, that was so grete & mighty. And the tydinges therof were spred in the Countre, & in the marches about. And also geffray sent, by two of hys knyghtes, to hys fader, the heed of the geaunt. And ³² in the meane season he went & dysported hym in the Countre, where as he was gretly fested, & receyued

The tidings of
Geffray's deed
are spread in the
country.

Geffray sends the
giant's head to
his father.

with grete joye, & presented with gret ryches. Here I
 shal leue to speke of hym / & shal shew you of Froy-
 mond, hys brother, who that prayed so moche hys fader
 4 and his moder, that they were greable that he shuld be
 professed monke at Maylleses / & so he was shorne, by
 the consentement of hys fader, & of ¹his moder ;
 Wheroft thabbot & aſt conuent was ryght joyous.
 8 And wete it wel, there were within the place to the
 nombre of an hondred monkes. And yf they had
 thenne grete joye of Froymonds professyon / it was
 afterward reuersed in to grete doleur / as ye shal here
 12 herafter / but wete it wel, that it was not thrughe the
 faytte of Froymond, For he was right deuoute, & ledd
 a religiuous lyf / but by the rayson of hym came to
 the place a merueylous aventure. It is trouth that the
 16 two forsaid knightinges that geffray sent vnto hys fader
 with the heed of the geant, rode tyl they came to
 merment, wher they fond Raymondin, & presented
 hym with the heed of the geaunt, wheroft he was joyful.
 20 And the heed was moche loked on / & euery man
 meruaylled how geffray durst assayH hym. And thenne
 Raymondin sent a *lettre* to geffray, how Froymond, his
 brother, was professed monke at thabbey of maylleses.
 24 helas ! that message was the cause of the trystefuH
 doleur of the departyng of his wyf, wheroft neuer
 after he nor she had hertly joye, as ye shal here her-
 after. Trouth it was that Raymondyn gaaf thenne
 28 grete yeftes to the two knightinges, and delyuered them
 the *lettre*; and sayd that they shuld grete wel geffray,
 & that they shuld bere the hed of the geaunt to
 Melusyne, that was at Nyort : For it was not ferre out
 32 of their way. Thenne so departed the two knightinges,
 & held on their way tyl they came to nyort, where
 they fonde their lady ; the whiche they salued, &
 presented her with the heed of the geaunt. Wheroft
 36 she was ryght joyous, ²and sent it to Rochelle, and was
 MELUSINE.

Froimond prays
his father and
mother to
allow him to
become a monk
at Mailleses.

¹ fol. 180.
They consent ;
he is shorn.

The abbot is
glad,

but Froimond's
profession causes
them much pain
afterward.

The knights
bring Raymondin
the giant's head.

He sends back
word to Geffray
how Froimond
was professed
monk.

He gives the
knights gifts,

and bids them
take the head to
Melusine.

She has it set upon a spear at a gate of Rochelle.

There was a giant in Northumberland named Grymault,

xvii. foot high.

He lived at Brombelyo, and destroyed the country for nine leagues round.

They hear in Northumberland of Geffray's deed,

and resolve to ask him to deliver them from Grymault.

Eight noble persons are sent to Geffray;

² fol. 181.

and when he understands their message he promises to help them.

sette vpon a spere at the gate toward guyenne. And Melusyne gaf the two knightes ryche yeftes; and after that toke theire leue, and went toward the toure of mountyuet,¹ where geffray was for hys dysport & solas. 4 And here cessest thy story, & sheweth other matere. /

Thy story sayth that the tydying was anoone spred throughe the Countre, how geffray with the grete tooth slough the geaunt guedon in batay^H, and al they 8 that herd^t therof were gretly abasshed. And for that tyme regned in northumberland a geaunt that hyght Grymault, & was the moost cruel that euer man sawe, For he was xvii foot of heyght / and that same grete 12 dyuch^H held hym nygh a mountayne called Brombelyo / and wete it wel for trouth he had dystroyed al the Countre about in so moche that there ne durst no personne inhabyte nygh hym by eyght or nene leghes / & 16 so al the Countre was desert & wyldernes. It befel that in Northumberland came tydynges how geffray with the grete teeth had slain the geaunt guedon. Wherfore they of the same Countrey made a grete 20 counsey^H, that they shuld sende to geffray, & profre hym so he wold delyuere them of the cruel murdrer grymauld, euery yere duryng hys lyf he shuld haue x. M^l besans of gold; & yf he hath yssue male of hys 24 body they to possesse the said annuel rente of x. M^l besans / and yf he hath a daughter to hys heyre, we to be quytte after his decesse of our sayd trybute. Wherupon they choose eyght of þe moost noble personnes 28 of theire Countre, & sent hem in ambaxade toward geffray / the whiche departed & came to Mountyuet, where they fonde geffray, to ²whom they proposed the cause of theire commyng. And thenne whan geffray 32 vnderstode it / he ansuerd nobly: 'Fayre lordes, I wyl not reffuse your demande, how be it I shuld haue goon thither to fyght with þat geaunt, For I herd^t tydynges

¹ Fr. *Monjouet*.

of hym tofore your commyng¹, for the pyte that I haue
of the destruction of the peple, & also for to seke
honour. Wete it that now foorthwith I wyl departe
4 with you without ony lenger delay / and by the help
of god I suppose texille the geaunt.' And þey thenne
gaaf hym grete thankinges.

Cap. XL. How the two messangers of Ray-
8 mondin cam in garande toward geffray.

Thenno came the two knyghtes that he had sent
toward hys fader, and salued hym honourably,
and recounted hym the noble chere that they had
12 hadl of hys fader & of his moder, whiche ¹greted hym
wel: 'By my feyth,' said Geffray, 'that playseth me
wel.' and after they delyuered to hym the *lettre* from
hys fader, which geffray toke & opend it / the tenour
16 of whiche made mencon how Froymond his brother
was shorne monke at Mayllezes. And whan geffray
vnderstod it he was wroth, & shewed thenne so fel &
cruel semblaunt that there ne was so hardy that durst
20 abyde the syght of hym; but they all voyded the
place except the two knyghtes and the ambaxatours of
northumberland. /

In this party sheweth thistory, that whan geffray
24 knew the tydynges of Froymonds professyon he
was so dolaunt that almost he went fro his wyt. And
wete it wel that thenne he seemed bettre to be araged
& madd than man with rayson. And he said in this
28 wyse: 'how deuel! had not my fader & my moder
ynough for to entreteyn & kepe thestate of Froymond
my brother, & hym to haue maryed som noble lady of
the land / and not to haue made hym a monke / by
32 god omnipotent these flatterers monkes shal repente
them þerof, For they haue enchaunted my lord my
fader, & haue drawnen Froymond with them for to fare

The knights
salute Geffray,
and tell him of
the noble cheer
they had at his
father's.

¹ fol. 181 b.

They deliver the
letter which tells
how Froimond
had professed
himself monk.

Geffray waxes
wroth at the
news.

He seems to be
mad,

and declares that
the monks shall
repent of their
guile and their
greed.

þe bettre by hym / but by the feyth that I owe to god
I shal pay them so, therfore, that they shal neuer haue
neyther lust ne talent to withdraw no noble man to be
shorne monke with them.' And thenne he said to the 4

Geffray tells the
embassy that
they will have to
wait.

bassade of Northumberland: 'Sires, ye muste soiourne
a while & abyde my retourn hither / For I must goo
to an affayre of myn that toucheth me moche.' And
þey that knewe hys wrathe & anger ansuerd: 'My 8

With his ten
knights he goes
to Mailleses,
¹ fol. 182.

lord, so shall we doo with a good wy^H' Thenne made
geffray his ten knigtes to mounte on horsback / and
also he armed hym and lept on hys hors / & syn de-

parted ¹fro Mountyoud, espryzed with grete yre ayenst 12
the abbot & Conuent of Maylleses / and at that tyme
the said abbot & hys monkes were in Chapitre. And

geffray thanne come to the place, entred, the swerd
gird about hym, in to the Chapitre. And whan he 16

and finds the
monks in chap-
ter.

perceyued thabbot & hys monkes, he said al on hye to
them: 'Ye false monkes / how haue ye had the hardy-
nes to haue enchaunted my brother, in so moche that
thruste your false & subtyl langage haue shorne hym 20
monke / by the teeth of god yl ye thought it, For ye
shal drynk therfore of an euyl drynk.' 'helas! my
lord,' said thabbot, 'for the loue of god haue mercy on
vs / and suffre you to be enfourmed of the trouth & 24

The abbot denies
having so coun-
selled him.

rayson, For on my Creatour, I nor none of vs all coun-
seyld hym neuer thereto.' Thenne came Froymont

Froimond comes
forward
and says he be-
came monk of
his free will.

foorth, that trowed wel to haue pleased the yre of
geffray hys brother / and þus said: 'My² dere, dere 28
brother / by the body & sowle which I haue gyuen to .

Geffray says he
will pay him with
the rest.

god, here is no personne, nor within this place that euer
spake ony word to me touching my professyon, For I
haue it doon of myn owne free wylle & thrugh deuo- 32
cion.' 'By my sowle,' said geffray, 'so shalt thou be
therfore payed with the other, For it shal not be
wytted³ me to haue a brother of myn a monke' / and

² By in MS. (Fr. Mon.)

³ Fr. reproache.

with these wordes he went out of the Chapter, & shetted the doores fast after hym, & closed thabbot & the monkes therynne / and incontynent he made al 4 the meyne of the place to bryng there wode & strawe ynougue al about the Chapter, and fyred it / & sware he shuld brenne them all therynne, & that none shuld escape. Thenne came the ten knightes foorth tofore 8 geffray, whiche blamed hym of þat horrable faytte / sayeng: ‘that Froymond, his brother, was in good purpos, & that happily thrughe hys ¹prayers & good dedes the sowles of his frendes & other myght be 12 asswaged & holpen.’ ‘By the tooth of god,’ sayd thenne geffray, ‘nother he nor none monke in this place shal neuer syng masse nor say prayer, but they shal all be bruled & brent.’ Thenne departed the x 16 knightes from hys presence / sayeng that they wold not be coulpaible of that merueyllous werke.

He goes out of the chapter, closes all the monks inside, and has wood and straw brought, and swears he will burn them.

His knights remonstrate with him,

¹ fol. 182 b.

and leave him because they will not be culpable of such a deed.

Cap. XLI. How Geffray with the grete tooth fyred thabbey of Mayllezes, & brent 20 bothe thabbot & al the monkes there.

In this partie, sayth thystorye, that Geffray anonc after that the ten knightes were departed fro hym, he toke fyre at a lampe within the chirche, & sette the 24 fyre in the strawe all about the Chapter, where as were in thabbot, & al the monkes of the place, & hys brother Froymond with them. It was a pyteous syght, For as soone as ²the monkes sawe the fyre they bygan to 28 crye piteously, & to make bytter & doulorous bewaylynges, but al that preuaylled them nougħt. What shuld I make long compt? Wel it is trouþt, that all the monkes were brent / and wel the half of the said 32 Abbey or euer geffray departed thens. That don he came to hys hors & lepte vp / but whan he cam in to the feldes he retourned hys hors, & beheld toward

Geffray takes fire from a church lamp and lights the straw.

² fol. 183.

The monks cry bitterly when they see the fire.

They are all burnt, and half of the abbey.

Geffray feels remorse, and begins to sigh bitterly.
He upbraids himself,

and is full of despair, and like to slay himself.

His knights approach, and one says that it is too late to repent.

Geffray rides swiftly to Mountjouet,

and gets ready to go with the ambassadors.

A messenger from Mailleses recounts to Raymondin the piteous tidings

² fol. 183 b.

of the burning of the abbey and the monks.

Raymondin says he cannot believe the story.

thabbaye / & perceyuyng that grete myschief & the dommage that he had don there, & his vnkynd & abhomynable deelyng, remors of conscience smote the herte of hym, and bygan to sygne and bewayH byttirly / 4 sayeng vnto him self in this wyse : ‘ helas! fals, wycked, & vntrue prodytour¹ & enemy of god / woldest thou that men dide to the that / whiche thou hast doo to the true seruauntes of god? / nay certayn.’ And thus 8 blamed & wytted hym self, so that no man myght thynke the dyscomfort & grete dyspaire that he thenne toke / & wel I byleue that he had slain hym self with hys owne swerde yf it thenne had not fortuned that 12 hys ten knightes cam to hym there / one of the whiche bygan to hym saye / ‘ ha / a, my lord, ouer late is this repented.’ And whan geffray vnderstode hym / he thenne had greter despyte than tofore / but he dayned 16 not ansuere to the knyght, but rode so fast toward the toure of Mountyuet, that with grete peyne myght his men folow hym / & so long rode he tyl he came thither / And thenne made his apparayH for to goo 20 with the ambaxatours there as they shold conduyte hym / & toke with hym but his x knightes. And here seaceth thystorye of hym, & speketh of Raymondin his fader /

24

Here sayth thistory, that a messager came toward Raymondin at merment that came fro mailleses,² and after hys obeyssance recounted to Raymodyn ryght pyteous tydynge, sayeng to hym in this 28 manere : ‘ My lord, wel it is trouth, that geffray with the great toth your son hath take so grete malencolye & suche dueyl of the professyon of your son Froymond that he is com to mayleses, & there he hath fyred the 32 Abbey / & within the chapter brent & bruled all the monkes, pryor, & Abbot.’ ‘ What sayst thou?’ sayd than Raymondyn / ‘ that may not be / I can not beleue

¹ Fr. *proditeur*.

it.' 'By my feyth, my lord,' said the messenger, 'it is trouth that I telle you; &, morouer, your son Froymond is brent & deed with them / and yf ye byleue
 4 me not make me to be putte in to pryson, & yf ye fynde otherwyse than I saye, lete me be hanged therfore.' Thenne Raymondyn sorowfull & heuy mounted foorthwith on horsbak, & toke hys way toward mayl-
 8 leses as fast as hys hors myght bere hym / and hys men, who þat myght folowed hym / and he neuer seaced tyl he cam thither / where he fonde, as the messenger said, & sawe the grete doleur & myschief that
 12 geffray had don. Wheroft he toke suche yre & anger at herte, that almost he was out of hys wyt. 'ha / a,' sayd he, 'Geffray, thou haddest the fayrest begynnnyng of hye prowes & cheualrye to haue come to the degree
 16 of high honour more than ony prynce son lyuyng at this day / and now thrugh thy grete cruelte thou shalt be reputed & holden vnworthy of al noble fayttes, & abhomyned for cause of thys vnkyndnes & horrifyble
 20 dede of al creatures. By the feyth that I owe to god, I byleue it is but fantosme or spyryt werke of this woman / and as I trowe she neuer bare no child that shal at thende haue perfection, For yet hath she
 24 brought none but that it hath some strange token / see I not the ¹horryblenes of her son called Horryble, that passed not vii yere of age whan he slew two squyers of myn / and or euer he was thre yere old he made dye
 28 two gentyl women his nourryees, thrugh hys bytting of theire pappes? / sawe I not also theyre moder of that satirday, whan my brother of Forestz to me brought euyl tdynges of her / in fourme of a serpent fro the
 32 nauel downward? / by god, ye / and wel I wote certayn / it is som spyryt, som fantosme or Illusyon that thus hath abused me / For the first tyme that I sawe her / she knew & coude reherce all my fortune & auenture.'

But the messenger says it is the truth, and that Froimond was burnt with them.

Raymondin rides to Maileses,

and when he sees the mischief

he complains of Geffray,

and how he will be hated for his cruelty.

He cries that he believes it is spirit work.

He complains that Melusine never bore a perfect child, and of the horribleness of her son Horrible.

¹ fol. 184.

He speaks of seeing Melusine half woman, half serpent, on a Saturday,

and says he believes her to be a spirit.

Raymondin goes to Mermen.
He retires to his chamber

and makes piteous lamentation.

The barons are sad,

and send word to Melusine at Niort,

but this augments the grief of Raymondin and Melusine.

¹ fol. 184 b.
When Melusine reads the letter she is sorrowful, more for the wrath of Raymondin than anything else.

She comes to Lusignan, where she looks so sad,

and sighs so much, that it is pitiful to see her.

In this partye, sayth thystorye, that Raymondyn, pensifull and wroth ouer meruaylously, departed fro Mayllezes, & rode agayn toward Merment. And whan he was come thither, he alighted, & went in to 4 hys chambre, where as he layed hym vpon a bed / and there he made suche lamentacion, & so pyteous bewaylynges, that there nys in the world herte so harde / but that it had wepte to here hym. Thenne were al the 8 barons ryght dolaunt / and whan they sawe that they myght not gyue none allegiance to hys dolour, they toke Counsey^H that they shuld lete it wete to their lady Melusyne, whiche was at Nyort that tyme / and 12 thither they sent a messanger, to recounte to her al the matere of the fayt. Halas ! ful euyl dide they, For they augmented thereby bothe Raymondyn & Melusyne in theyre douleur & myserye. Now bygynneth their 16 hard & bytter departyng, eche fro other, whiche dured to Raymondyn his lyf natural / & to Melusyne shal laste her penitence vnto domysday. The messenger thenne rode tyl he came to Nyort, & made his 20 obeysaunce, & syn delyuuered the *lettres* to his lady : ¹the whiche she toke, & opened it. And whan 'she vnderstode the tenour of the *lettres*, she was ryght heuy & dolaunt, & more for the yre & wrath of Raymondin 24 than for ony other thing^t; For she sawe wel that the meschief that geffray had doon might none otherwyse be as for that tyme present. She thewne made come al her peuple & aray, and sent for many ladyes & 28 damoyselles, for to hold her compayne / and so departed fro Nyort, & came to Lusynen / and there she soioured by the space of thre dayes / and euer she was of symple & heuy contenaunce / and went al about 32 in the place, vp & doun, here & there / gyuyng ofte syghes so grete that it was meruaylle & pyteous to here / And the hystory & cronykle, whiche I byleue be trew, sheweth to vs that wel she knew the doleur & 36

sorow that was nygh her to come / and as to me, I
 byleue it fermely / but her peple thoughte nothing of
 that / but they trowed that it had be for cause of the
 4 grete myschief that was befeſt throughe the fayttes of
 geffray, to thabbay of mayleses / and also for the
 wrathe & anger that Raymondyn toke therof. Melu-
 syne thenne, on the III^{de} day, departed fro Lusynen, &
 8 came to merment wel acompanyed of ladyes & damoy-
 selles, as tofore I haue sayd. And thenne the barons
 of the land, that were there assembled for to haue
 recomforted Raymondin, that they loued entierly / came
 12 ayenst her, & honourably receyued her / & sayd how
 they by no wyse coude make Raymondyn to leue hys
 dolour. ‘Wel,’ sayd she / ‘doubte you no; For, by
 the grace of god, he shalbe soone recomforted.’

She knows of the sorrow that is coming,

but her people think she is sad on account of Geffray's mischievous.

She comes to Merment,

16 **M**elusyne, the good lady, that thenne was wel
 accompanied of many ladyes & noble damoy-
 selles, & of the barons of the land, entred in to þo
 Chambre where as Raymondin was in / the which
 20 chambre had regarde toward the gardyns, that ¹were
 commodyous & delectables, and also to the feldes
 toward Lusynen. Thenne whan she sawe Raymondin,
 humbly & ryght honourably salued hym / but thenne
 24 he was so dolaunt & replenysshed with yre, that he to
 her ansuerd neuer a word / and thenne she toke the
 word, & sayd: ‘My lord, grete symplenes & foly it is
 to you that men repute & hold so sage & so wyse a
 28 prynce / you thus to maynten & make suche sorowe of
 that thinge that may none other wyse be, & whiche
 may not be amended nor remededyd / ye argue ayenst
 the playsire & wyl^H of the Creatour, whiche al things
 32 created, & shal vndoo at al tymes whan it playse hym,
 by suche manere wyse aftir his playsire. Wete it that
 there nys so grete a synnar in the world / but that
 is more piteable & mysericordyous whan the synnar
 36 repenteþ hym, with herte contryte, of his mysdede &

where they receive her honourably, and tell her of Raymondin's grief.

Melusine enters his chamber

¹ fol. 155.

and salutes him.

But he answers not a word.

Melusine chides him for his grief,

and says what is done cannot be undone,

and that God had allowed Geffray so to do because of the sins of the monks.

She says they have enough to rebuild the abbey, and to endow it richer than it was before,

and she hopes that Geffray will amend his life.

¹ fol. 185 b.

Though Raymondin knows she speaks wisely, he is so full of anger that in a cruel voice he cries,

synne / yf geffray, your sone & myn, hath doon that oultraceous folye thrugh his meruayllous courage, Wete it certaynly that suffred god for cause of the monkes mysdedes & synnes, whiche were of euyl, inordinate, & 4 vnrelygious lyuyng / and wold our lord god haue them to be punysshed in that manere wyse / how be it, that it is vnknownen to creature humayne, For the jugements of god be ryght secret & meruayllous. And, morouer, 8 my lord, thankynge to god, we haue ynough wherof to do make ayen thabbey of Mayleses as fayre & bettre than euer it was tofore, & to empossesse & endowe it bettre & rycheler, and therin to ordeyne greter nombre 12 of monkes than euer were there ordeyned. Also, yf it playse god, geffray shal mende hys lyf, bothe toward our lord god & the world. Wherfore, my lord, leue your sorowe, I pray you.' Whan thenne Raymondyn 16 vnlderstode Melusyne, he knew wel that she sayd trouth of that she had sayd to hym / and that it was best, after rayson, so to doo / but he was replenysshed & perced with yre, that al rayson natural was fled & 20 goon from hym. And thenne, with a right cruel voyce, he said in this manyere :

Cap. XLII. How Melusyne felle in a swoune, for this that Raymondyn, her 24 lord, wyted her.

' Go hence, false serpent !
Thou and thy children are but phantoms.

How can the dead have life again ?

Froimond, your only perfect child, by devilish art has suffered death.

Goo thou hens, fals serpente / by god ! nother thou nor thy birthe shalbe at thende but fantosme / nor none child that thou hast brought shal 28 come at last to perfection / how shal they that are brent & bruled haue theire lyues agayn / goode fruyte yssued neuer of the, saaf only Froymonde, that was youen to god & shorne monke ; the whiche, thrugh arte demonyacle, hath myserably suffred deth : For all

they that are foursenyd¹ with yre obeye ²the comandements of the prynces of helle. And þerfor, thorryble & cruel geffray commanded of his masters, alle the 4 duelettes of helle, hath doon that abhomynable & hydouse forsaytte, as to brenne hys owne propre brother & the monkes, that had not deserved deth.' Thenne whan melusyne vnderstode these wordes, she toke suche 8 douleur at herte, that foorthwith she fel in a swoone doun to therthe, & was half an ouure long that nother aspyracion nor breth was felt nor perceyued in her, but as she had be deed. And thenno was Raymondyn 12 sorowfuller & more wroth than euer he was tofore, For thenne he was cooled of his yre, & bygan to make grete dueyȝ, & moche repented hym of that he had sayd / but it was for nought, For þat was to late / And 16 thenne the baronnaye of the land, & the ladyes & damoy-selles were ryght sory & dolauant, and toke vp the lady, & layed her on a bed / and so moche they dide, that she came ayen to her self. And whan she myght 20 speke, she loked on Raymondyn pteously, and said /

² fol. 186.

Geffray burnt his brothers by command of his masters, the devils of hell.'

Melusine is overcome by his cruel words, and swoons.

He repents, but it avails nought.

When Melusine comes to herself she looks piteously at Raymondyn and says,

Cap. XLIII. It is shewed herafter, how Melusyne came to her self ayen, and spake to Raymondyn.

24 'Ha / a Raymondyn / the day that first tyme I
saw the was for me ryght doulourous and
vnhappy / in an euyl heuro sawe I euer thy coyned
body, thy facion, & thy fayre fygure / euyl I dyde to
28 desire & coueyto thy beaute, whan thou so falsly hast
betrayed me / how wel thou art forsworn toward me,
whan thou puttest thy self in peyne to see me / but for
this, that thou haddest not yet dysconuered nor shewed
32 to no man nor woman, myn herte forgafe ³the / and no
mencion I neuer shuld haue had made therof to the /

'It was an evil hour when I first saw your figure.

When you falsely betrayed me I forgave you because you kept my secret.

³ fol. 186 b.

¹. Fr. enforeenez.

Our love is now turned to hate.

If you had kept your oath, I was to be exempt from torment.

I should have been buried at Lusignan,

and my anniversary would have been devoutly kept.

But now my fate is altered.

I must suffer grievous penitence till doomsday.'

Melusine shows such grief that all pity her.

The heart of Raymondin is nearly broken by her grief.

He kneels to Melusine and beseeches her pardon.

Melusine calls on God to forgive him,

and god shuld haue pardoned the. Halas, my frende / now is our loue tourned in hate, doleur & hardnes / oure solace, playsire & joye ben reuersed in byttir teerys & contynuel wepynges, and our good happ is 4 conuerted in ryght hard & vnfortunate pestilence / Halas, my frend! yf thou haddest not falsed thy feythe & thyn othe, I was putte & exempted from al peyne & tourment, & shuld haue had al my ryghtes, & 8 hadd lyued the cours natural as another woman; & shuld haue be buryed, aftir my lyf naturel expired, within the chirche of our lady of Lusynen, where myn obsequye & afterward my annyuersary shuld haue be 12 honourably & deuoutely don / but now I am, thrughe thyn owne dede, ouerthrownen & ayen reuersed in the greuouse and obscure penytence, where long tyme I haue be in, by myn auenture: & thus I muste suffre & bere 16 it, vnto the day of domme / & al through thy falsed / but I beseche god to pardon me.' Melusyne began thenne to make suche doleur, that none was there that sawe her but he wept for pyte. And whan Ray- 20 mondyn sawe her douleur & heuynes, almost hys herte brake for sorowe, in so moche that he nother herd, nor sawe, nor coude hold contenaunce. /

Thystorye sayth that Raymondyn was right dolaunt; 24
Tand, for trouth, the true cronykle testyfyeth that neuer no man suffred so grete dolour, without of his lyf expired. but whan he was a lytel come to hys mynde, & sawe Melusyne tofore hym, he kneeled doun 28 on hys knees, & joynly¹ handes, thus bygan he to saye: 'My dere lady & my frend, my wele, my hoop, & myn honour, I beseche & pray you that it playse you to pardon me, & that ye wyl abyde with me.' 'My 32 swete frend,' sayd Melusyne, that saw the grete habundance of teerys fallyng fro hys eyen / 'he that is the very forgyuer, creatour & omnipotent, forgyue you your

¹ Fr. *joingnist*.

forfaytte ; For as touching myself, I forgyue & pardonne
you with al my very herto / but as to myn abydyng
with you ony more / it is Impossible / for the veray
4 judge & almighty god wold neuer suffre me ¹to doo
soo.'

as she does;
but declares that
God will not let
her abide with
him.
¹ fol. 187.

Cap. XLIV. How Raymondyn & Melusyne felle bothe in a swoune.

8 **A**nd with thou wordes Melusyne toke vp Raymon-
dyn, her lord / and thenne, as they wold haue
embraced & kyssed eche other, they fell both at ones in
a swoune, so that almost theire hertes brake for grete
12 douleur : Certayn there was a pyteous syght. There
wept & bewaylled barons / ladyes & damoyselles, sayeng
in þis manere : 'Ha, fals Fortune ! We shal lese this
day þe best lady that euer gouerned ony land / the
16 moost sage / most humble / moost charytable & curteys
of al other lyuyng in erthe.' And they al lamented &
bewaylled so pyteously, & rendred teerys in habund-
ance, in so moche that it was a pyteous syght. Thenne
20 retournd Melusyne to her self out of swounyng, and
herd the heuynes & dolour that the baronne made for
her departyng / and cam to Raymondyn, that yet laye
on the grounde, & toke hym vp / and thenne to hym,
24 in heryng of thassistaunce, she said in this manero /

Melusine raises
Raymondin.

They kiss,
and immediately
swoon on ac-
count of their
grief.

The barons and
ladies weep at
the thought of
losing their lady.

Melusine re-
covers,

and comes to
Raymondin and
says—

Cap. XLV. How Melusyne made her testa- ment. /

28 **M**y lord & swete frend Raymondyn, Impossible
lyst, & herke, & putte in mynde that I shal saye.
Wete it, Raymondyn, that certayn after your lyf naturel
expired, no man shal not empocesse nor hold your land
32 so free in peas as ye now hold it, & your heyres &
successours shal haue moche to doo / and wete it shal

'My sweet
friend, it is im-
possible to stay
with you, there-
fore listen and
keep in mind
what I say.
After your life no
man shall hold
your land in
peace.'

Your heirs
through their
folly shall lose
their inheritance.

be ouerthrawen & subdued, throughe theire foly, from
theire honour & from theire ryght enherytaunce / but
doubte you not, For I shal help you duryng the cours
of your lyf naturel / and putte not geffray, oure sone, 4

¹ fol. 187 b.
Keep Geffray
with you, he will
prove a valiant
man. I will
take care of
Raymond and
Theoderic,
though after I go
you will never
see me again in
woman's form,
I bequeath Partenay to Theoderic;

Raymond shall
be Earl of Forest;
Geffray will pro-
vide for himself.

fro your Court / he is your sone,¹ & he shal preue a
noble & valyaunt man. Also we haue two yong chil-
dren male, Raymond & theoderyk / of them I shal take
good heede / how be it, aftir my departyng / that ryght 8
soone shal be / ye shal neuer see me in no womans
fourme. And I wyl & bequethe to theodoryk, yongest
of all our children, the lordshipes with al thappurten-
ances of Partenay / Vernon / Rochelle, & the port 12
there / And Raymond shal be Erle of Forestz / and as
touching geffray, he shal wel purueye for hym self.'
Thenne drew she Raymondyn & hys CounseyH apart,
& sayd to them in this wyse : 'As touching our sone, 16
that men calle Horryble, that hath thre eyen / wete it
for certayn, yf he be lefte alyue / neuer man dide, nor
neuer shal doo, so grete dommage as he shaſt. Wher-
fore I pray & also charge you that, anoone aftir my 20
departyng, he be put to deth ; For yf ye doo not soo /
his lyf shall fuſt dere be bought, & neuer ye dide so
grete folye.' 'My swete loue,' sayd Raymondyn, 'there
shal be no fawte of it / but, for goddis loue, haue pyte 24
on yourself, & wyl abyde with me.' And she said to
hym : 'My swete frend, yf it were possyble / soo wold
I fayne doo / but it may not be. And wete it wel, that
my departyng fro you is more gryeuous & doubtous a 28
thousand tymes to me than to you / but it is the wyH
& playsire of hym that can do & vndoo al thinges.'
and, with these wordes, she embraced & kyssed hym
fuſt tenderly / sayeng: 'Farwel, myn owne lord & 32
husbond; Adieu, myn herte, & al my joye; Farwel, my
loue, & al myn wele / and yet as long as thou lyuest, I
shal feed myn eyen with the syght of the / but pyte I
haue on the of this, that thou mayst neuer see me but 36

I charge you to
put Horrible to
death.'

Raymondin asks
Melusine to stay
with him,

but she says that
it cannot be done.

She then kisses
him tenderly and
bids him adieu.

in horrable figure' / and therwith she lept vpon the windowe that was toward the feldes & gardyns ayenst Lusynen. / She leaps to the window,

4 Cap. XLVI. How Melusyne in fourme of a Serpent flough out at a wyndowe.

¹ In this partye, saith thistorye, that whan Melusyne

¹ fol. 188.

I was vpon the wyndowe as before is said, sho
8 toke leue sore wepyng¹, and her comfanded to al the
barons, ladyes, & damoyselles that were present / and
after said to Raymondyn: 'hero be two rynges of gold
that be bothe of one vertue, and wete it for trouth that

and again takes leave, weeping sorely.

She gives Ray-
mondyn two
magic rings.

12 as long as ye haue them, or one of them / you / nor
your heyres that shal haue them after you, shal neuer
be dyscomfyted in plee nor in batay^H, yf they haue
good cause / nor they that haue them shal not dey by

16 no dede of armes,' and Immediatly he toke the rynges.
And after bygan the lady to make pteous regrets and
greououse syghynges, beholding Raymondyn right pte-
ously / And they that were there wept alway ²so ten-

² fol. 188 b.
Those present
weep, so full of
pity are they.

20 derly that eueryche of them had grete pte, they
syghyng ful pteously. Thenne Melusyne in her la-
mentable place, where she was vpon the wyndowe
hauyng respecton toward Lusynen, said in this wyse,

She looks from
the window to-
wards Lusignan,

24 'Ha, thou swete Countre / in the haue I had so grete
solas & recreacion, in the was al my felicite / yf god
had not consented that I had be so betrayed I had bo-
ful happy / alas! I was wonnt to be called lady / &

28 men were redy to fulfylle my commandementes / &
now not able to be alowed a symple seruaunt / but
assygned to horrable peynes & tourments vnto the day
of fynal judgement. And al they that myght come

and speaks of her
sad future,

32 to my presence had grete Joye to behold me / and fro
this tyme foorth they shal dysdayne me & be ferefult
of myn abhomynable figure / and the lustes & playsirs
that I was wonnt to haue shal be reuertid in tribulacions

and how all will
disdain her be-
cause of her
abominable
figure.

& grieuous penitences.' And thenne she bygan to say with a hye voyce : ' Adieu, my lustis & playsirs / Far wel, my lord / barons / ladyes, & damoyselles, and I beseche you in the moost humble wyse that ye vouche- 4
sauf to pray to the good lord deuoutely for me / that it playse hym to mynushe my dolorous peyne / notwithstanding I wyl lete you knowe what I am & who was my fader, to thentent that ye reproche not my 8
children, that they be not borne but of a mortal woman, and not of a serpent, nor as a creature of the fayry / and that they are the children of the doughter of kynge Elynas of Albanye and of þe queene Pressyne, and that 12
we be thre sustirs þat by predestinacion are predes-
tynate to suffre & bere grieuous penaunces, and of this matere I may no more shew, nor wyl.' And therwith she said : ' farwel, my lord Raymondyn, and forgete not 16
to doo with your sone called Horryble this that I haue you said / but thinke of your two sones Raymond & Theodoryk.' Thenne she bygan to gyue a sore syghe, & therwith flawgh in to thayer out of the wyndowe, 20
transfigured lyke a serpent grete & long in xv foote of length. And wete it wel that on the basse stone of the wyndowe apereth at this day themprynte of her foote serpentous. Thenne encreased the lamentable 24
sorowes of Raymondyn, and of the barons, ladyes, & damoyselles / and moost in especial Raymondyns heuynes aboue al other / And foorthwith they loked out of the wyndowe to behold what way she toke / And 28
the noble Melusyne so transffygured, as it is aforsaid, flyeng thre tymes about the place, passed foreby the wyndow, gyuynge at euerche tyme an horrible cry & pyteous, that caused them that beheld her to wepe for 32
pyte. For they perceyued wel that loþi she was to departe fro the place, & that it was by constrainte.

And thenne she toke her way toward Lusynen, makynge in thayer by her furyousnes suche horrable crye & 36

She tells that her father was

Elinas, King of Albany, and her mother Queen Pressyne; and that she is one of three sisters.

She gives a sore sigh, and becomes like a great serpent;

¹ fol. 189.

and to this day her serpent's footprint is on the base-stone of the window.

The grief of Raymondin and his people increases.

They see Melusine fly three times about the place, uttering horrible cries;

then she makes her way to Lusynen, moaning so

noyse that it semed al thayer to be replete with thundre & tempeste. /

loud that it sounded like thunder.

4 **T**hus, as I haue shewed, went Melusyne, lyke a serpent, flyeng in thayer toward Lusynen / & not so hygh / but that the men of the Countre might see her / and she was herd a myle in thayer, For she made suche noyse that al the peple was abasshed. And so she 8 flawgh to Lusynen thre times about the Fortres, cryeng so pyteously & lamentably, lyke the voyce of a Mermayde. Wheroft they of the Fortresse & of the toun were gretly abasshed, & wyst not what they shuld 12 thinke, For they sawe the fygure of a serpent, and the voyce of a woman þat cam fro the serpent. And whan she had flouge about the Fortresse thre tymes she lyghted so sodaynly & horrabyly vpon the touro called 16 poterne, bryngyng with her such thundre & tempeste, that it semed that bothe the Fortres & the toun shuld haue sonk and faH / & therwith they lost the syght of her, and wyst not where she was become. But anoone 20 after that cam messagers fro Raymondyn,¹ that he sent thither to haue tydynges of her / to whom was shewed how she fyl vpon the fortresse / & of theire fere that they had had of her / and the messagers retourned 24 toward Raymondyn, & shewed hym al the caas. And thenne bygan Raymondyn to entre into hys sorowe. And the tydynges were knownen in the Countre, the pouere people made grete lamentacion & sorowe, & 28 wysshed her ayen with pyteous syghes, For she had doo them grete good. And thenne bygan thobsequyes of her to be obseruyd in al abbeyes & chirches that she had founded / and Raymondin, her lord, dede to be 32 doon for her almesses & prayers thrugh al his land.

She flies through the air to Lusignan, making a great noise, and then flies three times round the fortress,

lamenting pitifully like the voice of a mermaid.

She alights on Postern Tower in such wise that it seemed the fortress would fall.

She disappears.

¹ fol. 189 b.
Messengers are sent by Raymondin to get tidings of her.

Raymondin and all the people lament.

Her obsequies are observed in all the churches she had built.

Cap. XLVII. How Raymondyn dide do
brenne his sone called Horryble.

MELUSINE.

Y

The barons remind Raymondin of Melusine's command about Horrible.

He bids them fulfil her order,

Horrible is led to a cave

and suffocated.

He is buried at Neufmoustier.

Thenne came tofore the presence of Raymondyn the barons of the land, and said: 'My lord, it behouyth that we doo of your sone horrable this that his moder hath charged you & vs to doo.' And Raymondyn to them ansuerd, 'doo you in this that ye are commanded to doo.' And then they went and toke by fayre wordes this Horryble / & led hym in to a caue. For yf he had had warnyng^t of theire purpos 8 they shuld not haue had take hym without grete peyne. And thenne they closed hym in smoke of wet hey. And whan he was deed they buryed hym honnourably in the Abbey called the Neufmoustier. 12

Cap. XLVIII. How Melusyne came euery nyght to vysyte her two children.

Raymondin goes to Lusignan, and brings his children Raymondin and Theoderie.

¹ fol. 190.

Melusine visits them every day.

They grow faster than other children.

Raymondin when he hears of her coming,

hopes to have her back, but in vain.

Raymondin is so woful that he never laughs.

Thenne departed Raymondyn from thens & came to Lusynen, & brought with hym his two children, 16 Raymond & theodoryke / and said that he shuld neuer entre ayen in to the place wher ¹he had lost his wyf. And wete it wel that Melusyne came euery day to vysyte her children, & held them tofore the fyre and 20 eased them as she coude / and wel sawe the nourryees that, who durst no word speke. And more encruced the two children in nature in a weke than dide other children in a moneth; wheroft the peuple had grete 24 meruayll. but whan Raymondyn knew it by the nourryees that melusyne came there euery nyght to vysyte her children / relesSED his sorowe / trustyng to haue her ayen / but that thoughte was for nougnt, For neuer 28 after sawe he her in fourme of a woman / how be it dyuers haue sith sen her in femenyn figure. And wete it that how wel Raymondyn hooped to haue her ayen / neuertheles he had alway suche hertly sorowe that 32 there is none that can tell it / And there was neuer man syth that sawe hym lawgh nor make joye / and

hated gretly geffray with the grete toth / and yf he ^{He hates Geffray.} myght haue had hym in his yre, he wold haue dystroyed hym. But hero seaceth the hystorye of him And speketh
4 of geffray. /

Thystorye sayth, that geffray rode so long⁴ that he
came in Northumberland with the ambaxatours
and hys ten knyghtes with hym / And whan the barons
8 of the Countre vnderstod⁸ his commyng they cam ayenst
hym honourably, & receyued hym solemply, sayeng :
'ha, sire, of your joyful comyng we owe wel to lawde
& preyse our lord god, For without it be by you &

12 thrugh your prowes we may not be delyuered of the
horryble geaunt and meruayllous murdrer, Grymauld,
by whom al¹ this countre is dystroyed.' Thenne an-
suerde geffray to them : ' And how may ye knowe that
16 by me ye may be quytte & delyuered of hym ?' to
whom they answered, ' My lord, the sage astronomyens
haue said to vs that the geaunt grymauld ¹may not dey
but by your dede of armes / and also we knowe for
20 certayn that he knoweth it wel. Wherfore yf ye go to
hym, and that yf ye telle hym your name ye shall not
kepe hym, but he shall you escape.' Thenne sayd
geffray to the barons, ' Sire, lede me toward the place

24 where I may find⁴ hym, For grete desyre I haue to see
hym.' And Immedyatly they toke hym two knyghtes
of the land that conduyted hym toward the place / but
that one of them said to that other þat they shuld not
28 approche al to nygh grymauld / and that they myght
not beleue that geffray shuld haue the vyctory of hym.
And thenne geffray toke leue of the barons and de-

parted, the two knyghtes with hym, and so long they
32 rode tyl they saw the montayne of Brombelyo. Thenne
sayd the two knyghtes to geffray, ' My lord, yonder ye
may see the mountayne where he holdeth hym / & this
way shal lede you thither without ony fay⁴, For cer-
36 taynly he is euer at yonder trees vpon that mountayne

Geffray comes to
Northumber-
land.

The barons tell
him they are joy-
ful at his arrival,

because they will
be delivered of
Grymauld.

Geffray asks how
they know.

¹ fol. 190 b.
They answer that
wise astrono-
mers have said
that he alone can
slay Grymauld,
and the giant
knows this too,
so Geffray must
not tell him his
name.

Geffray is taken
to the mountain
of Brombelyo,

where the
knights show

where Grymauld
is to be found.
Here they leave
him for fear of
hurt.

Geffray tells
them that it is
well he has not
trusted to their
aid.

for to espye them that passe by the way. Now may ye goo thither, yf it playse you, For as touching our personnes we wyl goo no ferþer that way.' And geffray ansuerd to them in this manere, 'Yf I had come vpon 4 thaffyaunce of your ayde I had faylled therof at this tyme.' 'By my feyth,' sayd one of them, 'ye say trouth.' Thenne came they to the foot of the hyll / and there geffray descended & armed hym, and syn 8 remounted on his hors, and layed the sheld tofore hys brest, and toke his spere, and thenne he said to the two knyghtes that they shuld abyde hym vnder the mountayne, and that they shuld soone see what therof 12 shuld befaH. And they sayd that so shuld they doo.

fol. 191.

Cap. XLIX. How geffray with the grete
tooth rane ayenst the geaunt & ouer-
threw hym with hys spere./

16

Geffray leaves
the knights
and ascends the
mountain.

He sees the
giant,
who is astonished
at Geffray's bold-
ness in coming
against him
alone.

The giant takes
a club.

1 fol. 191 b.

He demands
Geffray's name,
and threatens
him with death.

Geffray defies
the giant,

In this partye sayth thistorye that Geffray toke leue of the two knyghtes, & mounted the mountayne, so that he approched nygh the trees where as he apperceyued the geaunt þat satte vndernethem. but 20 assoone as he sawe geffray he meruaylled gretly how one knyght alone had the hardynes to haue dare come toward hym, and thenne he thought in hym self that he cam to treate with hym for som patyse or for 24 som peas. but he sware hys lawe that lytel or nought he shuld entrete hym. Thenne rose vp the geaunt and toke an horryble grete Clubbe in hys handes, which ony man had ynough to doo to lyft it vp fro the 28 ground. ¹And so he came ayenst Geffray, and cryed with a hye voys, 'What art thou that darest come so boldly toward me in armes / by my lawe wel shal thou be payed therfor. For who that sendeth the hyther 32 wold haue the deed.' And geffray cryed to hym, 'I deffye the / deffend thou thy self yf thou canst.' And

with these wordes geffray couched hys spero & sporyd
 hys hors and ranne & smote the geaunt in the brest so
 myghtily that he ouerthrew hym, the legges vpward to
 4 the ground / and anon geffray descendid fro his hors,
 feeryng that the geaunt shuld slee hym vndre hym,
 and fasted it by þe brydel at a tree / & pusshed his
 sheld behynd, and toke his good trenchaunt swerd ;
 8 For wel he sawe that it were grete foly to hym to
 abyde the stroke of the geauntis Clubbe. And thenne
 cam the geaunt toward geffray, but almost he coude not
 perceyue hym for cause he was so lytel of personne to
 12 the regarde of hym. And whan he was nygh hym he
 said to hym, 'Say me thou lytel body, who art thou
 that so valyauntly hast ouerthrawen me ? / by mahomick
 I shaft neuer haue honour but I auenge me.' And
 16 thenne geffray ansuerde to hym, 'I am Geffray with
 the grete teeth, sone to Raymondyn of Lusynen.' And
 whan the geaunt vnderstod hym, he was ryght dolaunt,
 For wel he wyst that he myght not be slayne but with
 20 geffrayes handes. not that withstanding he ansuerd to
 hym, 'I knowe the wel ynough. thou slough that
 other day my Cousin Guedon in Garande, al the
 deuelles of helle haue brought the now hither.' And
 24 geffray hym ansuerd, 'no doubte / but I shal slee the
 yf I may.' And whan the geant vnderstod it, he
 haunced his Clubbe & wold haue dyscharged it vpon
 geffrayes heed, but he faylled, And thenne Geffray
 28 smote hym with his swerd vpon the sholder. ¹ For he
 myght not reche to his heed, & cutte the haulte piece
 of his harneys, and made his swerd to entre in his
 fleshe wel a palme deep, and thenne the blood fett
 32 doon along his body vnto the heelys of hym. And
 whan he felt that stroke he cryed & said to geffray /
 'cursed be that arme that by suche strengthe can
 smyte, & hanged be the smyth that forged that swerd.
 36 For neuer blood was drawnen out of my body of no

and rushes
forward and
overthrows him.

Geffray dis-
mounts,

fastens his horse
to a tree,
and takes his
sword and shield.

The giant ap-
proaches Geffray,
but can hardly
see him.

He asks Geffray
who he is.

Geffray answers
that he is the
son of Raymon-
din of Lusignan.
The giant is sad
at this news, be-
cause he knows
that Geffray
alone can slay
him.

The giant says
he knows him as
the slayer of
Guedon.

Geffray tells the
giant that he will
kill him too.

The giant raises
his club, but
misses Geffray.

¹ fol. 192.

Geffray wounds
the giant,

who curses
Geffray's arm,

and strikes back. manere wepen al were it neuer so good.' And thenne with his clubbe he wend to hane smyte geffray / but geffray fled the stroke. For wete it for trouth that yf he had atteyned hym he had slain hym / but god, on 4 whom hys trust was, wold not suffre it. And ye owe to wete for certayn that with that same stroke the Clubbe entred into the ground wel a foot deep / but or euer the geaunt myght have haunced his Clubbe, 8 geffray smote on it with his swerd by suche strengthe that he made it fligh out of the geauntes handes. and therewith he cutte a grete piece of it.

Geffray avoids the blow.

The force of the giant's stroke drove his club a foot into the ground.

Before it is raised Geffray strikes it from his hands.

The giant fears to bend to lift his club, so he strikes Geffray with his fist.

Geffray smites the giant on the thigh.

He flies to a hole in the mountain. Geffray follows

¹ fol. 192 b.
and looks in,
but it is so dark
that he cannot
see the giant.

Geffray rides to his men, who marvel at his safe return.

The two knights ask if he has seen the giant.

Cap. L. How the geaunt fled & Geffray 12 folowed hym.

Thenne was the geaunt ryght dolaunt & abasshed whan he sawe his Clubbe þus cutte lyeng on the grounde, For he durst not bowe hym self to take it vp. 16 Thenne he lept on geffray & strake hym with his fyst vpon the helmet with so grete myght & yre that almost geffray was astonyed therwith al. but geffray, corageous & hardy, smote the geant vpon the þye, so that 20 he cutte a grete part of it. And thenne whan the geaunt sawe hym thus hurt he withdrew hym a lytel backward, and syn bygan to flee / but geffray, holdyng his swerd, folowed hym / and the geaunt entred into 24 a hol within the mountayne, Wherof geffray was abasshed /. Thenne came geffray ¹to the hol and loked in, but it was so obscure & derk & so deep that he sawe nor wyst where the geaunt was become. And he 28 retourned and toke & mounted ayen vpon his hors, and descended into þe valey, & came to hys meyne that abode for hym there, whiche had grete meruayH whan they sawe hym retourne hole & sauf / and in especial 32 the two knightes wondred moche & were abasshed of it / and they asked hym yf he had sene the geaunt / and he said to them, 'I haue faught with hym / and

he is fled & entred in to an ho^H, where as I may not see hym.' And they demanded of geffray yf he had told hym hys name / and he ansuerd, 'ye' / and thenne 4 they said that it was for nought to seke hym, For wel he wyst that he shuld dey by the handes of geffray. 'Doubte you not,' said geffray, 'For wel I knowe where he is entred in / and to morne, with goddes 8 help, I shal fynd hym wel.' And whan they vnderstode Geffray to speke they had grete joye, and said that geffray was the moost valyaunt knight of the world.

Geffray tells how he fought him, and how he entered a hole in the mountain.

They say that there is no use of looking for the giant, because Geffray has told his name.

Geffray says that with God's help he will find him next day.

12 Cap. LI. How Geffray went & entred into the ho^H for to fyght with the geaunt./

And thenne on the morowe by tymes Geffray armed hym & mounted vpon his hors & rode tyl he 16 came to the said ho^H vpon the mountayne. 'By my feyth,' said geffray thenne / 'this geaunt is twyes as grete as I, & sith he is entred here in, wel I shal goo thrugh it / and so shal I do whatsomeuer it befel 20 therof.' And thenne he toke hys swerd in his hand, & fayre & softly lete hym self fal into the ho^H / and as he was in to the botome of it, he perceyued some light, & sawe a lytel path. And thenne he made the 24 signe of the eros & foorth ¹went that way./

Geffray rides in the morning to the hole where Grinold disappeared.

He jumps in sword in hand, and sees a light and a path.

He makes the sign of the cross and follows it.

¹ fol. 193.

Cap. LII. How Geffray fonde the sepulture of the king of Albany, his granfader Helynas, within the mountayn.

Geffray thenne went not ferre whan he fond a ryche Chambre, where as were grete ryches and grete Caudstykes of fyn gold, and vpon them grete tapers white wax, brennyng so clere that it was 32 meruayH. And in the myddes of the Chambre he fonde a noble & ryche tombe of fyn gold, al sette with

Geffray comes to a chamber

that contains a noble tomb,

and an alabaster
statue of a
queen,

with this inscription,
'Here lieth
my husband,
King Elynas of
Albany,'
and other writing
regarding his
burial, and his
daughters Melin-
sine, Melior and
Palastine;

and how the
giant was put on
guard until
the arrival of an
heir of one of the
daughters.

² fol. 193 b.
Geffray looks
a long while at
the inscriptions,
but knows not
that he is of the
lineage of Elynas.

Geffray leaves
the chamber, and
makes his way to
a field, where
he sees a great
tower.

He finds the gate,
and enters the
hall, where there
are over a hun-
dred prisoners.

perlys & precyous stones, & vpon it was figured the fourme of a knyght, that had on hys heed a ryche croune of gold with many precyous stones / and nygh by that tombe, a grete ymage of Albaster, kerued & 4 made aftir the fourme of a quene, crouned with a ryche crowne of gold / the whiche ymage held a table of gold / where-as were wryton the wordes that folowen. 'Here lyeth my lord myn husband the noble kyng 8 Elynas of Albanye' / and also shewed al the manyere how he was buryed there, and for what cause. And also spake of theire thre doughtirs, that is to wete, Melusyne, Melyor, and Palastyne / and how they were 12 punysshed bycause that they had closed theire fader / as in thy story tofore is reherced. Also it shewed by wrytyng how the geaunt had be there ordeyned for the kepyng & sauegarde of the place, vnto tyme he were 16 putte therfro by the prowesse of one of the heyres of the said thre doughtirs / and how there myght none neuuer entre within yf he were not of that lynage / and in these tables of gold was wel dyuySED along as it is 20 wretton in the Chapitre of king Elynas / and thus geffray beholding & seeyng, [pondered] by grete space¹ vpon 2 the tables as vpon the beaute of the place / but he knewe not yet that the tables shewed that he was of the 24 lynee of kyng Elynas & Presyne his wyf. And whan he had wel behold^d a long tyme he departed, & went by a waye obscure tyl he fonde a feld, thenne loked he tofore hym, & sawe a grete toure, square, wel batel- 28 mented, & went toward and went about the toure tyl he fonde the gate the whiche was open, & the bridge let falle doun, & entred in, & came to the ha^H, where he fonde a grete yron tray^H,³ wherin were closed a 32 hondred men & more of the Countre that the geaunt

¹ Fr. *Et à ce revoir et regarder advisa Geuffroy par grant temps.*

³ Fr. *traillis.*

held for hys prysonners./ And whan they sawe geffray they meruaylled moche, & hym sayd, ‘Sire, for the loue of god flee you, or ye shal be deed ; For the 4 geaunt shaſt come ryght foorth that shal dystroye you al, were ye an C suchē as ye are’ / And geffray ansuerē them al thus : ‘Fayre lordes, I am not here come but only the geaunt to fynd / & I shuld haue 8 don to grete foly to be come fro so ferre hither to retourne so hastily.’ And after these wordes cam the geaunt fro slepe. But whan he sawe geffray he knew hym, and sawe wel that his deth was nygh, and had 12 grete feer / and thenne he fledd unto a chambre, the whiche he sawe open, & speryd the doore to hym. And whan geffray that perceyued, he was ryght sorowful that he had not mete with hym at the entryng of the 16 Chambre./

Thystorye sayth that geffray was right dolaunt whan he sawe the geaunt was entred into the chambre, and that he had speryd the doore to hym. Thenne 20 cam geffray toward the doore, rennyng with a grete radeur, & smote with his foot so mightyly that he made the doore to flye vnto the myddes of the chambre. ¹And thenne the Geaunt swyftly went out at the doore 24 bycause he might none other way passe, and held in his hand a gret mayllet wherof he gaaf to geffray suchē a stroke vpon the bassynet that he made hym al amased. And whan geffray felt the stroke, that was 28 harde & heuy, he foyned with his swerd at his brest, with suchē yre that it entred in the geaunt thrughe to the cros of the swerd. And thenne the geant made vp ²an horrable cry, sayeng, ‘I am deed, I am deed.’ And 32 whan they that were in the traylls of yron herd it / they cryed with an hye voys, ‘Ha, noble man, blessid be the ooure that thou were borne of a woman. We pray the for the loue of god, that thou haue vs hens,

They are astonished to see Geffray, and advise him to fly from the giant.

Geffray replies that he has come to find him;

and just as he finished speaking the giant appeared.

When he saw Geffray he knew his death was at hand.

He fled to a chamber, and barred the door.

Geffray bursts it open.

¹ fol. 104.

The giant rushes on Geffray, and strikes him with a mallet;

then Geffray thrusts his sword into the giant right up to the hilt.

The giant cries out, ‘I am dead, I am dead !’

The prisoners on hearing the cry bless the hour of Geffray’s birth, and beg their deliverance.

² MS. has ‘ & .’

For thou hast at this day delyuered this land^t out of
the gretest myserye that euer peopple was in.'/

Cap. LIII. How geffray delyuered the
prysonners that the geaunt kept in 4
pryson.

Geffray finds the
keys, and re-
leases them.

He tells how he
came,

and presents the
prisoners with
the contents of
the tower.

16
A nd thenne geffray cerched the keyes so longe tyl
he fonde them, & lete the prysonners out; and
this doon, they al kneeled tofore hym / & asked hym 8
by what way he was come. And he said to them the
trouth. 'By my feyth,' said they, 'it is not in
remembraunce that this foure hondred yere was no
man so hardy to passe by the Caue, but onely the geaunt 12
and his antecessours, that fro heyre to heyre haue
dystroyed al this Countre / but wel we shal bryng you
another way.' And thenne geffray gaf to them al the
hauoir of the toure./

Cap. LIV. How the prysonners led the
geaunt deed vpon a Charyott.

fol. 194 b.
The prisoners
put the giant's
body on a
chariot, and
burn it.

Geffray returns
to the valley
with the prison-
ers bearing their
shares of the
goods of the
tower and the
giant's head.

Geffray is feast-
ed; he refuses
gifts, and leaves
the country.

The prisoners
take the giant's
head about the

T he prysonners thann toke the Geaunt deed, & putte
hys body in a Charyot, and sette hym ryght vp, 20
& bound^t hym so that he shuld not fah, & putte fyre
all about hym. And this don, they led geffray to the
place where he had left his hors, vpon the whiche he
mounted, & descended toward the valey with al the 24
goodes that they had. Wherof euery man had his
part / and toke the heed hool of the geaunt with them /
and came foorth tyl they sawe geffrayis knightes and
the more part of the nobles & peple of the Countre, 28
the which fested & dide to geffray grete honour / and
to hym wold^t they haue youen grete yeftes, but he wold^t
none take / but toke his leue, & departed fro them.
And the prysonners bare the heed of the geaunt thrugh 32
al good^t tounes for euery man to see, of the whiche

sight euery man had grete meruey^H that one man alone
durst be so hardy to assaylle suchⁱ a deue^H. And here
seaccth thistory of that more to speke / and retourneth
4 to speke of geffray.

country, and the
people marvel
that one man
should have been
brave enough to
have fought such
a devil.

In this partie sayth thistoryo that geffray rode so
long that he came to mountyoued¹ in garande,
where they of the countrey receyued hym nobly. And
8 for thenne was come his brother Raymond to enfourme
hym of the yre that theire fader had, & of his wordes
that he had said of hym, And hym recounted fro the
bygynnyng vnto the fyn. And how theire moder was
12 departed and al the manere / And how the first
bygynnyng of her departyngⁱ was thrugh theire vnkle
of Forestz. And how she had said at her departyng
that she was daughter of kyng Elynas of Albanye.
16 And whan geffray herdⁱ this wordⁱ he bethought hym
of ²the table that he fondⁱ vpon the tombe of kyng
Elynas. And by this he knew that he and his brethern
were come of the same lynage; wherof he thought
20 hym self the bettre, but this not with standing he was
ryght sorowfull^H of the departyng of hys moder, & of
the heuynes of hys fader / and knew thenne wel that
this misaduenture was cōme & grew by therle of
24 Forestz his vnkle. Wherfor he sware by the holy
trynyte that he shuld quyte hym. And thenne he
made to go to horsback hys brother and his x. knighting,
and rode toward the Countee of Forestz / and had
28 tydyinges that the Erle his vnkle was in a Fortresse
that was edfyfed vpon a roche ryght hye / and was
the self Fortres named at that tyme Jalensy, and now
it is called the Castel Marcelli.

Geffray is well
received at
Mouutjouet.

His brother Ray-
mond tells of
their father's
rage, and how
their mother had
departed owing
to the behaviour
of the Earl of
Forest; and that
she was a daugh-
ter of King
Elynas.

² fol. 105.
Geffray recollects
the inscription
on the tomb of
Elynas, and
understands that
he is of the king's
lineage.
He is sorry for
his mother,

and swears re-
venge on the
Earl of Forest.

Geffray takes his
brother and ten
knights, and
rides to his
uncle's castle.

32 Cap. LV. How Geffray was the deth of
the Erle of Forestz hys vnkle.

¹ Fr. Monjouet.

He enters his uncle's hall, and finds him among his barons, and calls out 'To death traitor, for through thee we have lost our mother.'

Geffray approaches the Earl, with sword drawn.

The Earl runs out of a door followed by Geffray, who chases him to the top of the tower.

¹ fol. 195 b.
The Earl gets out of a window to pass to another tower, but loses his hold and falls dead at the foot.
Geffray looks out of the window and upbraids him for the loss of his mother.

Geffray descends to the hall, where none dare to speak against him.

He orders his uncle to be buried, and explains to the barons his uncle's misdeed.

Geffray makes his uncle's barons do homage to his brother Raymondin.

So long rode geffray that he came to the Castel and anoone he alighted & went into the hal^t where he fond^t the Erle emong^t his barons / and thenne he cryed with an hye voyce / 'to deth traytour / 4 For thrughe the we haue lost our moder' / and foorth with drew his swerd & yede toward the Erle / And the Erle whiche knew wel hys fyernes and anoone fled toward^t a doore open / and that part geffray 8 folowed^t hym / and so long chassed hym fro chambre to chambre to the hyest part of the toure where he sawe he myght no ferder flee / he toke a wyndowe / and supposed to haue passed vnto a tour ¹nygh but for 12 to sau^e hym from the yre of geffray / but footyng faylled hym, & fell doun deed to the grounde. And thenne geffray loket out of the wyndowe, & sawe hym al to rent & brusid^t lyeng^t deed on the erthe / but 16 therof he toke no pyte / but sayd 'False traytour by thyn euyl report I haue lost my lady my moder / now haue I quytek^t the therfore.' And thenne he came doun ayen to þe halle / but none so hardy was there 20 that durst say one word^t ayenst hym. And he thenne commanded that his vnkle shold^t be buryed^t / and so he was and his obsequye don. And after þat geffray recounted & shewed to the barons of the land^t why 24 he wold haue slayne his vnkle / and bycause of the Erles mysdede and false reporte they were somewhat peased. And thenne Geffray dide make them to doo hommage to Raymond his brother, that was aftirward^t 28 Erle of Forestz. And now seaceth thistory of hym to speke / and retourneth to shewe of Raymondyn his fader /

Cap. LVI. How Geffray went to Lusynen 32 toward hys fader and prayed hym of mercy.

Thystorye sayth that soone aftir this delyt was shewed to Raymondyn, wherof he was ryght dolauant & sorrowful / but he forgate it lyghtly, bycause 4 that his brother had announced hym the tdynges whereby he lost his wyf / and said to hym self / ‘this þat is doo may be none otherwyse / I most pease geffray or he doo ony more dommage.’ And ¹therefore 8 he sent word to hym by hys brother Theodoryke that he shuld come toward hym at Lusynen. And geffray came to his fader at his mandement / and as ferre as he sawe hym he putte hym self on his knees / and 12 prayed hym of pardon & mercy, sayeng in this wyse, ‘My ryght redoubted lord, my dere fader, I beseche you of forgyfnes & pardon / and I sware you that I shal doo make ayen thabbay of Maylleses fayrer than 16 euer it was afore / and there I shal found ten monkes ouer the nombre of them that were there byfore.’

‘By god,’ said Raymondyn, ‘al that may be doo with the helpe of god / but to the deed ye may not restore 20 theire lyf. But geffray it is trouth that I musto go to a pelgrymage that I haue promysed god to do. And therfor I shal leue you the gouernaunce of my land / and yf by auenture god dide hys wylle of me, al the 24 land is yours / but I wyl & charge you this that your moder hath ordeyned by her last wylle to be doo be fulfylled. She hath bequethed to Theodoryke Partenay, Merment, Vouant & al theire appurtenaunces 28 vnto RocheH, with the Castel Eglon with al that therof dependeth / and fro this tymo fourthon I empocesse hym therof for hym and for his heyres.’ Therne said Geffray to him, ‘Dere fader, wel it is 32 raison that it be so don.’ This doon Raymondyn made his apparayH, & with hym mounted on horsback many lordes & knighthes, and toke with hym grete fynaunce & hauoir and so departed and foorth rode 36 on his way. And Geffray & ²Theodoryke conueyed

Geffray's father
is told the story.

He determines to
appease Geffray.
¹ fol. 196.

He sends Theodo-
dorio to ask Gef-
fray to come to
Lusignan.

Geffray obeys,
and on seeing his
father falls on his
knees and asks
pardon, and
promises to re-
build the abbey
of Mailleses
better than it
was before.

Raymondin an-
swers that with
God's help he
may fulfil his
promise, but that
will not bring the
dead to life.
He tells Geffray
that he is going
on a pilgrimage,
and that he
leaves his land
in his care, and
makes him his
heir.

Raymondin de-
clares that Theo-
dorio has been
left Parthenay
and other lands
and castles by
his mother.

Raymondin then
starts on his pil-
grimage, accom-
panied by many
knights, and well
provided with
money and
goods.

² fol. 196 b.

Geffray and
Theodoric go
part of the way
with their father,
and Geffray tells
how he found
the tomb of his
grandfather Ely-
nas at Brom-
belyo, and what
was written on
the golden tablet
about Elynas'
three daughters,
one of whom was
Geffray's mother.

Raymondin is
glad to hear that
his wife was the
daughter of Ely-
nas and Pressine.

He tells his sons
to return, and
continues on his
way to Roue.

He gives Theo-
doric a ring,
Melusine's part-
ing gift.

fol. 197.

Raymondin
reaches Rome,
and does rever-
ence to Pope
Benedict.

He confesses
his sins.

The Pope gives
him due penance.
Raymondin
dines with the
Pope, and next
day visits the
holy places.
When his affairs
are attended to
he takes leave
of the Pope,

hym tyl he bade them to retourne. And as they rode
geffray recounted hym how he fonde the tombe of
Helynus his granfader within the mountayne of
Brombelyo, vpon foure Coulonnes of fyn gold and of 4
the ryches of þe place / and of the fygure of the quene
Pressyne that stod vp ryght, and held a table of gold,
and of this that was there writon / and how theire
thre doughters were predestyned / ‘of the whiche,’ 8
said geffray, ‘our moder was one of them’ / and shewed
hym al the begynnyng of the matere vnto thend of
hit. And wete it wel that Raymondyn herkned hym
gladly, & was wel pleased of that he said that hys wyf 12
Melusyne was daughter of king Elynas & of Pressyne
hys wyf. And thenne he gaf lycens to his children
to retourne. And so þey departed & retourned toward
Lusynen / and Raymondyn held on his way toward 16
Romme. And to theodoryke he gaf the ryng whiche
Melusyne gaf hym at her departyng fro hym.

Cap. LVII. How Raymondyn came toward the pope of Romme and confessed hys 20 synnes to hym.

Here sayth thystorye that Raymondyn rode so
long that he came to Romme and his compayne
with hym, where he fonde the Pope named Benedictus / 24
& drew hym toward hym to whome humbly he made
reuerence, & syn kneeled tofore hym & confessed his
mysdedes & synnes in his best wyse / and as touching
this that he was forsworne ayenst god and Melusyne 28
hys wyf, the pope gaf hym therfor such penaunce as it
playsed hym. and that same day Raymondyn dyned
with the pope Benedicte / and on the morne he yede
& vysyted the holy places there. And whan he had 32
doon there al that he muste doo, he toke leue to the
Pope & said to hym in this wyse, ‘Ryght reuerend
holy fader, I may not goodly considere in me how euer

I may haue joye. Wherfore I purpose to yeld myself into some hermytage.' And thenne the Pope hym demanded thus, 'Raymondyn, where is your deuocyon & wylle to goo?' 'By my feyth, holy fader,' said Raymondyn, 'I haue herd say that there is to Mount-ferrat¹ in Aragon a deuoute & holy place / & there wold I fayn be.' 'My fayre sone,' said the pope, 'soo it is said.' And to hym said Raymondyn, 'holy fader, my intencion is thither to goo and to yeld my self thereto hermyte, for to pray god that it playse hym to gyue allegiance to my lady my wyf.' 'Now fayre sone,' said the Pope, 'with the holy gost may ye goo / & al that ye shal doo with good wyf I remysse it to your penaunce.' And thenne Raymondyn kneeled & kyssed the popes feet. And the pope gaf hym hys benediction. / And thenne departed Raymondyn & came to hys lodgys / & dide doo² trusse & make al redy for to departe / and as touchyng his meyne nor of hys way I wyl not make long¹ meneyon / but he rode so long that he came to Thoulouse / and there he gaf lycence & leue to al hys meyne to departe & retourne / except only a Chappellayn & a Clerc that he toke with him / and wel & truly he prayed³ euery one so that they were content / but sory they were al of theire maister that so departed fro them / and he sent letres to geffray & to the barons of hys land that they shuld doo theire hommage to his sone geffray, & receyue hym for theire lord. And his meyne toke the letres / and soo they departed fro theire lord with grete sorow & heuynesse, For he neuer tolde them what way he shuld take / but wete it he had with hym goodes ynough / and dyde so moche that he came to Nerbonne where he rested hym a lytel space of tyme.

Thystorye sheweth in this partye that whan Raymondyn was come to Nerbonne he dide

¹ Montserrat, the correct reading. ² Fr. *trosser les sommiers*.

and tells him
that he wishes to
be a hermit.

The Pope asks
where he would
like to go.

Raymondin an-
swers Mount-
serrat in Aragon.

The Pope be-
stows his bless-
ing, after Ray-
mondin had
kissed his feet.

Raymondin gets
on his way, and
when he arrives
at Toulouze he
pays off his men,

* fol. 198.

and sends them
home with letters
to Geffray, which
order the barons
of his land to
do homage to
Geffray.

His men return
sadly, without
knowledge of
where their mas-
ter is going.
Raymondin goes
to Narbonne,
where he makes
a halt;

and has hermits' habits made for himself, his chaplain and his clerk.

He continues his journey

till he arrives at Mountserrat.

He attends divine service.

He is asked if he will stay the night, and answers 'yes.'

³ fol. 198 b.

Raymondin visits the hermitages, and finds the third cell empty, the hermit having died lately.

doo make many hermyte habytes, and also for his Chappellayn & Clerk suche as they owe to haue / and syn departed & went tyl he came to ¹ Parpynen where he soioured one day / and on the morne ² he passed 4 the destrytte & mounted the mountaynes of Aragon / and so foorth he came to Barselone the Cite where he toke hys lodgys and soioured there thre dayes, and on the foureth toke hys waye toward Mountferrat where 8 he came & yede & vysyted wel the Chirche & the place there, whiche semed hym ryght deuoute / and there he herd the deuyne seruye deuoutly / but yet had he on hys worldly gownes / And thenne came to hym they 12 that were ordeyned for to lodge & herberowe the pelgrymes, and demanded of hym yf it playsed hym to abyde there for þat nyght / and he ansuerd 'ye.' Thenne were his ³ horses stabled / and they gaf hym a 16 fayre Chambre for hym & for his men. And in the meane while Raymondyn yede & vysyted the hermytages / but he went no ferther than to the vth celle, for that place was of so grete heught that he myght not 20 goodly goo thither / and fonde the III^{de} celle exempt. For the hermyte there was deed but late tofore that. And there was stablysshed of old a Custome that yf within a terme prefix none came there to be hermyte, 24 he of the nerest Celle gooyng vpward muste entre into that other Celle so exempted / and so al the hermytes benethe hym to chaunge theire places vpward. And so by that maner wyse was the nedermost Celle of al 28 exempt & without hermyt. And the cause of this permutacion was that alwayses the nedermost hermyte most serue hys brother hermyte next aboue hym of meet & drynk after theire pytaunce & manere of etyng, 32 and so foorth dide that one to that other vpward / and

¹ Fr. *Perpignen*.

² Fr. *passa le vellon et le pertuys, et vint à disner à Funères, et au giste à Gnomie.* Omitted above.

thus one serued other. And so ferre enquyred & knew Raymondyn of theire maner of lyuyng that he toke grete deuocion to it more than tofore / that is to 4 wete to be hermyte there. And thenne he toke leue of the vth hermyte & so dide as he descended of the other. And he demanded after the pryor of thabbey / and it was told hym that he was in the 8 vyllage nygh by thabbay that was hys, whiche vyllage was called Culbaston / and thenne he desyred them that they wold conduyte hym there as he was. And so Ray^lmondyn left there his Chappellayn & his

Raymondin, after his enquiries, takes a greater liking to the place than ever.

He takes leave of the hermit in the fifth cell and descends.

12 Clerc, and with a seruaunt of the place went there as þe pryor was, whiche receyued Raymondyn with joyful chere. And there shewed Raymondyn al hys wy^H and deuocyon and how the place playsed hym. And thenne 16 the pryor that sawe Raymondyn of fayre coutenaunce & man of grete worship graunted hym the exempted place, wherof Raymondyn had grete joye at herte. /

Raymondin asks to be taken to the prior of the abbey.

¹ fol. 199.

20 Thenne was Raymondyn ryght joyous whan the pryor had graunted hym the place of the nethermost hermytage and moche þanked god therof. and so he bode there with the pryor al that nyght / and on the morow they mounted and came ayen to 24 thabbay where as Raymondyn toke his habutes and was there made hermyte. And thenne was the deuyne seruyee doon, where Raymondyn offred ryche jewels as gold and precyous stones. And after the seruyee

The prior entertains Raymondin,

and at his request grants the empty cell.

28 they went to dyner / and raymondyn dyde doo send to hys bretheren hermytes besyde theire pytaunce other meetes for recreacion, letyng them knowe hys professyon & commyng. Wherof al they lawded god, 32 deuoutely prayeng hym that he wold hold & encres Raymondyn in good deuocyon. And so dwelled Raymondyn in thabbay, and on the morne he entred in to his Celle wher he bygan to led a holy & strayt 36 lyf. And anoone after was the tdynges spredd

The next day Raymondin is made a hermit,

and after divine service makes a rich offering.

Raymondin tells his brother hermits of his profession, and supplies them with extra meats.

The hermits praise God, and pray for Raymondin.

He enters his cell, and begins to lead a holy life.

The news that a great prince has professed himself a hermit before comes known,

¹ fol. 199 b.
and many come to see Raymondin and ask him his name, but he will not tell it.

Raymondin's men return to Lusignan, and deliver the letters.

The barons declare that they are ready to do Geffray homage in place of his father.

He accepts it.

When the people know that Raymondin has exiled himself, and that Geffray is lord, they begin to be afraid.

² fol. 200.

throug al Aragon & Langgedok how that a grete prynce was made hermyte at Mounferrat / but they knew not of what Countre he was. And ¹also he wold^t neuer vtre it / And many noble men went to ⁴ see hym / and in especial the king^t of aragon was there hym self, which asked hym of his estate & Countre / but of hym he coude neuer wete it. And here resteth thystorye of them / and retourneth to shewe of ⁸ Raymondyns men that departed fro Thoulouse. /

Thystory recounteth that so long rode the men of Raymondyn after they were departed fro Thoulouse that they came in Poytou & so foorth to ¹² Lusynen, Where they fonde geffray and many of the barons of the land^t / and after their obeyssance doon they delyuered their letrs to geffray & to the barons as they were commanded by Raymondyn their lord. ¹⁶ Whan the baronye vnderstod^t the tenour of their letrs they said to geffray in this manere / 'My lord syth it playseth not your fader vs more to gourne / and that he wyl that we doo our hommage to you, we ²⁰ are al redy thereto.' 'By god,' said geffray, 'gramercy, Fayre lordes, and I am redy to receyue you to your lygeauns.' And þenne they dyde to hym hommage. And anoone after was knownen throug al the Countre ²⁴ how Raymondyn had exilled hymself for the grete sorow that he had for his wyf Melusyne that he had lost. Who thenne had sene the doleur & lamentable heuynes that men dide throug al the Countre ²⁸ wysshing their lord & their lady, he shuld haue had hertely pyte. For many one fered geffray for cause of his yre & fyersnes. But for nought they doubted, For he gouerned hym rightously & wel. Here I sha[1] ³² leue of þem ²to speke / and shal shewe of geffray that was ryght dolaunt & sorowful of that he had lost both hys fader & his moder throug his owne mysdede & synne. For they that were retourned fro hym coude ³⁶

not say where he was come. Thenne remorse of conscience toke geffray at herte & remembred how he fyred thabbaye of Maylleses, & brent hys brother ⁴ Froymond^k and al the monkes þer without hauyng ony lawfuſ cause so to doo / and that thrughe hys synne he angred bothe hys fader & moder, and by that cause he had lost his moder. Wherfore he toke suche sorowe ⁸ that it was meruayH / and also he remembred the deth of the Erle of Forest hys vncle, which through his faytte fell doun fro the hyest touris of the Castel Marcelli to the erthe. And thus remembred geffray al hys ¹² my[s]dedes and synnes, and sore wepyng bygan to say / that but yf god had pyte on hym he was lyke to be lost & dampned for euer. And thenne he hymself alone entred into a chambre / and there he bygan to ¹⁶ make grete sorowe & lamentable wepynges prayeng god with herte contrite that he wold haue mercy on hym / and as god wold he toke there deuocion to goo to Romme for to confesse his synnes to our holy fader the ²⁰ pope. And thenne he sent for his broder theodoryke that he shuld come to speke with hym, For he loued hym aboue al oþer. And assoone as Theodoryke vnderstod^k the mandement of hys brother geffray, he ²⁴ foorthwith mounted on horsback & rode tyl he came to Lusynen where geffray was, that receyued^k hym with joye, & said to hym that he wold leue al hys land^k in his gouernaunce, For he ¹wold go to Romme to ²⁸ confesse his synnes tofore the pope / & that he wold neuer come ayen tyl he had found^k hys fader. Thenne Theodoryk prayed^k hym that he wold suffre hym to goo with hym. And geffray shewed to hym that it were ³² not good for them bothe so to doo / And thenne geffray with noble compayne departed and toke with hym grete goodes, and toke with hym one of hys faders seruaunts that was retourned fro Thoulouse for ³⁶ to conduyte hym al that way that hys fader yede /

Geffray is full of remorse when he thinks of the loss of his father and mother, and how it was caused by his misdeeds.

Geffray enters a chamber alone, and prays with a contrite heart for mercy.

He resolves to go to Rome to confess to the Pope.
Geffray sends for Theodorio

¹ fol. 200 b.
to tell him that he is going to Rome to confess to the Pope, and that he leaves his lands in Theodorio's charge. Theodorio wants to go with him, but Geffray says it would not do. Geffray takes plenty of goods, and sets out on his journey with one of his father's servants.

and he shuld euer take hys lodgys there as hys fader was lodged by the way. And the seruaunt hym ansuerd that gladly he shuld so doo.

Cap. LVIII. How Geffray went to Romme & confessed hys synnes tofore the Pope.

Geffray confesses to the Pope. He is charged to rebuild the abbey of Mailleses. Geffray learns that his father
1 fol. 201.
is at Mount-serrat. He kisses the Pope's feet,
and receives the benediction. Geffray goes to Toulouse, and finds that his father went from there to Narbonne. He follows the same route,
though it is not the direct way to Mountserrat.

Thystorye sayth that whan geffray was departed fro Lusynen he rode so long by hys journeys that he came to romme, and drew hym toward our 8 holy fader the Pope, to whome he made humble reuerence and syn deuoutely confessed hym of hys synnes. And the Pope charged hym to make thabbay of Mayleses to be edyfyed agayn & therto ordeyne six 12 score monkes, & many other penitences the pope charged hym doo, the whiche as now present I shal not shewe. And thenne geffray said to our holy fader the Pope how he wold goo to seke hys fader, and the pope 16 told hym that he ¹shuld fyn^d hym at Mountferrat in Aragon. And thenne he toke leue of the pope & kyssed his feet / and the pope gaf hym hys benediction. And so geffray departed fro Romme & toke 20 hys way toward toulouse where he cam & hys meyne with hym and was lodged where as his fader dede lodge tofore. And there the seruaunt asked of theire hoste yf he coude not telle which way hys lord 24 Raymondyn toke / And thoste said to hym that hys lord had hold the way toward Nerbonne & that no ferther he knew of hys way. And the seruaunt told it to geffray. ‘By my feyth,’ said geffray, ‘that is 28 not the next way for to goo to Mountferrat / but syth my fader went that way so shal we doo.’ And thus on the morne geffray & hys meyne departed & hasted them toward Nerbonne, where they cam & were lodged 32 there as Raymondyn had tofore lodged. For so moche enquired the seruaunt that he knewe þat hys lord dide

lodge there, & how he dide do make there many habytes for an hermyte. And on the morne geffray toke hys way toward Parpynen, where he cam, & fro
 4 þens he rode with hys meyne to Barselone, & þenne to thabbey of mountferrat where he alyghted & sent hys horses to Culbaston / and syn he yede & entred in to the Chirch. And anoon the seruaunt beforsaid sawe
 8 the Chappellayn of Raymondyn his lord *within* a ChapeH And immedyatlly he tol^d of it to geffray. Whero^f he had grete joye and yede toward the Chappellayne, the whiche whan he sawe geffray he
 12 kneeled tofore hym and said, 'My lord ye be ryght welcome' / and syn he recounted to geffray the good lyf that hys fader led / and how euery day he confessed hym & receyued his creatour / and that he ete nothing
 16 that receyueth deth. And thenne geffray asked hym where he was. And the Chappellayn to hym said,
 'he is in yonder hermytage / but my lord as for this day ye may not speke with hym, but to morne ye shall
 20 see hym.' 'By my fayth,' said geffray, 'fayn I wold see hym today / but sith it is soo I must take it in patience ty[l] tomorrow.' 'My lord,' said thenne the Chappellayn, 'yf it playse you ye may here the hye
 24 masse, and therwhiles I shal ordeyne and shew your meyne where your Chambre shal be dressed, and also I shal doo make your dyner redy at your retourne fro the masse.'

28 **T**henne departed the Chappellayn fro geffray, that went to here masse accompanied with x knyghtes and wel xx squyers. And thenne came the monkes of the place to Raymondins Chappellayn and demanded
 32 of hym in this wyse. 'What is that grete deueH with that grete toth? he semeth wel to be a cruel man / whero^f knowe you hym / is he of your Countre?' 'By my feyth,' said the Chappellayn, 'ye / It is
 36 geffray with the grete teeth of Lusynen, one of the best

At last Geffray reaches Mountferrat.

His servant reports that he has seen his father's chaplain.

¹ fol. 201 b.

The chaplain welcomes Geffray, and tells him of the good life his father leads; how he confesses and communicates daily, and that he eats nothing that has had life.

The chaplain says Geffray cannot see his father till next day.

Geffray hears mass;

and when he is out of sight the monks ask the chaplain, 'Who is that great devil with that great tooth?'

He tells them,

¹ fol. 202.

and they ask if it is not the same one who killed the Northumberland giant, and burnt the Abbey of Mailleses and all the monks therein.

The chaplain answers that he is.

The monks are much afraid.

The chaplain tells them to be at ease, because the hermitage contains the person Geffray loves most of all in the world.

The monks clean and decorate the church,

and send word to the prior of the arrival of Geffray.

The prior finds Geffray in the church, and does him reverence.

Geffray thanks him, and promises that the place will be none the worse for his visit.

² fol. 202 b.

& moost valyaunt knighthes of the world & wete it he
¹ holdeth grete possessions & grete landes.' And the monkes ansuerd, 'Wel we haue herd speke of hym / is it not he that slouge the geaunt in garand and that 4 other geaunt also of Northomberlond / he is also he that brent thabbay of Maylleses with al the monkes þerinne bycause that hys brother was there shorne monke without hys leue.' 'By my feyth,' said the 8 Chappellayn, 'certainly it is that same.' And þenne the monkes al abasshed and aferd sayd / he is come hither for to doo vs some myschief and dommage. Thenne said one of them, 'wete it wel that I shal hyd 12 myself in suche place that he shal not fynd me.' 'Noo,' said the Chappellayn, 'Forsoothe I waraunt you he shal doo you no hurt nor dommage, but al ye shal soone be glad of hys commyng, For suche one is 16 within this place that he loueth aboue al creatures of the world.' And whan they vnderstod the Chappellayn they were somewhat assured and went & hanged the chirche, and made al the place fayre & clene to theire 20 power as god hymself had descended there / and sent word to the Prioour that was at Culbaston that he shuld come there, and that geffray with the grete toth was come in pelgrymage in to theire abbaye, and noble 24 companye with hym. Thenne came there fourthwith the prioour that fond geffray in the Chirche, and honourably made hym reuerence and sayd that he hymself / the monkes & al the place was at his 28 commandement. 'Sire,' said geffray, 'gramercy and wete it wel I loue this place / and yf god gyf me helthe it shal ²not be the wers for my commyng.' 'My lord,' said the prioour, 'god yeld you.' Thenne 32 cam the Chappellayn to geffray and hym said, 'My lord, your dyner is redy.' And therwith geffray toke the prioour by the hand and togidre went into the haþ, where they wesshed theire handes & syn sette them at 36

dynre; geffray and the pryor deuyseyd long spaco
togidre of one thing & of oþer. And thus passed
foorth that day. /

Geffray and the
prior dine and
converse a long
time.

In this partie sayth thystorye that on þe morne
geffray roos vp and fonde the priour and his faders
Chapellayn waytyng after hym whiche led hym to
herre masse / and after the masse they led hym toward
8 the hermytages. And thenne the pryor toke his leue
of geffray & retourned to Chirchward supposyng none
other but that geffray went for to see thestate of the
hermytes and for none other cause. For he had neuer
12 trowed that his fader had be þer. And thenne mounted
geffray toward the first hermitage that was wel lxxx
stepes highe vpon the mountayne. And wete it that
the Clerc was at Raymondyns Celle doore waytyng for
16 the Chappelain that shuld say masse tofore Raymondin.

Geffray hears
mass in the
morning, and

And as the Clerk loked downward, he perceyued geffray
that came upward & wel knew hym, and forthwith
entred in the cello & said to Raymondin, ‘My
20 lord, here commeth your sone geffray.’ And whan
Raymondin vnderstod it he was ryght joyous and said,

goes with the
prior and the
chaplain to
the hermitages,
where the prior
takes his leave.

‘blessed be god / he is welcomme.’ Thenne entred
first the Chappelain in to the Celle & salued

Geffray mounts
to the first her-
mitage,

24 Raymondyn / but he bade the Chappelain to say
geffray that he myght not speke with hym tyl þat hys
masse were doon. And foorthwith the chalpellayn
dyde as Raymondyn hym commanded. And geffray

and is recognised
by Raymondin’s
clerk.

28 ansuerd, ‘his playsire be doo.’ This doon Raymondyn
was confessed and herd his masse & receyued the holy

He tells his
master of Gef-
fray’s presence.

sacrament. And in the meane sayson geffray beheld
vpward the great mountaynes whiche were high &

Raymondin says
‘He is welcome.’

32 ryght vp and sawe thermytages that were aboue hym /
and sawe the Capel of Saynt Mychel whiche was the

1 fol. 203.
Geffray has to
wait till his
father hears mass
before he can see
him.

vth hermytage, and after loked downward / and in hym
self had grete meruayl how man durst there take

He looks about
while waiting,
and wonders how
anyone can live
in such a place.

36 habytacyon / and to hym appered the Chirche and

Geffray enters his father's cell, and salutes him.

Raymondin takes him in his arms and kisses him.
Geffray tells his father how he had been at Rome, and how he confessed, and was told by the Pope that his father was at Mountserrat.

Geffray asks his father to return to his country, but he answers that he cannot, as he intends to stay at Mountserrat, and pray for Geffray's mother, for himself, and for Geffray.

¹ fol. 203 b.

Geffray takes his leave.
His father sends a greeting to his children and his barons.

Geffray gives presents to the Church;

and at dinner tells the prior that Raymondin is his father, and asks him to take care of him, and the Church will lose nothing by it.

housyng of thabbey but as lytel Chapelles. Thenne cam the Chapellayn & called geffray and he entred within the Celle of his fader / and anoone kneeled on his knees & dyde to hys fader reuerent salutacion / 4 And Raymondyn toke hym vp in his armes and kyssed hym / and thenne made hym to sette vpon a stoole with hym tofore the awter. And there bygan geffray to shewe to hys fader how he was at Romme, and how 8 he was confess'd of the pope / and the pope hym said that he shuld fynd hym at Mountferrat. And in this communycacion had they many materes togidre / geffray alwayes prayeng hys fader that he wold 12 retourne to his countre. 'Fayre sone,' said Raymondyn, 'that may I not doo. For here I wyl spend my lyf, always prayeng god for thy moder & me, & for the, that god wyl amende the, my sone geffray.' And soo 16 geffray was there al that day with his fader. And the next day in the morowe herd Raymondyn his masse, & receyued our lord, as hys custome was to doo / and after, said to geffray, 'Fayre sone, it behoueth the to 20 parte from hens, & to retourne in to thy Countre; and grete wel al ¹my children & my barons.' And thenne geffray toke leue of hys fader al wepyng; and loth he was to departe from his fader. And after 24 came doun fro the mountayn vnto thabbaye, where he was honourably receyued / and the monkes had grete meruay^H wherfore he was so long aboue.

Thystorye sheweth that geffray gaf grete ryches & 28 fayre jewelles to the Chirche, & after toke leue of the pryor & his monkes, but the pryor hym conneyed vnto Culbaston, wher geffray dyned with the pryor / and told hym in secret wyse that Raymondyn was 32 hys fader, whom geffray besoughte to take hede to hys fader, and that the Chirche shuld not lese nothing therby, For euery yere ones duryng hys lyf he wold come & vysyte hys fader. Thenne ansuerd the pryor, 36

'doubte you not, my lord, there shal be no deffawte but I shal vysyte & remembre your fader.' And thenne toke geffray leue & went to Barselone to hys bed.

4 And on the morne he departed toward Lusynen wher as Theodoryk hys brother & the barons receyued hym with ryght grete joye, and were glad of his commyng.

Geffray returns to Lusignan, where he is joyfully received.

And whan they were at leyser, geffray shewed to hys 8 brother theodoryk the very effect of euery thing touching theyre fader. Foorthwith Theodoryk that moche loued his fader bygan to wepe ful tenderly.

He tells Theodoric about their father.

And geffray seeyng his broþer make sucho sorowe to 12 hym said thus, 'My ryght dere brother, yet must ye abyde here, For wete it wel that I wyl goo see our two bretheren in almayne, that is to vnderstand'

Geffray proposes to visit Regnald and Anthony.

Regnauld king of behayne and the Duc Anthony of 16 Lucembourgh / but I wyl not departe without aray of men of armes, For þer be in thoo marches ryght euyl peple the which¹ gladly wold robbe them that passe by the way.' 'By my sowle, my brother, I hold wel

¹ fol. 204.

20 withal that ye doo as ye say / but I beseche you ryght entierly brother that we leue our countre in the gouernaunce of our barons & take with vs v.C. men of armes, and that it may playse you I to go with you;

Theodoric wishes to go with him,

24 For I haue herþ say that there is greto warre betwix them of Anssay & them of Austeryche.' 'By my feyth,' said geffray, 'Ye say wel, For perauenture our brother Anthony is in hand with them.' And whan

because he has heard there is war between Anssay and Austria.

28 they had made theire ordonnaunce, Odon the Erle of Marche came and spake with geffray, and brought in hys company thre score men of armes, For at that tyme he had warre ayenst the Earle of Vadosme /

They are joined by Odo, Earl of March.

32 and also Raymond their brother Earle of Forestz cam there the same day. And there the foure bretheren made there moche one of other / and were joyfull for the tydynges that they herþ of theire fader / and said /

The brothers make much of each other, and are glad of the news of their father.

36 ones they hoped to see hym togidre.

Cap. LIX. How Geffray reedyffyed the
monastery of Maylleses.

Geffray arranges
for the rebuilding of
the abbey of
Mailleses.

He and Theodo-
ric appoint good
governors for
their countries.

¹ fol. 204 b.

Odo and Ray-
mond propose
to go with them
to Allmain.

The Earl of Ven-
dome makes his
peace with Odo.

The four breth-
ren ride with
their company
to Castle Duras,
near which they
lodge.

The King of Anssay was at war
with the Dukes
of Freibourg and
Austria.
He was besieged
by them at Pour-
rencru.

Geffray afore his departyng charged & ordeyned
people for the reedyfyeng of the Abbaye of 4
Maylleses, as hym was youen in Charge by the pope
by way of penaunce / and to them assygned where
they shuld take bothe gold & syluer therwith to paye
the werkmen. And so lefte he a good gouernour in 8
hys countre / And in lyke wyse dyde his broþer
theodoryk in his Countre. And whan Odon &
Raymond sawe that they wold departe to go ¹to see
theire bretheren in Allemayne, they sayd in lyke wyse 12
woldþ they doo. And commanded anoone theire peple
to mete with them at Boneual. And at that tyme
were the bretheren accompanied with two thousand
men of armes & a thousand Crosbowes. And whan 16
the Erle of Vandsme herð tydynge therof he supposed
certaynly that they came to exille hym, and that Odon
had complayned hym to hys bretheren of hym, and so
moche he doubted geffray that he came to Boneual 20
and yelded hym to the grace of Odon erle of Marche.
And he pardonnéed hym of al the mysdedes that he
had doo to hym. And the erle of Vandsme made
hym homage of the landþ that was in debat atwix 24
them. /

Here sheweth thystorye that the foure bretheren
departed fro Boneual & were in theire companye
many grete lordes, and rode in fayre aray tyl they cam 28
vpon an euen and lodged them nygh a ryuere called
Meuze, by a Fortresse named the Castel Duras. But
as now I shal cease of them to speke / and shal
begynne to speke of the kyng of anssay, that had grete 32
warre ayenst the Erle of Frebourg & with the Duc of
Austeryche, the which had besieged hym within a
Castel of hys that was called Pourrencru. Wherfor

he sent word to Regnault kyng of Behayne that was
 maryed with his Cousyn / and lyke wyse to the Duc
 Anthony of Lucembourgh prayeng them of ayde &
 4 socour ayenst his enemys, at the whiche instance &
 prayer / the two bretheren Regnald & Anthony made
 theire apparayH. ¹ And Regnaulde departed out of his
 Royalme of Behayne and came to Lucembourgh with
 8 IIII. C men of armes for to haue hys brother Anthony
 with hym toward the siege of Porrentru, wher the
 kyng of anssay was besieged within. And þat meane
 sayson came two knightes to Lucembourgh from geffray
 12 and his thre bretheren þat were with hym, the which
 two knightes brought word bothe to regnauld &
 anthony of theire bretheren commyng, and that they
 were nygh the toun and cam for to see them. And
 16 whan kyng regnauld and the Duc Anthony knew that
 theire bretheren were commyng toward them, they
 were full glad & immedyatlly commanded that al the
 stretes shuld be rychely hanged, and syn mounted on
 20 horsbak, and *with* noble compayne they went to mete
 them ; and rode tyl they mete *with* the vanwardes of
 theire armee & asked where theire bretheren were /
 and it was shewed to them where they were commyng
 24 vnder the standart. Geffray thenne, that wel vnder-
 stod that anthony & regnauld his bretheren came to
 mete hem, he made euery man to stand apart / and
 soone after the six bretheren mete togidre and embrased
 28 & made moche one of other / and after rode foorth
 toward the toun / and aftir theire age they rode two
 & two togidre. Odon and Anthony were the formest,
 and after them rode Regnald & Geffray / and them
 32 folowed theodoryk & Raymonnet / and al theire
 oost came after in fayre ordynaunce / and in this
 manere they entred in to the toune, where as the
 Cytezeyns were in theire best rayments al in a rowe
 36 on bothe ²sydes of the stretes, that were rychely

He had sent for
 help to Anthony
 and Regnald.

¹ fol. 205.

Regnald with
 four hundred
 men goes to
 Anthony, to
 accompany him
 to the siege of
 Pourrentru.

Geffray sends
 word that he
 and his three
 brothers are on
 their way to
 Luxembourg.

Regnald and
 Anthony meet
 their brethren
 outside the
 town.

² fol. 205 b

hanged / and the ladyes & damoyselles loked out of the wyndowes / and so grete & noble apparayll was there made for theire commyng that it was a fayre syght.

Trouth it is that whan the bretheren entred within 4

Lucembourgh, Anthony & Geffray rode thenne the formest of al theire bretheren. And wete it that the notable Citeseyns, ladyes, & damoiselles meruaylled moche of the fyersnes and grete height of theire lordis 8 bretheren, sayeng^t that they six togidre wer able & wel shapen to destroye a grete oost / And thus they rode thrugh the toun into the Castel and there they alighted. There were the six bretheren recounted^d of 12 two noble ladyes, that is to vnderstand^d the quene of Behayn and the Duches of Lucembourgh, that honourably receyued theire lordes and brethern. And aftir they went into the ha^{ll} that was al hanged with 16 ryche cloth of gold^d / and þer were the tables rychely couered & redy to dynner. And thenne after many playsaunt deyses and joyfull wordes, they wesshed theire handes and sette them at dynner and were nobly 20 serued.

And after dynner geffray shewed & recounted all hys auentures & fayttes / and how he fonde þe tombe of Elynas / & of the quene Pressyne of whiche lynee they were yssued, wherof they were al joyfull & 24 glad to meruayll / and how theire fader was departed and where he was. For of all other thinges they knew ynough. And thenne Anthony & regnauld told to theire bretheren how the kyng of Anssay was 28 besieged & that they wold help hym. Thenne

¹ ansuerd Geffray, 'My lordes, my bretheren, wete it wel we are not come hither to take our rest / but we al are redy to goo with you whersomeuer ye wyl / & 32 therfor lete vs not make long sojourne / but go we² vpon our enemyes to helpe & socoure our frendes.' And foorthwith Geffray and hys bretheren that were

The citizens
marvel at their
appearance.

The brethren
are received at
the castle by
the Queen of
Bohemia and
the Duchess of
Luxembourg.

Geffray tells of
his adventures.
How he had
found the tomb
of King Elinas
and Queen
Pressine, from
whom they had
all sprung, and
how their father
had become a
hermit at
Mountserrat.
Anthony and
Regnauld tell
their brethren
that they are to
help the King
of Anssay.

¹ fol. 206.

Geffray answers
that he and his
brethren are
ready to do so
as well;

² 'we' repeated in MS.

come there with hym toke theire leue of bothe the queene & duchesse theire sustirs & retourned to theire oost / and thenne Regnauld & Anthony wold haue
 4 conueyed them / but geffray said, 'Fayre lordes & bretheren, ye shal come no ferther / but make al your apparayl & take leuo of your wyues, and to morne, god before, we wyl departe toward the said Castel wherin
 8 the king of Anssay our frend is besieged.' And soo Anthony and regnauld retourned sayeng eche one to other, 'Certaynly this man may not long endure / but he be other take or slain. For he fereth of nothing
 12 in the world / & also to counseylle hym, it were but for nought, For he suffreth nothing, but as his wyt & mynde gyneth hym. For yf he had with hym but X. Mt men, & that he sawe his enemyes tofore hym to
 16 the nombre of IIC. Mt yet wold he fyght & medle with them, wherfore we must take heede to hym that he vaunce not hym self so moche with the enemyes, but that we be nygh hym to socouro hym with our
 20 peopple / but for this haste that he maketh we owe not to wete hym euyl gree For cause that assoone as oon may, he muste aduyse the wayes to hurt & dommage his enemys.' And thenne they lefte of
 24 geffray theire brother more to speko / but bothe they said that he was ryght hardy & valyaunt. And on the morne they ¹toke leue of theire wyues and left in the land a good gouernour. And also geffray on that
 28 other part ordeyned & purueyed of al things that were necessary to hys oost. /

he then returns to his host.

Geffray refuses Anthony and Regnald's company, and asks them to prepare to start to succour the King of Anssay in the morning.

They speak of Geffray's bravery.

1 fol. 206 b.
In the morning they take leave of their wives and appoint a governor.

Geffray orders every man to arm, and after mass is said his host marches.

Anthony and Regnald join him with their people.

In the next day Geffray made blowe vp hys trompettes,
 In that ever[y] man shuld be armed, and after herde
 32 his masse and syn marched forth with hys oost / And immedyatlly Anthony & regnald came out of the toun with theire people in fayre aray. And so they departed and rode togidre tyl they came into the land of
 36 Anssay / and on an euen lodged them thre leghes nygh

They arrive three
leagues from
Freibourg.

A letter of de-
fiance is written
to the Duke of
Austria and
the Earl of
Freibourg,

¹ fol. 207.

and sent by a
herald to the
Duke of Aus-
tria at Pour-
rentru.
It is read in
hearing of all
the nobles there.
They say that
the devil has
sent the breth-
ren against them,
and that only
the fame of the
Lusignans is
now spoken of.
The herald re-
turns to the
brethren's camp.

Geffray takes
five hundred
men, and am-
bushes them in
a wood near
Freibourg.

the toun of Frebourg. Thenne called geffray al his
bretheren and shewed to them that it behoued not
them for theire honour to renne vpon no man but that
they had defyed hym tofore / And they ansuerd that 4
he said trouth. Wherfor they lete make a letre of
deffyaunce of whiche the tenour foloweth. 'Regnauld
by the grace of god kyng of Behayne, Anthony Duc
of Lucembourgh, Odon Erle of Marche, Geffray lord of 8
Lusynen, Raymond Erle of Forestz, and Theodoryk
lord of Partenay. To the duc of Austryche and to
the Erle of Frebourg, and to al theire alyances
gretely hurt & dommaged bothe the land & peuple of
our ryght welbeloued vncle the king^t of Anssay, the
whiche as now ye haue besieged within his Castel of 16
Pourrentru, And for as mock that we be therfor
meued^k, & entende & purpose to entre in your land to
dystroye you & al your peuple / consydering the
noble ordre of knight^lhode that it shal not be by vs 20
mynnsshed. We þefor by our messager send^k you
oure letres of deffyaunce, &c.' Thenne was delyuered
the letre to a herault, which rode tyl he came to the
siege of Pourrentru wher he presented the said letre 24
to the Duc of Astrychⁱ. the whiche letres were redd^k
in heryng of al þe lordes there. Thenne said they of
Allemayne the Deuell hath brought hem hyther, none
other renomme is now thrugh al the world but of them 28
of Lusynen. Thenne retourned the herault toward the
six bretheren, and to them shewed^k the manere how
they of theire enemyes oost were meruaylled. 'By my
feyth they haue herd speke of vs from ferre / but now 32
they shal see vs nere to them.' / It is trouth that
thenne geffray departed with fyue hundred men of
armes from his oost & went and embusshed his peuple
in a lytel wod nygh the toun of Frebourg. This 36

doon he & ten knyghtes with hym, & a squyer of
Lucembourgh that ryght wel coude speke Almayn
tonge & knew al the Countre, went vpon a lytel
4 mountayne to behold & see how he myght entre in
the toun / but or he departed he said to them of his
embussh in this manere : ‘ Sires, I entende & purpose
with the help of god to haue the toun of Frebourg or
8 to morne pryme at our playsire. Wherfore this nyght
I shaſſ departe with this X knyghtes and this esquier,
& at the spryng of the day I shal bygynne myn
enterpryse / and but loke wel whan ye perceyue vs
12 within the gate that fourthwith ye marche toward vs.’

And thenne about thre of the clokk after mydnyght
Geffray / his ten knyghtes and his guyde toke ¹eche
of them a sack full of hey and bare it before them
16 vpon tharsons of theire sadels. In this manere they
went & came tofore the gate of Frebourg, where as
the said esquier called the watche þat they myght
entre, sayeng that they were frendes and that they had
20 be aſſ that nyght in fourrage. Thenne asked hym the
porter what they had in thoosackes, the squyer ansuerd
there ben in gownes & suche thinges and suche ware /
that we haue take vpon our enemyes and we bryng
24 them hyther to selle them. The porter thenne
supposyng they had be of Allemayne & theire frendes
opend the gate & lete faſſ the bridge. Thenne entred
geffray first of alle, and foorthwith drew his swerl and

28 slew the porter / and in conclusyon they slough al
them of the watche. Thenne was there the cry of
them of the toun ‘ treson / treson ’ / And immedyatly
marched thembussh & came & entred in the toun.

32 There was grete occisyon of them of the toun / but
many of them escaped and fledd. And whan this was
doon geffray lefte there foure hondred men of armes &
retourned with the residue toward hys oost that he
36 mete by the way toward the siege. Of this noble

He then takes
ten knights and
a squire, who
speaks German,
and knows the
country, and
goes to a hill to
see how he could
enter the town.

He tells his
ambush that he
hopes to have
Freibourg in the
morning,

and that when
they see that he
and his knights
have entered the
gate they are to
march up to him.

¹ fol. 207 b.
Geffray and his
knights take
each a sack of
hay, and ride to
Freibourg.

The squire asks
the watch to let
them in, as they
are friends.

The porter opens
the gate, and
lowers the
bridge.
Geffray enters
first, and slays
the porter.

At length all the
watch is slain.
The cry of trea-
son is raised.
The ambush comes up, and
many of the
townspeople
are killed.
Geffray leaves
four hundred
men-of-arms in
charge of the
town, and with
those left
marches back to
his brethren,

who marvel at his valiant and subtle feut of arms.

¹ fol. 208.

The Earl of Freibourg is sorrowful when he learns the news.

After mass the brethren begin to march.

They are seen by the besiegers. The alarm is given, and they arm.

The hosts fight; the ground is soon red with blood.

² fol. 208 b.

enterpryse & valyaunt fayt the brethern of geffray and al theire peple were meruaylled / sayeng that geffray was the moost valyaunt knyght & subtyl in the faytte of armes that lyued at that day. And joyous & glad 4 they marched courageously ¹toward theire enemyes. Anoon after came tydynges to the siege how Frebourg was lost, wherof the Duc of Austeryche and in especial the Erle of Frebourg were sorrowful & wroth. ‘By 8 my feyth,’ said thenne the Duc of Austerych, ‘they be subtyl men of warre & moch to be doubted. Yf we loke not wel about vs they myght wet gyue vs a grete chak.’ Wherfor they called theire Counsey^H. 12

In this partye sayth thystorye that on the next day by the morowe the six bretheren herd masse, and after ordeyned þeire bataylles / geffray & his thre bretheren that were come with hym conduyted the first 16 batay^H, Anthony had the second, And regnauld the III^{de}. And so marched forth in fayr ordynaunce, and so wel renged that it was a fayre sight to behold. And whan the sonne bygan to shewe bryght & clere 20 they came vpon a lytel mountayn into the valey. Thenne were they percyued, and they of the siege bygan to cry alarme. Thenne armed hym euery man, And in theire best wyse came & renged them before 24 the bataylles of the bretheren. Thenne bygan the bataylles of bothe sydes to approche eche other / and with grete cryes of one part & of other medled & ranne with theire sperys vpon eche other. The grounde was 28 there soone dyed rede with grete effusyon of blood. For Geffray with hys swerd smote at the lyfte syde & at the ryght syde vpon his enemyes & ouerthrew or slouge all them that he recounted. And ²the six 32 baners of the bretheren rengid them togidre in fayre aray. There were the armes of Lusynen wel shewed and knownen in pyture, and also by pesaunt and horrifyble strokes, For the six bretheren perced the 36

prees: & smote, cuttyng heedes, armes, & leghes of their enemyes here & there, and made suche oeyssyon that it was meruaylle / Geffray recounted by aduenture

The brethren
slay many of
their enemies.

4 the Duc of Astryche, on whom he descharged hys swerd by such myght that he made hym to staker al astonyed, And thenne theodoryk that was nygh by, strak hym fourthwith and ouerthrew hym, and so 8 incontynent he was take. And the noble and valyaunt Anthony dyde ryght valyauntly, For he toke the Erle Freburgh and made hym to delyuero his swerd to hym, and after betoke hym to foure knightes. What shuld

Geffray en-
counters the
Duke of Aus-
tria, and strikes
him with his
sword.

Theodoric, who
was at hand,
gives him
another stroke,
and overthrows
him. The Duke
is taken.

Anthony cap-
tures the Earl
of Freibourg.

12 I make long conte . they of Allemayne were dyscomfyted and bygan to flee. Thenne came the kyng of Anssay out of the Fortres glad & joyous of the dyscomfytur of hys enemyes, and came to the bretheren

The Germans
begin to flee.
The King of
Anssay comes
out of his for-
tress, and thanks
the brethren,

16 tentes where he thanked them moche of their noble socour and gretly festyed them. And were brought thereto before hym the Duc of Astryche & the Erle of Freburgh with syx noble barons / and to hym said

and feasts them.
The Duke of
Austria and the
Earl of Freibourg
are brought
before him, and
the brethren tell
him to do what
he pleases with
them.

20 the bretheren, ‘Sire, here ben your enemyes as prysionners, doo of them your playsyr.’ And the kyng thanked them gretly & humbly. And this doon geffray and hys bretheren that were cōme ¹with hym toke

¹ fol. 209.

24 leue of the kyng of Anssay, of their bretheren Anthony & Regnauld, and retourned in their Countre. But thystory sayth that aftirward all the bretheren fonde eche other togidre at Mountferrat, where they held a

The brethren
return home.

28 noble feste for loue of Raymondyn their fader, whiche was ryght glad and joyous to see there his children, but soone he toke leue of them and retourned in to hys hermytage. And thenne the six bretheren gaaf grette

They afterwards
meet at Mount-
serrat on a visit
to their father,
who is joyful at
seeing them.

32 ryches & jewels to the chirche there, and after departed and toke leue eche one of other & retourned to their Countrees, some by the see & other by land.

They give rich
gifts to the
church.

36 **H**ere testyfeth thistorye that as long as Raymondyn lyued, Geffray & theodoryk came there every MELUSINE.

Geffray and
Theodoric go to
Raymondin
every year;

A A

but one day
when they were
about to journey
to Mountserrat,
a great serpent
is seen on the
battlements of
Lusignan castle.
It has a woman's
voice.

The people are
abashed, and
know it to be
Melusine; the
brothers weep.
When the ser-
pent sees them
she inclines her
head, and utters
a dolorous cry.

Geffray and
Theodoric go to
Mountserrat and
find their father
dead.

¹ fol. 209 b.
They mourn, and
dress themselves
and their men
in black, and
arrange their
father's obse-
quies.

The King of
Aragon, and
many lords,
attend and hear
mass.

After the burial
Geffray thanks
them.

A tomb is placed
over Raymondin.

yere ones to see hym / but it befell on a day, as they were bothe at Lusynen redy for to go to Mountferrat, a meruayllous aventure, For there was seen vpon the batelments of the Castel a grete & horrable serpent the 4 which cryed with a femenyne voys, wherof al the peuple was abasshed / but wel they wyst that it was Melusyne / whan the two bretheren beheld it, teerys in habundaunce bygan to fal from their eyen ; For they 8 knew wel that it was their moder. And whan the serpent sawe them wepe, she enclyned the heed toward them, casting suche an horrable cry & so doulorous that it semed them that herd it that the Fortres shuld 12 haue fal. And anoone aftir the two breþern geffray & theodoryk departed toward Mountferrat where they came and fond their fader deed, whereof they lamented & made grete sorow ¹and anoone clothed 16 themself and al theire meyne in blak, and ordeyned for thobsequye of their fader. There came the kyng of aragon with many grete lordes that offred at the masse. And whan the scruyse was doon & the corps 20 buried honourably / geffray went & thanked the kyng and his barons of thonoour that þey had doon to hys fader and to his brother & hym. /

Thus as thy storye sheweth was thobsequye of 24 Raymondyn deuoutly & nobly doon, and a ryche sepulture was made & sette vpon his graue, & trouth it is that Bernardon the neuew of Geffray was there that ryght wel coude behauie hym among the ladyes, 28 in so moche that the quene of Aragon, that was there, desyred her lord to demande of Geffray what that yong gentylman was / and that / the kyng dide gladly. And thenne geffray ansuerd, 'Sire, he is my neuew, 32 sone to the Erle of Marche my brother.' 'Certaynly, Geffray,' said the kyng, 'Wel I byleue that, For he is wel nourrytured and semeth wel to be of noble

extraction / and wete it wel that his contenauunce playseth vs ryght wel and so dooth lyke wyse to the quene / and veryly yf it playseth you to suffre hym
 4 abyde with vs in our Court we wold doo for hym that he & you bothe shuld be playseth therwith.' 'Sire,' said geffray, 'his fader hath another sone and two doughtirs, & syth it is your playsir to haue hym he is
 8 come hither with vs in a good heure & that playseth me wel.' And thenne the kyng thanked hym moche, and so dyde the quene. And wete it that Bernardon
¹ Wedded aftirward, at thinstaunce & prayer of the
 12 kyng of Aragon, the doughtir of the lord Cabyeres that had none to hys heyre but her. And thenne the kyng and the quene, lordes & ladyes, toke theire leue
 of the two bretherne, the whiche after grete yeftes of
 16 ryches by them youen to the chireh toke leue of the pryor and hys monkes, and after departed and retourned to Lusynen, where as they called to them al the baronnye and there was thobsequye of Raymondyn
 20 honourably doon. And aftir Geffray shewed to his brother Odon, Erle of Marche, how & wherfore hys sone Bernardon was lefte with the kyng of Aragon, wherof he was glad. And thenne the bretheren and
 24 the barons toke leue of Geffray and retourned to theire countrees. And Geffray abode at Lusynen and dyde aftirward moche good; For he reedyfyed the noble Abay of Maylleses and dyde grete almesse to the poure
 28 peopple.

Thystorye sayth that al the heyres of Raymondyn and Melusyne regned nobly, that is to wete Vryan in Cipre, Guyon in Armenye, Regnault in Behayne, Anthony in Lucembourgh, Odon in Marche, Raymonet in Forestz, Geffray in Lusynen, and Theodoryk in Partenay. And of theyre lynee are yssued them of Castel Regnault, They of Penbrough

The Queen of Aragon takes Geffray's nephew to her court.

¹ fol. 210.
He afterwards marries the only child of the Lord of Cabyeres.

Geffray and Theodoric give great gifts to the church,

and return to Lusignan, where the obsequies of Raymondin are honourably done.

Geffray tells Odo that Bernardon had been left with the King of Aragon.

Geffray rebuilds the Abbey of Mailleses.

The nine heirs of Raymondin and Melusine reign nobly,

and from them are issned the lords of Castle Regnault, of Pembroke,

of Cabyeres, and
of Cardillac.
²

Geffray governs
his land well,
and administers
good justice.

For ten years he
asks no ac-
counts from his
receivers, who

³ fol. 210. b.

are told when
they wish him
to examine the
accounts, that
when justice is
done, and his
towns and
castles are well
provided for, and
he has plenty
of money, he
is content.

But his stewards
ask, for their
own safety, that
he should give
them quittance.

Geffray looks at
his accounts,
and sees an item
of ten sous that
was paid yearly
for the pommel
of the highest
tower of Lusig-
nan Castle.

He is told that
it is an annual
rent.

Geffray declares
he holds the
castle direct
from God,
his Creator.
His stewards
tell Geffray that
they do not know
to whom they
pay the ten sous.

in England / they of Cabyeres in Aragon,¹ and they of
² Cardillac in Quercyn. /

Here after saith thistory that geffray ten yere aftir
the decez of Raymoudin his fader gouerned⁴
ryght wel & kept good justice in his land / but duryng
that long space of tym he asked of his receyuours none
acomptes, but whan the ³receyuours wold haue shewed
theire acomptes he to them ansuerd in this manere : 8
'What acomptes wold ye shew to me ? For as touching
myself I wyl none other acompte, but that justice be
wel and truly kept thrugh al my land, and my tounes
& Castels wel entreteyned, and gold & syluer to hold 12
& kepe myn estate. / trow ye that I wyl make a paleys
of gold / the stone that my lady my moder me gaf,
suffyseth me ryght wel.' And thenne hys stywardes &
gouernours ansuerd, 'certaynly, my lord, it behoueth 16
wel to a prynce to here and see what he spendeth, at
lest ones in a yere / al were it but for the saluacyon
of hys receyuours in tyme to come and for to gyue
them quytance.' 20

Here sayth thistory that geffray consentid to here
thacomptes of his receyuours. And it came to
an article where he vnderstod that ⁴X. $\frac{3}{4}$ were payed
euery yere only for the pommel of the hyest toure of 24
hys Fortresse of Lusynen / he anone rested there and
asked why it was not made so strong that it myght
laste many wynter. 'My lord,' ansuerd the receyuours /
'it is rente annue^h.' 'What say ye ?' said geffray / 'I 28
hold not the fortresse but only of god my Creatour /
wel happy I were yf he held me quyte therfor of all
my synnes / but telle me to whom ye paye.' 'Certaynly,'
said they / 'we wot not' / 'How thenne,' said Geffray / 32
'ye desyre of me quytance therof / so wyl I haue

¹ Fr. version gives in addition 'ceulx du Chassenage du Dauphiné; ceulx de la Roche.'

² Fr. Candillat.

⁴ Fr. dix soublz.

quytance of hym that receyveth it of you / as rayson
is / but by god ye shal not begy^H me soo, for yf I may
knowe who that taketh that annuel rente of me, he
4 shal shew me good^t letres therof made / or he or ye
shalt yeld^t me ayen the said annuel rente fro the tyme
that ye first alowed it in your acomptes ¹ynto now.'

Geffray says that
he who takes the
money must
show letters
patent proving
his right,
or he will have
to return it.

¹ fol. 211.

Thenne said the receyuours to Geffray in this manere :
8 'My lord, trouth it is / that six yere agoo after the
doulorous departyng of my lady your moder from your
fader / euery yere vpon the last day of August was
sene a grete hand^t that toke the pommel of the said

The receivers
tell how six years
after the departure
of Melusine,
and the last day
of August every
year,

12 toure & pully^d it fro the toure by so grete strength
that the rouf of the tour brak therwithal, and so it
costed^t euery yere to make ayen xxth or xxx²ti. thanne
came a man to my lord your fader which he nor no man

a great hand
pulled down the
pommel of the
tower, which
cost twenty to
thirty livres to
repair.

16 knew what he was, and counseylled hym that euery
yere vpon the last day of August he shuld doo take
a purse of hertis leeder and to be put in it xxx pieces
of syluer, eche piece worth ³foure penys, that made in

Then an un-
known man came
and advised Ray-
mondin to put
thirty pieces of
silver on the
pommel the last
of August each
year,

20 summa ten sheling, And that this purse shuld be putte
vpon the pommel of the said toure / and by that shuld
the pommel abyde styl and not hurt nor dommaged /
and euer syth tyl now it hath thus be doon.' And
24 whan geffray vnderstod^t this meruay^H he bygan to
thinke, and long he was or he ansuer^d or said ony
word^t. /

and the tower
would be un-
injured.

Thystorye witnesseth that long thought Geffray
28 vpon this faytte, and after he said in this manere :

Geffray marvels
much at the
story :

'Sires, how wel that I byleue that it is as ye say,
Neuertheles I charge you vpon peyne of deth that ye
no more paye the said annuel, but at the last day of
32 August bryng to me the purse and the money, For I
wyl make the payment myself.' Thenne sent geffray
for hys brother theodoryk in Partenay, and also for
hys brother Raymond in Forestz, that they shuld be

at length he for-
bids his steward
to pay the rent
again on pain
of death ;
but says on the
day the money
is to be given to
him, and he will
pay it himself.
Geffray sends for
Raymondin and
Theodoric,

² Fr. *livres*.

³ Fr. *quatre deniers*.

¹ fol. 211 b.
and tells them
the story, and
that he is not
going to pay
again until he
knows why the
fortress is so
bound.
On the last of
August Geffray
hears mass,
and arms
and takes the
money.

He bids his
brethren fare-
well,

and goes to the
top of the
donjon.

He waited from
noon till three
o'clock, but saw
nothing.

Then he heard a
great noise that
shook the don-
jon, and he saw
an armed knight
who said, 'Geff-
ray, wilt thou
deny my tri-
bute?'

Geffray asks
for his letters,
and says, 'If
thou hast them,
I will pay thee.'
The knight
answers he has
none, but that
he has always
been paid
regularly.
Geffray tells the
knight that even
if it were a good
debt he would
find it difficult
to get,

with hym at Lusynen the xxvith day of August. And whan they were come he shewed ¹to them al the matere of the said annuel rente, and said that he neuer shuld suffre it to be payed; but that he first knew to whom and why the fortres of Lusynen was bound thus for to doo. And whan the last day of August came, Geffray herd hys masse and receyued ryght deuoutely the holy sacrament and immedyately armed hym, and bad the preste putte the stolle about his nek / and aftir toke the purse with the money therin. And þenne he bad his bretheren farwel, sayeng in this manere: 'I wyl departe and serche for hym that thus yerly taketh trybute of my fortresse / but I assure you yf he be no more of strength than I am I shaſt hastily byreue hym of hys trybute.' And so he yede vp to the vpermost stage of the donjon / and his bretheren and the barons taryed benethe in grete doubte and fere that geffray shuld be perysshed / but geffray was therof not agast / but loked long yf he coude see eny thing.

AH thus as thy story sheweth geffray rested there 20 fro none to thre of the clok, that he ne herd nor sawe nothing! but anoone after he herd a grete noyse wherwith al the donjon shook / and as he loked tofore hym he perceyued a grete knyght armed of al 24 poynts, that said to hym with a hye voys, 'Thou geffray, wilt thou denye my trybute that of ryght I ought to haue vpon the pommel of this toure of the which I was seasyd & empocessid by thy fader?' 28 'Thenne,' said Geffray, 'where are the letres? yf thou hast them, shew it how my fader was bound, and yf I see thou hast good ryght / here is the money redy to paye the.' and thenne the knyght ansuerd in this 32 manere: 'I had neuer letres therof / but wel & truly haue I be payed and neuer denye tyl now.' 'By my feyth,' said geffray, 'al were it good debte and thy ryght to haue it / yet shuldest thou haue grete peyne 36

to recouere it of me. And on the other part thou holdest me for thy subget & ¹woldest hold me in seruitude and thou hast therof nothing to shew. but 4 what art thou that thus by the space of ²XVI. yere hast thevely take this trybute? / I now deffyte the by the myght of my sauour and the I chalenge for myn herytage.' 'By my feyth,' said the knyght, 'doubte 8 not therof but that I am a creature of god, and myn name shalt thou knowe tyme ynough.' And without eny more questyon echo of them recounted other with myghty & gret strokes. And what with that and with 12 the stampyng of theire feet, the noyse was so grete that al pey that were benetho were abasshed, and supposed that the donjon shuld haue faſt. Wherfor they wyst wel that geffray had somewhat to doo. And 16 his bretheren shuld haue assysted hym, but geffray had them deffended so to do. And wete it wel whan the knyght of the tour fond Geffray so fyers & so strong, he putte his swerd vp in the shede and thrugh his 20 pauseys behind hym. And whan Geffray sawe hym that doo / he dyde lyke wyse with his sheld / but he with bothe his handes smote the knyght vpon the helmet with his swerd so myghtyly that he stakerd ²⁴perwith. And thenne the knight toke geffray in his armes / and with that geffray lete faſt his swerd and wrestled with hym / and wete it wel ther was lytel fauour shewed on neyther part. And whan the 28 knyght perceyued the purse about geffrays neck he supposed to haue had it from hym / but geffray kept hym therfro / sayeng / 'or thou haue purse or money it shal cost the the best blood in thy body / but for 32 trouth I meruayl how thou mayst so long withstand me.' 'By my feyth,' said the knight, 'I haue more meruaylle how thou mayst withstand my strengthe / but to morowe shalt thou haue a new day with me,

¹ fol. 212.

but as he has nothing to show that it is due, he demands his name, and defies him.

The knight replies that he is a creature of God, and that Geffray will learn his name soon enough.

They fight, and make so great a noise that those below think the donjon will fall.

His brethren would have come to his help, but Geffray had forbidden them to do so.

The knight sheathes his sword, and puts his shield behind him.

Geffray strikes him on the helmet so that he staggers.

He wrestles with Geffray,

and tries to take the purse from him.

² Fr. quatorze ou de xx. ans.

¹ fol. 212 b.

The knight appoints another struggle in a meadow by the river next morning on condition that Geffray comes alone. Geffray agrees, and the knight disappears.

Geffray comes down and brings the shield he had won in his right hand, and the purse in his left.

His brethren are abashed, and ask whom he had found.

He answers, the most valiant knight he had ever seen, and tells of his covenant, and of the sudden departure of the knight. They laugh at the story, but when they look at Geffray's helmet they see there has been a great fight.

In the morning Geffray goes to the meadow.

He calls to the knight.
‘Be ye he that will take tribute upon my fortress?’

* fol. 213.
The knight says he is.

For now the sonne is to his rest,¹ and thou shalt fynd me yonder vpon that medowe beyond^t the ryuere al redy armed to chalenge the and my ryght. But thou shalt assure me þat no personne shal passe the ryuere ⁴ but thou.’ ‘By my feyth,’ said geffray, ‘I the assure no more ther shal not,’ and with that he departed that geffray wyst not where he became. ‘By my feyth,’ sayd thenne geffray, ‘here is aþert messenger, I hane ⁸ grete meruaylle what this may be,’ and so came he doun and brought with hym the knightinge shield that he had wonne.

Thystorye witnesseth whan Geffray was come doun, ¹² hys shield about his neck and the knyghtis paueys in his ryght hand that he had wonne / and in his other hand the purse with the money, hys bretheren and the baronye þere were abasshed therwith, and ¹⁶ asked hym whom he had fond. And thenne he said he had fond the moost valyaunt knyght that euer he dyde dedes of armes withal. And to them shewed al the maner of batayH & of theire couenaunt / and how ²⁰ he wold haue had the purse, and how he departed so sodaynly. and they bygan to lawhe, sayeng þat neuer tofore they herd of suche a thing. But whan they sawe geffrays helmet & al hys harneys so perysshed ²⁴ with strokes, they had no courage to lawhe, For they knew wel there was sore batayH. And on the next day erly geffray roos, and he & hys bretheren herd masse & drank ones. And thenne armed hym at al ²⁸ pieces & mounted on horsbak / And his bretheren and þe barons yed to conueye hym to the ryuere, where he toke leue of them and passed ouer on the other syde of the ryuere. /

Thystorye telleth that anoone Geffray fond þe knyght and to hym said with a hye voys, ‘Sire ²knyght, be ye he that wyl take the trybute vpon my Fortresse?’ And he ansuerd, ‘ye by my feith.’ And ³² 36

ryght forth said geffray, 'I chalenge the, wherfor deffende the.' And whan the knight vnderstod this, he sette the spere in the rest and geffray lyke wyse /

Geffray challenges him.

4 and so eche of them recounted other / by force wherof they brak thaire speris to the hard fyst in many pieces. And whan they had thus manfully broken theire speris

They break their spears,

8 they drew out theire swerdeſ and smote eche other with grete & myghty strokes that the fyre sprang out of

and draw their swords, and give each other mighty strokes.

theire harneys, wherof the peple vpon the rynere syde had grete meruayll & were al abasshed how that euer they might endure the grete strokes, For they left not

12 one piece of harneys hool. And they faught fro the morow vnto thre of the Clok at astirnone and neuer seaced. And so grete was the batayll that none

They fight till three o'clock, and no one can tell who has the better of the fight.

16 [wist] which of them had the bettre. And thenne

The knight tells Geffray that he forgives him the tribute.

the knight bygan to say to geffray / 'here me now, I haue the wel assayd / and as touching the trybute I the quyte. And wete it wel that / that I haue doo, it hath be for the prouffyt of thy fader & of his sowle,

What he had done was for the good of Geffray's father's soul, who was to have founded a monastery as penance, but had not done so.

20 For it is trouth that the pope enjoyned hym by way of penaunce for the forsweryng that he had don to thy moder to founde a monastery, the whiche penaunce was not by hym obserued. but it is so yf thou

If Geffray will build an hospital and endow a priest, he will quit him of his tribute altogether.

24 wylt edyfye an hospital, and founde therin a presto to syng dayly for thy faders sowle / thy fortres fro this day fourthon shalbe quyte of ony trybute / how be it there shal be sene about the tour more meruaylles

Geffray answers, that if he knew the knight were of God he would do his will.

28 than in eny other place of þe world.' And geffray ansuerd, 'yf I knew for certayn that thou were of god I wold gladly ²fullfuill thy wyll in this byhalf.' /

² fol. 213 b.

And he said he was. And thenne geffray said / 'be 32 thou sure this shal be doon yf it playse god. but I pray the say me what thou art.' And the knyght ansuerd, 'Geffray, enquere no ferther, For as for this tyme thou mayst knowe no more / but only that I am .

He declares he is, and Geffray promises that his will shall be done.

¹ which in MS.

The knight disappears without telling his name.

Geffray crosses the river to his brethren.
They ask where his enemy has gone.
Geffray says that they came to an agreement, but he cannot tell where the knight has gone.
Geffray hung the shield he wore in his hall.
After Geffray had built the hospital the shield vanished.
Here ends the history of the heirs of Lusignan.

Long after the death of Guion of Armenia there was a wilful young king,

who heard tell of a castle in Great Armenia, where dwelt the fairest lady in the world.

She had a sparrowhawk, and to any noble knight who could

³ fol. 214.

watch it three days and nights without sleep, she gave whatever they asked, save herself.

The young king resolved to go, and said he would take nothing but the lady's person.

¹a Creature of god.' And therwith he vanysshed that geffray wanst not where he became / wherof meruaylled moche they that were by þe ryuere. And thenne came geffray ouer the ryuer to his bretheren, whiche asked hym how he had doo and where lys party aduerse was become. And geffray to them sayd that they were acordred togidre, but where he was become he coude not tell. And thenne they retourned to Lusynen 8 where geffray dide doo hang^t the paueys, that he had wonne vpon the knyght of the toure, in the myddes of his haſt. Where as it heng tyl geffray had edfyfed the said hospytal, For thenn it vanysshed away that 12 no man wanst where it became. And here fynyssheth the hystory of the heyres of Lusynen. but bycause that the kynges of Armanye ben yssued of that lynee, I wyl shewe herafter an auenture that befeſt to a kyng 16 of Armanye.

Thyſtorye sayth that long after the deces of kyng guyon of Armanye, Ther was a kinge of that land^t yong and fayre, lecherous and folowyng his wyf. 20 The kyng vnderſtod^t by the report of som knighting vyageours, that there was in the grete Armanye a Castel whereas was in the most fayre lady that men wanst at that tyme in al the world / the whiche lady 24 had a ²sperhawk / and to al knighthes of noble extraction that thither went & coude watche the said sperhawk duryng the space of thre ³dayes and thre nyghtes without slepe / the lady shuld appiere tofore them and gyue them suche worldly yestes as they wold wyssh and were desyryng to haue, except only her self. This kyng thenne that was lusty and in his best age, and that vnderſtod^t the renomme of the excellent beaulte of 32 the said lady / said he wold go thither / and that of the lady he shuld nothing take but herself. But wete it that in the said Castel might none entre but ones in

¹ Fr. *de par Dieu*.

² Fr. *esprevier*.

a yere / and that was the day tofore the vygille of
saynt Johan / and the next day after saynt Johans
day euery man must departe thens. Whan the said
4 kyng was redy he departed & rode with noble company
so long that he cam to the forsaid Castel at the day
assygned, tofore the which he dide dresse vp a ryche
pauyllon and there he souped, and aftir went to rest.
8 And on the morne he roos and herk masse / and after
that the masse was do, he drank ones, and syn armed
hym and toke leue of them that were come with hym,
which were sorowfull for his departing, For they
12 trowed that neuer he shuld haue come ayen. And
this doon the kyng yed toward the sperhawk in the
Castel. /

People could
only enter the
castle on the
vigil of St.
John's, and the
day after St.
John's day all
had to leave.
The King with
his company
arrived on the
right day, and
set up a pavilion
before the castle,
where he supped
and rested the
night.

In the morning
he heard mass,
drank, amused
himself,

and went to the
castle.

16 **H**ere saith thistory that whan the king was at
thentree of the Castel, an old man al clothed in
whyte cam ayenst hym, & asked hym who that had
brought hym thither / and he ansuerd in this manere :
'I am come hither to seke thauenture and to haue the
20 Custome of this Castel.' And the good old man said to
hym / 'ye be ryght welcome, folow ye me, and I shal
shew you the auenture that ye seke for.' Thenne
yede the king aftir the old man / and gretly was he
24 mieruaylled of the grete & inestimable riches ¹that he
sawe, within the place. And thene entred the old
man into a noble hall rychely hanged, And aftir hym
entred the kyng that perceyued in the myddes of the
28 hall a long horne of a vnycorne that was fayre &
whyte / and therupon was spred a grete cloth of gold
wheron stod the sperhawk and a gloue of whyt sylk
vnder his feet. Thenne said the old man to the kyng
32 in this wyse : 'Sire, here ye may see thaduenture of
this Castel / and with it sethen ye are so ferforth
cōme ye must watche this sperhawk thre days and thre
nyghtes without slep. And yf Fortune suffre you so
36 to doo, wete it wel þat the noble lady of this ryal

An old man
clothed in white
asked at the
entry why he
had come.

The King said,
'To have the
custom of the
castle.'
The old man wel-
comes him, and
asks him to
follow him into
the castle.
The King marvels
at the riches he
sees.

¹ fol. 214 b.

They come to a
noble hall, and
there the King
sees the sparrow-
hawk perched
on a unicorn's
horn.

The old man
tells the King
that if he watches
the sparrow-
hawk three days
and three nights
without sleep

the lady of the castle will appear on the fourth day, and grant what he desires most to have, except herself; if he asks to have her evil will befall him.

Castel shal appiere tofore you on the foureth day, to whom ye shal aske that thing of the world whiche ye desyre moost to haue / except her body / and no doulte of but ye shal haue it / but wete it certaynly 4 yf ye desire and aske to haue herself, euyl auenture shal fal to you therof.'

Cap. LX. How the king of Armanye watched the sperhauk.

8

1 fol. 215.

The old man left the King alone in the hall.

There was a table covered with all manner of dainties,

but the King eat sparingly, so that he might be able to keep awake.

2 fol. 215 b.

He spent his time looking at the pictures,

and among others, sees figured the history of King Elinas and Queen Pressine, and their three daughters, and how they were punished for slutting their father in Mount Brombelyo.

The King watches until the third day,

The forsaid old man aftir that he had declared and shewed to the kyng the manere of watching of the sperhauk, he departed fro the halle / and the kyng abode alone and had grete nieruay^H, what of the 12 grete ryches þat he sawe there, as of a ryche table that was in the ha^H couered nobly with al maner deyntes of meetes. And that part he drew hym self & ete a lytel and drank of that lyked best & kept good dyete and 16 made none excess, For wel he knewe that to moch^H meet & drynk causeth the body to be pesaunt & sleepy. And to dryue fourth the tyme walked vp & doun the ha^H, taking^H grete playsyr of the grete noblesse that 20 he sawe, ²For there were ryche pictures where as were fygured many a noble hystory, and the wrytyng vndernethe that shewed the vnderstandingy of it. And emong other hystories was there fygured the 24 noble hystory of kyng Elynas & queen Pressyne his wyf, and of their thre doughtirs, and how they closed their fader in the mountayne of Brombelyo in Northomberlond / and how Pressyne theire moder 28 punysshed them therfor / and al the circonstaunces of þeir faytes were there shewed in letres of gold fro þe bygynnyng vnto the ende.

Grete playsir toke the king to rede & see the said 32 hystories. And thus he watched lokyng here and there vnto the thirde day. And thene he per-

ceyued a right noble chambre, and sawe the doore al wyd open / and that part he went and entred in the chambre, and beheld þer many knyghtes armed fygured 4 and rychely paynted on the walles, and vnder their feet were their names writon in letres of gold and of what lynee & countre they were / and aboue their heedes was writon in this manere: ‘Vpon suche a 8 tyme watched this knight in this Castel the noble sperhawk, but he slept / and therfore he most hold company with the lady of this place as long as he may lyue, and nothing worldly shal he wante of that his 12 herte can desire saf only the departyng fro the placoe.’

And there nygh were paynted thre sheldes in a rowe, and on them were fygured the armes of thre knyghtes and their names / their lynee & their Contre that they 16 were of were writon vnderneth / and aboue the sheldes was shewed by wrytyng this that foloweth: ‘In suche a yere watched our sperhawk this noble knight 1 wel and duely and departed with joye and had his yeft of 20 vs with hym.’ And so long beheld the king that he almost slept / but he anoon came out of the Chambre and sawe the sonne almost doun and passed fourth that nyght without slepe.

24 **T**henne was he glad whan he perceyued þe day. And foorthwith at the rysyng of the sonne cam the lady of the Castel in so noble and so ryche array that the kyng had gréte mérueyH therof / and what of 28 her ryches as of her excellent beaute, he was gretly abasshed. And thenne the lady dide her obeyssance, sayeng in this manere: ‘Noble kyng of Armany, ye be ryght welcome. For certaynlly ye haue wel & 32 valyauntly endeuoired you. now aske of me what yefte that so euer playse you worldly and raysounable, and ye shal haue it without ony taryeng.’ Thenne ansuerd the king that right sore was esprysed of the 36 loue of her; ‘By my feyth, gracyous & noble lady, I

when he sees an open door. He enters the chamber, and sees the wall figured with many knights, and reads their names and the writing:

‘This knight watched the sparrowhawk, but slept, and so must remain in the castle all his life.’

He also sees three shields painted with the arms of three knights,

and a writing: ‘This knight watched our

1 fol. 216.
sparrowhawk,
and departed
joyfully with
his gift.’
The King nearly
fell asleep looking
at the figures,
but left the
chamber, and
kept awake all
the night.

At sunrise the lady of the castle comes to the King,

and welcomes him, and asks him to name what gift he would have.

The King answers,

'Neither silver nor gold, nor town nor castle, but you, my beloved lady, to be my wife.'

The lady is wroth at his request,

and replies that he cannot have her.

The King presses his suit,

but she tells him to ask a reasonable gift.

¹ fol. 216 b.
The King declares he will have nothing but herself.

The Queen tells him that unless he changes his purpose evil hap will fall on him and his posterity;

but the King declares that his heart is ravished with her beauty, and that he will have nothing but her.

askē neyther gold nor syluer, Cyte, toun, nor Castel,
For thanked be god I haue of al worldly ryches ynough /
but yf it playse you, my ryght dere & right entierly
beloued lady, I wyl haue you to my wyf.' And whan 4
the lady vnderstod this she was wroth, and by grete
yre she said to hym in this wyse : ' Ha, thou grete foole,
For nought hast thou asked my body; For thou mayst
not by no wyse haue it.' Thenne said the king to 8
the lady, ' Wel I haue, to myn aduys, endeuoired me.
Wherfor, noble lady, be you fauourable to me and haue
regard to the custome of this castel.' ' By my feyth,'
ansuerd the lady, ' as touching thaduenture & custome 12
of this Castel, I wyl that it be obserued & kept / but
askē of me yeft raysounable / and no doubte ¹ of but
thou shalt haue it.' ' By my feyth, noble lady, I desyre
none other thing erthly nor none other I shal not askē 16
nor take of you, but only your gracyous body.' ' Ha,
fole, fole,' said thenne the lady, ' euyl myscheaunce
shal fall on the, yf thou soone chaungest not thy
purpos, and so it shal to al thin heyres & successours 20
aftir þe / though they be not culpable therof.' And
the kyng her ansuerd, ' It is for nought, For my
herte is rauysshed of your beaute, and only fedde with
your syght. And therfore your body wyl I haue and 24
none other thing erthly.' /

Cap. LXI. How the kyng wold haue rauysshed by force the lady, but she vanysshed away.

28

The lady becomes right wroth,

and tells him that he will lose his gift,

Whan thenne the lady sawe that the kyng chaunged not his purpos, she was ryght wroth, and to hym said in this manyere : ' Thou folyssh kyng, now shalt thou lese the syght of me, & shalt fayll of 32 thy yefte, & hast putte thyself in auenture to abyde within for euer in grete payne & tourment, bycause that

thou art yssued of the lynee of kyng guyon that was sone to Melusyne my sustir, and I am his ante / and thou art so nygh of my blood and kynred that though
 4 I wold be consentyng to thy wy^H holy Chirch wold
 neuer suffre it.' And aftir she rehered & shewed to
 hym al that is tofore said in the ¹Chapter of Elynas
 and Pressyne, and also fro hed to heed all the heyres
 8 of Lusynen and their fayttes. And after she said to
 hym / 'grete myschief shal happe to the & vpon thyn
 heyres successours ²after the, and that shal endure vnto
 the ix lynee, For they shal fa^H in decaye, & exilled fro
 12 their contrees & fro their honour, wherfor departe
 lightly hens, For here mayst thou no lenger abyde.'
 The kyng thenne vnderstod wel the lady. but neyþer
 for her wordes, nor for fere that ought shuld hym
 16 mysfa^H, he neuer chaunged his folysh wy^H & vnhappy
 purpos, but wold haue take the lady by manere of
 vvolens and by force. but soone Melyor vanysshed
 away that he wyst neuer where she was become.

20 Cap. LXII. How the king was bete & ouerthrawen and knew not of whom.

And immediatly after the departyng of Melyor
 there fel^H vpon the kyng gret & pesaunt strokes,
 24 as thykk as rayn falleth fro the skye. Wherof he was
 al to brusid in euery part of his body, and was drawen
 by the feet fro the halle vnto the barrers without the
 Castel. And wete it that he neuer saw none of them
 28 that so cruelly seruyd hym. And as soone as he
 myght he stode vpon his feet, cursyng a thousand
 tymes hym that first brought hym tydynges of this
 auenture, and the heure also that euer he cam thither.
 32 And thenne he went toward his meyne that saw his
 harneys al to broken and perysshed, and demanded of

because she is
 the aunt of King
 Guion his an-
 cestor, and that
 they are too near
 of kin to marry,
 and even if she
 consented, Holy
 Church would
 forbid their
 union.

Then she tells
 the history of
 Elinas and Pres-
 sine, and of the
 heirs of Lu-
 signan,
 and foretells of
 the decay of his

² fol. 217.

line, and of their
 exile from their
 lands.
 She advises him
 to leave the
 castle.

The King per-
 sists and tries
 to take her by
 force, but Melior
 vanishes be-
 cause he
 knows not where.

The King is
 thrashed so hard
 that he is bruised
 in every part of
 his body, and is
 pulled by the
 feet out of the
 castle.

He cannot see
 who it is that
 serves him so.

He rises and
 curses the man
 that brought him
 the news of the
 adventure,

and returns to
 his men,

¹ Cap. I. page 6, *et seq.*

who ask if he has
been fighting?
He tells them he
is hurt, but that
he has had no
fight because he
could not see
who struck him.

² fol. 217 b.

The King returns
home,

but he had no
joy after this
adventure,
though he
reigned a long
time.
His heirs were
unlucky.

This volume was
ended on Thurs-
day, Aug. 7th,
1394.

I have told the
story of Lu-
signan Castle,
and of its
builders, and
of their issue,
from the true
chronicles.

It has lately
been conquered
by the Duke of
Berry,

hym in this manere : ‘ My lord, vs semeth that ye be sore hurt, haue ye had batayH there as ye haue be ? ’ And he ansuerd, ‘ I am somewhat hurt / but no batayH I haue not had / but so ferre I knowe that shrewedly 4 I haue be festyed¹ ² how wel I perceyued no body / but I assure you I felt wel the strokes, and wete it wel I reuenged³ me not / and thus haue I had no batayH / For he that gyueth the first strokes dooth not the batayH. 8 but he that reuengeth hym bryngeth it to effect.’ /

A noone aftir the king & his peopple departed and A entred in the see and sailed toward his countre, euer thinking vpon this that Melyor had said to hym, 12 and doubted moche to haue lost his good fortune as he had. For wete it wel that neuer aftir this faytte he had no hertly joye and regned long tyme, but fro day to day feH in decaye by dyuerse maners. And wete it 16 wel that his heyres after his decesse were not fortunat, but vnhappe in al their actes. Here shal I leue to speke of the king of Armanye. For yuough it is knownen that they came of the noble lynee of the 20 king Elynas of Albanye & of Lusynen. vnto this thursday vii day of August vpon the whiche was ended this present volume. The ycre of our lord a thousand [ccc] ³lxxx & foureteene. / 24

Now have I shewed to you after the very Cronykles and true history how the noble Fortresse of Lusynen in Poytou was edfyed & made / and of the noble yssue & lynee of the foundatours therof, on whos 28 sowles god haue mercy / the whiche fortresse of Lusynen is a now come but of late, by manere of Conqueste, into the handes of the ryght noble & myghty

¹ Fr. *batu*.

³ Note to C. Brunet's Fr. Ed., page 420. *Le texte porte : mil iiiij ringz et xiiij. C'est évidemment une erreur puisque Jean d'Arras dit, dès les premières pages, qu'il a commencé cette histoire en 1387.* In the Harl. MS. of Melusine the date is given as ‘ *le VIIe jour d'aoust l'an de grace Mil^l iiiijC iiiijXX et XIII* ’.

prynce my right redoubted lord Johan sone to the kyng
 of Fraunce, Duc of Berry, Auvergne, &c., by whos com-
 mandement I haue endeuored me after my rude and
 4 symple entendement to collige & gadre emong many
 gestes & true Cronykes the trouth of thystory ¹ byfore
 speeifyed. And wete it for trouth that oftentymes I
 haue herd my said lord say that a knyght called
 8 Sersuell that held the said Fortres as lieutenaunt &
 Captayne there for the kyng of England / at that tyme
 that my said lord had besieged / said to hym after the
 reducyon of the Fortres / that thre dayes tofore, tofore
 12 that he gaf it vp / he lyeng in hys bed with a woman
 hys concubine named Alexaundryne / perceyued a
 grete & horrable serpent in the myddes of the Chambre,
 wherof he was gretly abasshed & sore agast / and wold
 16 haue take the swerd to haue descharged it vpon the
 serpent / but Alexaundryne said thenne to hym in
 this manyere: 'Ha, valyaunt Sersuel, how ofte haue
 I sene your mortal enemyes tofore your presence that
 20 neuer ye were aferd, and now for a serpent of femenyne
 nature ye shake for fere. Wete it for trouth that this
 serpent is the lady of this place & she that edfyedyd it /
 she shal by no manere wyse hurt nor dommage you /
 24 but so ferre I vnderstand by her apparysshing that
 nedes ye shal hastily delyuere & gyue vp this Fortres
 to the Duc of Berry' / And morouer said the said
 Sersuell to my said lord that hys Concubyne fered
 28 nothing the serpent / but that he was neuer in his
 dayes so aferd. And that he sawe thenne the said
 serpent tourned in to a fourme of a woman clothed in
 a gowne of Cours cloth & gyrded with a grete corde
 32 vndernethe the pappes of her / and soone after tourned
 herself in the figure of a serpent and so vanysshed
 away.

36 **A** lso there was a man named godart dwellyng at
 that tyme within the said Fortresse, whiche
 MELUSINE.

son of the
 King of France,
 at whose com-
 mand I have
 gathered this
 history.

¹ fol. 218.

I have often
 heard my lord
 tell a story of a
 knight named
 Sersuell, who
 was lieutenant
 of the castle for
 the King of Eng-
 land.

Three days be-
 fore he gave it
 up, he was in bed
 with his concu-
 bine, and saw a
 great serpent in
 his chamber,
 which frightened
 him.
 He took his
 sword to slay it;

but his lady said
 that the serpent
 was the lady of
 the place, and
 her appearance
 proved that he
 would soon have
 to give up the
 castle.

The serpent then
 turned into a
 woman, clothed
 in a coarse gown,
 with a great cord
 round her. Then
 she became a
 serpent again
 and vanished.

Godart swore to my lord on the gospels that he had often seen

¹ fol. 218 b.

the serpent on the walls of the fortress, and that he had passed her without harm.

Ivon of Wales swore that three days before the surrender of the castle by Seruell, he saw a great serpent on the donjon of the castle, and that many others saw her.

I have done my utmost to know the truth of the matter,

and if I have written what appears to some incredible, I beg for pardon.

Some authors hold this to be a true chronicle of fairies.

To those who object, I say the judgments and

affirmed for a trouth / and sware to my forsayd lord vpon the holy euauingilles that many tyme he had sene vpon the walles of the fortres ¹the said serpent, and that he had passed oftymes nygh her without receyuyng ⁴ of ony harme. Then another also called Yuon of Walles sware his feyth vnto my said lord that thre dayes tofore the reducyon of the said Fortresse made by the said Sersue^H into the handes of my said lord, ⁸ þat he sawe an horrable grete serpent vpon the batelments of the donjon of the said Castel of Lusynen. And many other also had the vision and syght of her.^{/2}

And where it is soo that at thinstaunce requeste ¹² and prayer of my said lord haue be examyned many prynces³ and dyuerse ofer for the makynge & compilacion of this present hystorye vpon the said matere. And also I haue putte my self to myn ¹⁶ vtermost power to rede & loke ouer the Cronykes & many bokes of auncyent hystoryes, to thende that I might knowe the trouth of the forsayd matere. Therfore yf I haue wryton or shewed ony thing that to som ²⁰ semeth neyther possible to be nor credible, I beseche them to pardonne me. For as I fele & understand^d by the Auctours of gramaire & phylosophye they repute and hold this present hystorye for a true Cronykle & ²⁴ things of the fayry. And who that saith the contrary / I say the secret jugements of god and his punyssh-

² Fr. adds: *Et encore plus avant y a ung cheraulier poitain, nomm^e messire Percheval de Coulongne, qui fut chambellan du bon roy de Chypre, avec le roy, la serpente s'estoit apparue à ieelluy roy, comme celluy roy luy avoit dit en ceste manière parlant a luy : Percheval, je me doute trop ! Pour quwy, monseigneur ? dist le cheraulier. Par ma foy, dist le roy, pour ce que j'ay veu la serpente de Lusignen qui c'est apparue à moy ; si me doute qui ne me adriengne auenne perte dedens brief temps, ou à Perrin mon filz : car ainsi appartenelle quant aueluns des hoirs de Lusignen doibrent morir. Et jura messire Percheval que dedens le tictz jour aprez, la dure adventure que chascun scet bien adrint.*

³ Harl. MS. reads prouues = proofs.

ments are inuysible & impossible to be vnderstand or
knowe by the humanyte of man./ For the vnderstanding
of humayne Creature is to rude to vnderstande the
4 spyce espirytuel, & may not wel comprehend what it
is / but as ferre as the wylle ¹ of god wyl suffre hym.
For there is found in many hystoryes Fayries that
8 haue be maryed & had many children / but how this
may be the humayn creature may not conceyue. For
these poynts and suche other god hath retayned þem
in his secrets. And the more that the personne is of
rude entendement the ferther is he fro knowlege of it.

12 And he that is replet of scyence naturel, the rather
shalt haue affection to byleue it. Notwithstandyng no
creature humayn may not obteyne the secrets of god./
how be it saint paule saith in hys epistles to the

16 Rommayns, 'that al thinges ben knownen by humayn
Creature' / but the glose reserueth & excepteth the
secrets of god. For the kynde of man is to vnderstand
the ferther that he trauayllet in reawnes and Countrees/

20 the greter knowleche hath he of euery thinge / than he
that resteth in his owne Countre and neuer remevyth.
And semblable wyse this hystorye is more credible for
as moche as it is not auctorised by one man only / but
24 also by many noble Clerkes. Now of this proces I wyl
make no ferther mencion / but humbly I beseche you
and alle them þat shall here or rede this hystorye /
that yf there be ony thing that be nuyouse or desplay-

28 saunt to you / wyl pardonne me & hold me escusid.
For yf a man dooth as wel as he can / he ought to be
accepted. For in som cas the good wylle of a man
is accepted for the dede./ And here I, Johan of Aras,
32 ende the hystorye of Lusynen / ²beseching god of his
hygh mercy to gyue to þem that be passed fro this
mortall world hys eternall glorye / and to them that be
lyuyng, prosperous and blessidfull endyng./

36 [Here fynyssheth the noble hystorye of Melusyne.]

punishments of
God are not to
be understood
by man.

¹ fol. 219.

There are many
histories of
Fairies that have
married, and had
children. No
man can under-
stand how this
can be.

God has kept
these things
secret.

Ignorant people
cannot beleive
such things.
Those who are
learned can more
readily do so,
but no man can
fathom the
secrets of God.

The more men
travel the more
they learn.

This story is
made more
credible by the
number of clerks
who vouch for it.

I ask forgiveness
of my readers for
anything tiresome
or displeasing I may have
written.
If a man does as
well as he can
he ought to be
accepted.

I, John of Arras,
end the history
of Lusignan,
² fol. 219 b.
asking God to
give those who
have left this
world His
eternal glory,
and to the living
a blessed ending.

NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

PAGE 1, line 19. In the Catalogue of the Duke of Berry's Library, published in Le Labourer's *Histoire de Charles VI*, there is a volume relating to the subject of this romance, 'Vn liure de l'Histoire de Lezignem, escrit en Latin, de lettre de fourine, bien historié & au commencement du second fœillet apres la premiere Histoire, a escrit, sola sed tantum, couvert de drap de damas rouge, formant à deux fermoirs de laiton, & tixus de soye.' Jean d'Arras declares in several places that the romance is founded on old Chronicles; see end of Cap. I.

p. 2, l. 11. Text should read: 'the Wednesday before St. Clement's Day.' The 'before' has been accidentally omitted by the translator or the transcriber. The French version reads: 'le mercredi devant la Saint Clement en yver.'

p. 2, l. 18. This heading seems out of place.

p. 3, l. 9. Is the reference to Romans, Cap. I, verse 20?—'For the invisible things of him from the creation of the world, are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made: his eternal power also and divinity: so that they are inexcusable.'

p. 3, l. 33. He appears to refer to local traditions, of which he makes some use; see, for example, the description of Melusine's appearances in his own time, on pages 369 and 370.

p. 4, l. 17. Probably Gervaise of Tilbury (fl. 13th century), a nephew of King Henry II. of England; he was appointed Marshal of Arles by the Emperor Otto IV. He was a voluminous writer. Warton says, in the *History of English Poetry*, § XXIV, that his *Otia Imperialia* was translated into French by Jean de Guerre between 1412 and 1427. His treatise is full of the most extraordinary marvels. In the British Museum MS., leaf 85, he tells of men being born without heads, having their eyes and mouths in their breasts. He is very full on lamia and dragons, and all kinds of monstrosities. He says that there have been cases in Italy of men being turned into beasts by eating cheese given them in taverns by enchantresses. Gervaise dedicated his *Description of the World* to Otto IV.

p. 4, l. 32. French text reads: 'les ungz qu'ilz ne verroient jamais l'ung l'autre; que le samedi ilz ne les enqueroient que elles seroient devenues en aulcunes manieres; les autres que se elles avoient enfans, que leurs maris ne les verroient jamais en leurs gessines.'

p. 5, l. 21. He may be referring to the tales of Marco Polo, a copy of whose travels Jean d'Arras had access to in the Duke of Berry's collection.

p. 5, l. 24. The following appears to be the passage in *Gervaise of Tilbury* referred to: 'Scio equidem jampridem relatum veridica narratione, quod in Aquensi provincia paucis ab Aquis milliaribus est castrum

Russetum, quod vallem Trezensem sub se missam respicit. Hujus castri Dominus, Raimundus nomine, cum uno aliquo die solus in equo vectaretur juxta decursum interluentis Laris fluvii, ex improviso occurrit domina nulli decore secunda, in palafredo phalerato, vestibus et apparatu pretiosis, cumque salutata a milite ipsum ex nomine resalutasset, ille ab ignota se nominatum audiens, miratur et nihilominus illam, ut moris est, coepit verbis lascivis interpellare, ut ei consentiat. Cui illa opponit, hoc praeter conjugalem copulam nulli licere verum si in ejus nuptias consentiat, ipsius possit optatis frui complexibus. Quid ultra? acquiesceret conditionibus miles in nuptiis: at illa replicat, illum summa temporalium felicitate ex ejus commansione fruiturum, dum ipsam nudam non viderit; verum ut ipsam nudam conspexerit, omni felicite spoliandum asserit et vix ei vitam miseram servandam esse praeponit. Pendet dubiusne timeret optaretne mori? tandem in nuptias consentit et conditionem admittit. Inflammatus et aestuans omnem conditionem facilem arbitratur, qua cupitum thorum possit obtinere. Consentiant in matrimonium et contrahunt, et crescente militis felicitate, in breve favore et hominum gratia, temporalium copia et corporis strenuitate in tantum excrevit, quod pares excessit et paucis proceribus et illustribus secundus invenitur. Hominibus amabilis, apud omnes gratiosus, liberalitatem discreta largitate atque urbanitate condiebat, filiis et filiabus summae pulchritudinis procreat. Cum post longa tempora uno die domina, ut assolent, in thalamo balnearet, Raimundus miles, a venatu rediens et aucupatu, perdicibus aliisque carnibus ferinis dominam exeniat, et dum parantur cibaria, necio quo motu vel spiritu militi venit in mentem, quod nudam videat dominam balneantem, constituens in animo siquidem, quod ex inhibita nuditatis conspectione potuit ex fatis esse periculum, temporis diurnitate tamque diurnae commansionis longinquitate evanuisse. Affectum maritus exposuit uxori, quae diurnam felicitatem ex conditione servata objicit et infelicitatem minatur secuturam, si contemnatur. Tandem paeceps in praecipitum miles, non temperatur interminatione poenae neque precibus flectitur, ut a stulto proposito desistens suaे consulat utilitate:

“tangunt animum motusque metusque
et timet eventus indignaturque timere.”

Quid moror? erepto linteo, quo balneum operitur, miles ut uxorem nudam videat, accedit, statimque domina in serpentem conversa, misso sub aqua balnei capite, disparuit, nunquam visa imposterum nec audita, nisi quandoque de nocte, cum ad infantulos suos visitandos veniebat, nutribus audientibus, sed ab ejus aspectu semper arctatis. Sane miles pro maxima parte felicitate ac gratia minoratus, filiam illius dominae cuidam nostro affini ex nobilibus Provinciae oriundo postea dedit in uxorem, quae inter coaetaneas et confines suas plurimum extitit gratiosa et cuius jam successio ad nos usque pervenit. Prima Decisio XV Otia Imperialia.

The theories of Paracelsus people rivers, &c., with Melusinæ. They have no spiritual principle, but can obtain one by entering into a union with man: ‘Melusinæ & melioræ filiæ regiæ quondam propter peccata desperabundæ, fuerunt a Sathana raptæ, & in spectra transmutatae, spiritus malignos, lemures horribiles, & in immania monstra. Vivere putantur absque anima rationali & in brutali solum corpore phantastico, nutriti elementis, atque una cum istis in extremo die judicii transituræ, nisi cum aliquo homine forte fortuna matrimonium contrahant, tum demum, ut ipse, naturali morte interire posse, ut matrimonio naturaliter vivere virtute hujus unionis. Ejusdem status atque generis plura spectra haberí creditur

in desertis, in sylvis, ruinis, monumentis, arcibus vacuis, & in extremis littoribus maris. Vulgo maledicti vacantur homines, sed proprio nomine spectra vocantur, atque diabolorum sancti, cum quibus versantur caco-demones, suas illusiones & portenta perficiunt.'—W. Johnson's *Lexicon Chymicum* [to the writings of Paracelsus], London 1652.

p. 5, l. 24. The name of Regnald does not occur in the list of the kings of Bohemia.

p. 5, l. 25. The Lusignans do not appear to have had any connection with Luxembourg.

p. 5, l. 28. The name Theodoric does not occur on the roll of the lords of Partenay-l'archevêque. The house was founded, according to French genealogists, by William, the son of Gilles Lusignan (fl. 1100—1130). Valence, daughter of Geoffray with the Great Tooth, married Hugh III. of Partenay-l'archevêque.

p. 7, l. 15. couered, Fr. *couvertement*.

p. 11, l. 3. Fr. 'je ne pense en nul cas deshoneste.'

p. 12, l. 26. There is a romance entitled 'L'Histoire du noble & vail-lant Roy, Florimont fils du noble Mataquas duc d'Albanie.' Florimont is the son of Mataquas, sire of Duras and Duke of Albany. His mother was Edozie or Flory, daughter of Fragus, King of Persia. It is bound up with a Rouen edition of Melusine. Warton notices a romance of 'Florimont et Passeroze,' *History of English Poetry*, § XII, note.

p. 12, l. 32. In Coudrette's version of Melusine, Aualon is called fairy land.

p. 13, l. 7. In some editions of the French version Ybernie is substituted for Albany, others have Albany as here.

p. 14, l. 8. Fr. ver. adds 'filles' after 'lawfull.'

p. 15, l. 11. They should be allowed to leave Aualon.

p. 15, l. 32. One of Melior's adventures is described at page 362.

p. 16, l. 4. The eve of St. John's Day comes on June 23. Many curious customs used to be observed on the vigil of St. John. In London the Watch was paraded through the city. In Paris a number of cats and a fox were burnt in the Place de Grève. In Ireland the people used to light fires on the hill tops, and according to Rev. Donald McQueen, they danced round them, and then made their children and cattle walk through the fires. McQueen thinks the custom a relic of sun-worship.—Brand's *Antiquities*.

p. 16, l. 13. There is a mountain named Guygo in Lesser Armenia. No account of Palatine is given in this romance. In Coudrette's versification of the romance there is briefly narrated her story, l. 5704, *et seq.* Palatine's place of abode is there given as Arragon.

p. 17, l. 3. Geoffray with the Great Tooth discovers the tomb, see page 327.

p. 17, l. 24. The Castle of Lusignan was founded in the tenth century by Hugues II., known as the *Bien Aimé*. It had many masters, and was a formidable stronghold. It was razed in 1569, after its capture from the Hugenôts. Little trace of it now remains.

p. 17, l. 27. 'fell at debate'; translates *eut riot*.

p. 17, l. 32. Fountains are usually made the scenes of the fairy love-making. Elinas meets Pressine at 'a moche fayre fontayne'; Henry of

Leon, father of Raymondin, meets the ‘fayr lady to whom he told all his Fortune,’ ‘nighe by a fontain,’ &c.

p. 18, l. 7. Jean d'Arras was fond of etymology; this appears a reasonable guess.

p. 19, l. 14. The 1478 edition makes the third chapter begin here. The edition published at Rouen by Pierre Mulot begins Cap. III at the same place as our text.

p. 21, l. 7. ‘h. . . s.’], in Fr. *sur le col.*

p. 31, l. 35. Melusine protests throughout that ‘she is of god.’ See pages 316 and 320.

p. 32, l. 32. Compare the promise exacted by Pressine, Melusine’s mother, page 11.

p. 33, l. 12. ‘hys droughtir,’ i. e. Earl Emery’s daughter.

p. 33, l. 25. Melusine has a store of magic rings:

1. Makes the holder proof against death from wounds.

2. Gives victory in war, in law, &c., to the holder.

3. Gives victory, and protects against enchantments and poison,
p. 110, l. 20.

4. Gives victory so long as the wearer fights in a good cause,

p. 191, l. 11; p. 319, l. 10.

Magic rings appear to have come from the East. They figure in many Arabian tales. In classical literature we have several Magic ring stories, which probably have been taken from Semitic sources. Plato’s story of the ring of Gyges, that made the bearer invisible, is well known. Solomon had a ring that gave him command over the genii. It was made of copper and iron, and had the sacred name of the deity engraved on it. Solomon sealed his orders to the refractory genii with the iron part, those to the good genii were sealed with the copper portion. Once when Solomon was bathing, and had taken the ring from his finger, it was stolen by a wicked genie. Solomon was so concerned about the loss that he was unable to attend to affairs of state. It was afterwards recovered from the stomach of a fish that was caught for the king’s table.

Petrarch relates that Charlemagne became infatuated with a woman of low degree to such an extent that he neglected the affairs of state, and even the care of his person. She fell ill and died, but her death did not break the charm: Charlemagne would not allow her corpse to be buried. One day Archbishop Turpin examined the body, and found a ring in her mouth, which he took possession of; Charlemagne then came under the influence of the Archbishop. The prelate, tired of the king’s special attentions, and afraid that the ring might fall into the hands of some unworthy person, so he threw it into a lake near the town. From that time Charlemagne refused to quit Aix-la-Chapelle. He built a palace and a monastery there, and in his will directed his successors to be crowned at Aix.—*Epistole familiares*, Lib. I, Cap. 3.

p. 35, l. 33. Jean d'Arras was evidently of the opinion of Rabelais, that
‘Mieux est de ris que de larmes escrire,
Pour ce que rire est le propre de l’homme.’

p. 42, l. 4. Note that the Earl is unable to give land without the consent of his barons.

p. 42, l. 19. Brunet reads ‘Montiers’; the Rouen edition has ‘l’abbaye demonstiers.’

p. 45, l. 13. There is an ‘onde limpide’ near the Forest of Coulom-

byers, known as the 'Fontaine-des-Fees.'—*Annales de la Société Royal Académique de Nantes*, 1831, p. 405.

p. 48, l. 26. The power of love is a favourite theme of John of Arras. See 122, 135, 164, &c. The book was written for the amusement of the Duchess of Bar. This may account for the elaborate treatment of love affairs, dress, &c., in the book.

p. 54, l. 14. Coudrette makes the wine-list an extensive affair. See *The Romans of Partenay*, E. E. T. S. ed., p. 39:

'With wine of Angoy, and als of Rochel tho,
Which would eschawfe the braines appetite,
Wine of Tourain, And of Bewme also,
Which iawne [yellow] colour applied noght vnto ;
Clarre Romain, with doucet Ypocras
Thorught al the hal rynnynge hye and bas.
Wine of Tourisnz, and also of Digon,
Wine of Aucerre, of seint Jougon also ;
Wyne of Saint Johau of Angely good won,
Of it ful many ther spake and tolde tho ;
Wine of Estables, of Uiart also ;
After thaim cam the wyne,
Wine of Saint Pursain, and of Ris hys brood.
Ouer all thes wines ther had the prise,
The nouel osey of Dingon.'

p. 55, l. 3. The magic ring that Melusine gave Raymondin has made him invincible. See p. 33.

p. 59, l. 9. The custom of the newly-wedded couple making presents to the wedding guests, instead of receiving them, resembles what takes place in India in our time, where the parents of the bride make gifts to those who attend the marriage ceremony.

p. 63, l. 3. Fr. reads: 'Et avec tout ce il y a forte braies entaillées do mesmes la roche.'

p. 64, l. 13. There are a number of suggested etymologies of the name Melusine, none of them satisfactory.

Jean Bouchet says it is a combination of Melle and Lusignan. She was lady of Melle, and her husband was lord of Lusignan. Bouchet says that this was the accepted etymology in his time (16th century). Baron Dupin adopts this etymology. It appears, however, that women did not add to their name the name of their husband's seignory, nor was it usual for women to bear the name of their own manors.

Bouchet thought the tail signified that Melusine was an adulteress. N. Chorier imagined that it symbolized her prudence! .

Salverte says that the name is a combination of Mere and Lusignan. He makes its signification to be 'Mother of the Lusignans.' The name is spelt Merlusine by Brantôme, and the popular pronunciation is Merlusine.

Grimm derives it from Meri menni, a syren, or scylla.

Litré derives it from Melus, a Celtic word meaning agreeable.

Bullet says it is made up of Me = half, llysowen (pronounced lusen) = serpent: the name thus signifies half serpent.

A writer in the *Nouvelle Biographie Générale*, thinks that Melusigne is an Anagram of Leusignem. I have not observed any case in which the family name is spelt in this manner, and I am not aware that the fashion of Anagram-making was much practised in the 14th century .

M. de Freminville, in *Antiq. de la Bretagne, Côtes du-Nord*, p. 23, derives Melusine from mirlusein = vapour or sea fog.

In Quaritch's catalogue, 1887 (vol. I, p. 90) it is stated that the name comes from a Breton word signifying 'the woman with a tail,' mer' hlostek, which the writer believes was at one time pronounced something like Merlusec.

Mascurat surmises that Melusine was a lady who used a seal engraved with a syren, and from that was at last imagined to be a mermaid herself.

p. 65, l. 3. The following list of Melusine's children shows the blemishes that each of them bore:

1. Urien : A broad face, ears like the handles of a vannus, and one eye red and the other blue.
2. Odon : One ear greater, without comparison, than the other.
3. Guion : One eye higher than the other.
4. Anthony : Had on the cheek a lion's foot (*grif de lyon*).
5. Regnald : Had only one eye.
6. Geoffray : Had a great tooth, which protruded more than an inch out of his mouth.
7. Froimond : Had a mole (*tache velue*) or tuft of hair on his nose.
8. Horrible : Had three eyes—one in his forehead.
9. Raymond : Blemish not recorded.
10. Theodoryk : Blemish not recorded.

p. 65, l. 3. 'handlyng of a fan' translates 'manilles d'ung van.'

p. 65, l. 11. Fr. reads: 'Guerende et Penicense.'

p. 66, l. 17. Fr.: 'mal enformé.'

p. 65, l. 12. Hugues IV. of Lusignan had a dispute with Joscelin, lord of Parthenay, about some lands that the latter had usurped. The dispute descended to the heirs of Joscelin. Hugues appealed to his suzerain William, Count of Poitiers. The count sided with the lord of Parthenay, and Hugues' stronghold, the Castle of Lusignan, was burnt down. *B. Le-dain in La Gatiné.*

The Lusignans possessed the domain of Porhoët, in Brittany, from the 13th century. Phillip le Bel took it from Guy, Count of Marche and Angoulême, in the 14th century.

Perhaps these historical events may have suggested the story in the romance.

p. 79, l. 24. 'the cranes flighing' translates 'les grues en voltant.' The cranes are said to be the earliest birds to migrate.

'E come i gru van cantando lor lai,
Facendo in aere di se lunga riga.'

Dante, *Inferno*, Canto V.

p. 84, l. 15. The Rouen Fr. ed.: 'Raimondin le frappa de la lance au coste.'

p. 91, l. 30. There is an omission here in the translation. The French text reads: 'Il avoit entendu par auleuns des varlés d'icelluy chastelein que ilz actendoient gens à qui ilz ne vouloient point de bien.'—Brunet's ed., p. 104.

p. 92, l. 15. Fr. reads: 'que ilz ne nous trouvent à descouvert.'

p. 94, l. 24. 'high' seems to be a mistake for 'his.' 'traist l'espee' is the French reading.

p. 97, l. 28. There is a legend current that the convent of the Trini-

taires of Sarzeau was founded by Melusine. John III., Duke of Brittany, founded it in 1341, forty-six years before John of Arras wrote this account of its origin. Jehan de la Haye, in *Memoires et recherches* (1581), says that Melusine and Raymondin were buried in this convent.

p. 104, l. 10. Such excrescences apparently do appear, as can be seen from the following statement, made by a man of recognized accuracy of observation:—

‘On the 29th [of Feb. 1839], being requested by some friends of the town, I visited a wonderful man there. It appears that nature, deviating from the usual course, gave this man a small trunk, like an elephant, on the right side of his face, beginning from the forehead to his chin. With his left eye only could he see, the other being covered with this superfluous part of the body. He was a young man of about twenty, sound in mind, as he gave rational answers to the several questions I put to him in the Sindhi language.’—*Autobiography of Lutfullah*, p. 311, edited by E. B. Eastwick, 1858.

p. 112, l. 35. This advice to kings reads as if it had been specially written for the Duke of Berry’s edification.

p. 116, l. 23. The Knights Hospitallers of St. John captured Rhodes after a siege of three years, in 1309, and made the island their headquarters.

p. 117, l. 32. In the Apocryphal Book, known as the Gospel of Nicodemus, the names of the two thieves are given as Dimas and Gestas. In the ‘Narration of Joseph of Arimathæa’ it is related that Denas was born in Galilee. He was an innkeeper, and was kind to the poor. He followed the example of Tobias in secretly burying those who died in poverty. He robbed Jews, even in Jerusalem. He plundered the daughter of Caiaphas. It was for this crime that he suffered death.

p. 120, l. 2. Fr. reads: ‘Urian n’avoit mie encores, à compter les gens du maistre de Rodes, plus de quatre mille combatans.’

p. 128, l. 25. Alexander is said to have had 30,000 foot soldiers and 4,500 horsemen when he crossed the Hellespont. (Plutarch.)

p. 136, l. 26. ‘he cast at hym the dart [with great] yre.’ The Fr. ‘par grant’ is omitted by mistake.

p. 141, l. 21. Fr. text reads: ‘Adonques le maistro de Rhodes et les capitaines de Lymasson se mirent tous ensamble.’

p. 142, l. 9. The ‘paeuys,’ according to Viollet-le-Duc, were large oval or square shields, chiefly carried by the crossbowmen. They did not come into use until the fourteenth century.

p. 155, l. 20. For the true version of the story of how Cyprus passed into the hands of Guy of Lusignan (not Urian, as the Romance says), see the Introduction. The *Itinerary of Richard Cœur de Lion*, by Vinsauf, is the authority relied on.

p. 159, l. 24. The ‘for to wete & know, for to here & know,’ is a double translation of the French phrase, ‘pour aller sçavoir.’

p. 159, l. 22. ‘fortres’ is plural here and on p. 160, l. 6.

p. 169, l. 13. ‘they ancrez’ translates ‘ilz desancrèrent.’

p. 169, l. 32. ‘them,’ i. e. their ships.

p. 171, l. 1. See page 129, *et seq.*

p. 176, foot of page. In John Stow’s *Survey of London* (W. J. Thom’s ed., 1842, p. 119), the cost of writing out the works of D. Nicholas de

Lira in two volumes is given at 100 marks = £66 13s. 4d. W. Stevenson, in his *Life of William Caxton* (p. 12), says that this sum most likely included the cost of the illuminations. The volumes may have been sumptuously bound, in which case comparatively little would be left for the copyist's work.

It is quite probable that the 17/8, written on the margin of the Melusine MS., may be a memorandum having no relation to the copyist's pay.

p. 178, l. 10. Modern economists would not approve of this summary way of treating forestallers. Adam Smith believed that the dread of witches and of forestallers were on a par.

p. 179, l. 28. The Fr. ver. has the following sentences after 'armanye':—'Et se il vous samble qu'elle n'en soit digne, si luy aidez à assener à quelque noble homme qui bien sache le pays gouverner et deffendre des enneimis de Jhesucrist. Or y vueillez pourvoir de remède convenable car à tout dire, se il vous plait, en la fin je vous fais mon heritier du royaume d'Armanie; mais pour l'amour de Dieu prenez en garde et ayez pitié de mon povre enfant, qui est orpheline dessolée de tout conseil et de tout confort, se vous lui faillez.' The nine succeeding lines of the English version, 28 to 36, are not represented in the French version published by Brunet.

p. 180, l. 8. After Guyon's address the Armenian lords reply in the French version: 'nostre seigneur le vous vueille meriter, qui vous doinct bonne vie et longue.'

p. 180, l. 31. The following paragraph is omitted in the English version:

'En ceste partie nous dist l'histoire que ceux de Caliz furent moult joyeulx quant ilz virent approucher la navire, car ja sçavoient les nouvelles que leur seigneur venoit, pour ce que les barons qui estoient allez en Chypre pour porter les lettres dont je vous ay fait mention par avant, leur avoient mandé toute la vérité, affin de ordonner et pourveoir de le recepvoir honnourablement; et y estoient tous les haultz barons du pays et les dames et damoiselles venues pour le festoier et honnouurer. A celle heure la pucelle Florie estoit à la maistresse tour, qui regretoit moult la mort de son père, et si avoit moult grant paour que le roy Urien ne le voulsist pas accorder à son frère, et estoit une cause qui moult luy angoissoit sa douleur. Mais adonques une damoiselle luy vint dire en ceste manière: Madainoiselle, on dist que ceux qui estoient allez en Chypre arriveront bien brief au port. De ces nouvelles fut Florie moult joyeuse, et vint à la fenestre, et regarda en la mer, et vit navires, gallées, et aultres grans vaisseaulx qui arrivoient au port, et oyt trompettes sonner, et pluiseurs aultres instruments de divers sons. Adonc fut la pucelle moult lie, et vindrent les barons du pays au port, et recepvoient moult honnourablement Guion et sa compagnie, et le menèrent à mont vers la pucelle, laquelle luy vint à l'encontre de luy. Et Guion la salua moult honnourablement en ceste manière: Ma damoiselle, comment a-il esté à vostre personne depuis que me partis d'icy? Et elle luy respondist moult amoureusement et dist: Sire, il ne peut estre gaires bien, car monseigneur mon père est nouvellement trespassé de ce mortel monde, dont je prie à nostre Seigneur Jhesucrist, par sa sainte grace et misericorde, qui luy face vray pardon à l'ame, et à tous aultres; mais, sire, comme povre orpheline je vous remercie et gracie tant humblement comme je puis des vaisseaulx que vous m'envoiaastes, et aussi de la grant richesse et avoir qui estoit dedans.'

p. 183, l. 25. Afterwards (p. 217) called Metydee.

p. 190, l. 11. This passage should be compared with that beginning on page 110, where Melusine gives parting advice to her two elder children, Urien and Guion.

p. 190, l. 34. Passages like this (see also p. 112) show that John of Arras pleaded for a more humane treatment of conquered provinces. He shows that even from selfish considerations a ruler should treat his people well (p. 112). It is true he does not directly condemn the marauding expeditions, which were the curse of the Middle Ages; but it should be noted that the sons of his heroine were always called to assist the oppressed. They never started out as mere plunderers. John of Arras was a forerunner of Rabelais in his condemnation of the barbarities of feudal warfare. He resembled Rabelais in character. It required considerable boldness for an officer of the Duke of Berry—one of the most rapacious plunderers of France—to make a stand against injustice.

p. 192, l. 20. Did the author of *Melusine* intend Anthony and Regnald's system of warfare to be an example to be followed by the Duke of Berry?

p. 202, l. 33. Fr. reads: 'le jeta si roidement encontre la terre que peu faillist que il ne lui crevast son cœur ou son ventre.'

p. 211, l. 2. It is interesting to note that all the kings in the Romance are constitutional kings. They are obliged to consult their barons before they enter into treaties or alienate land. (See pages 42, 211, 263.)

p. 214, l. 18. 'pruy Meyne,'—a private or select company or following.

p. 222, l. 29. Fr. reads: 'paiez pour huyt moys.'

p. 228, l. 13. 'Catell & goodes' translates 'biens.'

p. 229, l. 14, there is an omission after 'city.' The Fr. text reads: 'mais le roy Zelodus avoit fait armer ses gens et faisoit fort assaillir la cité, car grand desir avoit de la prendre, et ceulx de dedens se defendoient lachement, et bien le appercevoient les Sarrazins; et pour ce ilz assailloient tant plus vigoureusement. Et fut la besoigne mal allée quaut l'ancien chevalier vint qui bien apperceut la besoinge et la faible deffense de ceulx de dedens' (Brunet's ed., p. 254). The Fr. text then continues: 'A doncquesacheoa l'assault,' &c., as in the English version.

p. 233, l. 31. 'the moost vytypere' translates 'pour plus vituperer.'

p. 246, l. 6. Fr. 'Thierry.'

p. 246, l. 12. Fr. 'ung chevalier faye au maulvais esperit.'

p. 246, l. 13. The belief in Incubi and Succubi (demons who consort with men and women and engender children) was current in the time of John of Arras, and for long after. The fathers of the Church taught the doctrine, as can be seen from Augustine: 'It is so general a report, & so many auerre it either from their owne tryall or from others, that are of indubitable honesty & credit, that the Syluans and Fawnes, commonly called Incubi, haue often iniured women, desiring & acting carnally with them: and that certaine diuellis whom the Frenchmen [Gauls] call Dusies, do continually practise this vncleannessse, & tempt others to it; which is affirmed by such persons & with such confidence that it were impudence to deny it.'—*City of God*, Bk. XV, Cap. XXIII, ed. 1620, translated by J. H.

Lodovico Vives, in commenting upon this passage, says: 'There are a people at this day that glory that their descent is from the devils, who

visited women in the guise of men, and men in the guise of women. This in my conceit is viler than to draw a man's pedigree from pirates, thieves, or famous bullies, as many do. The Egyptians say that the devils can only accompany carnally with women and not with men.'

The following quotation from Michael Psellus, a Byzantine savant of the eleventh century, explains the mediæval ideas on this subject. The text is from a translation by Pierre Moreau Touranio, published in 1576: 'Or me suis-ie trouué quelque-fois avec vn moine, en la Cherronese de Mesopotamie, lequel apres avoir esté spectateur & cōjurateur des phātosmes diaboliques, autant ou plus expert en cela, que nul autre, depuis il les a mesprisē & abiurez, comme vains & friuoles, & en ayant fait amende honorable, s'est retiré au gyron de l'Eglise, & a fait professiō de nostre foy seule vraye, & Catholique: laquelle il a soigneusemēt appris de moy. Ce moine donc me dit alors & declara plusieurs choses absurdes & diaboliques. Et de fait, m'estant quelque-fois enquis de luy, s'il y a quelques diables patibles: ouy vrayement, dit-il, comme on dit aussi, qu'aucuns d'iceux iettent semence, & engendrent d'icelle des verms. Si est-ce chose incroyable, luy dis-ie lors, que les diables ayent aucuns excremēs, ny membres spermatiques, ny vitaulx. Vray est, respondit-il, qu'ils n'ont tels, membres, si est-ce toutefois qu'ils iettent hors ie ne scay quel excrement & superfluité, croyez hardiment ce que ie vous en dis. Dea, luy dis-ie lors, il y auroit danger qu'ils fussent alimentez & nourriz de mesme nous. Ils sont nourriz, respondit frere Marc, les vns d'inspiration, comme l'esprit qui est aux arteres & nerfs, les autres d'humidité: mais non par la bouche, comme nous, ains comme esponges & huistres attirent à soy l'humidité adiacente exterieurement. Puis iettent hors ceste latente & secrete semence. A quoy ils ne sont tous subiects, ains seulement les diables qui sont enclins à quelque matiere, sçauoir est, ou celuy qui hait la lumiere, le tenebreux, l'aquatique, & tous soubterrains.'—Psellus, *De l'energie or operation des diables* (leaf 19 b, et seq.), ed. 1576.

In Ambroise Paré's collection (died 1590), livre xix, ch. 30, we read: 'Or quant à moy ie croy que ceste pretendue cohabitation est imaginaire procedante d'une impression illusoire de Satan . . . car à l'execution de cet acte, la chair et le sang sont requis, ce que les esprits n'ont pas.'

Fuller accounts of the ancient opinions on Incubi and Succubi will be found in Iohn Wierus, *De Prestigiis dæmonum*, 1569 and 1579, and in Jean Bodin's *Refutation of Wierus*, 1593.

Modern thought ascribes the belief in Incubi & Succubi to Dreams, see E. B. Tylor: 'From dreans are avowedly formed the notions of incubi and succubi, those nocturnal demons who consort with women and men in their sleep. From the apparent distinctness of their evidence these beings are of course well known in savage demonology, and in connection with them there already arises among uncultured races the idea that children may be engendered between spirits and human mothers. (See Martin, *Mariner's Tonga Islands*.) For an ancient example of the general belief in this class of demons, no better could be chosen than that of the early Assyrians, whose name for a succubus, "lilit," evidently gave rise to the Rabbinical tale of Adam's demon wife Lilith. (See Lenormant, *La magie chez les Chaldéens*.) The literature of mediæval sorcery abounds in mentions of this belief, of which the absurd pseudo-philosophical side comes well into view in the chapter of Delrio (Lib. II, quæsto 15): "An sint unquam dæmones incubi et succubæ, et an ex tali congressu proles nasci queat?" But its serious side is shown by the accusation of consorting with such demons being one of the main charges in the infamous bull

of Innocent VIII., which brought judicial torture and death upon so many thousands of wretched so-called witches. (See Roskoff, *Geschichte des Teufels.*) It further throws light on demonology, that the frightful spectres seen in such affections as delirium tremens have of course been interpreted as real demons.'

p. 253, l. 19. 'hym,' i.e. Claude of Syon.

p. 264, l. 16. 'concernyng' here means 'compared with.' Fr. phrase is 'envers la puissance.'

p. 273, l. 31. Jaffa changed hands several times in the 4th Crusade, 1196.

p. 279, l. 34. 'ye shal not haue them for so good chep,' i.e. 'You will not overcome them as easily as you think.' Fr. reads: 'Vous n'aurez pas si bon marché.'

p. 281, l. 33. Fr. 'tout le couert.'

p. 282, l. 18. Fr. 'tout couertement.'

p. 287, l. 11: 'Si cum li cerfs s'en vait devant les chiens,
Devant Rollant si s'en fuent Païen.'

La Chanson de Roland, ll. 1874-5.

p. 290, l. 7. 'cours' translates 'se reculèrent.' 'There reforced the batayll [et souffrissent cristiens moult grant affaire], and with that cours [retires] the cristien,' &c.

p. 291, l. 3. 'sarasynts' in Fr. text is 'Turcs.'

p. 295, l. 9, page 32.

p. 296, l. 6. 'esperit fae.'

p. 297, l. 5. 'qnaque à harenc' = a herring barrel.

p. 303, l. 3. 'ung flayal de plomp à trois chainnes.' The flail was rarely used in France. The MSS. of the 12th and 14th centuries show it very seldom (*Viollet-le-Duc*).

p. 309, l. 19. The date of the ravaging of the Abbey of Mailleres by Geoffray with the Great Tooth was 1232.

p. 312, l. 8. Coudrette makes the Castle of Vouvant the scene of the catastrophe. *The Romans of Partenay*, E. E. T. S. ed., line 3453.

p. 314, l. 26. 'Si quelqu'un aussi se fendoit sur la non vérissimilitude de tant d'aventures, enchantements, de la flûte d'un roi Oberon, tant de somptueux palais soudainement se perdant et évanouissant, et du cheval de Pacolet, qui est encore plus en ça, d'une Mélusine, de Merlin ; je lui répondrai que le christianisme étant pour lors bien peu avancé aux contrées de par deçà, le diable avoit beau jeu à faire ses besognes, essayant, en tant qu'est en lui, nous empêcher et divertir du vrai service de Dieu, par ses inqueries et illusions ; et, gagnant toujours pays, allant de pied en pied, a si bien fait cet esprit calomniateur, que d'eteindre, en ce qu'il a pu, le nom de notre Seigneur Jésus-Christ, et icelui obscurcir et cacher aux hommes.' — *Contes d'Eutrapel*, by Noël du Fail, 1548.

p. 315, l. 2. The theory that anger is the work of demons is hinted at by the Byzantine Psellus. This writer declares that there are six varieties of demons: Leliurium, or fiery, haunting the upper atmosphere, Aërial the lower atmosphere, Earthy, Aqueous, Subterranean, and Luciferus, the lowest class of all. The aërial and earthy enter into the soul of man, and urge him to all kinds of lawless thoughts and deeds. If a Luciferus obtain an entrance into man it makes him ungovernable. The

Lucifugus is devoid of intellect, is ruled by whim, and is regardless of reproof. The possessed person can only be saved by divine assistance.

There is an old saying : ‘via furor brevis est.’

p. 318, l. 12. ‘Vernon’; Fr. ‘Warnont.’

p. 318, l. 23. French text adds: ‘car certainement il destruiroit tout ce que j’ay ediffie, ne jamais guerres ne fauldroient au pays de Poetou ne Guienne.’

p. 319, l. 27: ‘nessun maggior dolore,
Che ricordarsi del tempo felice
Nella miseria.’—Dante, *Inferno*, Canto V.

p. 321, l. 19. There is a legend that Melusine flew to the caves of Sassenage in Dauphiny, natural hollows in the mountain which lie at the back of Grenoble, and made her abode there. N. Chorier, in his *Histoire Générale de Dauphiné*, describes these caverns: ‘Les grotte de Sassenage ne font pas moins digne d'estre contemplée. Lvne est d'vne grandeur incroyable, & elle gette de l'horreur dans les ames les plus ferme. En l'autre ces cuves si célèbres, & dans la troisième est vne table de pierre, que l'on appelle communement la table de Melusine. C'est l'opinion d'un grand personnage que les nymphes y estoient reverées autrefois d'un culte particulier.’ ‘Estienne Barlet fait passer pour vne vérité ce qu'il raconte d'une autre. Il dit qu'apres que l'on y est entré par vn long & difficile chemin, on y voit distinctement des choses estranges. Un roy y paroist assis dans vn thrône, la couronne à la teste & des thresors infinis a ses pieds. Il adjoûte que l'on croit que les fées, ou ces nymphes que les Grecs nominent les Oreades, y ont habité, & qu'ayant eu longtemps de la peine à le croire, il en a esté à fin persuadé. Cette caverne n'est pas fort éloignée de Montcluz, mais ce que l'on en dit l'est beaucoup de la vérité.’—Lib. I, Cap X.

p. 336, l. 8. Montserrat (mons serratus) rises abruptly from the plain of Catalonia. The ridge of peaks makes it look from a distance like an enormous saw. There are a number of natural caverns in the rock. A monastery was founded at Montserrat in the tenth century. The legend tells that one evening the shepherds of Olea heard celestial music as they tended their sheep. While they listened they saw a bright light among the rocks. The Bishop of Manresa hearing of their vision, resolved to ascend the mountain. He found there an image of the Virgin, made of black wood. It was recognized as the statue that had been sculptured by St. Luke, and brought to Spain by St. Peter. He erected a chapel near where he found the image. A few years afterwards the Count of Barcelona built a convent on the spot, and appointed his daughter Abbess. Later the building passed into the hands of the Benedictines. The Virgin's image worked miracles, and an immense number of pilgrims were drawn to the shrine. The ascent to the chapel was very difficult, and it was regarded as a very meritorious task. The kings of Aragon, Castile, and Navarre enriched the foundation. New buildings were added from time to time. At the wars at the end of last century the Spaniards turned the monastery into a fortress. The French captured it, and when they blew up the fortifications much damage was done to ancient portions of the buildings.

The hermitages are now in ruins, and the ascent to them is very difficult. They were all built on the same plan. Each had an antechamber, a cell with a recess, a study, a kitchen, and a plot of garden with a chapel. The hermits took a vow to die on the mountain. They followed an austere rule, and lived on vegetables and a little salt fish.

Their only amusement was carving little wooden crosses for the pilgrims who visited their cells.

It was at Montserrat, in the Church of the Virgin, that Ignatius Loyola vowed constant obedience to God and the Church, on the Vigil of the Annunciation, 1522.—*Visite au Montserrat*, by G. de Lavigne.

p. 337, l. 9. Fr. 'Culbaton.' The village of Collbató is the starting-point now-a-days for Montserrat.

p. 340, l. 8. Geoffray visited Pope Gregory IX. in 1233. Before he left France he made restitution to some of those he had wronged, as the letter dated 1232, still extant, proves: 'To all who shall see these letters. Geoffroi de Leziniem, Vicomte of Châtellerault, lord of Voluent and Mayreuent, salut éternel.

'You know that I am about to journey to the court of Rome, to put an end to my differences with the church of Maillezais. I wished to satisfy to the best of my ability, before my departure, all who have claims against me, especially such as are in holy orders.'

'Geoffroi, Abbot of Absie, having heard of my will, has demanded restitution for damages done, and losses and injuries that I and my father have caused to the Abbey of Absie.'

'I have learnt, from the testimony of men worthy of belief, that these claims are just; and for the salvation of my soul, and of my father's soul, I have satisfied the said abbot, 1232.'—From Thibaudeau's *Histoire de Poitou*.

p. 368, l. 18. Coudrette's versification of the Romance carries the fortunes of the Armenian kings to Leo VI., the last of the line, who died at Paris in 1393. This king was driven from his throne by the successful arms of the Egyptians. He was taken prisoner, and obtained his release through the good offices of John of Castile. Leo VI. visited Spain, where he was received as a champion of the Christian faith, and the King of Castile allowed him a pension of 150,000 maravedis. He afterwards travelled to France, where he was kindly received by Charles VI. A pension of 6,000 francs was granted to him there. Leo came over to England, where his reception was as warm as in Spain and Portugal. He obtained an English pension in addition to those from Spain and France. Leo VI. was a far-sighted man. He wanted to bring about a permanent peace between France and England, and he told the rulers of both countries that the only way that the Mahomedan arms could be checked in the East was by the aid of a united West. Unfortunately, his wise policy was rejected, and the rivalries of the kings of Christendom lost some of the fairest lands of Europe to the followers of Mahomet. Leo VI. told the King of France that Amurath aimed at being crowned at Rome, and that he had sent an expedition out with that purpose, which was annihilated by a stratagem of the King of Hungary.

'Thay lost ther lande and all ther honour,
Inclinynge and comyng vnto mischaunce.
On of thes kynges cam to Fraunce þat houre,
So fro hermeny chaced into Fraunce.
Full long the kyng ther gaf hym sustinance.
At Parys died as happned the cas,
At the Celestines entered he was.'—l. 5685.

After the death (29th Nov. 1393) of Leo VI. the title of King of Armenia was assumed by James I. of Cyprus. Neither James I. nor any of his successors ever reconquered the country.

p. 370, l. 5. Yuon, Yvain, Owen, or Evan of Wales claimed to be the rightful heir of the kingdom of Wales, and the French king treated him as such. Yuon was a favourite of John the Good, King of France, and took a part along with the French in the battle of Poitiers. When peace was made between England and France, Ynon went to Lombardy, where he remained until the war was renewed. In the reign of Charles V. he held a number of commands. He led an expedition of Welsh knights against Guernsey. His hope was that he would be able to reconquer Wales. Charles V. assisted him with money and supplies, but he was unable to land in Wales. He took part in the expedition of Bertand du Guesclin in Spain. On his return to France he won some victories over the English. Froissart says that he was greatly hated in England on account of his claims to the Welsh crown, and for his treatment of his English prisoners, some of whom he would not allow to be ransomed. Yuon fell a victim to treason. He took into his service a James Lambe, a knight who represented himself to be a Welsh exile. He appointed this man his chamberlain. When Yuon was before Mortagne (1378), directing the siege against the English garrison, he was assassinated by James Lambe, who fled to the English camp, where he received protection. Yuon was buried at the church of St. Leger with great pomp.

**LIST OF PROVERBS IN THE ROMANCE OF
MELUSINE.**

The loue of ladyes causeth peyne & traneyll to the amerous louers, and deth to horses, 56.

Old synne reneweth shame, 79.

Such weneth to auenge his shame that encreassith it, 93.

It is euyl companye of a traytour, 97.

Good it is to shette the stable before the hors be lost, 97 and 184.

Wel fole is he that fighthe ayenst the wynd wenying to make hyin be styll, 107.

Long taryeng quenchith moch the vertu of the yeste, 111.

Yf the peple is pouere, the lord shall be vnhappy, 112.

A flyes of a yere is more prouffytable than a flyes that is shorne twyes or thryes a yere, 112.

In long treatee lyeth sometyme grete falshed, 113.

Wyso men goo abacke for to lepe the ferther, 113.

One grayne of peper alone smertith more on mans tonge, than doth a sacke full of whete, 128.

Victorye also lyeth not in grette multitude of people, but in good rule & ordynance, 128.

Goodnes & bounte is betre than fayrenes & beaulte, 138.

All is not yet lost that lyeth in parell, 147.

Who lerneth not his crafte in his yougthe, with grete peyne & hard it shal be for him to be a good werkeman in his old age, 193.

That God doth, he done anone, 203.

Whan the yron is hoot it moste be wrought & forged, 211.

Of two euylls men ought to choose the lasse, whan nedes muste one be had, 237.

Bettre is to haue more of prouffyt & lasse honour, 238.

A lytel rayne leyeth doun grete wynd, 247.

That the fole thinketh of tymes cometh to foly, 255.

The fole proposeth & god dysposeth, 265.

He that menaceth is sometyme in grete fer & dredo hymself, & aftirward ouerthraven, 279.

Bettre it is to flee, than to abyde a folyssh enterpryse, 288.

Thing neuer bygonne hath neuer ende, 304.

In euery thing most be bygynnyng tofore the ende cometh, 304.

He that gyueth the first strokes dooth not the batayll, but he that reuengeth hym bryngeth it to effect, 368.

GLOSSARY.

Words in Italics are the corresponding words of the French version, Ch. Brunel's Edition 1854. Cot. = Cotgrave's French Dictionary.

Abhomyned, page 311, abominated.	amerous, 56, amorous.
aborde, 71, waited.	amongis, 27, amongst.
absteyn, 16, abstain.	amyable, 275, friendly.
abused, 7, beguiled.	an, 90, one.
abyssmes, 5, abysses.	ancres, 114, anchors.
accorded, 213, agreed.	anenst, 21, against.
acompte, 356, account.	ansuerde, 10, answered.
acoyntaunce, 71, acquaintance.	ante, 367, aunt.
acoyn্তে, 190, become familiar ; acoyn্তed, 205.	antecessours, 330 (<i>antecesseurs</i>), pre- decessors.
adiouste, 16, adjust.	aourned, 51, 53 (<i>aourne</i>), attired.
admounested, 228, warned ; ad- mounestyng, 287.	aparteyned, 20, belonged.
adommage, 32, harin ; adommaged, 182.	apas, 27, apace.
adrecyd, 226, directed.	apayed, 111, 192, pleased.
aduyronned, 123, surrounded.	appareylled, 118, made ready.
aduys, 71 (<i>avis</i>), opinion.	apparysshing, 369, appearing.
affeblysshid, 241, became depressed, lost spirit.	apperceynued, 230, 324, observed.
affectually, 148 (<i>humblement</i>), earn- estly.	appert, 125, expert.
affettuously, 159, affectionately.	appertly, 131, promptly (Cot.).
affyaunce, 324 (<i>fiance</i>), assurance, trust.	appertyse, 83, deeds.
affyns, 89 (<i>proesmes</i>), near relatives.	appiere, 15 ; appyeren, 4, appear.
affrayenge, 10, fearing.	arblaster, 289, men who worked the arblastes, machines for throw- ing missiles.
afraiyed, 28, frightened.	archegaye, 226 (<i>archegacie</i>), dart.
agree, 259, accept.	ardaunt, 142, burning.
aigre, 298, harsh.	argued, 150 (<i>argue</i>), perplexed.
albaster, 328, alabaster.	arregarde, 132, rearguard.
alez, 218, allies ; alyed, 92.	arsouns, 286, saddle-bows.
algaf, 300, although (lit. al if).	aspre, 145, fierce.
allegeaunce, 335, relief.	asprefly, 132, fiercely.
almese, 106 ; almesses, 321, charity.	aspyle, 117, spy.
allowed, 200, lowered.	aspyracion, 315, respiration.
altogidre, 41, altogether.	assayed, 171, attested.
ambaxade, 183, embassy.	assoted, 12, infatuated.
	assurest, 171, boldest.
	astonyed, 202, astonished.
	astromy, 20, astronomy.

astronomyens, 323, astronomers.
 asuryd, 156 (*fiance*), betrothed.
 auantgarde, 174, vanguard.
 auauntyng, 11, boasting.
 auctoures, 3, authors.
 auncyent, 4, ancient.
 auoulyre, 296, adultery.
 awondred, 50, wondered.
 awter, 344, alter.
 axe, 41, ask.
 axez, 299, attack of fever.
 ayen, 180, again.

 Bake, 9, back.
 bare, 351, bore.
 barers, 124; barreres, 63 (*braies*), defences.
 bassade, 308, embassy.
 bassecourt, 300, inner court of a castle.
 basyn, 8, mug.
 basynets, 123, helmetted men.
 batayll, 289, battalion.
 batayllous, 246 (*bataillereux*), given to fighting.
 beaulte, 7, beauty.
 beed, 148, bed.
 begonne, 12, begun.
 behauf, 17, use.
 behel, 282, beheld.
 behighte, 111, 190, promise, promised.
 beryng, 8, bearing.
 besily, 3, busily.
 betoke, 110, committed.
 bewte, 7, beauty.
 bigge, 86, build.
 bigynne, 17, begin.
 bilded, 17; bylded, 6, builded.
 bode, 18, bid.
 bourgeys, 206; burgeys, 151, burghers.
 braunche, 23, branch.
 braundysshed, 145, brandished.
 brede, 41, breadth.
 brenne, 17; brenne, 4; brennyng, 184, to burn.
 brigh, 266, bright.
 brochie, 21, pierce.
 broched, 130, spurred.
 broded, 53; browded, 81, embroidered.
 bruled, 234, burnt.
 bruyt, 251, noise.

brygandyners, 128, men wearing brigandines, canvas coats covered with iron plates or iron rings.
 buffet, 303, blow.
 busshe, 284, ambush.
 butyn, 146, booty.
 bycommé, 4, gone to.
 bye, 39, buy.
 bygoten, 6, begotten.
 bynethé, 22, beneath.

 Caas, 128, cause.
 candelstykes, 17, candlesticks.
 carrykes, 109, cargo ships.
 caruell, 117, a light ship.
 eas, 11, case.
 castel, 15, castle.
 castellayne, 92, castellan.
 catholica^H, 215, catholic.
 causer, 89, originator.
 cepter, 179, scepter.
 cerched, 330, searched.
 certfyen, 3, to certify.
 cesse, 155, cease.
 chaffed, 22, excited, vexed.
 champaynes, 100, open fields.
 chanoyne, 40, canon.
 chappen, 193, shapen.
 charyte, 12, charity.
 chasse, 20, chace.
 chaunfreyn, 84 (*gauffrain d'acier*), the headpiece of a barbed horse (Halliwell).
 chayere, 82, chair.
 cheredyd, 98, treated.
 cheuaunce, 155 (*cherance*), achievement.
 cheuyaunce, 264, promise.
 cheyned, 177, chained.
 childed, 104, gave birth to.
 chirch, chirche, 36, church.
 cleme, 142, climb.
 clemme, 25, climb.
 clepen, 187, called; clepid, 245, named.
 cleue, 26, cleave.
 clos, 118 (*clos*), enclosure, 267.
 cluble, 303, club.
 cohortacion, 97, company.
 cohorte, 97, company.
 coler, 53, collar.
 collige, 369, collect.
 commevyd, 123; commonyd, 154, excited.

communyked, 291, talked.
 commynalte, 184 (*communes*), com-
 mons.
 comparacion, 17, comparison.
 compleyned, 12, complained.
 complices, 96, accomplices.
 condampned, 68, condemned.
 condyciou, 14, condition.
 congie, 301, leave.
 conne, 12, to be able.
 connynge, 2, cunning, knowledge.
 conspiracion, 75, conspiracy.
 constreynd, 7, constrained.
 contrefaytte, 135, deformed.
 contynue, 299 (*continue*), prolonged
 attack.
 conuenable, 40, convenient.
 convers, 100, menials.
 convyne, 133, 142, 172 (*commune*) ?
 assembly, militia, soldiery.
 conyns, 261, rabbits.
 corset, 84, a cloth coat worn over
 the cuirass.
 coste, 134, disbursement.
 costes, 268, coasts, shores.
 cotidiane, 100, daily.
 cotte, 129, coat.
 coude, 7, could, was able ; 20, knew.
 couenaunce, 5, covenant.
 couert, 254, 257, 281, 282, covert,
 concealed way.
 couerly, 262, obscurely, secretly.
 couetyse, 87, covetous.
 coule, 168, cool.
 couloure, 4, colour.
 courcer, 9, courser.
 cours, 15, course ; cours, 290, rush.
 courteyns, 57, curtains.
 coyffe, 250 (*coiffe*), head-dress.
 coynted, 315, comely.
 eradelles, 4, cradles.
 eramesyn, 205, crimson.
 cronykle, 6, chronicle.
 cryded, 82, cried, shouted.
 euree, 99, entrails, quarry.
 curtoysye, curtoisye, 9, courtesy.
 cyrurgyens, 288, surgeons.

 Dalt, 177, divided.
 damoyseau, 163 ; damoyseaulx (pl.),
 125, youth.
 dampned, 339, damned.
 daw sole (*damp musart*). French
 text means Sir Fool or Sir

Thoughtless, "damp" being
 equivalent to the O.E. Dan, as :
 "Dan" Chaucer. *daw sole* may
 mean "melancholy" fool ; see
 Bradley's *Stratmann's M. E. Dic-*
tionary, under "dau."
 debonnaire, 190, gentle.
 deceneryd, 169, ? unfurled their
 sails.
 deceez, 356, decease.
 dede, 321, caused ; dede, 323, deed ;
 dede, 12, did.
 deeple, 190, divide.
 deeling, 111, bearing.
 def, 29, deaf.
 defawte, 345, default.
 delyt, 333, misdemeanour.
 demanded, 20, related.
 demened, 80, 125, 136, depressed ;
 demeneth, 147, conducted.
 demesurably, 132, greatly, immeas-
 urably.
 demysed, 87 (*s'en est deffait*), got
 rid of.
 denounced, 188, declared.
 departed, 116, divided.
 departement, 98, departure.
 despyt, 234, contempt.
 desray, 123, disorder.
 destraytte, 336 (*levellon et le pertuys*),
 ? district, or territory.
 destrier, 81 ; destrer, 82, horse.
 detrenched, 146, hacked.
 deuel, 234 (*doeul*) ; dueytt, 237,
 mourning.
 deuoyre, 82, duty.
 deuyses, 67, told.
 deuyses, 348, talks.
 dey, 15, die.
 diches, 88, ditches.
 distourned, 55, turned aside.
 do, 321 ; doo, 239 ; doon, 13, 26,
 cause to.
 dogge, 21, dog.
 dolaunt, 312, doleful.
 doleur, 305, dolor.
 dombe, 29, dumb.
 dome, 13, doom.
 dominage, 145 (*dommaige*), harm.
 don, 118 (*donne*), given.
 dongeon, 300, main tower of a
 castle, donjon.
 doubtid, 1, feared.
 doubtful, 193, fearful.

doughtir, 11, daughter.
doun, 13, down.
dowbed, 18, dubbed.
dresse, 30; dressed, 21, direct,
turned.
dressyng, 155 (*adressant*), address-
ing.
duc, 6, duke.
duchery, 214, duchy.
dueil, 138; dueyl, 216, mourning.
dysempare, 215, dethrone.
dypsens, 148, outlay.
dysployed, 119, 230, unfurled, dis-
played.
dysporte, 77, 98, sport; dysported,
304, enjoyed.
dyspoyle, 136, pillage.
dyspreyse, 113, contemn.
dyspytous, 29 (*despiteux*), angry,
spiteful.
dyssymyle, 113, dissimulate.
dystourne, 26 (*destourneray*), turn
away; distoured, 83.

Eche, 17, each.
effounded, 286, cut into.
egaly, 146, equally.
emonge, 118, among.
empeche, 39, prevent.
empechement, 279, hindrance.
empossesse, 99; empocesse, 333, put
in possession.
emprysed, 81, undertaken.
ench, 83, inch.
encheson, 65, motive.
encres, 337; encresse, 32, increase.
encysed, 62, cut.
endenuoyre, 152; endeavour; en-
deuoyred, 157.
endoctryne, 55, instruct.
enfourmed, 308, informed.
enharnashed, 9, accounted.
enjurons, 66, injurious.
enlyberte, 99, liberate.
ensiew, 184, follow.
ensured, 68 (*asseuroit*), assured.
entamed, 211, 299, broached.
entaylled, 50, carved.
entende, 1, to give heed.
entendeineint, 369, understanding.
entent, 91, intent, purpose.
ententyfly, 70, attentively.
enterprenaunt, 122, enterprising.
enterprysed, 12, undertaken.

entretemete, 63 (*se meslera*), inter-
meddle.
entreteyne, 239, keep up.
enuahisshing, 138 (*envaye*); enua-
hysshed, 147; enuahye, 201, as-
sault.
envertued, 200 (*se envertuoit*),
strengthened.
eny, 16, any.
erable, 99, arable.
erle, 6, earl.
eschewed, 145, avoided; 170,
rescued.
escrewyd, 77, 115, p.p. of escrien, to
call to.
escuse, 258, excuse; 10, excused.
eslongyd, 133 (*eslongerent*), separ-
ated.
espirytuel, 371, spiritual.
esprised, 11, 34 (*surpris*), overtaken.
esprouned, 224 (*esprouvoient*), tried.
esprysed, 77 (*espris*), smitten.
espyes, 193, spies.
esquier, 248, squire.
essaye, 192, try.
estimated, 117, estimated.
estraungers, 178, strangers.
estymacion, 266, estimate.
euerche, 320; eueryche, 154, every.
euerychon, 38, every one.
ewrous, 244 (*eureux*), lucky, happy.
excusacion, 107, excuse.
exercyed, 224, exercised.
exploited, 123 (*exploita*), worked;
81, fought; 289, acted.
eyled, 299, ailed.

Facion, 225, build, make.
fader, 7, father.
faict, 13; faitt, 71; faytte, 119;
fayt, 312, deed.
falslied, 13; falsed, 315, falsehood;
fals, 12.
fan, 65 (Latin *vannus*), a corn win-
nowing fan or sieve.
fantosme, 311, phantom.
fasted, 44, fastened.
fautesye, 4, 31, fantasy.
fawte, 57 (verb), fail; 196, wrong;
58 (noun), failure.
feith, 24, faith.
fel, 134, 200, fierce, cruel.
fellowship, 8, fellowship.
fer, 60, far; ferre, 327.

ferder, 332, further.
 ferfourth, 106, widely.
 fest, 19, feast; festyed, 98, feasted;
 feste, 8, rejoicing.
 festyed, 368 (*batu*), thrashed.
 fette, 251; fete, 213, fetch.
 feynted, 66, faint.
 feynyngly, 28, pretending.
 flayel, 303 (*flayel*), a baton carrying
 a lump of iron attached by a
 chain.
 flawgh, 321, flew; flougue, 321.
 flemed, 112, fled.
 florysshed, 13 (*florie*), flowered.
 flote, 268, fleet.
 flies, 112, fleece.
 fole, 24, fool.
 fore, 184, early.
 foreby, 251, past.
 forsaytte, 315 (*fourfait*), crime.
 forgate, 7, forgot.
 forwayed, 101, wandered, lost.
 foundatours, 368, founders.
 foundement, 62 (*fondament*), found-
 ation.
 founys, 172 (*font*), bed.
 fourme, 17, form.
 foursenyd, 315 (*enforcenez*), furious,
 enraged.
 fourueyeth, 76, wanders.
 fowel, 206, foul.
 fownd, 103, founded.
 foynyng, 67, thrusting.
 foysom, 21 (*foison*), abundance.
 fro, 3, from.
 fuldoo, 1, accomplish.
 fullyssh, 149, 208, fully.
 fumyer, 278, smoke.
 fust, 85, fist.
 fuste, 116, a rowing and sailing ship.
 fyauunce, 257, trust.
 fyers, 17, fierce.
 fyerste, 118, boldness.
 fyl, 321, fell.
 fyn, 331, end.
 fynaunce, 17 (*finance*), ready money.
 fyreylon, 23, flint and steel.
 Gadre, 266, gather.
 gaf, 19, gave.
 galyote, 167; little galley; galyotte,
 118.
 gan, 22, began.
 garnysons, 135, garrisons.

garnysshed, 184, 230, furnished,
 adorned.
 gate, 203, got, obtained.
 gaynstode, 137, withstood.
 geaunt, 17, giant.
 gendred, 246, begotten.
 gent, 8, gentle.
 gerdell, 53, girdle.
 gerland, 59, garland, wreath.
 gestes, 369, histories.
 glanched, 77, glanced.
 gobelyns, 4, goblins.
 gonnes, 115, guns.
 good cheip, 279, 282 (*bon marche*),
 easy mastery.
 gorgeret, 175, a piece of armour to
 protect the throat.
 gramaire, 370, grammar.
 gramercy, 9, great thanks.
 grauntfader, 19, grandfather.
 gree, 109, 121, favour, will, pleasure.
 gree, take in, 2, agree to.
 greef, 13, grief.
 gret, grett, 7, great.
 greve, 130, injure.
 guerdon, 204, reward.
 gyfte, 15, gift.
 Haake, 20, hawk.
 haboundonne, 99, give up.
 habundauntly, 228, abundantly.
 halid, 161, hauled.
 halowed, 158, blessed.
 handlyng, 65 (*manilles*), handles.
 hap, 15; happ, 5, 12 (noun), luck,
 chance.
 happe, 4; happed, 5; haped, 118
 (verb), to happen.
 hardyly, 10; hardyly, 231, boldly.
 harneys, 115, armour.
 hauen, 118 (*clos*), haven.
 haunce, 112; enhuunce, 325, raised.
 haunted, 113, practised.
 hanoyr, 67, goods.
 haused, 166 (*getter*), lowered over-
 board.
 hawtepeyce, 145; haulte piece, 325,
 helmet.
 heest, 21,
 helige, 21, hang.
 helmets, 199, 251 (*bassines*), fighting
 men.
 henne, 211, hen.
 hens fourthon, 17, henceforth.

herberowed, 70, harboured.
 herde, 7, heard.
 here, 2, hear.
 herke, 317, harken.
 herte, 9, hart; hert, 39.
 heued vp, 24, raised.
 heure, 146, hour.
 heuyer, 35, heavier.
 heyer, 66, heir.
 hit, 7, it.
 hold, 190, keep.
 hott, 302, whole.
 holped, 46, helped.
 honestly, 73, worthily.
 hontous, 238, ashamed.
 hool, 361, whole.
 hoop, 36, hope.
 hores, 177, oars.
 hors, 10, horse.
 hourys son, 300, whore's son.
 hurted, 25, p.p. of hurten, to rush
 against.
 hurtelyd, 95 (*hurta*), pushed.
 hydouse, 315, hideous.
 hye, 76 (*hault*), aloud; 94, high.
 hyerid, 134, hired.
 hyndre, 24, hynder.

Impetred, 14, procured (Cot.).
 importable, 153, unbearable.
 incontynent, 276, immediately.
 indigned, 262, made indignant.
 unfortunate, 16, unfortunate.
 jugge, 15, judge.
 iuggement, 3; judgement, 15, judg-
 ment.
 Iung, 16, June.

Jacke, 205 (*Jaques*), coat.
 jape, 79, jest.
 journey, iourney, 291, a fixed date.
 jugge, 317, judge.
 justiser, 97, justiciary.

Kennyng, 104 (*Veues*), far sight,
 extent of vision. Cotgrave trans-
 lates "kenne": *voir de loin*.
 Motteux (*Rabelais*, Bk. IV, cap.
 22) translates "ne sommes pas
 loing de port" by "within a ken-
 ning."

kepe, 112, gnard.
 kele, 28, churl.
 kerued, 17, carved.

keruyng, 43, carving, cutting;
 kerued, 50.
 knowleche, 2, knowledge; know-
 leched, 96.
 konne, 108, show.
 kychons, 50, kitchens.
 kymbyng, 297, combing.
 kynge, 6, king.
 kynne, 90, kin.
 kynrede, 24, kindred.
 kyst, 78 (*jetta*), cast.
 Langing, 136, longing.
 large, 111, liberal.
 largenes, 111, liberality.
 launche, 123, hurl; launchid, 94,
 rushed.
 lawghe, 272; lawhe, 101, laugh.
 lawimentyng, 147, lamenting.
 lectuary, 247 (*electuaire*), electuary.
 leder, 39; leeder, 357, leather.
 lefte, 286, lifted.
 legge, 99; leghe, 129; leghis (pl.),
 194, league.
 leghe, 294 (*lieue*), place.
 leghes, 353, legs.
 lepe, 10, leap.
 les, 22, lest.
 leser, 144 (*loisir*), leisure.
 lette, 10, delay; late (imp.) let, 20;
 letted, 196.
 leued, 23, left; leve, 33, leave.
 leuyed, 135, levied.
 leyd, 34, laid.
 leyser, 277, leisure.
 locucion, 20, circumlocution.
 lodgis, 119, lodgings.
 lost, 147, faith.
 lustis, 320, pleasures.
 lyf, 7, life.
 lyfiod, 108; lyuelod, 31 (*terrien*),
 landholding.
 lygeauns, 338, allegiance.
 lyghtly, 300, quickly.
 lykwyse, 15, likewise.
 lynee, 6, line.
 lyuere, 275, give.

Mache colyd, 63, 103, parapeted,
 holes are left in the parapets to
 pour out molten lead, &c.
 machined, 96; machyned, 68, ma-
 chinated.
 maculate, 299, blemished.

mageste, 1, majesty.
 magre, 142, inaure.
 maister, 1, master.
 manded, 73 (*manda*), sent for.
 mandement, 153, 183, mandate,
 cominandment.
 manoyr, 100, mansion.
 marches, 183, districts.
 maronner, 268, marinier.
 maryage, 16, marriage.
 mate, 147, dull (*mat*), dejected ;
 mated, 216.
 mayllet, 329, mallet.
 maynten, 126, bearing.
 medled, 132, mingled.
 medowe, 5, meadow.
 meney, 9, retinue.
 mercy, 71, thank ; mercedyd, 90.
 meruaylle, 11, marvel.
 meryte, 15, merit.
 meschaunt, 302, wicked.
 mesprysed, 79, calumniated.
 messagery, 69, corps of messengers,
 embassy.
 messe, 54, dish.
 metes, 38, meats.
 meued, 122 ; mevyd, 8 ; menyd, 21
 (*mue*), stirred up.
 meure, 160, mature.
 meyne, 23, men ; meney, 9, 280,
 company.
 moche, 6, much.
 moder, 14, mother.
 mone shyn, 22, moonshine.
 moneth, 208, month.
 morow, 361, morning.
 most, 29, must.
 moustre, 165, muster.
 mowe, 23, be able.
 musarde, 29 (*musart* from *muser*; to
 loiter), dawdler.
 myddes, 54, midst.
 mynnsshed, 350, lessened ; my-
 nussh, 820.
 myscheaunce, 366, ill luck, mis-
 chance.
 mysdon, 261, done amiss.
 mysdymed, 265, mistook.
 mysericordous, 313, forgiving.
 myserye, 13, misery.
 mysknewe, 102, mistook.
 myster, 219, need ; mystier, 222.
 Nat, 2, not.

naturell, 15, natural.
 nauye, 109, navy.
 nauyll, 15, navel.
 nayle, 81, hoof.
 ne, 1, nor.
 nedermost, 336, nethermost.
 ner, 212, nor.
 nevew, 17, nephew.
 none, 358, noon.
 nones, 63, nonce.
 nothre, 39, neither.
 nourrytured, 354, nurtured.
 nouyces, 103, nurses.
 nuyouse, 371, tiresome.
 nyghte, 179, niece ; nyghtis (pl.),
 162.
 nys, 8, is not.

Obscurte, 22, obscurity.
 obsequye, 235, funeral ceremony.
 obtempering, 9, submitting.
 occysyon, 132, slaughter.
 on, 131, 233, in.
 ones, 360, once.
 oo, 79 ; oon, 4, one.
 oost, 193, host.
 ootys, 91, oats.
 ordonne, 14, order ; ordonned, 79.
 orgueyt, 293, haughtiness.
 orgueylous, 249, haughty.
 orphanite, 147, state of orphanage.
 orphelym, 241 ; orphenyme, 213 ;
 orphenyns (pl.), 187, orphan.
 ough, 126 ; owche, 59, jewel.
 ouergrownen, 65, full grown.
 ouerreddde, 1, read over.
 ouertredde, 112, overstep.
 ought, 134, owes.
 oultrage, 196, outrage.
 oultrageous, 89, outrageous.
 outhre, 95, either.

Paas, 21, pace.
 pais, 257, peace.
 palfrener, 52 (*varlet*), page.
 palfroy, 9, palfrey.
 palleys, 147, palace.
 palyard, 294 (*ribault*), rascal.
 pannes, 4, pans.
 panter, 84, a steel plate covering
 that part of the body between the
 breast and the waist. *Viollet-le-*
Duc, the front part of the cuirass.
 pappes, 311, breasts.

parels, 31, perils.
 parement, 37, ornament.
 parfounde, 167, deepest.
 parfytte, 3, perfect.
 partrych, 175, partridge.
 pas, 136, pass, passage.
 patron, 115, master.
 patyse, 304, 324, tribute ; patiz, 301 ;
 patise (verb), 304, tax, exact tribute.
 pauseys, 142, 359, shield.
 pauyesed, 167, shielded.
 paynemys, 106, pagans.
 peas, 12, peace ; pleased, 100, pacified.
 pensfull, 28 (*pensif*), thoughtful.
 perfightly, 22 ; perfytly, 5, perfectly.
 peris, 39 ; peers.
 perpetred, 76, perpetrated.
 perske, 126 (*pers.*), blue, sky colour-ed (Cot.).
 pert, 105, expert.
 pesauant, 142, weight.
 pesauant, 145, heavy.
 peupled, 118, peopled.
 peyne, 12, 322, pain, painstaking.
 plaisir, 10, pleasure.
 playntes, 12, plaints.
 playsaunce, 14, pleasure.
 playsaunt, 7, pleasant.
 plee, 53 (*plaint*), story.
 plee, 319 (*plet*), play.
 pletyng, 33, pr. part. of plete, to plead.
 portable, 209, bearable.
 portecollys, 253, portcullis.
 potence, 117, cross, gibbet.
 pouere, 6, poor.
 pouldre, 115, powder.
 poursiewe, 155, seek.
 poyned, 149, appointed.
 prately, 9 (*doulcement*), prettily.
 prechement, 196, preaching.
 preses, 137 (*presse*), throng.
 prest, 265, 275, ready, now.
 preste, 358, priest.
 preu, 21 (*preus*), valiant.
 preyse, 23, praise.
 preyed, 302, apprised.
 prodytour, 310 (*proditeur*), traitor.
 proesse, 15, prowess.
 prouyssion, 16, promise.
 promytte, 15, promise.

promytyng, 292, promising.
 propice, 168 ; propyce, 108, propitious.
 propos, 261, proposal.
 propre, 196, own.
 propriete, 133, property.
 proufytte, 3, profit.
 prox, 132, prey.
 prymat, 40, primate.
 pryme, 148, six A.M.
 pryuy, 214, select, intimate.
 publyed, 64, published.
 pucelle, 179, maid.
 punysshie, 13, punish.
 purchasse, 257, procure.
 purfeld, 53 ; purfylled, 240, trimmed.
 puruey, 19, purvey.
 purveyaunce, 109, provender.
 purveyed, 109, purveyed, provided.
 pytaunce, 336, allowance.
 pyte, 14, pity.

 Quarell, 287, a kind of arrow.

 Radeur, 329 (*radeur*), swiftness ; 386, violence.
 reasonably, 18, reasonably ; raisson, 260, justice.
 rampyn, 117 (*rampin*), a light ship.
 rannynge, 8, running.
 raser, 283, razor.
 rauysshed, 7, ravished.
 realyed, 145, rallied.
 reaume, 238 ; reame, 240, realm.
 rebuckyd, 252, strick, attacked.
 rechaced, 126, chased back.
 recle, 325, reach.
 recomforde, 107, comfort again.
 recorded, 263, related.
 recoounted, 168, encountered.
 recule, 124, 231, fall back, retreat.
 rede, 2, read.
 redeuaunce, 4 (*rederance*), rent, service.
 redressid, 193, rearranged.
 reforced, 176 (*se renforcha*), 290 (*reforcha*), increased, reinforced.
 regarde, 209, desert.
 regenerated, 140, regenerated.
 regne, 6, reign.
 regracy, 23 ; regracye, 124, thank.
 rejoye, 157, gladden.
 relacion, 42, reference.
 released, 322, relaxed, diminished.

releuyd, 95 (*se remit*), 103, 131, rose.
 relygyon, 181, order.
 remenant, 44, remnant.
 remevyth, 371, renoveth.
 remyse, 207, 210, restore; remyse, 137.
 renominee, 108; renoumee, 74 (*renommée*), renown.
 resoyngne, 140 (*ressongner*), to fear (Cot.).
 respecton, 319, outlook.
 restablyssh, 196, establish again.
 retche, 14 (*challoir*), reck, regard.
 reuertid, 319, turned.
 reueste, 97, endow.
 reuested, 40, clothed.
 reueyt, 241, revelry.
 rewled, 68, ruled.
 rightwyse, 69, righteous.
 roche, 248, rock.
 roos, 22, rose.
 roste, 4, roast.
 rote, 60, root.
 rotyn, 286, rotten.
 rought, 67, recked.
 route, 136, squadron (Cot.).
 royalme, 118; royaime, 245, realm.
 rudesse, 28, rudeness.
 ryall, 363, royal.
 ryalte, 214, royalty.
 ryuage, 2, 114 (*ripve*), shore, landing.

Saaf, 3, except.
 sac, 39, sack.
 salades, 130, helmets.
 saluacyon, 356, safety.
 salue, 126, salute; salued, 8; salewed, 10.
 Satirday, 15, Saturday.
 saudant, 291, sultan.
 sauegarde, 17, safeguard.
 sauf, 177, except.
 sawdees, 148, soldiers' pay.
 sawdoyers, 208; sawdyours, 149, soldiers.
 sawdan, 105, sultan.
 sawte, 229; sawtyng, 291, assault, assaulting.
 saynet, 3, saint.
 scafoldes, 241 (*eschafauds*), grandstands.
 scaped, 34, escaped.
 scarmussling, 131, skirmishing.
 schall, 2, shall.

scourers, 224 (*coureus*), runners.
 seaced, 311, ceased.
 seale, 39, seal.
 seabed, 75, seasyd, 358 (*saisir*, connected with *seisin*), seized from.
 sechyng, 10, seeking.
 see, 7, sea.
 seinblable, 210, similar.
 semblaunt, 33, 150, show.
 seemyng, 7, seeming.
 sene, 153 (cf. syn) since.
 senester, 84; senyster, 137, left.
 separated, 302, separated.
 sepulture, 354, tomb.
 serche, 1, search.
 seruytude, 249, feudal dues.
 sethen, 163, since.
 sette, 17, set, placed; 272 (noun), sect.
 scuene nyght, 91, week.
 shadd, 22, shed.
 shede, 359, sheath.
 shelynges, 43, shillings.
 shett, 14, shut.
 shul, 16, shall.
 siege, 133, seat, camp.
 siew, 123, follow; siewed, 219; siewyng, 73.
 sitli, 10, since.
 sitte, 23, set.
 slee, 24, slay.
 slough, 306, slew.
 sodan, 128, sultan.
 soden, 279, boiled.
 solas, 306, amusement.
 solemnly, 323, solemnly.
 sommage, 143, baggage.
 sommed, 65, summoned.
 songe, 7, sang.
 sonne, 174, sun.
 sorow, 13, sorrow.
 sonne, 360, sun.
 sort, 110, spell, sorcery.
 souped, 363, supped.
 sourdred, 46 (*est sours*), 50 (*sourdit*), sprung forth.
 sowle, 41, soul.
 sowne, 101, sound.
 sparpylled, 165 (*esgarez*), scattered.
 spek, 6, 19, speak.
 sperhaak, 16; sperohak, sparrow hawk.
 speryd, 294, asked.
 spoused, 11, espoused.

spyce, 371 (*espèce*), element.
 stablysshed, 17, stablished.
 stalage, 54, stands.
 stert vp, 302 (*saillist*), jumped up.
 straunged of, 48, estranged from.
 stake, 234, a pile of wood.
 stakered, 82; staker, 353, staggered.
 staung, 98, pool.
 stere, 185, stir, move.
 sterop, 27; sterope, 83, stirrup.
 stode, 7, stood.
 stoure, 132, 146, tumult, battle.
 straunge, 183, foreign.
 straunger, 10, stranger.
 strengest, 33, strongest.
 streyte, 118, street.
 styed, 94, mounted.
 styl, 7, still.
 subget, 24, subject.
 subjection, 17, subjection.
 suposen, 3, suppose.
 supposest, 30, intendest.
 surpryded, 10, overcome by.
 surquydous, 96, arrogant.
 suscited, 151 (*resuciter*), raised from.
 sustir, 118, sister.
 swette, 7, sweet.
 syke, 147, sick.
 sylenceth, 48, becomes silent.
 symplenies, 194, ignorance.
 syn, 17, 71, 116, since, then.
 synester, 258, evil.
 synewes, 138 (*vaines*), veins.
 synnar, 313, sinner.
 synne, 339, sin.
 syth, 26, since.
 sythe, 301, scyth.

Tache, 22 (*tache*), spot; tache, 232,
 buckle, clasp.
 tambours, 110, druins, a kind of
 tambourine.
 targe, 175, shield.
 termyned, 149, terminated.
 terryen, 60, landholder.
 thaketh, 294 (*pris*), taketh.
 the, 284, they.
 thenne, 7, then.
 thevely, 359, thieflike.
 thikk, 18, thick.
 thoo, 16, those.
 thrested, 77, thrusted.
 thrugh, 359, threw.
 thurst, 7, thirst.

thye, 232, thigh.
 tierce, 157, In summer eight of the
 clock, in winter ten (Cot.).
 toard, 96, towards.
 to fore, 20; to forne, 178, before.
 togidre, 11, together.
 toke, 4, took.
 top, 105, tuft.
 tourment, 15, torment.
 tourned, 9, turned.
 tranchis, 43 (*trenchée*); trenchis, 50,
 carvings, hewings.
 trasse, 278, trace.
 trauerse, 126, across.
 trayll, 320 (*traillis*); traylles (pl.),
 329, cage.
 traytee, 182, treaty.
 trenchaunt, 145, sharp.
 trew, 1, true.
 trews, 276, truce.
 tronchoned, 286, truncheoned.
 troussage, 132 (*troussages*), goods,
 bundles.
 troussed, 141, prepared to leave.
 trouth, 17, truth.
 trucheman, 274, interpreter.
 trusse, 335, pack.
 trychery, 110, treachery.
 trystefull, 305, sad.
 tyres, 53, attire.

 Valew, valewe, 41, value.
 valiauntis, 122, valiantness.
 vasselage, 145 (*vaiselage*), fealty;
 200 (*vaiselages*), feats of arms
 (Cot.).
 vergoyne, 285 (*vergoingne*), shame.
 vergoynouse, 21, ashamed.
 vertu, 291; vertue, 200, strength.
 very, 1, 25, veracious.
 vitupere, 89 (*blasme*), reproach.
 vmbrel, 83 (*maisselle*), the shade for
 the eyes placed immediately over
 the sight of a helmet, and some-
 times attached to the vizor (Halli-
 well).
 vnfortune, 209, misfortune.
 vnnethe, 202, 249, scarcely, nearly.
 vnpurveyed, 121 (*despourveu*), un-
 provided.
 vnyed, 131, united.
 volente, 207, will.
 voyded, 209 (*ostées*), removed.
 vpso-dounne, 25, upside down.

vyageours, 362, travellers.
 vylayne, 28, bondman.
 vylonnye, 251, disgrace.
 vynaire, 114, vinegar.
 vyreton, 269, arrow or bolt.
 vysyted, 288, examined.
 vytupere, 233 (*vituperer*), shame.

Wakked, 7, was awake.
 waloped, 130; waloping, 21, galloped.
 warauntyse, 200; waraunt, 136, proteet.
 warde, 62, wall of defence.
 wardes, 170, guards.
 wareyne, 99, preserve, enclosure.
 wast, 18, waste.
 waymentyng, 13, lamenting.
 wedryng, 206, weather.
 wele, 11, weal.
 wend, 72; weneth, 2; wenyng, 29, weened, thought.
 wende, 137, turned.
 wepen, 25, weapon.
 wered, 21, fough, warred, worried.
 were, 129, wear.
 werre, 65, war.
 wers, 216, worse.
 wery, 145, weary.

wete, 115; wot, 12; wote, 120, know.
 whom, 52, home.
 wodd, 272, mad.
 wode, 285, wood.
 woo, 85, woful.
 wood wroth, 247, madly angry.
 worship, 111, respect.
 worshipfully, 10, honorably.
 wounderly, 5, wonderfully.
 wraunt, 158, guarantee.
 writon, 17, written.
 wrorthy, 68, worthy.
 wysshynge, 177, wish.
 wytted, 310, blamed.

Yaf, 181, gave.
 yede, 7, 21, went.
 yeft, 16, gift.
 yl wyller, 211, ill-wisher.
 ymage, 17, image.
 ynough, 13, enough.
 yonde, 70, yonder.
 yonge, 4, young.
 ypcras, 54, a spiced and sweetened wine.
 yrons, 246 (*fier*), angry, fierce.
 ytaken, 9, taken.

INDEX OF PROPER NAMES.

PART I.—PERSONS.

Adam, page 3.
 Alayn of Quyngant, 68, Raymondin's uncle.
 Alexaundryne, 369, concubine of Sersuell.
 Anthenor, King of Antioch, 264; helps to form a league to fight Urian of Cyprus; is defeated, makes a treaty with Urian, and agrees to pay tribute, 292.
 Anthony, 6, fourth son of Raymondin and Melusine; birth, 104; leaves home to succour Christine of Luxembourg, 190; conquers the King of Anssay, 308; marries Christine, 214; goes to the siege of Pourrentru, 347; captures the Duke of Freiburg, 353.
 Appolyn, 283.
 Aragon, King of, visits Raymondin at Montserrat, 338; is present at Raymondin's burial, 355.
 Argeimount, Lord of, 218, a baron of Poitou, appointed by the Duke Anthony as captain of Luxembourg in his absence at the siege of Prague.
 Aristote, 3; Aristotles, 20, quoted.
 Asselyn, 183, Earl of Luxembourg, father of Christine.
 Austeryche, Duke of, fights against the King of Anssay, is defeated, 245.
 Bandas, Caliph of, goes against Cyprus with the King of Brandimount, 164; attacks Lymasson, 167; he retreats on hearing of MELUSINE.

the damage to the fleet by the storm, 168; his fleet captured, 170; fights Urian, 175; makes his escape, 176; defeated at sea by the Master of Rhodes, 177; escapes in a small boat, 177; forms a league against the kings of Cyprus and Armenia, 264; defeated by the Christian forces, and is compelled to make a treaty, 292.

Bar, Duchesse of, Marie, 1, daughter of John le Bon, King of France; born Sept. 12, 1344; married 1364 to Robert, Duke of Bar; died 1404.

Barbary, Sultan of, nephew of King Brandimount, one of the league against Urian, King of Cyprus, 264; believes the league will be successful against the Lusignans on land, 272; loses his arm in a fight with Urian, 290; makes a treaty, 292.

Benedictus, Pope, 334; Benedicte; visited by Raymondin.

Bernadon, 354, son of Odon, Earl of Marche, marries the heiress of the lord of Cabyeres.

Berry, Duke of, John, 1, son of John le Bon, King of France; born Nov. 30, 1340; died June 15, 1416; commands John of Arras to compile the history of Melusine, 2; captures Lusignan Castle, 369.

Bertrand, 18, 102, son of Emery, Earl of Poitiers; succeeds to the

earldom, 40 : grants Raymondin a piece of land, 41 ; goes to Raymondin's wedding, 49.

Bertrand, 214, son of Anthony and Cristine of Luxembourg.

Blanche, 18, daughter of Emery, Earl of Poitiers, goes to Raymondin's marriage, 52.

Brandimount in Tharse, King of, uncle of the Sultan of Damascus, 164 ; goes against Cyprus to avenge his nephew's death, 164 ; his fleet damaged by a storm, 165 ; swears to obtain victory or death, 170 ; fights Urien, 175 ; slain, 175.

Claude of Syon, 247, refuses to pay Raymondin his tribute, 246 ; is attacked by Geffray with the great Tootli, 247 ; captured, 254 ; is hung before Valbruyant Castle by Geffray's orders, 256.

Clerevauld, 252, third brother of Guyon of Syon Castle ; rebels against Raymondin, 246 ; is captured by Geffray's squire, 253, and is hung before Valbruyant Castle, 256.

Cordes, Admiral of, 268 ; Querdes, 246 ; joins the Caliph of Bandas to fight the King of Cyprus, 264 ; defeated at sea by Geffray, 270 ; slain by Geffray, 290.

Crystyne, 183, daughter and heiress of the Duke of Luxembourg ; the King of Anssay sues for her hand, 183 ; she refuses because he is a widower, 183 ; her land attacked, 185 ; Anthony rescues her, 203 ; marries Anthony, 214.

Damascus, Sultan of, wants to marry the daughter of the King of Cyprus, 121 ; is refused because he will not be baptised, 121 ; goes to fight the king, 115 ; besieges Famagosse, 121 ; hears of the arrival of the Lusignans, 124 ; defeated by Urien, 133 ; throws a poisoned dart at the King of Cyprus, 136 ; slain by Urien, 145.

Damascus, Sultan of, jeers at the Christians' power, 277 ; gets frightened at Geffray, 280 ; at- tacks Geffray, 283 ; has to fly, 285 ; makes a treaty, 292.

Dauid, King of Israel, 2, quoted.

Dupont, Josselyn, makes the heir of the King of Bretayne jealous of Henry of Leon, 66 ; is denounced by Raymondin, 72 ; summoned to appear before the King of Bretayne, 73 ; his treachery exposed, 75 ; confesses, 85 ; ordered to make restitution, 88 ; hung, 86.

Dysmas, 117, the good thief who was crucified with Jesus.

Earle of Vandomse at war with the Erle of Marche, 345 ; he has to make peace, and do homage for some of his land, 346.

Eglantyne, daughter and heiress of Frederick, King of Bohemia, 215 ; left an orphan, 227 ; marries Regnauld, fourth son of Raymondin and Melusine, 240 ; becomes the mother of Olyphart, 242.

Elynas, King of Albany, a widower ; when hunting he meets Pressine, a beautiful lady, 7 ; becomes enamoured of her, 9 ; proposes to marry her, 10 ; is accepted on condition that he promises to abstain from seeing her while in childbed, 11 ; has three daughters by her, Melusine, Melior, and Palatine, 11 ; breaks his promise, 11 ; his wife and daughters disappear, 12 ; his daughters shut him up in Brombelyoys, a Northumbrian mountain, 14 ; his death, burial, and tomb, 17.

Emery, Earl of Poitiers, 18, slain by accident at a boar hunt by his nephew Raymondin, 25.

Florye, daughter and heiress of the King of Little Armenia, falls in love with Guyon, second son of Raymondin and Melusine, 162 ; left an orphan, 178 ; her father's dying wish is that she should marry Guyon, 179 ; Guyon marries her, 181.

Florymond, son of Nathas, King of Albany, 7 ; he has much trouble, 12.

Forests, Erle of, jokes his brother Raymondin about his marriage to Melusine, 56; makes him jealous of Melusine, 295; is slain by Geffray, 332.

Frederyk, King of Behayne, brother of the King of Anssay, 215; besieged by the Saracens at Prague, 215; slain by the King of Craco, 226.

Froymond, 245; Froymonde, 6; Froymont, 308, seventh son of Raymondin and Melusine, 104; the only perfectly formed child Melusine bears, 314; shorn, a monk at Mailleses, 305; burnt in the Abbey of Mailleses by Geffray with the great Tooth, 309.

Gallafryn, King of Danette (Damietta) has his head cut open by Geffray, 283.

Geffray with the great Tooth, sixth son of Raymondin and Melusine; birth, 104; goes against Claud of Syon and his brethren, 247; hangs them before Valbruyant Castle, 256; pardons Guerin and Gerrard, 263; resolves to fight the Saracens, 264; arrives at Lymasson, 267; defeats the Saracens at sea, 270; plunders Jaffa, 277; captures Beyrout, 278; kills Gallafry of Dainietta before Damascus, 283; fights the Sultan of Damascus, 287; kills the Admiral of Cordes, 290; the Saracens agree to pay tribute, 292; fights the giant Guedon, 302; slays him, 304; enraged at his brother Froymond becoming a monk, 307; burns the Abbey of Mailleses, his brother Froymond and all the monks, 304; repents, 310; goes to Brombelyo, 323; fights the giant Grimold, 324; follows him into a cave, 327; sees there the tomb of Elynashis grandfather, 326; slays Grimold, 329; learns his mother's fate, 331; slays the Earl of Forest, 332; becomes lord of Lusignan, 338; repents his many misdeeds, 329; goes to Roine and confesses to the Pope, 340; visits his father, 343; visits Regnald and Anthony, 345; rebuilds the Abbey of Mailleses, 346; captures Freiburg, 351; fights the Duke of Austria, 353; attends his father's burial, 353; fights with a mysterious knight, 359; promises to build an hospital, 361.

Geruayse, 4 (? Gervaise of Tilbury) quoted.

Godart, 369, declares he has often seen a serpent on the walls of Lusignan Castle.

Great Carnien, 263.

Great Prior of Rhodes invites Urian and Guion to Rhodes, 116; goes to search for the Saracens, 117; cuts off the Saracen retreat, 174; defeats the Calaph of Bandas at sea, 177; sails to the Saracen fleet at Jaffa, 266.

Grymantl, 306; Grymauld, 323, a Northumbrian giant; Geffray with the great Tooth fights him, 324; and on the second day slays him, 329.

Guedon, 293, a giant in Garende; fights Geffray, 301; is slain, 304.

Guerard of Mountfrayn, nephew of Gueryn of Valbruyant Castle, 256; makes peace with Geffray, 263.

Gueryn of Valbruyant Castle, 255; submits to Geffray, 261, and is forgiven, 263.

Guion, third son of Raymondin and Melusine, 103; goes with his brother Urian to help the King of Cyprus against the Saracens, 109; receives a ring from Ermin, 126; visits the King of Cyprus, 150; goes once more against the Saracens, 160; driven on the coast of Armenia, 161; falls in love with Flory, the heiress of the King of Armenia, 163; defeats the Saracens, 166; is offered the crown of Armenia, 179; marries Flory, 180; has to defend himself against a Saracen league, 265.

Guyon, brother of Claud of Syon Castle, fights Geffray with the great Tooth, 249; is overcome

and bound to a tree, 251; hung before Valbruyant Castle, 256.

Henry of Leon, father of Raymondin, seneschal of the King of Bretayn, 65; slain by Josselin Dupont, 67.

Henry, son of Alayn of Quyngan, and cousin of Raymondin, 70; obtains from Raymondin the Barony of Henry of Leon, 87.

Henry, 178, 257, son of Urian and Hermin of Cyprus.

Horrible, eighth son of Raymondin and Melusine, birth, 105; has three eyes, and is of a brutal disposition, 105; suffocated, 322.

Locher, 245, son of Anthony and Christine of Luxembourg.

Lymas, Captain of, visits the wounded King of Cyprus, 146; takes a message from him to Urian, 148.

Machomid, 277; Mahon, 275, Mahomet.

Melidee, 183; Metydee, 217, daughter of the King of Ans-say; betrothed to Bertrand, Anthony's son, 245.

Melior, second daughter of Elinas and Pressine, 11; helps Melusine to shut her father up in the Mountain of Brombelyoys, 14; as punishment is sent by her mother to keep a Sperohak in a castle in Armenia until the day of judgment, 15; she gives gifts to knights who can watch the Sperohak three days and nights without sleep, 362; has an adventure with a King of Armenia, 365; tells her history, 366.

Melusyne, 6; Melusigne, 11; Melusine of Albany, 52; eldest daughter of Elinas, King of Albany, and Pressine, 11; taken to Aualon, 12; told of her father's broken promise, 13; shuts up her father in Brombelyoys Mountain, 14; condemned to turn into a serpent every Saturday till she finds a man who will marry her and who promises to keep away from her on those days, 15; meets Raymondin at the Fountain of Soif, 27; wakens him, 29; tells his history, 31; asks him to marry her, 31; obtains a promise that he will not try to see her on Saturdays, 32; gives Raymondin advice, 33; her wedding, 53; thanks Raymondin for his friends' presence and urges him to keep his promise, 57; she presents rich jewels to her guests, 59; builds Lusignan Castle, 62; gives birth to Urian, 65; advises Raymondin to go to Bretayn to obtain justice from Josselin Dupont, 65; prepares a welcome for her lord, 101; gives birth to Odon and Guyon, 103; builds Partenay and many towns and castles in Poitou and Guyenne, 103; gives birth to Anthony, Geffray, Froymond, 104, 245, and Horrible, 105; gives permission to Urian and Guion to seek their fortunes abroad, 107; organizes their forces, 109; gives them parting advice, 110; raises an army for Anthony and Regnald, 188; gives them advice, 190; gives birth to Theodoric, 245; Raymondin is made jealous of her by his brother, 295; breaks his promise and visits her on a Saturday, 296; sees her bathing in the form of a serpent woman, 297; she forgives him and consoles him, 299; she hears of the burning of the Abbey of Mailleses by her son Geffray, 312; her sorrow, 312; she goes to Raymondin and chides him for his over great grief, 313; he upbraids her, and calls her a false serpent, 314; she faints, and on reviving laments her fate, 316; she makes her testament, 318; bids Raymondin farewell, 319; is transformed into a serpent and disappears, 321; her obsequies, 321; visits her infant children, 322; her voice is heard lamenting Raymondin's death, 354; is seen by Sersuell, Godart, 369, and Yuon of Wales, 370.

Nathas, 11, Mathas, 17, son of Elynas, King of Albany, by his first wife; he persuades Elynas to break his promise to Pressine, 11; succeeds his father, 12; marries Ycrys, 12.

Ode, Duke of Bavaria, 223; goes with Regnald and Anthony to the siege of Prague, 225.

Odon, Edon, second son of Raymondin and Melusine, birth, 102; marries the daughter of the Earl of Marche, 182; visits Regnald and Anthony, 345; the Earl of Vandomse does homage to him, 346.

Olyphart, 242, son of Regnald and Eglantine of Bohemia.

Olyuyer, son of Josselin Dupont, 72; fights Raymondin, 79; yields, 84; condemned to be hanged, 86.

Palatyne, youngest daughter of Elynas and Pressine, sent to the Mountain of Guygo to watch the treasure of Elinas until she was released by a knight of her own lineage, 6.

Philibert de Mommoret assists Geffray in his fight against the rebel Guion, 248, 252.

Pressine, meets Elynas, King of Albany, 7; he is struck with her beauty and declares his love, 10; she consents to marry him on condition that he promises not to look at her when she is in childbed, 11; her marriage, 11; hated by her step-son Nathas, 11; has triplets, Melusine, Melior, and Palatine, 11; King Elynas breaks his promise, 11; she leaves him, taking her daughters with her to Aualon, 12; she shows them the land of their birth from Mount Elyneos, 13; she tells them of their father's broken promise, 13; she punishes her daughters for ill-treating their father, 15; she buries Elynas, and builds him a noble tomb, 17.

Raymondin, son of Henry of Leon, 67, and nephew of the Earl of

Poyters, 19; goes on a boar-hunt with his uncle, 21, whom he accidentally kills, 25; he laments his fortune and resolves to fly, 27; at the Fountain of Soif he meets three fairies, 27, and becomes enamoured of the eldest, Melusine, 29; he is surprised that she knows his history, 30; she asks him to marry her, and promises to make him a great lord, 31, on condition that he will never ask to see her on a Saturday, 32; she counsels him to return to Poitiers, and advises him what to do there, 34; he follows her advice, and all goes well, 36; she sends him back to Poitiers to demand of the new Earl a gift of as much land as he can encircle with a hart's hide, 39; he obtains his land grant, 41; he invites his friends to his wedding, 48; they are surprised at the riches of his wife, 59; Lusignan Castle built, 62; named, 64; Melusine bears him a son named Urien, 65; he goes to Brut Britain to avenge an injury to his father, Henry of Leon, 69; he fights Oliver, son of Josselin Dupont, 83; conquers, 84; obtains a decision in his favour from the King of Brut Britain, 88; on his return home he is attacked by the friends of Josselin Dupont, 94; he repels the attack, and sends his enemies to the King of Brut Britain, who hangs them, 97; he finds a grand castle on his return home, 100; is met by Melusine, 101; she bears him more sons, Odon, Guion, 104, Anthony, Regnald, Geffray, 104, Froimond, Horrible, 104, Theodoric, 246; a rebellion in Garaude, 246; he is made jealous by his brother the Earl of Forest, and breaks his promise to Melusine by looking at her in her bath on a Saturday, 296; he sees her to be half woman and half serpent, 297, and laments that he has betrayed her, 297; he drives his brother away for tempting

him, 297, and keeps secret what he has seen, 298; he is forgiven by Melusine, as he has been discreet, 299; he hears that Geffray has burnt the Abbey of Mailleses and all the monks, 310; he visits the Abbey, where he is overcome with anger and denounces Melusine as a spirit, 311; he upbraids her and calls her "a false serpent," 314; he repents and is forgiven, 315; Melusine changes into a serpent and disappears from him, 321; he has his son Horrible burnt, 321; he is full of sorrow at the loss of his wife, 321; he gives his lands to Geffray, 333, and goes on a pilgrimage to Rome, 334, where he confesses to the Pope and visits the Holy Places, 334; he then journeys to Montserrat in Aragon, 336, where he becomes a hermit, 337; his death, 354, and burial, 355.

Raymond, Earl of Forest, ninth son of Raymondin and Melusine, 6; suckled by Melusine after her disappearance from Raymondin, 322; is made Earl of Forest by Geffray, 332.

Regnald, fifth son of Raymondin and Melusine, 6; birth, 104; goes with Anthony to the siege of Luxembourg, 111; goes to the siege of Prague, 219; slays King Zelodyus; marries Eglantine of Bohemia, 240; Oliphart, his son, 242; goes to the siege of Pourrentru, 347.

St. Iohan Baptiste, 16.

St. Paul, 3, 371, quoted.

Saint William, Erle of Poitiers, grandson of Erle Emery of Poitiers, 20; becomes a monk of the Order of the White Mauntelles, 20. Sersuell, Lieutenant, in charge of Lusignan Castle on behalf of the King of England, 369.

Sir Robert du Chastel Roussel in Asy, marries a fairy, to whom he gives a promise that he will never look at her when she is naked, 5; he breaks his promise, 5; his wife

plunges her head into water, and changes into a serpent and disappears, 5.

Theodoryk, youngest son of Raymondin and Melusine, 6; birth, 246; nursed by his mother after she had left Raymondin, 322; becomes lord of Partenay, 333; left in charge of Geffray's lands, 339; marches against Freiburg, 347, 353; visits his father at Montserrat, 353.

Urian, eldest son of Raymondin and Melusine, 6; birth, 65; wishes to assist the King of Cyprus against the Sultan of Damascus, 109; Melusine provides an army transport and victuals, 109; sails from Rochelle, 115; fights the Sultan of Damascus at sea, 115; lands his army at Cyprus, 119; receives a jewel from Ermine, the heiress of the King of Cyprus, 126; defeats the Saracens, 132, 138; kills the Sultan of Damascus at Famagosse, 146; knighted by the King of Cyprus, 153; is offered the heiress of Cyprus to wife, 155; accepts her, 156; his marriage, 157; becomes king, 158; kills King Brandemount, 175; defeats the Saracen invaders, 176; his son Henry born, 178; defends himself against a new Saracen League.

Yeris, 12, wife of Nathas, King of Albany, and mother of Florymond.

Youn of Wales, 370, sees Melusine in the form of a serpent.

Zelodyus, Zodyn, King of Craco, 227; besieges Frederick of Bohemia at Prague, 216; kills Frederick, 226, and ill-treats and burns his body, 227; Regnald slays him, 233; the King of Anssay burns his body, 234.

PART II.—PLACES.

Acon, page 219, Aix-la-Chapelle.
 Aisne, River, 193.
 Albany, 6, 12.
 Allemayne, 183; Almayne, 351.
 Anssay, 183, may be read Aussay; Alsace.
 Aragon, 336.
 Ardane, 245, Ardennes.
 Armanye, Grete, 362, Armenia.
 Arinanye, 161; Arinenye, 6, Little Armenia.
 Aruall, 89.
 Asy, 5, ? Aisy in dept. of Aisne.
 Aualon, 12.
 Austerityche, 345.
 Auvergne, 1.
 Bandas, 163, may be read Baudas, Baghdad.
 Bar, Duchy of, 1.
 Barselone, 336.
 Baruth, 160, ? Beyrout.
 Behayne, 6, 214, Bohemia.
 Berry, 1.
 Boneuall, 346, ? Bonneval, dept. Eure et Loire.
 Bretons, 17, 97, Brittany.
 Brombelyoys, 14; Brombelyo, Mount, 32.
 Brut Brytayne, 17, Brittany.
 Cabyeres, 355.
 Cardillak, 356.
 Coles, 122.
 Coloyne, 219.
 Coulombyers, Forest of, 19, 37, 59, in dept. of Vienne.
 Craco, 216.
 Cruly, 161, Little Armenia.
 Culbaston, 337, Colbató.
 Cypre, 105, Cyprus.
 Damaske, 164.
 Danette, 276, Damietta.
 Denmark, 242.
 Duras, Castel, 346, on the Meuse.
 Eglon, Castle, 103.
 Elyneos, Mount, 13.
 England, 356.

Famagoce, 105, 146; Famagousta, Cyprus.
 Fontayne of Soyf, 2, or Fontayne of Fayerye, 27.
 Forest, 6; Forestz, 18, earldom.
 Fraunce, 1.
 Frebourg, 350, Freiburg.
 Garande, 246; garende, 287; guerrende, 89, country of the River Garonde.
 Gascoynne, 104.
 Guyenne, 104.
 Guygo, Mount, 16, a mountain in Armenia.
 Holland, The low march of, 242.
 Hongery, 225.
 Hospytal of Rodes, 122.
 Jalensy, 331.
 Japhie, 265, Jaffa.
 Jherusalem, 292.
 Langgedok, 338, Languedoc.
 Leffe, 217.
 Leon, Castel, 67.
 Lorayne, 183.
 Lucembourgh, 6, 183.
 Lusygnen, 6; Lusignen, 17.
 Lymas, 146; Limasson, 117, Limassol, Cyprus.
 Lynges, 103.
 Mailleses, Abbey of, 6; Maillezes, 246.
 Malegres, 162.
 Marcelly, Castel, 331.
 Masyeres, Bridge of, 245, ? Mézières.
 Maxence, 103, Abbey of ? Maxent.
 Melle, 103.
 Merment, 292; Mernant, 103.
 Mermount, 300, Tower of the giant Guedon.
 Meuse, River, 194; Meuze, 245, 346.
 Montferrat, 335, Montserrat in Aragon.
 Montiers, Abbey of, 42.
 Mouchyne, 243 (*Muchin*), ? Munich.
 Mountfrayn, 257.

Mountyoued, 331; Mountyouet, 306.	Saint Hylary of Poyters, church, 40.
Murmych, 225.	Salesbury, 1.
Myrabel, 192.	Saynt Andrew, Port of, 168.
Nantes, 73.	Saynt Mychel, Capell of, 343.
Nerbonne, 335.	St. John of Rhodes, 269.
Neufmoustier, Abbey of, 322.	Sassymon, 98.
Northumberland, 14, 306.	Soyf, Fontayne of, 37.
Northweglie, 242; Norway.	Sperhaak Castle, 16; Sperohak, 15.
Nuenemarghe, 223 (? Nurenburg).	Storyon, 73.
Nyort, 299.	Surye, 160, ? Syria.
Parpynen, 336; Perpignan.	Syon Castle, 247.
Partenay, 6, 103.	Tallemondois, 104.
Penbrough, 355, Pembroke.	Tallemounte, 104.
Penycence, 65.	Tharse, 164, in Asia Minor.
Poitiers, 118; Poyters, 19; Poytiërs.	Thoulouse, 335.
Pons, 103.	Tryple, 278, ? Tripoli in Syria.
Poterne Tower, 321.	Tupple, 160 (<i>Tupple</i>), ? Tripoli,
Pourrentru, 346, (?) Porentruy, near Freiburg.	Syria.
Poytow, 4; Poitow, 17; Poytwo, 41; Pouthieu, 293 (<i>Ponthiène</i>).	Turcke, 145; Turckye, 265.
Praghe, 215, Prague.	Valbruyant Castle, 255.
Quercyn, 356.	Vannes, 98.
Quyngant, 68, ? Guingamp.	Vernon, 318.
Regnault, Castel, 355.	Vertone, 195.
Rochelle, 103.	Vouant, 103.
Roussel, Chastel, in Asy, 5.	Vtreyght, 242, Utrecht.
Ryne, River, 219, Rhine.	Xaintes, 103.
	Ycrys, 12.
	Zeland, 242, Zealand.







PRATT

SEP 11 1984
PRATT

JAN 7 1985

SEP - 8 1986

PRATT

JAN 2

1981

VICTORIA UNIVERSITY LIBRARY

10 FFP A

